



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

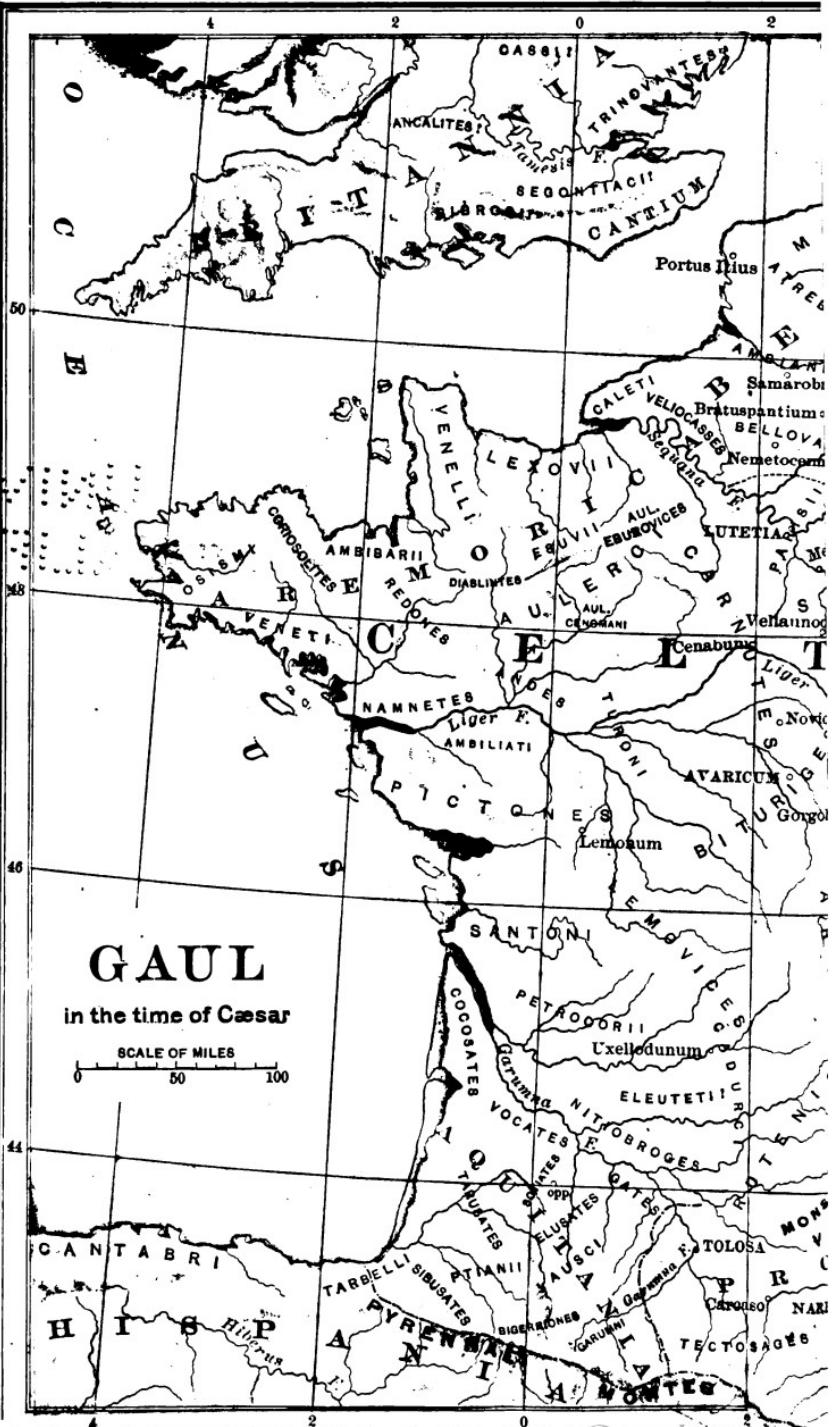
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

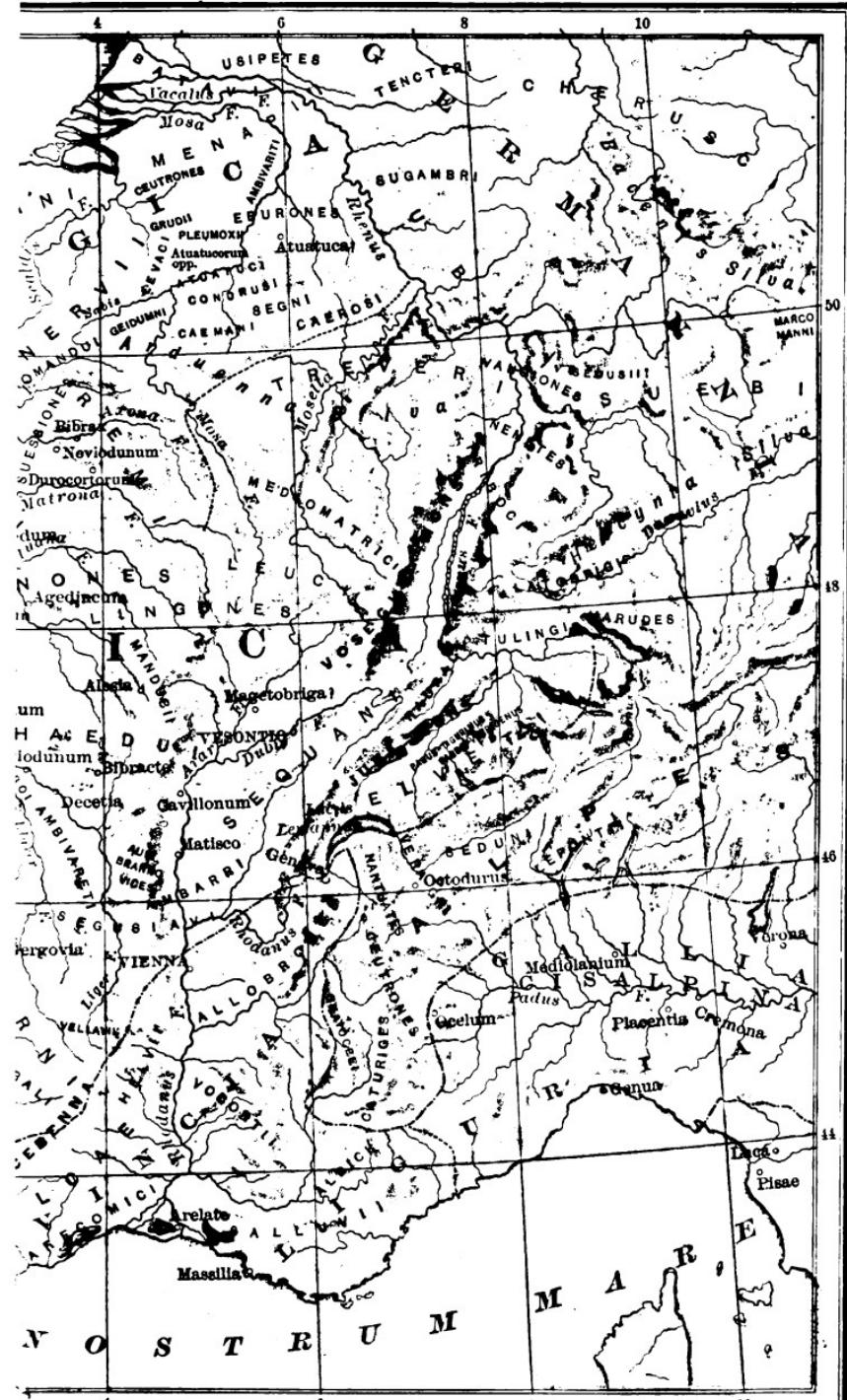
TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

**JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY**





TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

C. IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

CAESAR'S GALlic WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES
AND VOCABULARY

BY

J. H. WESTCOTT

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
1902

PA 6235
W3
1902

COPYRIGHT, 1902
BY D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

- 1472 - 4

Published August, 1902

THE VIVID
ADVENTURE

P R E F A C E

IF Caesar is to be read with profit in schools, one thing at least is certain—the school edition should be as simple and elementary as it can be made. In the introduction, notes, and vocabulary of this volume I have tried to avoid all matter that is not strictly relevant at the stage of development which we may expect to find in the schoolboy at about fourteen years of age. I have not greatly emphasized the matter of indirect discourse, for if the boy is to regard that as anything else than an inscrutable mystery, the result will depend chiefly upon the intelligence of his teacher. On the other hand, I have in the notes to the earlier books laid great stress upon the ordinary noun and verb constructions, emphasizing them by frequent repetition of explanation and grammar reference, for I am old-fashioned enough to believe a good deal in the method of "line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little," inculcated in a certain ancient book. In general I have tried to keep before the reader's mind the fact that the text is not merely an exercise in Latin, but an historical narrative of great events. This explains the large number of cross-references backward and forward in the story. The introduction aims to present Caesar as the

greatest political person of antiquity, and to show his immense significance as the principal founder of modern civilization; and also to furnish enough information about the Roman military organization and operations to make the narrative intelligible. The text is that of Meusel, without changes, except some orthographic ones in conformity with ideas now prevalent in regard to the proper spelling of Latin in elementary text-books.

J. H. W.

PRINCETON, N. J.

LIST OF FULL-PAGE MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	FACING PAGE
Gaul in the time of Caesar (colored map)	<i>Frontispiece</i>
The bust of Caesar in the museum at Naples	I
The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse (colored map).	6
The campaign of 58 B. C. (colored map)	10
Defeat of the Helvetii (colored map)	17
Besançon, the ancient Vesontio	27
The battle with Ariovistus (colored map)	38
The battle on the Aisne (colored map)	46
The battle with the Nervii (colored map)	51
The vicinity of Octodurus (colored map)	62
Campaign against the Veneti, 56 B. C. (colored map)	70
Campaigns of 55 and 54 B. C. (colored map)	81
Pons a Caesare in Rheno factus	91
The cliffs of Dover	95
The Rhine from Koblenz to Andernach (colored map)	146
The siege of Avaricum (colored map)	178
A Gallic wall.	182
View of Gergovia from the south	190
The siege of Gergovia (colored map)	197
The campaign of Labienus against the Parisii (colored map)	204
Views of Mont Auxois, the site of Alesia	210
The siege of Alesia (colored map)	215
Details of Caesar's siege-works at Alesia	217

AFTER CONSTRUING

LORD CÆSAR, when you sternly wrote
The story of your grim campaigns,
And watched the ragged smoke-wreath float
Above the burning plains,

Amid the impenetrable wood,
Amid the camp's incessant hum,
At eve, beside the tumbling flood
In high Avaricum,

You little recked, imperious head,
When shrilled your shattering trumpet's noise
Your frigid sections would be read
By bright-eyed English boys.

Ah me ! who penetrates to-day
The secret of your deep designs ?
Your sovereign visions as you lay
Amid the sleeping lines ?

The Mantuan singer pleading stands ;
From century to century
He leans and reaches wistful hands,
And can not bear to die.

But you are silent, secret, proud,
No smile upon your haggard face,
As when you eyed the murderous crowd
Beside the statue's base.

I marvel : that Titanic heart
Beats strongly through the arid page,
And we self-conscious sons of art
In this bewildering age,

Like dizzy revelers stumbling out
Upon the pure and peaceful night,
Are sobered into troubled doubt,
As swims across our sight

The ray of that sequestered sun,
Far in the illimitable blue—
The dream of all you left undone,
Of all you dared to do.

A. C. BENSON.

INTRODUCTION

A BOY was once asked who Cæsar was. He answered that he was a man who wrote a school-book for boys in Latin. I should like to make some American boys realize that writing the Commentaries was one of the least things done by one of the greatest men that ever worked in this world—a man who had a great share in making history. Yet this little book that he wrote, telling about one of his wars, is one of the world's great books—a book which has deeply interested most of the able and active men of the last two thousand years.

CHAPTER I

CÆSAR

i. ROME IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR

IN Cæsar's time the Roman republic had in fact been dead for years. The real governing power had long before passed out of the hands of the body of the citizens. Periods of anarchy alternated with periods of despotism, when all actual authority was exercised either by a demagogue who had gained influence over the minds of the rabble in the capital, or by a military hero returning from foreign wars at the head of victorious legions.

Rome's prime had been in the early days when she was straining every nerve in the ceaseless struggle for suprem-

acy over the nations of Italy. It was a fatal day for her character when her last enemy in Italy submitted, and the lust of foreign dominion entered into her heart.
Decline had begun Thenceforward there was a decline of the sturdy middle classes in the country districts. The small farmers disappeared before the growing estates of large proprietors and the frequent grants of land to discharged veterans. The free country people sank to a half-slavish condition, or went to swell the numbers of the pauper mob in the city, which called itself the Roman People and cast the majority of the votes in the political assemblies.

The landed aristocracy of the senators and the moneyed aristocracy of the knights directed the foreign policy of the state, while at home there was a series of contests and compromises, in which the populace was alternately terrorized and humored.

The result toward which all this was tending for two hundred years was control by the strong hand of force.

Tendency to Monarchy After a rapid series of experiments in revolution the state was destined to settle at last into repose under a military monarchy, disguised in republican forms.

It was fortunate for Rome that the strongest of her citizens was also the wisest, a man who was able to govern "an age unable to govern itself." It was Julius Cæsar who laid the foundations of what is known as the Roman Empire. Though imperialism ruined Rome, it was the means of civilizing ancient Europe and, through it, the modern world. Though this empire, like all human works, came in time to its fall, it was, and in its effects still continues to be, the most important and the most permanent political institution in the world's history.

The real master of Rome at the time of Cæsar's birth was Marius, the idol of the common people; a brave and

able soldier, but totally incompetent as a statesman. He had won renown by conquering Jugurtha, king of Numidia, and had saved Rome by annihilating the vast hosts of the northern barbarians, the Cimbri and Teutons, who had defeated several Roman armies and threatened to destroy the city, as the Gauls had done nearly three centuries before.

Marius's younger rival, the champion of the nobles, was Sulla, who had managed to get a large share of the credit of the Jugurthine War, and who won fresh fame by his conquests in the East. Equal to Marius as a soldier, he surpassed him infinitely in political sagacity. He had the clearest notions of what he wished to accomplish, indomitable energy, and no scruples to interfere with his relentless policy.

These two men, their political followers, and their rufian troops for several years were by turns in power, and repeatedly drenched Rome with the blood of thousands of her citizens.

Marius died in his seventh consulship, worn out by toil, by age, by excitement. Then Sulla ruled with an iron hand until he finally laid aside his power and retired into private life. After his death his political arrangements were mostly swept away, and things went on much as before.

There were, however, no more civil struggles marked by the ferocity of the contest of Marius and Sulla. The nation was somewhat tamed by loss of blood. One cause of trouble had been removed: the discontented allies in Italy, by their successes in the "Social War,"* had forced Rome, though finally victorious in the field, to grant them citizenship.

* A war between Rome and her Italian "allies" (*Socii*), B. C. 90-89. The latter demanded independence or else equal rights as citizens of Rome.

This was an infusion of newer and healthier blood. But **New Blood** the question what was to become of the republic was no nearer settlement.

The great man now on the scene was Pompey. He was only six years * older than Cæsar, but reached the summit of military fame early in life. His services against **Pompey's Career** the Marian party in Italy, in Africa, and against Sertorius in Spain, his brilliant suppression of piracy in the Mediterranean, and above all his successful termination of the war against Mithradates, which brought the wealthy East into subjection to Rome, made him the hero of his generation. But Pompey's greatness was military only. As a statesman he was a cipher, as a savior of society he was a broken reed. His career was a woful anticlimax. But this was the man with whom Cæsar, while growing into power and influence, had to reckon—the rival whom he had finally to crush, because "Pompey could brook no equal and Cæsar no superior."

ii. CÆSAR'S LIFE

Gaius Julius Cæsar was born July 12, 100 B. C.† On his father's side he was a member of the famous patrician **Cæsar's Birth and Family** *gens Iulia*, which claimed descent from the goddess Venus and the Trojan hero Anchises; his mother, Aurelia, belonged to an illustrious plebeian family. He was related by marriage to Marius, the great chief of the popular party, whose wife, Julia, was Cæsar's aunt.

Losing his father in his sixteenth year, he received his education under the direction of his mother, **His Mother** a woman of noble and grave character, like Cornelia, "mother of the Gracchi." His instructor was a

* Only four, if Cæsar was born in 102 B. C.

† Mommsen thinks it was 102, chiefly because the legal age for holding the consulship was forty-three, and Cæsar was consul for the first time in 59.

Gallic rhetorician, M. Antonius Gniphō. When a boy of only thirteen Cæsar was appointed *Flamen Dialis*, priest of Jupiter, through the favoritism of Marius.

Youth At the age of seventeen he was married, in defiance of Sulla, to the daughter of Cinna, former colleague of Marius. Refusing to put her away at Sulla's command, he was forced to hide himself and eventually to

First Mili- leave Italy.* After serving with distinction in
tary Service the province of Asia under the pro-prætor

First Public Thermus, and against the pirates of Cilicia,
Speeches under Servilius Isauricus, he returned in 78 b. c., at the age of twenty-two, to Rome, where Sulla had just died.

Forthwith, taking the usual method of bringing himself into public notice, he began his political career by prosecuting Cn. Dolabella for extortion while governor of Macedonia, and the next year C. Antonius for the same crime in Greece. These men had both been partisans of Sulla. Thus the young statesman identified himself with the *Populares* or democrats, and declared himself an opponent of the *Optimates*, the aristocratic or senatorial party.

Though these prosecutions were not successful in securing the conviction of the defendants, they greatly enhanced the reputation of Cæsar, and indeed provoked

Absence the enmity of many influential men among the
from Rome nobles. Therefore it was prudent conduct to quit Rome a second time. On the way to Rhodes he

Captured by was captured by pirates and held to a ransom
Pirates of fifty talents.† While in their power he joined in their sports and treated them with a lordly condescension, but told them that he would crucify

* When Sulla was urged to spare Cæsar, he allowed the intercessors to have their way, but warned them that "in this young man there were many Mariuses."

† Talent: not a coin, but a sum of money measured by weight. The commonest talent, known as the Attic, was worth \$1180.

them all after he was released—a threat which he soon after carried out to the letter, though he strangled the poor wretches before nailing them to their crosses.

Study at Rhodes Then he went to Rhodes, as he had purpose and spent some time perfecting himself in oratory under Molo, the teacher of Cicero.

In b. c. 74, when twenty-six, succeeding his uncle Aelius Cotta as one of the college of pontiffs, he returned again to Rome, where he began to win popular favor by lavish expenditure, in anticipation of becoming a candidate for office. Elector quæstor * 68 b. c., he was sent to Further Spain with th

* The high offices of the Roman state formed a regular succession called the *cursus honorum*, through which it was necessary to pass from the lower, step by step, to the higher; and the age at which a man became eligible for each office was fixed by law. This law was nearly always observed, but was disregarded in some exceptional cases. The term of a these offices was one year.

Quæstor: age, thirty-one; the quæstors were financial officers, two having charge of the treasury at Rome, the others serving under generals abroad as paymasters in the army, or in the provinces managing the revenues and expenditures.

Aedile: the aediles had charge of the markets and of public building of streets and temples, and acted as a kind of police and health officer. Three were four aediles—two plebeian, two curule. Cæsar was one of the latter.

Prætor: age, forty; the prætors presided over the various courts of justice; if the consuls were both absent, one of the prætors took the place. After their year of office they became, as *pro-prætors*, governors of provinces.

Consul: age, forty-three; the two consuls were at the head of the government; one of them presided in the senate and at the principal popular elections. Ex-consuls formed the highest rank of the senators, and them were assigned the leadership of the most important armies and the governorships of the chief provinces. Between successive consulships the law required a man to wait ten full years.

The *Pontifex Maximus* was president of the college of pontiffs, and virtually the head of the system of the state religion. This office was held for life, and like other religious functions was no part of the *cursus honorum*.

prætor Antistius Vetus. To this time belongs the story, probably fictitious, that he compared with deep mortification his own achievements with those of Alexander the Great, being then of the same age as Alexander at his death, and that he thereupon threw up his office and returned to Rome, determined to win for himself a fame equal to that of the Macedonian hero-king.

In 65, while curule ædile, he gave splendid public games, and adorned the Forum and Capitol with public works. For these objects he incurred enormous debts. One night he had the statue and trophies of Marius in the Capitol restored to the place whence they had been thrown down by Sulla's order seventeen years before. This bold act delighted the populace.

He was elected Pontifex Maximus in 63, and it was near the end of this year, when he was already prætor-elect for the following year, that he spoke in the Senate against the position to put to death Catiline's fellow conspirators, which was, strictly speaking, an illegal proceeding. He had been accused of complicity with Catiline, but the charge has never been proved.

As prætor in 62 he showed great firmness in a time ofous violence, being one of a very few who preserved their own dignity; and the following year, as pro-prætor, he governed the province of Further Spain. His administration there was such as to make him respected and popular. Nevertheless, at the end of a single year he came back to Rome rich enough to pay off his debts, yet when elected Pontifex Maximus he had been worth "one million dollars less than nothing," and afterward had been unable to get for Spain until Crassus had satisfied his most pressing creditors at an expense of eight hundred talents.

Back again at Rome in 60 b.c., he formed, or a little later, the famous alliance, known as the

"First Triumvirate," with Pompey, the most powerful, and Crassus, the wealthiest, man of the time.

It was agreed that Cæsar should be made consul for 59 B. C., and thereafter receive the government of a province.

Pompey's arrangements in Asia in connection with the Mithridatic War were to be confirmed, and he was to be enabled to distribute lands to his soldiers. These matters had been the subject of vexatious disputes between Pompey and the Senate for years. The Senate disliked Pompey, and worried him as much as it dared. What was promised to Crassus is not definitely known.

In 58 B. C. (May), after his consulship, Cæsar started for his provinces (assigned for five years), Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and immediately began the campaigns which form the subject of the Commentaries.

In 56 B. C. the triumvirs had a second meeting, at Lucca in Etruria, inside the limits of Cæsar's province of Cisalpine Gaul, renewing their former agreement, and arranging that Pompey was to have the consulship and then the government of the Spains, Crassus the consulship and then the province of Asia, while Cæsar's powers were to be prolonged to 49 B. C., when, after ten years' interval, he could again be elected consul. This arrangement gave the time

Death of Crassus necessary to complete the conquest of Further Gaul.

Crassus was killed in battle against the Parthians at Carrhæ in 53; this ended the triumvirate. Pompey grew jealous of Cæsar's influence and fame rising

Estrangement of Pompey and Cæsar higher every year. Pompey's wife Julia, Cæsar's daughter, had died in 54 B. C., and her child did not long survive. The estrangement which had been growing up between Pompey and Cæsar now became complete. The nobles,

taking advantage of this state of things, attempted to shorten Cæsar's term of office, and deprive him of the

support of his army before the date arrived when he could lawfully become consul again. Their object was to destroy Cæsar. They distrusted Pompey, but were obliged to make him their leader. Cæsar, forced to choose between ruin and a civil war, preferred the latter, and promptly crossed the Rubicon * in December, 50 B. C. His enemies fled before him, and he marched in triumph the whole length of Italy. By midsummer 49 B. C. he had subdued Pompey's lieutenants and armies in Spain. Master of Spain, Gaul, and Italy, and of the legal powers † of the government at Rome, he followed the Pompeians across the Adriatic, and after a long campaign in Epirus won a decisive victory over more than double odds at Pharsalus in Thessaly, in June, 48 B. C. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered, and in the following year Cæsar made himself master of Egypt and Asia. Meanwhile the senatorial party had rallied in the province of Africa. Cæsar's victory at Thapsus and the suicide of Cato ‡ in 46 B. C. put an end to resistance in that quarter; but there was still another struggle in Spain, the old stronghold of the Pompeys, which terminated in the desperate battle at Munda in 45 B. C. After this victory Cæsar's supremacy was no longer disputed, and all power, but under republican forms, was placed in his hands.*

Apparently the time had at last come when the con-

* The boundary between his province of Cisalpine Gaul and Italy. His act was an armed invasion of his country.

† The magistrates of B. C. 49 became private citizens at the end of the year. Cæsar was in due form elected consul for 48, and the other offices were filled with his partisans. The nobles and senators with Pompey no longer represented the legal authority of the government.

‡ Cato "of Utica" committed suicide in order to avoid the necessity of submitting to Cæsar and of beholding him master of the state.

* He was made consul for ten years, *dictator* and *praefectus morum* for life, and received the title of *imperator* for life. His person was declared sacred; the tribunician power had been conferred on him for life in 48 B. C.

queror could show himself as the constructive statesman. The breadth of his mind is seen in the plans of improvement and organization which he is known to have projected. The reform of the calendar had been actually realized in 46. This was carried out in his capacity as Pontifex Maximus.* Among other plans were a scientific digest of all the Roman law, the establishment of public libraries, the rebuilding of Corinth and the construction of a canal through its isthmus, the draining of the Pomptine marshes in Italy, the enlargement of the harbor of Ostia, the port of Rome, the establishment of permanent and secure frontiers for the empire by the subjugation of the barbarians along the Danube and the Parthians on the Euphrates. He meant to extend the Roman franchise, to mold the empire into a great cosmopolitan state. Some think he intended to establish the capital at Constantinople, as the true center of the Roman world. His plans were too wide for the comprehension of his time; other rulers, and great ones, worked on parts of them for centuries—one of them, the Corinth canal, was completed August 6, 1893. But he lived less than a year to carry out the far-reaching schemes he had made for the reform and healing of the state, the defense and strengthening of the empire.

He was murdered in the Senate by a band of conspirators, led by Brutus and Cassius, on the "Ides" (15th) of March, 44 B. C. They dealt him twenty-three wounds, of which but one was mortal. Thus Cæsar died; but the imperial idea, of which he was the first embodiment, has proved the central force of European political history even down to our time.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror;
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."

Richard III, act iii, scene 1.

* Most of Europe used the Julian calendar till 1582; England till 1752. Russia used it till the beginning of the twentieth century.

iii. CÆSAR'S CHARACTER

Cæsar was tall and elegant in figure, of a fair complexion, with dark hair and keen, dark eyes. His sculptured portraits give the impression at once of commanding intellectuality and tremendous practical force.*

He was very careful in his dress, and in his youth was something of a dandy. His long-sleeved tunic, with fringes at the wrists, his loose girdle and the careful arrangement of his hair, which he sometimes adjusted with one finger, caused his opponents to charge him with foppishness, and the less intelligent of them to underrate his abilities and his ambition. Even when advanced in life he is said to have prized the privilege, voted him by the Senate, of always appearing with a wreath of laurels on his head, chiefly because it enabled him more effectually to conceal the baldness about which he was extremely sensitive.

But when on a campaign he allowed himself no luxury in dress or style of living, except that he always had the finest horses. Though not by nature very strong, he had, by the severest discipline, trained himself to excel in military and athletic exercises, and to endure the utmost hardship and fatigue. His tastes were elegant but simple. In matters of eating and drinking he was so temperate that his bitterest foe, Cato, said, with characteristic sarcasm, that of all who came to overthrow the republic, Cæsar alone came sober.

He had remarkable strength and skill in swimming, and could ride a spirited horse with his arms folded behind his back. His ability to use weapons served

* The best portraits of Cæsar are two busts, one in the Louvre which seems to represent the soldier, one in the British Museum in London which gives the idea of a statesman and thinker.

him in good stead in several battles, where he gained the victory only after dismounting and fighting in the front rank of his legions.

Thus immense physical energy and unceasing activity enabled him almost to overcome a slight delicacy of constitution, and even a tendency to epilepsy. The latter asserted itself toward the end of his life, after he had passed his physical prime.

Cæsar had no love of money for itself, but money meant power, and therefore he needed and expended vast sums of

Used Vast Sums of Money it. He had no scruples about using it to further his political advancement. It is a surprising evidence of the faith men had in his future, from the beginning, that persons were found to lend him large amounts, which they could not expect to see repaid unless he should succeed. The time came when he not only paid his own debts, but also became the creditor of half the men of his age. Money to him was always a means to an end, and he borrowed it, loaned it, or gave it away with lavishness. He showed the same cool audacity, the same steady nerve, in financial dealings as in the game of politics or the strategy of war.

Ambition His ruling passion was ambition, "that last infirmity of noble minds." For this he could afford to "scorn delights and live laborious days." He would rule his country, but for his country's good. His conquest of Gaul for Rome created modern France, and stemmed the tide of barbarian invasion for centuries. At the same time it trained an invincible army devoted to its

Relentless in Pursuit of his Objects leader, by whose support he made himself master of the world.

Whatever stood between Cæsar and his object must yield or be destroyed. This was why he slew one million and enslaved a second million of the three million barbarians with whom he fought. The ruthless thoroughness of his methods accomplished his pur-

pose once for all. Gaul never again had to be conquered by the Romans. It has been a stronghold of civilization from Cæsar's day to ours.

Toward his fellow citizens his conduct was marked by extraordinary clemency. Here he is in strong contrast with his predecessors and his contemporaries.

Clemency toward Citizens His cruelty to barbarians was characteristic of his age and nation, his mercy was all his own.

He invited to dinner the poets who libeled him; he shed tears at Pompey's death; he was disappointed that Cato by suicide put forgiveness out of his power; he spared his enemies in the hour of his triumph, and some of them were among his assassins.

In social relations he was a gentleman of perfect breeding. His delicate courtesy made him eat rancid oil at **Social Grace** dinner rather than allow his host's feelings to be hurt. His imperturbable amiability made it impossible to irritate him into undignified conduct. When his tried and trusted lieutenant Labienus deserted him in the Civil War, Cæsar sent the traitor's baggage after him, with his compliments.

He was thoughtful for the comfort of others. Once, when traveling with a small party and overtaken by darkness, he spent the night in the rain, in order that his officer Oppius, who was unwell, might have a bed to sleep in and a roof to cover him.

We can not discover that he had any definite religious faith, though he held the highest priestly offices of the **No Religious Faith** state. His few references to the gods are conventional. The divinity whom he worshiped was Fortune, the goddess whom most mortals find fickle, but who was wonderfully steadfast in her favor toward Cæsar.

His private morals were bad, but they were those of his age and nation.

iv. CÆSAR AS A SOLDIER

Hannibal and Alexander were trained in camps from boyhood. Cæsar held no independent command till he was nearly forty. Yet he at once took his place among the four or five greatest generals in history.

Began
Late as a
Commander

Apparently he was incapable of fear. For him difficulty was opportunity. The more pressing the danger the higher his courage rose. And he was able to communicate his confidence to his men. His actions were bold in the extreme, but they were based on calculation of the chances and thorough preparation. He was like the German Field-Marshal von Moltke, whose motto was *Erst wägen, dann wagen.** Some of his movements in the Civil War appear rash to the reader, but if he tempted Fortune, she always rescued her favorite.

The chief element in his uniform success was his swiftness. He instantly grasped the bearings of a situation, formed his plan, and set his troops in motion.

Swiftness

Over and over again his foes were disconcerted and defeated by his sudden appearance at times and places where he was least expected.

His marches were amazing when we consider the baggage that a Roman legionary had to carry, and the difficulties of supplying food to a rapidly moving army in a country without good roads and almost without bridges.

In strategy time is everything. You must strike hard where the enemy is weak, and quick before he is ready.

As an
Engineer

Cæsar was a great engineer. The traces of his earthworks are still to be seen in the soil of France. His army won its triumphs by the spade as much as by

* First consider, then dare.

the sword. It is evident from his descriptions that he reveled in mechanical devices, and took as thorough pleasure in the clever construction of a bridge or a tower as in the planning of a campaign.

Few generals have required as much from their soldiers. Their work in the trenches, their long and rapid marches, **Exacted
much from
Soldiers** the privations they endured in siege operations, their incredible toils, are far more wonderful than their invincible valor in battle. It is harder to get men to work than to fight; perseverance is rarer than gallantry.

About small matters Cæsar was indulgent. He was not strict to mark trivial breaches of discipline and etiquette.

**Indulgent
about Trifles** In essentials—obedience and courage—he was inexorable. He liked to see weapons and armor handsomely decorated. His hardworked heroes had little chance to become enervated by luxury in those eight stirring years in Gaul. He was generous and hearty in appreciation of their brave deeds, and many a private soldier and centurion is immortalized in his pages.

**Idolized by
his Troops** They served him with a devotion which has hardly a parallel in history—a devotion which stopped not at certain death. When he was absent the highest incentive that could be suggested to them was an appeal to act as if their general were present. And they sometimes begged that they might be punished with the utmost severity rather than continue under his displeasure.

The impression made upon the minds of Cæsar's contemporaries by his victories was unique. The West and the North were regions of mystery and terror. Thence came the dreaded barbarians, feared with so good reason all through the history of Rome. Often had Southern Europe and even Asia been desolated by their ferocious invasions. Beyond the barbarians were the dark regions of the unknown,

**Impression
made by his
Victories**

peopled with giants, monsters of land and sea. No wonder that the longest thanksgivings ever decreed were voted as the news came, year after year, how Cæsar was not merely defeating but subjugating the terrible Gauls, and even carrying his victorious banners into the shadowy realms of the Germans and Britons.

Thus Cæsar waxed while Pompey waned; faces turn rather to the rising than the setting sun. Pompey's chief victories had been won in the unwarlike East, the land whence Cæsar afterward sent his contemptuous report, *Veni, vidi, vici*; and his laurels were faded now, while Cæsar's were fresh every season. So it was natural that the party of the aristocrats with growing alarm realized that their day of power would be over when the conqueror of Gaul came home to reward his friends and reckon with his enemies.

Long ago he reckoned with his enemies and then passed away to his own account, but the thoughts of men have been busy with him ever since. His name has become an imperial title, and the greatest princes of the earth have been called Cæsar or Kaiser. Soldiers have pored over his story of warfare, and thought :

“ Truly a wonderful man was this Caius Julius Cæsar.”

The wisest men have best realized his greatness. Dante, who put all the thoughts of the Middle Ages into the greatest of all poems, makes Cæsar the representative of law and government. Shakespeare's notion of him is in the words that Cassius utters so bitterly :

“ Why, man, he doth bestride the narrow world
Like a Colossus : and we petty men
Walk under his huge legs . . . ”

Jul. Cæs., act i, scene 2.

Generation after generation of schoolboys have been made to read the story of Cæsar's wars in Gaul, chiefly in order

that they might learn something of the wonderful language which Cæsar wrote and spoke with his countrymen. It has generally been thought that we can not be well educated without some knowledge of Latin. I fear, however, that most of these boys have had so much trouble with their Latin that they have forgotten Cæsar, and I wish it might not be so with those who read these pages.

v. CÆSAR AS AN AUTHOR

As a writer of Latin prose Cæsar was equal to Cicero, and as an orator he was second to Cicero alone in the time that is called the Ciceronian age. And no third Cæsar as an Author is to be named with these two.

Cæsar's various writings relate to a wide range of subjects, for he wrote on divination, on astronomy, and on grammar; he edited a collection of Roman witticisms; composed a political pamphlet and several poems; wrote letters, and delivered orations, which were collected and published; besides his most important works, the ten books of Commentaries—seven* on the Gallic and three on the Civil War. These last are all that are now extant, except a few sentences from his speeches, a few short letters, a few witty remarks, an anecdote or two, and six lines of verse about the Latin comic poet Terence.

We have reason to be thankful that it is the military memoirs that survive, because we think of Cæsar as a man who did things rather than as a man who said things, though few ever said things so well. But it is of value beyond price that we have his own account of what he was doing in the most eventful years of his life, and of how and why he did it.

* The eighth book of the Gallic War was written, not by Cæsar, but by Aulus Hirtius, one of his officers. It is therefore not included in this volume.

The Commentaries on the Gallic War may be considered as a report rendered to the Senate and the public of the author's conduct of his campaigns carried on while governor of Gaul; those upon the Civil War were perhaps primarily intended for a defense of his conduct as a citizen in that revolutionary period.

What are the Commentaries?

They are memoirs—that is, they stand half-way between private notes and formal history. Cicero said that while Cæsar "wished to give others the materials out of which to construct a history, he may have done a kindness to conceited writers, but has deterred all men of sound taste from touching them. For in history a pure and brilliant conciseness is the highest attainable beauty. They are worthy of all praise, for they are simple, straightforward, and elegant, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as a garment."

The seven books of the Gallic War are each the account of a year's campaigning. They were written apparently in the winters. An account of the contents of each book is given in the summaries prefixed to the notes on the several books, and in the headlines prefixed to the chapters of the text. Story of the Conquest of Gaul

They tell how the governor of Gaul drove back an invasion of the Helvetian nation and then defeated another intruder, Ariovistus, a German king; how he conquered the Belgians in the northeast, and the Veneti in the northwest; how he twice invaded Germany and twice Britain; and, last of all, how in the seventh year he had to fight desperately to maintain the conquests of the six years preceding, and how the united effort of all the nations of Central Gaul to regain their freedom almost resulted in the destruction of the conqueror. When that supreme effort had failed there never was another like it. After that Gaul was safely Roman for centuries.

The Commentaries are apparently a simple narrative of

events, in which the author, speaking of himself in the third person, tells his story in a quiet, moderate tone that convinces us of his truthfulness and fairness. We feel that

How Cæsar appears in his Book the Cæsar about whom he tells could hardly have acted otherwise than he did. We are fascinated by the power of the man—a power marvelously balanced and perfectly controlled.

Nothing was too delicate for his exquisite tact, and nothing so difficult but we always feel he might have done even more, had it been necessary. Usually his means seemed insufficient to accomplish his purposes, but then it was Cæsar that was using them.

The chief interest, then, of the Commentaries is that they show us this man at his work—organizing armies, making alliances, outwitting his foes by wily diplomacy, or fighting like a hero of romance in the front of battle; as an efficient administrator, a strategist bold to audacity, a tactician never at a loss for an expedient in novel circumstances, an engineer of infinite inventiveness, an unerring judge of men.

But he never boasts of his own doings; he does not abuse or underrate his foes. His lieutenants he praises generously where praise is due; of their faults **Generosity** he speaks with charity. Humbler members of his own army and unknown Gauls have had their gallant deeds immortalized by his pen.

It was next to impossible to deceive him. He seemed **Sagacity** always to understand men's hearts. He tells of his enemies' acts without apparent indignation, and generally makes us feel that they were in the wrong.

His Mind Greater than his Heart With all his calm generosity toward other men, we do not find in him a moral greatness corresponding to his mighty mind. He was not good in the same sense that he was wise. It is impossible to admire him too much, but also it is impossible to trust

him entirely. His mind was so clear that his heart was somewhat cool.* Many men worshiped him, none really knew and loved him. He used men as instruments in the far-reaching plans which he alone understood, and though he rewarded them justly, even generously, he could not have real associates, real friends. A man so great must always live alone in the world. Thus Cæsar stands, in solitary eminence, the supreme representative man of action in the world's history.

Such is the man who still speaks to us from these pages. What is his manner of speaking? Some men, without much

Style of Writing to say, write for the sake of saying things in a fine style. He had much to say, and does not seem to trouble himself much about his manner of saying it. He had the same natural command of language as of everything else he needed to use. His narrative is like clear glass: we see through it and are hardly conscious of it—after we learn to read Latin, of course—and just for that reason we may easily make a great mistake, and fail to see that this is the finest possible style, for he shows us his thoughts perfectly without making us think of his words. There is in Cæsar's writing that

Why it is so Admirable kind of beauty that does not depend on ornament, which depends rather on perfect proportion—that is, perfect fitness or suitableness of manner to matter. The language is so plain that we might almost call it bald; it is always quiet and temperate; the descriptions are spirited, but never strained; the speeches are brief, manly, businesslike; the arguments calm and convincing; everywhere it is the language of a man writing with the easy grace—one might almost say the carelessness—of perfect skill.

* He even seems insensible to the grandeur of nature, lacking the poet's soul and the artist's eye.

CHAPTER II

CÆSAR'S ARMY

A. ORGANIZATION.

1. The Legions—infantry.
 - a. Who were the soldiers?
 - b. Legion, cohorts, maniples.
 - c. Centurions.
 - d. Numbers.
 - e. Term of enlistment.
 - f. Pay.
 - g. Dress and arms.
 - h. Discipline.
 - i. Rewards and decorations.
 - k. Supernumerary soldiers of privileged character.
2. The Auxiliary forces—infantry and cavalry.
3. The officers of the Line and Staff.
4. The Commissariat.

B. TACTICS.

5. Battle, including standards and music.
6. March.
7. Camp.
8. Siege.
9. Other engineering operations.
10. Naval operations.

A. ORGANIZATION

1. *The Legions*

The Roman army in Cæsar's time was composed of the legions of regular infantry and of the auxiliary forces, both infantry and cavalry. There was also what would correspond to siege artillery, but very little field artillery. There was a small body of engineers (*fabri*), but most mechanical labor was done by legionary troops detailed for the purpose. The citizen cavalry attached to the legions

in earlier times had nearly passed out of existence, and the numerous cavalry employed by Cæsar consisted almost entirely of foreign allies and mercenaries, Spaniards, Gauls, and Germans.

a. Only Roman citizens regularly had the right to serve in the legions.* In the good old times this service had been considered a privilege as well as a duty. In those days wars had lasted but one or two seasons, and the enlistments but for a short time. But foreign conquests and civil wars had resulted in keeping up large permanent armies, and the soldier had become more and more a professional. Especially had this been true since the time of Marius, who had not only introduced many changes and improvements into the service, but had opened the ranks to the lowest class of the citizens not previously allowed to enlist, and in general had done more than any other man to encourage the growth of a military class separate in feelings and interests from the mass of the citizens. The soldier was no longer a patriotic citizen serving a few years in the army as a part of his civic duty and privilege, but a professional who had taken up arms as a career. He expected to spend the prime of his life in the ranks, and at his discharge after twenty years to have a provision made for his old age. His interests were no longer mainly those of the state, but those of his commander, on whom depended all his personal hopes. Thus the military system of Cæsar's time was very similar to the "spoils system" in our politics.

b. Like the regiments in modern standing armies, the legions were distinguished by numbers in the order of their enlistment. Thus, under Cæsar's command in Gaul, we

* Citizenship had been extended to most of Italy in 90 and 89 B. C. It was extended to Cisalpine Gaul in B. C. 88. The (fifth) legion *Alauda* was enrolled by Cæsar in Further Gaul at his own expense. Citizenship was afterward given to its members by him.

find the 1st, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, and 15th legions.*

A legion was more like a brigade than a regiment of a modern army. It was divided into ten cohorts (battalions), each of which consisted of three maniples (companies). The maniple was the smallest separate unit of organization, but it was divided for tactical purposes into two centuries, called *ordines* (platoons). The maniple was a permanent body, but the men in each *ordō* might vary from day to day. Thus, in inverse order:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 2 \text{ centuries} & = & 1 \text{ maniple} ; \\ 6 \text{ centuries} & = & 3 \text{ maniples} = 1 \text{ cohort} ; \\ 60 \text{ centuries} & = & 30 \text{ maniples} = 10 \text{ cohorts} = 1 \text{ legion.} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 30 \\ \overline{6} \quad 0 \\ 2 \end{array}$$

The men of the first maniple of each cohort were called *triāriī* (or *pilānī*); those of the second maniple, *prīncipēs*; those of the third, *hastātī*. These names had formerly signified three kinds of legionaries, who formed the rear line, the second line, and the foremost line respectively, in battle order. Now they were merely names for the three maniples of each cohort and for their centurions. The centurions were the "non-commissioned" officers who had risen from the ranks.

c. The senior centurion of each maniple commanded the whole maniple; the junior was his subordinate—they did not have independent commands, each of a century. The senior centurion of the first maniple of each cohort, in like manner, commanded the whole cohort.

The Non-commissioned Officers—Centurions Thus, there were sixty centurions in a legion, with a regular order of rank. The senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* (or *primipilus*), not only commanded his own maniple and cohort, but directed the movements of the entire legion.

* Later, under the Empire, the legions had names as well as numbers.

The bearer of the eagle, the standard of the legion, attended him, and he was responsible for its safety and honor.

The junior centurion of the same maniple and cohort was called *primus pilus posterior*.

Similarly the two centurions of the second maniple of the first cohort were called *primus princeps prior* and *primus princeps posterior*.

Those of the third maniple of the first cohort were *primus hastatus prior* and *primus hastatus posterior*, and so on throughout each of the ten cohorts. Thus, those of the third maniple of the tenth cohort were the *decimus hastatus prior* and *decimus hastatus posterior*.

It is clear that the highest of the 60 centurions was the *primus pilus prior* (or *primipilus*), and that the lowest was the *decimus hastatus posterior*; but the order of promotion from rank to rank is not known.

Each centurion was assisted by a subordinate, called *optiones* an *optio* because he was appointed, chosen (*opto*) by the centurion.

Certain of the centurions highest in rank, called *centuriōnēs primōrum ōrdinūm*, or briefly *primi ōrdinēs*, took part in councils of war. These may have been either the ten first centurions of the respective cohorts, or the six centurions of the first cohort. Probably centurions who had attained this rank and, after being discharged, had returned to serve as volunteer veterans (*ēvōcāti*) were also included in the *primi ōrdinēs*.

d. As to the regular number of soldiers in a legion, we can not speak with certainty. Cæsar's legions at the battle of Pharsalus in the Civil War, in 48 B. C., after all the campaigns in Gaul, averaged 2,750 men each; two, in particular, a little later had dwindled to about 1,600 men each; for the losses of war were not often made good by incorporating

Number of
Soldiers in
a Legion

of Pharsalus in the Civil War, in 48 B. C., after all the campaigns in Gaul, averaged 2,750 men each; two, in particular, a little later had

dwindled to about 1,600 men each; for the losses of war were not often made good by incorporating

re-enforcements into old legions. Recruits were rather enrolled in new legions, so there was the greatest difference in the experience as well as the numbers of different legions. It was several years before a legion was called "veteran." New recruits were called *tirones*. In Cæsar's time a newly raised legion numbered 5,000* or 6,000 men. Taking 3,600† as the average number available for duty through the seven years of the Gallic War, we should then have cohorts of 360, maniples of 120, centuries of 60 men each. The effective strength was of course continually lessening by losses through battle and sickness, though this was partly offset by the increase in skill and experience.

e. The enlistment was for twenty years, at the end of which the veteran expected to be rewarded with a bounty

Term of Service in money, or a small piece of land, or both. Sometimes colonies of veterans were founded in conquered territory, as outposts of Roman authority. Some of these colonies developed into cities which are important to-day.

Volunteers abundant Service was by law compulsory on all citizens, but the well-to-do classes no longer served in the ranks, and those of the lower orders who volunteered in view of the compensations to be earned, more than sufficed to fill the legions.

f. The pay of a legionary, about equal to the earnings of a laborer, was fixed by Cæsar at 225 *dēnāriī* a year,‡ with deductions for food and equipment. The soldier was better off than the laborer, in that his shelter was furnished him.

* Some authorities say 6,000, which would make each century contain, as its name implies, 100 men. But it seems as if in fact the number was not generally so large.

† Many writers upon the tactics of fighting and marching take these numbers as the basis of their calculation.

‡ Marquardt-Mommsen, vol. v, p. 95 (1884). A *dēnārius* = about 16 cents.



Legionary soldier.

A centurion's pay was probably double that of a private soldier.

Pay was furnished from the public treasury, and the military chest was in charge of a paymaster (*quaestor*).

A soldier received 4 *modii* of grain (a *modius* = about a peck) per month, at a maximum rate of three fourths of a *dénarius* per *modius*; this would amount, therefore, at most to 36 *dénarii* a year. In the provinces food and equipments were supplied at very low rates, sometimes perhaps for nothing.

Shares of the plunder captured (*præda*), which was the property of the state, were sometimes given to the soldiers to reward them for exceptional exertions. Occasional gifts (*præmia, dōna*) were made by commanders to their troops.

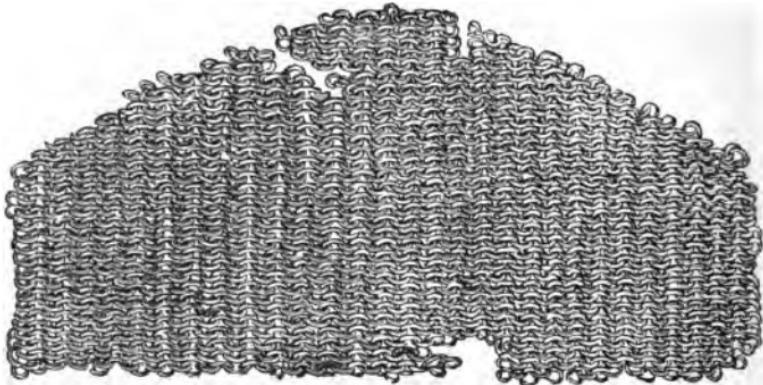
g. The head of the legionary was protected in battle by a helmet of metal (*cassis*), or of leather strengthened with metal (*galea*); this had a crest or plume (*crista*), generally red, which was detachable. On a march the helmet was carried hanging in front of the shoulder.

Next to the body was worn a short-sleeved tunic, or shirt, of undyed wool, extending half-way down the thighs.

Over it was worn the coat of mail (*lōrīca*), which in the case of private soldiers was made of a breastplate and backplate, with strips of metal running round the waist and over the shoulders, all sewed on a

kind of leather shirt. The shoulder and waist pieces were flexible, and the garment was fastened somewhat in the manner of a corset. From the waist hung a kind of apron or skirt of leather or cloth, strengthened with strips of metal. This kind of cuirass was called *lorīca segmentāta*. The centurions and officers wore a better kind of coats of mail, lighter and more flexible, made of rings (*lorīca hāmāta*) or scales (*lorīca*

*squāmāta).** Those of the higher officers were often gilded.



Lorica hamata.

The sandal or shoe (*caliga*) was a heavy leather sole fastened over the foot and round the ankle by leather thongs or straps, or by a kind of shoe-upper, Shoes. laced, which usually left the toes bare.

Greaves and Breeches Greaves (*ocreae*) and breeches (*braccæ*) worn by the soldiers of the Empire, were probably not used in Cæsar's army.

The shield of the legionary (*scūtum*) was in shape a part of a cylinder, and being four feet high by two and a half feet Shield wide it protected the greater part of the body. It was of wood, covered with hide, and strengthened with metal, having a sharp metal boss in the center which could be thrust at an enemy. On the march it was covered to protect it from the weather. The name of the general was inscribed on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It was adorned (at least a little later) with the device of the particular legion. In battle it was carried on the left arm.



Scutum.

* The picture of the eagle-bearer, p. xliv, shows a coat of scale armor.

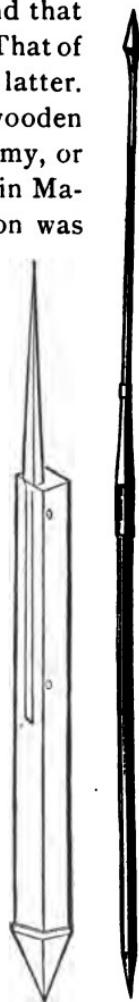
The special offensive weapon of the legionary was the heavy javelin (*pilum*). The two cuts represent the *pilum* of the time of the Punic Wars (left) and that of the Empire (right) respectively. That of Cæsar's time was more like the former than the latter. The long iron head was inserted into the heavy wooden shaft in such a way that when it struck an enemy, or his shield, or the ground, it was apt to break off (in Marius's time the upper pin was wooden), or the iron was soft enough to bend in the process of pulling it out from the place where it had struck. Thus it was impossible to throw the weapon back. The cast varied probably from twenty to forty yards, according to the weight of the *pilum*, the strength and skill of the thrower, and the nature of the ground. As the early weapon weighed ten or eleven pounds (about as much as a modern musket), the force was sometimes enough to pierce both shield and body armor. Where the enemy stood in close order, with shields overlapping, a *pilum* sometimes pierced two or more shields and pinned them together.

On the right side, in order that it might not interfere with the shield, was worn the short, heavy

Sword Spanish sword (*gladius*),

hanging in a sheath (*vāgīna*) from a belt (*balteus*) over the left shoulder. It was double-edged and pointed, and was thus adapted to cutting and thrusting at very close quarters.

Gladius. Over his shoulders the soldier might wear a short cloak (*sagum* or *sagulum*), a square piece of cloth of undyed wool. This was fastened by a **Cloak** kind of clasp-pin (*fibula*) on the right shoulder. At night the *sagum* served as a blanket. In winter and in



Pila.

stormy weather a larger and heavier cloak (*pænula*) was often worn. The general's *sagum* was an ample mantle of purple or scarlet (*palūdāmentum*), sometimes embroidered with gold. The other higher officers also had cloaks of red cloth.

h. The manœuvres of actual fighting were practised in time of peace. So also were various gymnastic exercises, **Training** intended to keep the men's muscular activity at its best. Horsemanship must have been one of the numerous accomplishments of these wonderful soldiers, for Cæsar tells, in Book I, chapter xlii, how he mounted the tenth legion on the horses of his four thousand Gallic cavalry to serve as a more reliable body-guard in his interview with Ariovistus. When the troops were not otherwise employed they were often put to work on the construction of public works—such as canals, highways, bridges, amphitheaters, and the like.* Tiles or bricks still exist bearing the stamps of different legions.

Discipline was severe. Corporal punishment was often inflicted. The centurion carried a rod of vine (*vītis*) with **Discipline** which he flogged offenders. Other penalties were loss of pay, canceling some years of a soldier's term of service and thus postponing the date of his discharge, exposure on the pillory in the camp, and expulsion from the ranks. Whole bodies of troops were sometimes punished by giving them barley (*hordeum*) instead of wheat for their food; by obliging them to spend the night outside the camp; by sending them on the most undesirable service abroad; and, in extreme cases, by decimation; that is, choosing by lot one man in every ten and scourging him to death.

i. Soldiers who distinguished themselves by energy and gallantry received various rewards: money, promotion, or decorations (*dōna*)—such as bracelets (*armillæ*), chains (*catellæ, torqueūs*), brooches (*fibulæ*), medals (*phaleræ*), or, much higher in distinction,

* This applies mostly to the legions of the Empire.

wreaths of honor (*corōnae*). The *corōna triumphālis* or *ovālis* was for the general only; but any soldier might win a *corōna cīvica* for saving the life of a citizen in battle, or a *corōna mūrālis* or *castrēnsis* for being first to mount the wall of an enemy's city or fortified camp.

As already indicated, a share of the plunder or the captives was often given to the troops to reward them for the toils and hardships of a difficult siege. Traders (*mercātōrēs*) with the army made a business of buying from the soldiers the booty or slaves, which they were, of course, glad to turn into cash.

k. There was one class of men standing between the soldiers and the officers—veterans whose time had expired, **Veterans** and who were serving voluntarily in the legions—*ēvocātī** and *beneficiārii*.† They were prized for their courage and experience, were a kind of natural leaders of the men, and were exempt from guard duty and labor in the trenches. They also received higher pay than the legionaries,

and it appears that sometimes, at least, they had horses to ride on the march. The *ēvocātī* were sometimes formed into special companies, as in the case of the *prātoria cohors*.‡ *Beneficiārii* were attached to the persons of high officers for special duties, and were something like “orderlies.”



Light-armed foot soldier.



Light-armed foot soldier.

2. Auxiliary Troops

These consisted of the contingents of light-armed

* So called because they were *called out* again into the army.

† So called because, by the favor of their commanders, they were *privileged*—exempt from certain duties.

‡ See page xl.

troops (*levis armaturæ*) furnished by the allies (*socii*) or subjects of Rome, and of bodies of mercenaries hired from foreign nations or princes.

Archers and Slingers Bowmen (*sagittarii*) were usually Cretans or Numidians. Slingers (*funditores*) generally came from the Balearic islands.

Cavalry The citizen cavalry attached to the legions in the earlier times had long ceased to serve in war. Men of equestrian rank served now only as officers (*tribuni*). The cavalry in Cæsar's time consisted of auxiliary or mercenary troops. He employed large numbers of friendly Gauls, and later, when he learned their excellence, of Germans. There may have been a small number of troopers regularly enlisted in the legions—not large enough, however, to be of much importance in battle.

When organized in the Roman manner, cavalry was formed into regiments (*ālæ*). Each *āla*, commanded by **Ala, Turmæ** a *præfector*, consisted normally of twelve troops (*turmæ*), each *turma* of three squads (*decuriæ*) of eleven—i. e., ten men and their commander (*decuriō*). Thus, an *āla* would contain (12×33) 396 troopers.

Use of Cavalry Not very much value was attached to cavalry in the actual shock of battle; but it was used by Cæsar with immense effect for scouting and outpost duty, for reconnoitering, for protecting the flanks of the infantry in battle or on a march, and, most of all, in completing the destruction of a defeated enemy by a prompt and energetic pursuit. In this use of mounted troops Cæsar and Napoleon were alike.



Slinger.

Auxiliary Infantry The auxiliary infantry was not organized into legions, but only into cohorts, which, owing to the ancient practice of stationing them on the wings of an army in line of battle, were commonly called *cohortēs ālāriæ*. Each cohort had a Roman commander (*præfectus*). The auxiliary infantry plays but an insignificant part in Cæsar's campaigns. It was useful, however, in impressing the mind of the enemy with the appearance of larger numbers and in relieving the legionaries of many duties of a campaign other than those of actual fighting.

Native Organization Besides the regular auxiliary infantry there were from time to time separate bodies of allies, the contingents of friendly states, or mercenaries, serving under their native chiefs and organized in their native manner.

3. Officers of the Line and Staff*

Besides the company officers, *centuriōnēs* and *optionēs*, there were the legion officers (*tribūnī*), six to each legion.

Tribunes The tribunes had formerly been in command of the legion by turns—two at a time—but their duties were now mainly administrative. They were of equestrian rank—Roman knights—and most of them were merely serving in the army for a short time to advance their political fortunes, so that they were of little real value to the general. Cæsar's legions were, as a rule, each commanded by lieutenants (*lēgātī*) of senatorial rank—men of experience, and mostly efficient officers. A *lēgātus* was sometimes given an independent command (*imperium*) over several legions, forming

* Officers of the "line" are connected with and command particular bodies of troops or parts of them. Staff-officers, on the other hand, are attached to the commanding general to assist him, and are not permanently connected with definite portions of the army.

for the time a separate army. He was then called *legatus prō prætore*—i. e., lieutenant acting with the authority of a general.

Præfector is an ill-defined term, and generally means an officer of the auxiliary infantry or of the cavalry. The army also had a *præfector castrorum*, who had charge of the location, surveying, and policing of the camp.

The commander-in-chief (*dux*) was after a victory saluted by his soldiers as *imperator*, and thereafter so styled Imperator by all who addressed him. Cæsar had gained this title while pro-prætor of Spain in 60 B. C., and he gained it again by his victory over the Helvetians in the first campaign in Gaul.

Cæsar was *prō-cōnsul* of the provinces of Illyricum, Cisalpine Gaul, and Transalpine Gaul, the latter commonly called the “Province.” He thus had not merely civil jurisdiction as a governor, but military authority (*imperium*) to raise troops, command armies, and carry on war. His wars were begun by way of defending the “Province.” His defensive operations were very energetic, and soon developed into an undisguised effort for the conquest of all barbarian Gaul.

The commander-in-chief usually had a small body of picked troops attached closely to him as a kind of bodyguard. This was called his prætorian cohort. Prætorian Cohort It consisted of veteran soldiers (*ēvocāti*) who were serving as volunteers after winning their discharge, and privileged soldiers (*beneficiārii*) who had been rewarded for special services, together with a kind of staff of personal aides, young men of good families, living in the headquarters with the general (*contubernālēs*) for the purpose of learning the profession of arms.

Attached to the governor of a province or the commander of an army was a financial officer elected by the

people—the *quaestor* (see foot-note, page xii). He supervised the revenues of the province; and in the army, if there was one, acted as paymaster, quartermaster, and *Quaestor* commissary—that is, he had charge of the pay, the equipment, and the provisions of the troops, and also attended to the safe keeping and sale of the booty which was captured. In Cæsar's army the *quaestor* also commanded one of the legions.

Councils of war were sometimes held. When these were of special importance, they were attended not only by the *légātī* and *tribūnī*, but also by the higher *Councils of War* centurions (*prīmī ōrdinēs* *), who were all men of tried valor and long experience—thoroughly practical soldiers. The council could only advise the general; it had no power to compel him to follow its judgment. The final responsibility, as the final authority, rested entirely with him.

4. *The Commissariat*

The ordinary food of the Roman soldiers was wheat (*frūmentum*), served out once in fifteen days. When in Food Rations the form of coarse meal it was called *cibāria molita*. The soldiers did their own grinding and cooking, and hand-mills formed part of the *impedimenta* carried by the baggage-train. Reserve supplies of food were transported in the same way.

Fresh meat was obtained frequently from the country Meat through which the army passed, but the Romans ate comparatively little meat. The staple and only regular rations were the grain referred to above.

It is commonly supposed that one tent and one pack-mule were assigned to every ten legionaries (eight men

* See page xxx.

sleeping in the tent at night while two were on guard duty). Thus a legion of 5,000 men would have a train of 500 pack-animals besides the riding-horses and baggage-mules of the officers. But wagons were used sometimes, if not always, to carry forage and the sick and wounded soldiers. The commissary department was in charge of the *quaestor*. In some of its duties he was assisted by the tribunes.

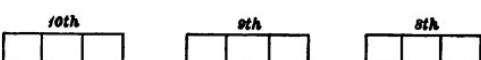
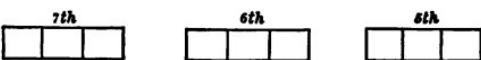
Besides the baggage-train there must have been a siege-train, for the transportation of the engines used in attacking fortified places. But in regard to this we are left without definite information.

B. TACTICS

5. In Battle

The battle tactics of the legion have never been thoroughly understood, and the information we have upon the subject is insufficient. The most usual method of drawing up an army in battle array was to arrange it in three lines (*triplex acies*), with

Line of Battle
four cohorts of each legion in the first, three in the second, and three in the third line. If there were but two lines (*duplex acies*) there would be five cohorts in each. Often, however, one cohort of each legion



Triplex acies.

would be detached before battle to guard the camp or the baggage, leaving but nine to be drawn up for battle. The maniples of each cohort stood side by side; the centuries (*ordinēs*) of each maniple stood one behind the other.

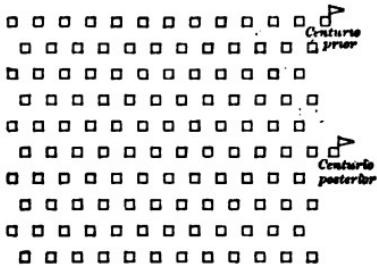
Counting 120 to the maniple, we should have 10 ranks of 12 men each, 5 ranks in each century, or 12 files of 10 men each.

Allowing 3 feet in breadth and depth for each man, the maniple would occupy a space about 40 feet in breadth by 30 in depth. The front of a cohort so arranged would be 120 feet, of a legion 480 feet.

It can not be true that intervals were left between the cohorts of the first line wide enough for those of the second line to march into. This would have exposed every cohort to destruction by the enemy's attacking its flanks. Likewise there was no interval between legions standing side by side. The second line was far enough behind the first (200 to 250 feet) to be out of reach of the enemy's missiles, but near enough to afford prompt support when it was needed.

On approaching the enemy in battle the first line quickened its pace to a run, and, when near enough, the men in **The Charge** the front rank hurled their *pila* in a volley, drew their swords, and rushed forward to close with the enemy while they were still suffering from the effect of the volley. The men of the rear ranks threw their *pila* over the heads of those in front. Then as the fight proceeded, whenever the foremost man in a file fell, he was pulled back to the rear while the man behind him

How the Fighting Line was Reënforced stepped into his place. One slightly wounded or exhausted would retire and give place to the man behind him. If the battle was long and hard, the fighting line would grow thin in some places and the cohorts of the second line would be called forward to reënforce the first. We can not suppose that whole cohorts were withdrawn and fresh ones put in their places; rather the men were re-



Maniple in battle order.
(Front is at the top.)

placed one at a time, or single files pushed forward between the tired or weakened ones hitherto engaged. Thus gradually the fresh troops would relieve those of the first line, who could then retire, rest, and form again as a second line. The third line could be used if necessary to support the other two, as the second had supported the first, or it could be used to lengthen the front of the army or execute a flank movement against the enemy.



Aquilifer.

er of the eagle (*aquilifer*) was always a man chosen for his strength and courage. The

Cohort and Company Standards standards of the cohorts or maniples were called *signa*. Each cohort or maniple had its own special standard* (*signum*), often in

Standards, Flags, Signals

Each legion had its standard, a silver eagle (*aquila*) on a staff, which was a sacred object by which the soldiers swore allegiance to their commanders. In camp it was kept in a shrine or sanctuary at headquarters; in battle it was under the special care of the first centurion; its loss was regarded as a dire calamity and disgrace. The bear-



Signum.

* Authorities differ as to whether the *signa* were cohort or maniple standards.

the form of some animal. The bearer of a *signum* was called a *signifer*.

Possibly each maniple had its standard. This was certainly so in early times, before the formation of cohorts. It had been originally a handful (*manipulus*) of hay tied to a pole—hence a company was called a “maniple.” If the manipular standards were retained after the organization in cohorts, the standard of the first maniple doubtless served also as the standard of the whole cohort.

The figure of an open hand, which often formed part of a standard, was a symbol of fidelity.

The round disks or medallions (*phaleræ*), crowns, etc., were trophies of valor awarded to the cohort or maniple.

The little flag (*vexillum*) was probably marked, as, e. g. :

H = *hastati*, (or P = *principes*), (or T = *triarii*).

II = 2d cohort.

V = 5th legion.

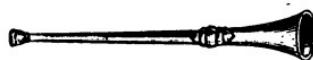
Detached bodies of troops, separated from their proper organiza-

Flags tions, served under a flag (*vexillum*), and the detachment itself was spoken of as a *vexillum* or *vexillatio*. The standards of the auxiliary cohorts and of the cavalry were also *vexilla*. But the most important banners thus named were the white flag displayed at the commander's tent, with his name inscribed in red letters, and the great red banner which he hoisted as the signal for battle.



Vexillum.

There was nothing corresponding to modern military bands, but there were several kinds of wind instruments used for giving signals in battle and in camp. The *tuba*, the only one mentioned in the Gallic War, was a long, straight trumpet of deep tone, with flaring,



Tuba.

bell-shaped end. Others were the *cornū*, an actual horn of ox or buffalo, or a brass instrument of that general form; the *būcina*, a large curved instrument; and the *lituus*, a curved trumpet used by the cavalry.



Bucina.

The orders of the commander, to pack baggage, to break camp, to attend an assembly, etc., were conveyed by trumpet signals; in battle the trumpets made plain to the ears of the soldiers the



Lituus.

commands which they could not have heard from the officers' lips, and the various standards expressed them to their eyes.

6. *The March*

The severest test of the soldiers was the endurance of their long marches, when fully burdened with baggage.

Marches. The heavy pieces of baggage (*impedimenta*)—
Baggage spare arms, leather tents, clothing, and food supply—were transported in wagons or on pack-animals (*iumenta*) driven by the servants (*calōnēs*). But there was still a great deal left to be carried by the individual soldier. The personal pack was called
Personal Kit *sarcina*. It consisted of food for three to fifteen days, and each man's share of cooking utensils (*vāsa*), large stakes for the camp palisade (*välli* or *sudēs*), saws, baskets, spades, axes, and other tools. Each man's burden amounted to about sixty Roman pounds. (Roman pound = .72 English pound.) The kit of the modern soldier weighs about the same as that of the Roman soldier.

Marius had invented a method of making a bundle of the articles to be carried, and fastening it to a forked stick, which was carried over the shoulder—this stick, **Marius's Mules** or the soldier thus loaded, was called *mūlus Mariānus* ("Marius's mule"). The soldiers were trained in time of peace by practise marches. The

Distances day's march in war was regularly about sixteen miles (*iustum iter*). Forced marches (*magna itinera*) were sometimes as long as twenty-five miles, or even a little more. The start was usually made at daybreak, and the march ended at noon or soon after. This gave the rest of the day for entrenching the camp and the collection of wood and forage.

An army on the march (*agmen*) was usually preceded by cavalry and light troops (*primum agmen*, vanguard), whose

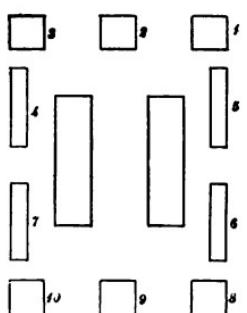
Arrangement of an Army on the March duty it was to watch for the enemy and guard against surprises, and also to choose and mark out the places of encampment before the arrival of the main body. Scouting was performed by parties of cavalry and by certain picked men, specially trained for the duty, called *exploratōrēs* or *speculatōrēs*. The main body, consisting of the legions, had several methods of marching. When no attack from an enemy was feared, the legions marched in single column, each with its own baggage-train following—the hindmost legion detaching one or two cohorts to come last of all, behind its baggage, and form the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

When there was some reason to expect attacks by the enemy, the greater part of the legions went first without their baggage-trains (*expeditæ*); then followed the baggage of the whole army, and last came as rear-guard the remainder of the legions. This order, reversed, was followed upon a retreat. The march in battle array was the only one where the individual men were ready for immediate fighting and were (*expediti*) without their packs (*sarcinæ*). This method was adopted when an immediate encounter with the foe was expected. It could be made either for-



Soldier in marching order.

ward in the direction faced in battle, or to either flank by facing each man to the right or left. Sometimes it was necessary to march in a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*), with the baggage in the center so as to protect it in all directions and to face an enemy instantly, on front, rear, or either flank.



Agmen quadratum.

A small body attacked on a march by large numbers was obliged to form a circle (*orbem facere*) facing outward in all directions.

7. *The Camp*

A peculiar practice of Roman armies was never to spend a night without forming a fortified camp to guard against surprise by an enemy. The rule was strictly followed, even when no enemy was to be feared.

**Fortified
Camps**

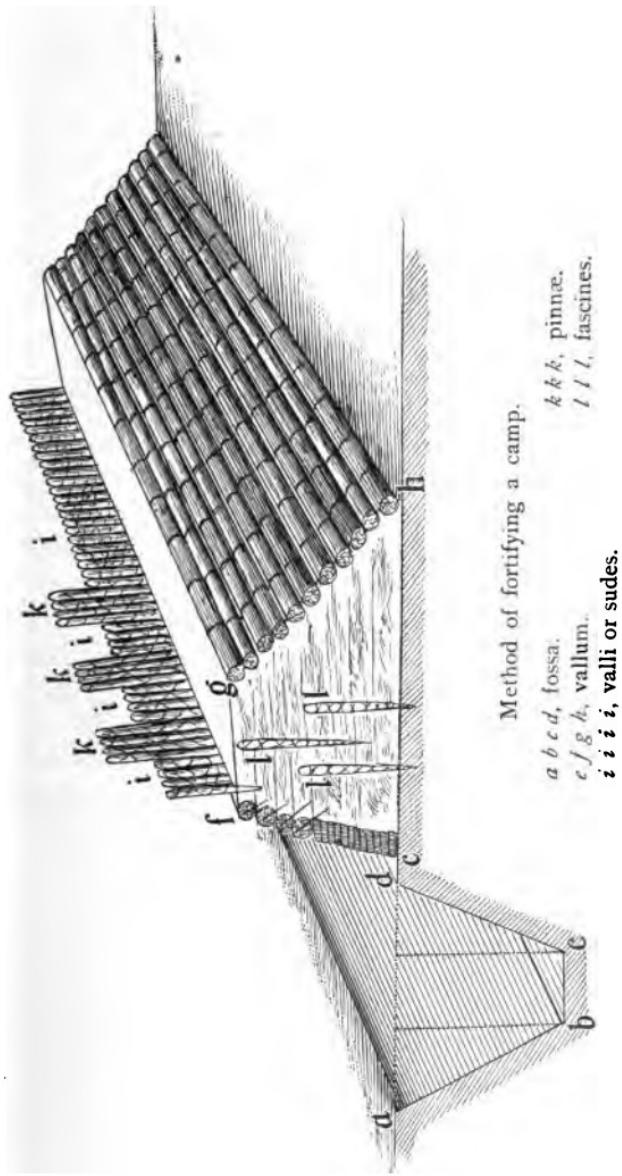
No matter how hard and long the march, it was followed by the digging of a trench (*fossa*) and the raising of a rampart of earth (*vallum*), on the outer edge of which a line of stakes or palisades (*valli* or *sudēs*) was often planted.

**Wall and
Ditch**

Sometimes these were wattled with green boughs and sometimes they were in battlemented form, as shown in the illustration. There was a fixed proportion between wall and ditch, the height of the former being two thirds of the width of the latter at the top. Ordinary dimensions for a night's camp were: ditch, nine feet wide, seven feet deep; wall, six feet high and six feet wide on top. These measurements were increased in the case of permanent camps or where there was especial danger. We are told of ditches twelve, fifteen, eighteen, and one of

Towers

twenty feet wide; of walls eight, ten, and twelve feet high. The wall might be strengthened with fascines—i. e., bundles of brush,—and faced with sods, or even stone; it was provided with steps made of logs or



Method of fortifying a camp.

a b c d, fossa.

e f g h, vallum.

i i i i, valli or stades.

k k k, pinnae.

l l l, fascines.

i i i i, valli or stades.

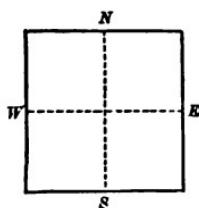
fascines on the inside. Sometimes, as a further means of defense, wooden or wattled towers were erected on the wall at short intervals.

The art of laying out camps, called *castrametation*, was really a department of religious ritual, a branch of the *Castrameta-tion* augural science, just as was the laying out of new cities and the planting of colonies. The camp, being a place where the auspices were taken, was itself a *templum*, a consecrated space of ground with fixed limits. The *cardō* and *decumānus*, the cross lines of a *templum*, were found in the two main streets of the camp, meeting in its center,* where the *augurāculum* was situated at the commander's quarters, the *prætorium*. There was the altar on which the general sacrificed for the army, and the *forum* in which the soldiers assembled when he addressed them. Thus the religious and the political side of the life of the community were represented, and the camp was a symbol in miniature of the home city—a temporary provisional fatherland for the citizens during their foreign service.

The choice of a site depended, however, on purely military considerations. A place was selected by men sent in advance, where, if possible, water, forage, and Site wood † were easily obtainable, preferably on a slight elevation, where the rear of the camp could be at

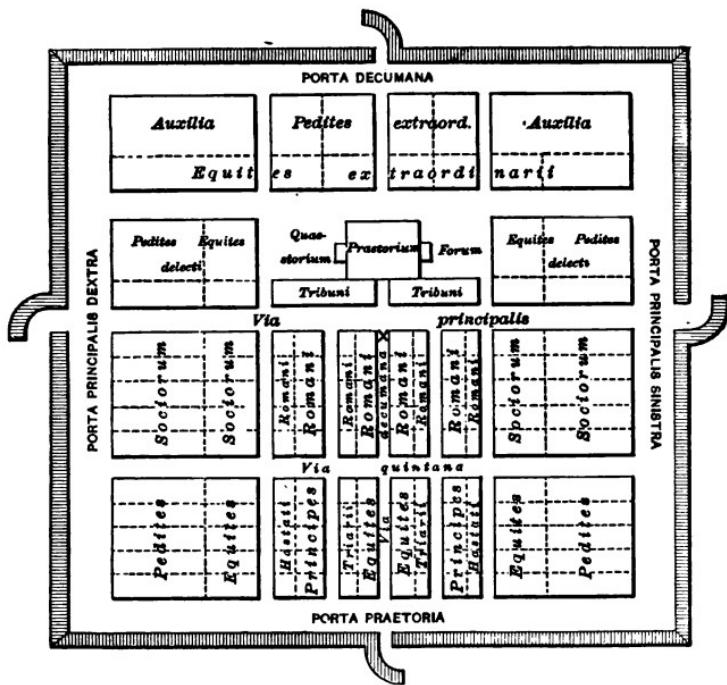
* The city of Chester, England, is perhaps the most conspicuous example of a town preserving the outlines of a Roman camp. Its walls are nearly complete, and it is divided into quarters by two main streets at right angles, with gates at their ends.

† Getting water (*aquātiō*) and fodder for the horses and mules (*pabulatiō*) were among the duties that could ordinarily be assigned to the cavalry and the auxiliaries. Wood was used also, not only for fuel but in the construction of the ramparts.



Templum.
N S, cardō.
W E, decumānus.

the top and the front facing the enemy down a gentle slope of open ground, where there was clear space to form in battle array, and charge down hill. It was considered undesirable to encamp on a level, and dangerous to do so close by a forest or higher hills, for the former could con-



Plan of a Roman camp.

N. B.—The front is at the bottom.

ceal an enemy's approach, the latter give him a commanding position for attack.

We have two accounts of the plan of a Roman camp—one of the time of the Punic Wars, the other under the Empire, four or five centuries later. Cæsar's Plan camps may be supposed to have had all the features which are common to the earlier and later ones, but in many points we can not be sure about the internal

arrangements. The diagram shows the general plan that was adhered to as far as circumstances allowed.

The general's and officers' quarters were placed toward the rear, where the ground was ordinarily higher and whence a view could be had over the whole camp. Moreover, the principal force of soldiers would be needed for defense, if at all, usually on the side toward the enemy.

The tents (*tabernacula, tentoria*) were made of leather, hence “*sub pellibus*” corresponds to the English “under Tents canvas.” In a permanent winter camp (*stationes, stativa, hiberna castra*), instead of tents wooden huts (*casæ*) with roofs of thatch (*stramentum*) were erected.

The camp was guarded constantly by outposts (*stationes, excubiae*) outside the gates, and at night by sentries also Guards (*vigiliae*), both at the gates and at short intervals along the whole wall. These were relieved four times during the night, so that “watch” (*vigilia*) came to mean a period of time, the fourth part of the time from

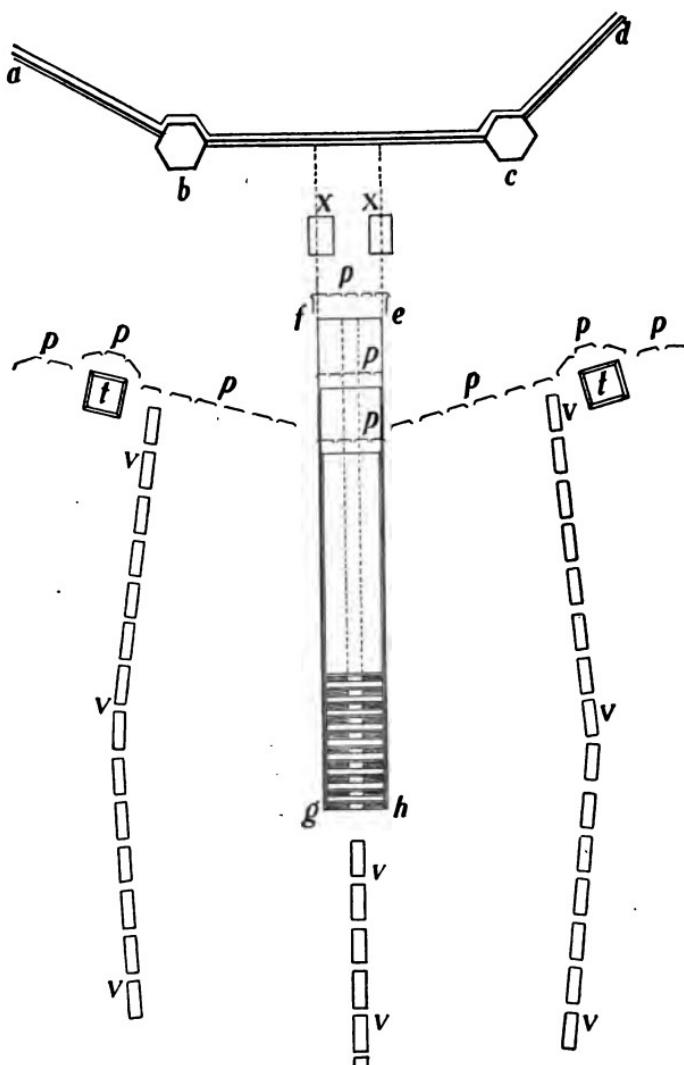
Night sunset to sunrise, varying, of course, with the Watches season of the year, in actual length. *Ex tertia vigiliæ*, for instance, means at or soon after the beginning of the third watch—that is, midnight.*

8. Sieges

The attacking and defending of fortified camps and towns forms an important part of the campaigns in Gaul.

Attacks upon If a town could be captured offhand by assault Fortified Towns (*oppugnatiō repentina*), its ditches were quickly filled, its walls scaled, its gates forced, and its capture (*expugnatiō*) was immediate. But if it was strong enough to resist for a long or short time a regular siege became necessary, combining a blockade (*obsidiō*)

* Similarly *hōra*, an hour, was the twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset, varying with the season. But *sexta hōra*, e. g., means not the beginning, but the end of the sixth hour—i. e., noon, unless the context shows that it refers to the whole duration of the hour.



Plan of siege works.

a b c d, part of city wall.

x x, testudines.

e f g h, agger.

v v v, lines of vineæ, forming covered ways.

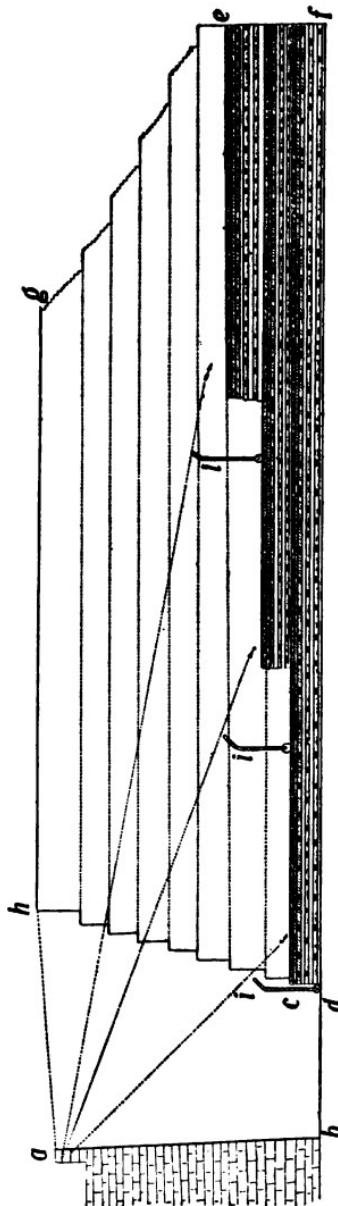
p p p p, plutei, protecting workmen on the agger, and lines of slingers and archers to right and left.

t t, movable towers.

for the purpose of cutting off supplies, with active operations to force an entrance (*oppūgnatiō*).

In Cæsar's time the Roman military engineers had become very skilful, and their operations, whether for attack or defense, were upon a great scale. There is no instance in which the Gauls were able to defeat even a small force of Romans fighting behind entrenchments. All this is best shown in the account of the siege of Alesia in the seventh book, where Cæsar was at once besieging the town and himself assailed from without by the huge relieving host of the Gauls. The spade was quite as important as the sword all through the story—on that occasion a good deal more so.

Information about siege operations is here given in the form of an illustrated vocabulary.



Section of agger, showing possible method of construction.

a, b, city wall.
b, d, h, space to be filled hastily with rubbish at the moment of assault.
c, h, g, part of agger already built.
d, e, f, part of agger to be built.
i, i, i, palisade to protect workmen against missiles thrown from the city wall.

Agger: an embankment of earth and timber raised against a city wall, starting on the ground just out of range of the enemy's missiles, and gradually rising till, as it approached the wall, it was on a level with its top. The diagrams explain the construction and the use of the *agger*.

Ariēs: a battering-ram, a long, heavy piece of timber (60 to 100 feet) with a metal head, suspended by chains and swung endwise against a wall to shatter it. Also a buttress to the pier of a bridge.

Arx: a citadel, a fortress within a city, usually in a high position.

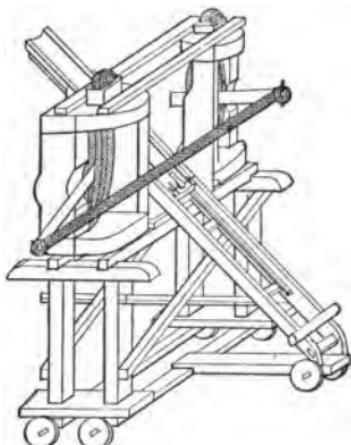
Ballista: an engine which hurled large stones in a high curve. See *Tormentum*.

Catapulta: an engine which shot great arrows or bolts nearly horizontally. See *Tormentum*.

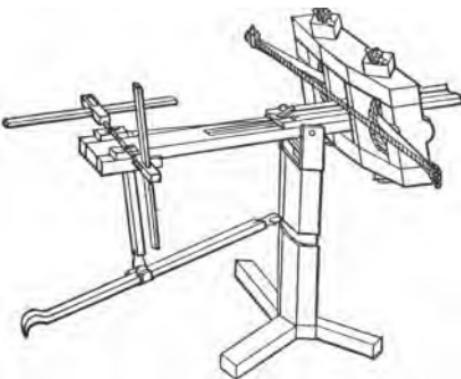
Cervus: an obstruction of brush or forked stakes, like the antlers of a stag; *cheval-de-frise*. See cut after p. 216 of the text.

Cippus: another name for the same.

Circumvallatiō: a continuous line of entrenchments enclosing a besieged town. When used in distinction from

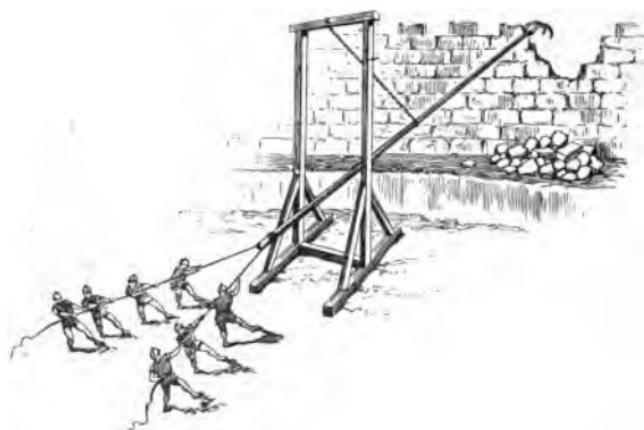


Ballista.



Catapulta.

contrāvallatiō, it means a line of defenses for the besiegers, facing outward, as at Alesia, while *contrāvallātiō*



Falx muralis.

means the line of works facing inward against the town.
See plan after p. 214 of the text.

Clāvus: a spike or large nail.

Crātes: hurdles of wickerwork, or fascines.

Ēruptiō or *Excursiō*: a sally, *sortie*, of besieged forces.

Falx murālis: a heavy iron hook for tearing down walls.

Fax: a torch, firebrand, used to set besiegers' works on fire.

Festūca: a rammer, pile-driver.

Fossa: the ditch of a fortification, a moat.

Fovea: a pitfall.

Lilium: a short, sharp stake set in a pitfall.

Lōrīca: in fortification, a wattled breastwork on a rampart of earth.

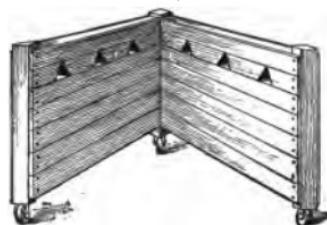


Musculus.

Musculus: a massive, low, long shed to shelter besiegers when close to walls.

Oppidum: a fortified town or post.

Pilum mūrale: a heavy javelin thrown from a wall.



Plutei.

Pinna: a battlement. See p. xlix.

Pluteus: a screen, often on wheels, to shelter besiegers from light missiles.

Scāla: a scaling ladder, to mount walls.

Scorpiō: a light engine for shooting arrows or bolts, worked by one man.

Scrobi: a funnel-shaped pit.

Stimulus: a barbed iron spike set in the ground, point upward.

Sublica: a pile, a piece of timber driven into the bed of a river.

Sudis: a stout stake, part of a palisade.

Testūdō: a heavy shed (turtleback) for protection of besiegers; also a body of soldiers in close order, holding their shields over their heads lapping over each other like the shingles of a roof.



Scorpio.

Tormentum: an engine ("torsion hurler"), of which the force was supplied by the elastic power of twisted (*torqueō*, to twist) ropes. The name includes the ballista, the catapult, etc.

Turris: a tower; *turris ambulātoria*, a wooden siege-tower on rollers, moved

with levers along the level ground or up the inclined surface of the *agger* to the walls of a besieged town.

Vinea (arbor): a light shed, easily moved, affording protection against light missiles, and protected against fire by a covering of rawhides.

9. Other Engineering Operations

Equally admirable were the other constructive works carried out by the engineers, especially the building of effective fleets and bridges out of rude materials in a marvelously short space of time. Instances to be noted are the account of the first bridge over the Rhine in the fourth book, and of the fleets prepared for the campaign against the *Veneti* in the third book, and the campaigns against Britain in the fourth and fifth.

10. Naval Operations

These were exceptional. There was no separate navy, as a distinct arm of the service. If necessary a commander put his army on board a fleet, and a naval battle was fought by soldiers. Seamanship was rude and naval tactics were simple. There was an effort to sink the enemy's vessel by striking it with the ram or beak (*rostrum*). If that failed, the attempt was to cut the rigging



Testudo.

of the enemy, and to grapple the two ships fast and, boarding the enemy, to decide the battle by a hand-to-hand fight.

Decay of the Roman Fleet There were no longer such fleets as there had been—e. g., in the first Punic war, when the war-galleys were counted by the hundred. A galley propelled by oars, corresponding to a modern steam war-ship, was called *nāvis longa*. The rowers, who were slaves chained to their benches, were arranged in one or more banks or tiers. They worked in shifts, probably four hours at a time. A large galley most commonly had three banks of oars (*nāvis trirēmis*) one above another, and the rowers were protected by the deck extending the whole length of the vessel. The working crew consisted of a few seamen, needed to manage the sails and the steering. The latter was done by means of two long sweeps or oars projecting backward one on each side of the stern. The fighting crew was a detachment of soldiers temporarily drafted from a legion. Transports (*nāvis onerāriae*) for men or merchandise were shorter and broader, and depended on sail-power alone. A galley also had masts and sails, but they would be cleared away on going into action (*expedire nāvem*).

Aes: copper used for sheathing the beak, or for rivets.

Aerāta: copper fastened, or having a bronze beak.

Antemna: a yard; a spar hung across the mast from which the sail was hung.

Armamenta: the rigging of a vessel.

Classis: a fleet.

Clārus: a tiller or helm.

Gubernātor: a steersman or pilot.

Harpagō: a grappling-hook.

Scapha: a skiff, a small rowboat.

Subductiō: pulling up ships on the shore; they were thus beached for any long stay in one place, and always for the winter.

Trānstrum: a cross timber, a thwart, a bench for rowers.

CHAPTER III

CÆSAR'S PROVINCES

The word *principia* in Latin meant the field of duty or activity assigned to a particular magistrate. When in the third century B. C. Rome began to conquer and "Province" govern foreign territories, these lands were organized as regular dependencies of the Republic under magistrates sent out to rule them, and were called "provinces"—*principiae*. The earliest governors were *prætors*, whose number was increased in order to provide provincial governors. Later, from the time of Sulla, all the *prætors* were needed at Rome to preside over the various courts. It then became customary to prolong the *imperium* of magistrates after their year of office at Rome expired, and to send them out as pro-consuls or pro-*prætors* to govern a province for a year. The more important provinces were assigned to pro-consuls, the less important to pro-*prætors*.

In Cæsar's time the Republic had about a dozen provinces.* They were ruled by governors with military authority, but in accordance with a special law enacted at Rome regulating the affairs of each province, and thus forming its constitution or charter. The people were subjects of Rome, without any

* Sicily, organized 241 B. C.; Sardinia and Corsica, 231; Hispania Citerior, 197; Hispania Ulterior, 197; Gallia Narbonensis, 120; Illyricum, after 167; Macedonia, 146; Asia, 133; Bithynia and Pontus, 74 and 65; Cilicia, 102 and 64; Syria, 64; Cyrene and Crete, 74 and 67; Africa, 146.

legal or political rights except such as the conquering Republic might choose to allow them. In fact, however, the administration of local affairs and minor matters of law was generally left in the hands of the native authorities. For the administration of higher justice the provinces were divided into circuits or districts in which the governors periodically held court. Free and allied cities or Roman colonies, if there were any within the limits of a province, were independent in most respects of the governor's jurisdiction.

It was usual for the Senate to assign, a year in advance, two provinces to the two consuls who might be elected for the year about to begin. After their election they cast lots to determine which province each should take; after their year of office at Rome was over they proceeded to their provincial governments. The assignment of Cæsar's provinces was exceptional. It had been agreed by the members of the Triumvirate that Pompey was to have the Spains, Crassus Syria, and Cæsar the Gauls for five years, and their arrangement was afterward legally ratified.

The provinces finally assigned to Cæsar by a special law, first for five years, afterward for five more (58-49 B. C.), were:

1. Cisalpine Gaul, the northern part of Italy, but not yet politically incorporated with it, a prosperous and peaceful country with a large and vigorous population, from which Cæsar drew most of the troops needed during the Gallic War. Gallic conquerors had long ago settled in this region, and had been subdued by the Romans about 200 B. C., and since that time many flourishing Roman cities have been planted in the country.

2. Transalpine Gaul, the "Province" as it was called, a name which survives in the French *Provence*, or *Gallia Narbonensis*, so called from the capital *Narbo*, now *Nar-*

bonne. This country had been a province for sixty years, was peaceful, and largely Romanized. Besides the Roman colonies there were some ancient Greek settlements, especially the important city of *Massilia (Marseilles)*, within its borders.

3. Illyricum, adjoining Cisalpine Gaul on the east and extending down the eastern coast of the Adriatic. This was a source of strength to Cæsar, and gave him no trouble during the term of his office.

The military forces under his command at the beginning consisted of four veteran legions;* the number was His Forces increased from time to time until it reached ten or eleven. As to the auxiliary troops employed we have little information. The raising of additional troops when needed was included in the powers of a provincial governor by virtue of his *imperium*. Moreover, the territories bordering on his province were considered a fair field for his ambition, and his reasons for entering upon a foreign conquest which extended the frontiers of Rome's empire were not often very closely scrutinized.

Gaul meant at different times Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, the "Province," or Free Gaul, not yet subdued, or in a narrower sense the central division of the latter, the land of the *Galli* or *Celtæ* proper, excluding Aquitania on the south and Belgic Gaul on the north.

The Gauls were not one nation in the modern sense of the word, but rather a large number † of small nations or

* Seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth; of these only the tenth was in the Province when Cæsar arrived; the others were brought from Aquileia; two new legions were raised the first year, the eleventh and twelfth; the next year the thirteenth and fourteenth; after the fourteenth was destroyed in 54 B. C., a new fourteenth and a fifteenth were raised, and the first was borrowed from Pompey. There is some doubt in regard to a sixth legion.

† There were about sixty of these nations in free Gaul in Cæsar's time.

tribes in various degrees of independence, some occupying commanding positions among their neighbors, others in the position of clients or dependents of the larger communities, thus forming various groups within the limits of the country. But there was a great religious assembly every year under the presidency of the Druids, the priestly order, for the regulation of the affairs of all the Gallic peoples, held in the land of the Carnutes, which was considered the geographical center of the whole country. From time to time there were likewise gatherings of several tribes for military purposes, and in the seventh year of the war there was a congress representing nearly all the nations of Gaul, when they combined to make a final effort for national independence, and elected a common leader, the hero Vercingetorix. In general, however, their lack of harmony, their mutual jealousies, their unsteadiness of purpose made them the victims of Cæsar's invariable policy, which was the carrying out of Rome's ancient maxim, *Divide et impera*, "Divide and conquer."

The Gauls were the chief representatives of that great race known in history as the Celts, which the Greeks and Romans had only begun to distinguish from the Teutonic race. They had been active in Europe for some centuries; they had settled all over what is now France, including Belgium, much of Holland, Switzerland, and western Germany; they were found in the British Islands, where they still appear in the Irish, the Welsh, and the Scottish Highlanders; they had settled in the north of Italy, had overrun the peninsula, and had destroyed Rome itself in 390 b. c.; they had invaded Greece; a large number had settled in Asia under the name of Galatians; and, finally, forming part of the great host of Cimbri and Teutones, they had threatened the existence of Rome again just at the time of Cæsar's birth, until the peril was averted by the great victories of Marius.

In Aquitania the proportion of Celtic conquerors to the former inhabitants was small, and the Aquitanians took little part in the contest against Cæsar. The great central portion of the country between the Garonne and the Seine was the proper land of the *Galli* or *Celtæ*, where their nationality and their civilization predominated over all others, and gave the essential character to the whole country. Belgic Gaul, beyond the Seine, was filled with tribes less purely Celtic, some with a strong mixture of German blood, some apparently entirely Teutonic.

In the southern and central regions the people had long ago left off their earlier wild and warlike character, had become used to a settled life, had built large towns, developed trade and commerce,* and in general had made much progress in civilization. This was especially true of the nations which had most intercourse with the Greeks and Romans in the Province. Monarchy as an institution had nearly passed away; the governments were usually in the hands of nobles, who were in the habit of electing annual magistrates called *Vergobrets*. All social and political power was in the hands of two superior orders—the knights or nobles, and the Druids or priestly class. The former were strong through their large landed estates, their numerous retainers, their military power; the latter exercised the influence always exercised by priests in an imperfectly civilized community, especially when they are the ministers of a religion that is mysterious and terrible. We suspect that Cæsar found the Druids more formidable foes than the nobles, and that one of his reasons for invading Britain was to strike at the center of Druidism, where the system was still flourishing in full strength, while it had already begun to wane in Gaul.

The tribes of Belgic Gaul were later comers than their southern brethren; they had made less progress and re-

* The nations of the northwest coast had even become shipbuilders and maritime traders. There were mines in Aquitania.

tained more of their fierce and barbaric character. They were still largely ruled by kings or military chiefs, had no important cities, and had made less progress in **Belgic Gaul** the arts of civilized life. As soldiers they were dangerous enemies, but in politics they were still children.

The Romans at this time were just beginning to make the acquaintance of the Germans. Hitherto they had confused in their minds all the barbarians of **The Germans** northern Europe. Now they came into collision with a more terrible race behind the Celts—a race which was threatening to come in and dispossess the Gauls. The turn of the Romans would have come next.

In the very year when Cæsar took command, 350,000 Helvetians attempted to migrate into Gaul, no doubt pressed in the rear by German tribes; 150,000 Germans had settled west of the Rhine, and 100,000 more were about to follow. Cæsar at once came forward as the defender of the Gauls against the Germans. The immediate danger was averted by the destruction of the Helvetian host and the defeat of the German king Ariovistus; but twice in the course of the war Cæsar thought it necessary to invade the Germans in their own land—not for conquest, but to teach them that even beyond the Rhine's broad stream they were not to be safe from Rome's heavy hand. As his countrymen were unacquainted with Germany and its people, Cæsar gives in the sixth book an account of both—the earliest in Roman literature—based upon his own observation and upon what he could learn by inquiry. This, and the fuller account by Tacitus a century and a half later, are the two most valuable sources of information about our ancestors while they were still barbarians in the German forests. The country was mostly uncultivated, full of great marshes, covered with vast forests; to an Italian the climate seemed bleak, the country inex-pressibly dreary. The inhabitants lived by hunting or upon the milk and flesh of their flocks; their agriculture

was in its rude beginnings, and they frequently changed their abodes; there was no private ownership of the soil; the nomadic stage of civilization was hardly passed. But the people were tall and strong, exciting the admiration of strangers; the nation was in its youthful vigor, life was simple and virtuous. The progress of these fine barbarians was stopped by Cæsar's victories, until, some centuries later, the time came for them to build up modern nations on the ruins of the Roman Empire. To the Romans Germany was a vague expression; its limits to the west and south were the Rhine and Danube; their notions of its extent to the north and east were of the dimmest kind. Roman armies afterward marched as far as the Elbe, but the permanent conquests embraced no more than the frontiers along the Rhine and Danube.

Cæsar was the first of the Romans to land on the shores of Britain, the first author to give any account of that country. There were no substantial results from his two invasions, but they had a great moral effect, and opened the way for the conquest of the island in the following century. Britain was a Roman province for four hundred years, during which it prospered greatly, and reached a higher state of material comfort and civilization than it was to see again until very recent times. When Cæsar was in the island the people were what the Gauls had been a little earlier in their history, before they had come under Greek and Roman influence.

The Celtic character has always been an attractive one. Its main qualities are seen in the Gauls whom Cæsar knew.

The Celtic Character They were warm-hearted, enthusiastic, high-spirited, brave, impulsive, and eloquent; they were fond of display in dress, of parade and ceremony. Their weakness was shown by their inability to coöperate for any length of time in carrying out a common plan in war or politics. They were brave, but they were not persevering. They were quick to observe

and to learn, and readily adopted new arts and customs, imitating the productions of their more civilized southern neighbors. Thus in a comparatively short time Gaul and Britain became thoroughly Roman countries.

Our information about the dress of the Gauls is imperfect. The men wore short tunics and trousers (*braccæ*), and free Gaul was called *Gallia Braccata* (in Dress and Arms trousers) or *Comata* (long-haired), to distinguish it from the "Province," *Gallia Togata*, the toga being the Roman garment of ceremony. They were fond of bright colors in their garments, and went into battle half naked, their bodies decorated with war-paint. Both sexes wore jewelry, the most characteristic ornament being the heavy collar or necklace of twisted gold or cheaper metal. Their weapons were various: long iron swords, poorly tempered and ill adapted for thrusting, various kinds of spears, lances and javelins, bows and slings. Most of them had no defensive armor except helmets and shields. The former had tall crests in the form of horns or heads of animals, and were more imposing than useful; the latter were blazoned with rude devices of a kind of savage heraldry.

The most important part of their armies was the cavalry, and in Britain the war-chariots. The common people formed the infantry, which was arranged in Armies great phalanxes, close masses of men, holding their shields in front and over their heads. The charge of such a solid body was formidable, but the phalanx was unwieldy in action, for only the soldiers on the outer edges could take an active part in fighting, and when the formation was once broken the army became a mere mob of fighters.

Over these gallant but ill-disciplined hosts the steady, highly trained Roman legions, under one of the world's greatest captains, prevailed year after year. When the hopelessness of the struggle for separate existence at last became manifest, Gaul accepted her destiny as part of the

Roman Empire, and soon became one of the most important members of that body. Italians flocked in large numbers into the country, Roman cities grew up Gaul and prospered, Roman ways of life were adopted, and, most important of all, the Latin language was introduced, which has been spoken from that time to this, and gradually developed into the language we call French. Gaul produced eloquent Latin orators, authors, and poets, and Gauls even became Roman emperors. In the fifth century, at the fall of the Western Empire, various German nations came in and established their supremacy. Most important of these were the Franks, who gradually extended their power over the country, and gave it their own name, the "Realm of the Franks,"

Cæsar the Founder of France France. But the language of France is Latin still, and the people are mainly Celtic. In the brilliant history of this great country we can trace the Gallic character, but through it all runs the strong, deep impression of Roman influence. French cities bear the names of ancient Gallic tribes, and the dioceses of French bishops largely preserve the ancient boundary-lines of those tribes. But French civilization is Latin rather than Celtic, and the French are right when they begin with Cæsar in the text-books of their history. Behind Napoleon and Louis XIV, behind Charlemagne and Clovis, twenty centuries away stands Cæsar, first and greatest of their rulers, the creator of France.

It is not given to many mortals to do a work that shall last a thousand years, but it is two thousand years this very day since Cæsar was born. These words are written on the 12th of July, in the first year of the twentieth Christian century, in a State of which the Latin name is *Neo-Cæsarēa*, and at the university which bore for a hundred and fifty years the title *Collègium Neo-Cæsariense*.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following are a few of the works interesting to students of Caesar:

FROUDE, J. A. Caesar, a Sketch. New York, 1879.

(Intensely interesting, but inaccurate and not impartial.)

FOWLER, W. W. Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System. New York, 1892.

(In the Heroes of the Nations series.)

DODGE, Col. TH. A. Julius Caesar. Boston and New York, 1892.

(In the Great Captains series. Written entirely from the military point of view.)

TROLLOPE, A. The Commentaries of Caesar. London and Philadelphia, 1880.

(One of the Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

MERIVALE, C. The Roman Triumvirates. London, 1892.

(One of the Epochs of Ancient History.)

All the histories of Rome which deal with this period have much to say of Caesar.

NAPOLÉON III. Histoire de Jules César. Paris and New York, 1865, 1866.

(2 vols. and atlas, the latter especially of the greatest value.)

HOLMES, T. R. Caesar's Conquest of Gaul. London, 1899.

(Invaluable for the ethnology and geography of Gaul in Caesar's time.)

Among many English and German editions of the Gallic War may be mentioned:

- LONG, GEORGE. London, 1880.
 STOCK, ST. GEORGE. Oxford, 1898.
 PESKETT, A. G. Cambridge, 1878-'82.
 MOBERLY, C. E. Oxford, 1878.
 MEUSEL, H. Berlin, 1894.
 HOLDER, A. Tübingen, 1882.
 KRANER, F. Berlin, 1886.
 DOBERENZ, A. Leipzig, 1886.
 RHEINHARD, H. Stuttgart, 1886.

LEXICONS

- MEUSEL. Lexicon Caesarianum, 2 vols. Berlin, 1887-'93.
 MENGE UND PREUSS. Lexicon Caesarianum. Leipzig, 1890.
 MERGUET. Lexicon zu den Schriften Cäsars und seiner Fortsetzer. Jena, 1886.

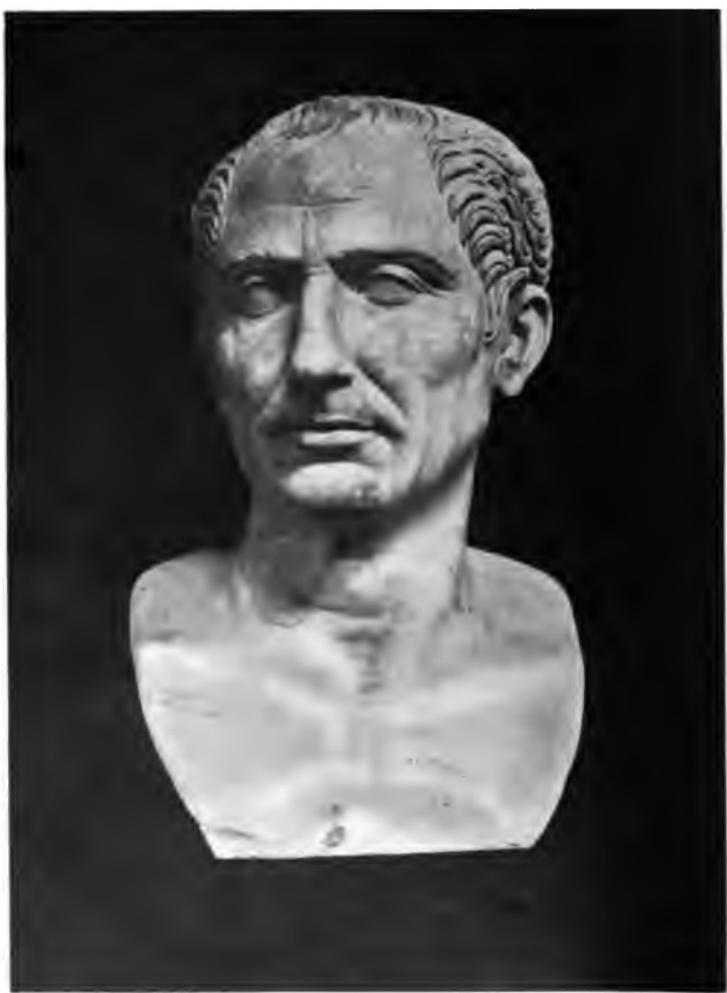
MISCELLANEOUS

- JUDSON, H. P. Caesar's Army. Boston, 1888.
 FRÖHLICH, F. Das Kriegswesen Cäsars. Zürich, 1891.
 STOFFEL, Col. E. G. H. C. Guerre de César et d'Arioviste. Paris, 1890.
 VON GÖLER, A. Cäsars Gallischer Krieg. Tübingen, 1880.
 RÜSTOW, F. W. Heerwesen und Kriegsführung Cäsars. Nordhausen, 1862.
 Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg. Stuttgart, 1868.
 JAL, A. La Flotte de César. Paris, 1861.
 OEHLER, R. Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico. Leipzig, 1890.
 DESJARDINS, E. E. A. Géographie historique et administrative de la Gaule romaine. Paris, 1876-'93.

READING COURSES

It is usual to read the first four books of the Gallic War. Some will prefer to select from the seven books the more interesting portions of the story. The following table will help one to choose portions equal in amount to the first four books, and to vary the selections from time to time:

In this edition the first four books amount to	103 pages
✓ General description of Gaul, I, 1	1 page
✓ Campaign against the Helvetii, I, 2-29	18 pages
Campaign against Ariovistus, I, 30-54	20 pages
✓ War against the Belgian confederacy, II, 1-35	21 pages
Campaign against the Veneti, III, 7-16	6 pages
Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and first invasion of Germany, IV, 1-19	12 pages
First invasion of Britain, IV, 20-36	10 pages
Second invasion of Britain, V, 1-23	15 pages
Revolt of Ambiorix, V, 24-53	19 pages
Second invasion of Germany, and customs of the Gauls and Germans, VI, 9-29	12 pages
Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, VII, 1-15	10 pages
Siege and destruction of Avaricum, VII, 16-30	9 pages
Siege of Alesia, VII, 31-60	15 pages
	168 pages
The seven books amount to	226 pages



THE BUST OF CAESAR IN THE MUSEUM AT NAPLES.

C. IULII CAESARIS BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS.

THE CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETIANS AND ARIO-
VISTUS, B. C. 58.

The nations of Gaul. Their characters and territories.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārūns abānt
incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam q̄. Resumē
linguā Celte, nostrā Galli appellantur. Trīnū
linguā, institūtis, lēgib⁹ inter sē differeunt. Galli⁹
ab Aquitāni⁹ Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis⁹ Matrona et
Sēquana dividit.

Hōi⁹ suntimē tertissim⁹ sunt Belgae⁹, quod a cult⁹ atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissime
absunt minimēque ad eōs mercatōrēs saepe coīfīneant
atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertineant, im-
portant; proximique sunt Germāni⁹, qui trans Rhēnum
incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā
dē causā Helvēti⁹ quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtute pre-
cēdunt, quod ferē cotidiāni⁹ proeliis cum Germāni⁹
contendunt, cum aut suī finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsi
in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,
initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumna
flūmine, Oceānō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab

Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquī-
5 tānia ā Garumna flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispāniām, pertinet, spec-
tat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Ovid: persuades the Helvetians to migrate into Gaul.

2 Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, [et] M. Pisōne cōn-
20 sulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nō-
bilitatis fecit et cīvitāti persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis
cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent: perfacile esse, cum vir-
tute omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī.
Id hoc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā
Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmī Rhēnō
lātissimō; que altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiū ā Ger-
mānnīs cīvilit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō,
qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertīā lacū Lē-
manī; et flūmī Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram
alī Helvētiū dīvidit.

Ille rōbus fīebat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et
vīnū faciē sīnitimī bellum īferre possent; quā ex
parte vīmēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiē-
bantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō
gloria bellū atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre
arbitriū erat, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum
ccxi in longitūdinem clxxx patēbant.

3. His velitis adhuc etiam in cunctis per-
misi constituerunt. — — — — —

nērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māxi-mās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximis cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. [Ad eās rēs cōficiendās] Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is [sibi] lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Cästicō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquaniā multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō; frātri Dīviciācī, qui eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētiī possēnt; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc orātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmīssimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

His trial, escape, and death.

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōri- 4 bus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cīmārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdiciū omnem suam familiā, ad hominū mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque 30

suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incītāta arniī iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Ōrgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

- 4 *The Helvetians burn their homes. They are joined by other tribes*
- 5 Post ēius mortem nihilō-minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.
- 10 Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, op̄pida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs 15 ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō effere iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcisque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, qui trāns 20 Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

Of two routes they choose the one through the Province.

- 6 Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre posse: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et 25 difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allo-

brogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluuit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsitūr.

Extrēmū oppidū Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogib⁹ sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, 5 quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnībus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convenient. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr.; 10 L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

Caesar hurries to Geneva. They ask his permission. He gives an evasive answer.

Caesari cum id nūntiātūm esset eōs prōvinciam 7 nostrām iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae 15 tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitūm numerūm imperat, —erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna,—pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūiūs lēgātiōnis Nammēiūs 20 et Verucloetius p̄rincipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūlō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūl-lum; rogārē, ut ēius voluntātē id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsu- 25 lem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultātē per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō

existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. April. reverterentur.

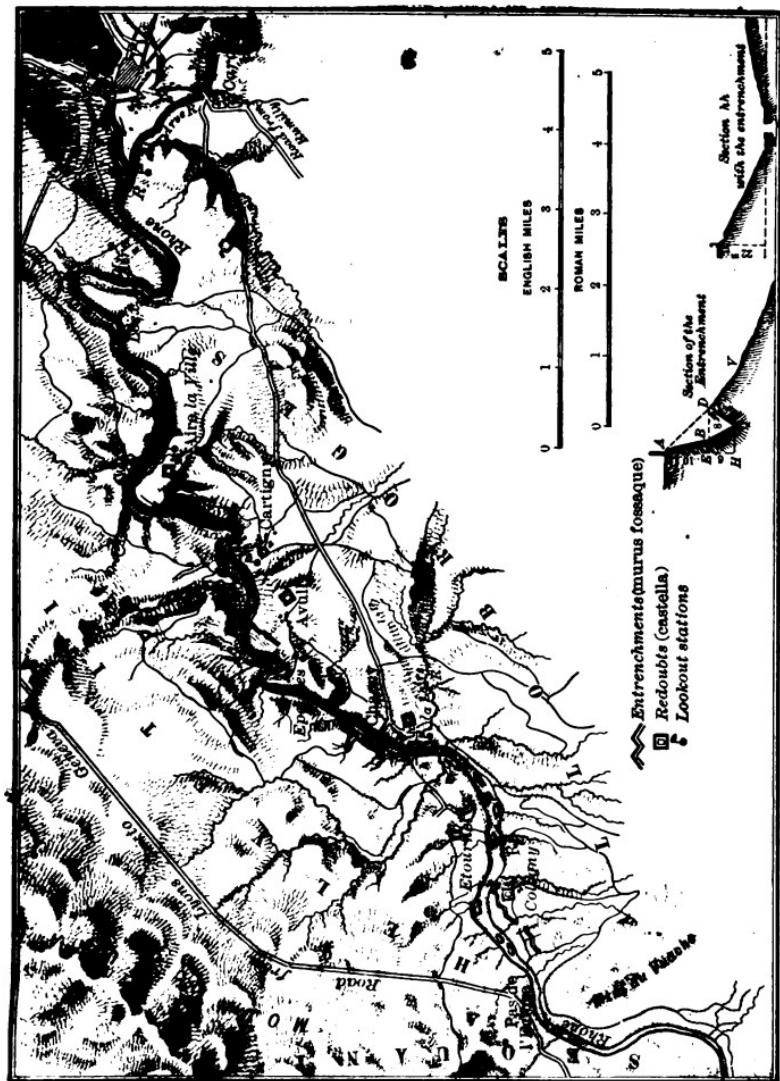
He stops their progress by fortifications along the Rhone.

- 8 Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum īfluit, ad montem Iūram, qui finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, mīlia pas-
suum xviiiī mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim
10 fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō |praeſidia dis-
pōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō
trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit,
et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō
15 populī Rōmānī posse īter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, et
sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Hel-
vētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complū-
ribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō
flūminis erat, nōn jūnquam interdiū, saepius noctū,
20 sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīli-
tum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstītērunt.

They are allowed to proceed through the land of the Sequani.

- 9 Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs
invītīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum
suā sponte persuādērē nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dum-
25 norīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sē-
quanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne
apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat et Helvētiīs erat
amicus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātri-
mōniūm dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs



THE RHÔNE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE.

rébus studébat et quam plúrimas civitátes suó benefício habére obstrictás volébat. Itaque rem suscipit et à Séquanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvétios ire patientur, obsidésque uti inter sésé dent perfici: Séquani, nē itinere Helvétios prohibeant, Helvétii, ut sine maleficio et iniuriā tránseant.

Caesar gets reinforcements, and crosses the Rhone.

Caesar nūntiātur Helvétii esse in animo per agrum 10
Séquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē à Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat 10
māgnō cum periculō Prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus māximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitionī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā māgnis itineribus con- 15
tendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Grāiocelī et Caturīges locis superiōribus oc- 20
cupatīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēnum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogib⁹ in Segusiāvōs exerci- 25
tum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum p̄imī.

The Haedui and other tribes ask his aid against the Helvetians.

Helvétii iam per angustiās et finēs Séquanōrum 11
suās cōpiās trādūixerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs per-

venerant eorumque agrōs populabantur. Haedui cum sē suaque ab eis defendere nōn possent, lēgātōs Cae-sarem mittunt rogātūm auxiliū: Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostri agri vastārī, liberī [eōrum] in servitū tem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore [Haedui] Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopu-lātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre.

Item Allobroges, qui trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiō-nēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dē-mōnstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Cāesar nōn exspectandū sibi statuit, dum, omnībus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

He destroys one division of the Helvetians at the Saône.

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sē-quānōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctis trānsibant.

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs copiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsie-rat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvi-tās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum mēthoriā

L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum
magistratū, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īsignem
populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps
dīsolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūbli-
cātū, sed etiam prīvatās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius
Pīsonis avum, L. Pīsonem lēgātū, Tigurīnī
cōsulem interfēciō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

A Helvetian embassy visits Caesar.

Hic pīoeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut 13
cōsulem posset, pontem in Arari faciendum cūrat 10
aque illa exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō ēius
adversarii cōmōti, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aeger-
tū cōfederant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē
fēcesserant. Tellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius
lēgātū Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux 15
Pīsōnem fuerat.

... Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populū Rō-
mānū cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs
aliquātū futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituis-
set, cōpasse voluisse; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, 20
remīnisceretur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī
cīvitatis virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō
caecum adortus esset, cum eī, qui flūmen trānsī-
stūtū auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem
magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspī-
ceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut
virtute contendenter, quam dolō aut īnsidiīs
contenderent. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cō-
sulatū ex calamitatē populī Rōmānī et interneciōne
cōsulatū nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet. 25
30

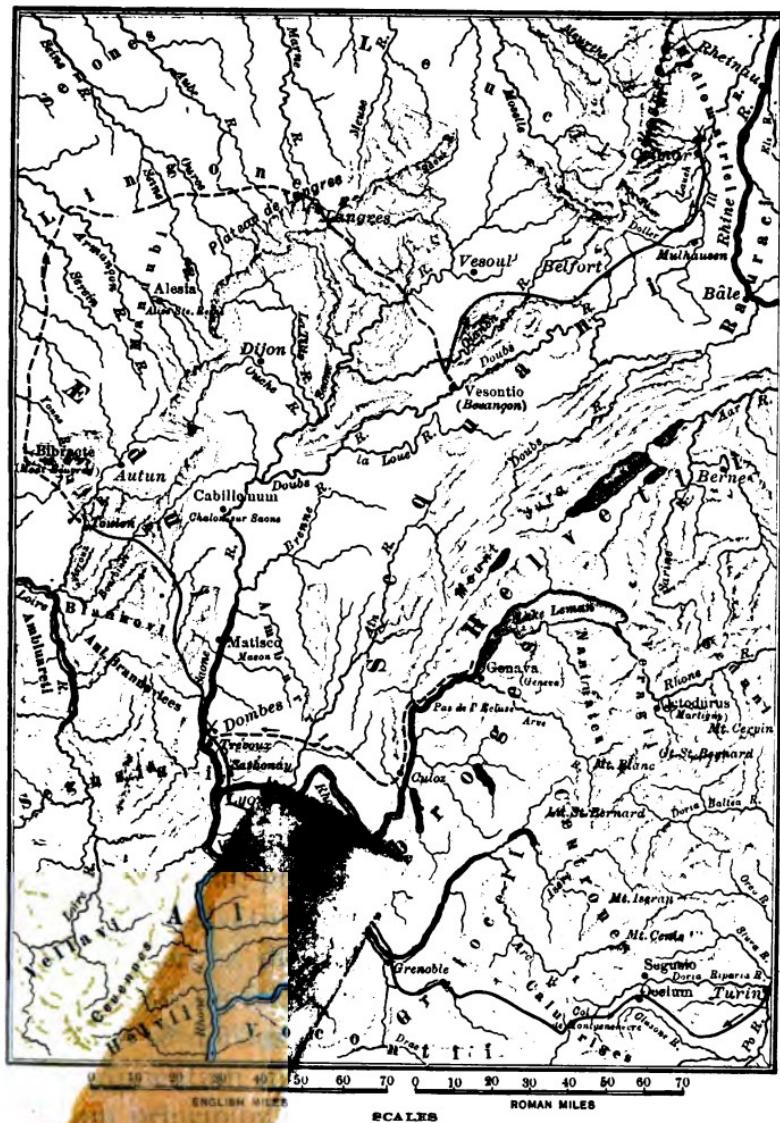
Caesar's reply is unsatisfactory.

- 14 His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitatiōnis dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī H. memorāssent, memorīa tenēret, atque eō sī
quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidis.
5 alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōnscius fuisse, nōn fūcavēre, sed eō dēceptum, quod neque cōm̄ intellegereret, quārē timēret, neque sine causa putāret. Quōd sī veteris contumēliae obnum etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō
10 per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāsserām dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā lenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē imp̄ intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre.
15 enim deōs immortālēs, quōd gravius hominēs mūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō sceleris cīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs rem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae
20 factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriā sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobroges faciant sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōnū stitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, 25 ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem, spōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetians march on, followed by Caesar.

- 15 Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerū miliiū, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Ha-



THE CAMPAIGN OF 58 B. C.

eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, qui videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī alienō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nos-
trīs cadunt. 5

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equi-
tibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audā-
cius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine
proeliō nostrōs lacessere coēperunt. Caesar suōs ā
proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hos-
tem rapīnīs [pābulātiōnībus] populātiōnībusque pro-
hibēre. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter
novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum pīnum nōn
amplius quīnīs aut sēnis mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Haeduī, neglecting to furnish grain, are upbraided by Caesar.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod 16
essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frī-
gora [quod Gallia sub septentriōnībus, ut ante dictum
est, posita est,] nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra
nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia sup-
petēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvi-
bus subvēxerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter
ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlē-
bat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōferrī, compor-
tārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īstāre, quō 25
diē frūmentum mīlitibus metīrī oportēret, convocātīs
eōrum pīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs
habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magis-
trātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī,
qui creātūr annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet po- 30

testātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur, prae-
sertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus
5 bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēsti-
tūtus, queritur.

The Haedui are not all loyal to the Romans.

17 Tum dēnum Liscus ūrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs, quō-
rum auctōritas apud plēbem plūrimū valeat, quī pri-
10 vātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēdi-
tiōsā atque improbā ūrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre,
nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī
iam p̄incipātūm Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallō-
rum quam Rōmānōrum imperia preferre; neque dubi-
15 tāre dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī,
ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ērep-
tūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castrīs ge-
rantur hostibus ēnūntiārī, hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse.
Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesari
20 ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fē-
cerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Treachery of Dumnorix revealed.

18 Caesar hāc ūrātiōne Lisci, Dumnorīgēm, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus prae-
sentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dī-
25 mittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in
conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra:
Ipsum esse Dumnorīgēm, summā audāciā, māgnā apud
plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum

novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente, contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; mānum 5 numerum equitātū suō sumptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, nequē sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem 10 habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adsinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Cae- sarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grā- 15 tiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rō- mānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proe- 20 lium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset fac- tum, initium [ēius] fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus — nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat —; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum. 25

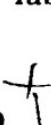
Caesar consults Diviciacus about punishing Dumnorix.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspicōnēs cer- 19 tissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvi- tatis, sed etiam īscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā ma- 30

gistrātū Haeduōrum accusārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīvi-
 5 ciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium,
 summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam,
 temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam, nē ēius suppliciō Dīvi-
 ciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam
 quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et,
 10 cotidiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Trou-
 cillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum,
 cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō
 conloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente
 in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et
 15 ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit;
 petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel
 ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat vel cīvitātem statuere
 iubeat.

Dumnorix is pardoned for Diviciacus's sake.

20  Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem com-
 plexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem sta-
 tueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō
 plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse
 grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille mini-
 mum propter adulēscētiam posset, per sē crēvisset;
 25 quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grā-
 tiām, sed paene ad perniciēm suam ūterētur. Sēsē
 tamē et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī com-
 movērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset,
 cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nē-
 30 minem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā

ex rē futūrum, utī tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverte-rentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōnsolātūs rogat, fīnem ūrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiām esse ostendit, 5 utī et reī pūblicae iniūriām et suum dolōrem, ēius volūntātī āc precibus, condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prō-pōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspī- 10 cōnōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātri condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, qui-buscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar prepares to attack the Helvetians.

Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs 21 sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs 15 octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cōgnōserent, mīsit. Renūntiātūm est facilem esse. Dē tertīā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātūm prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibūs, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere 20 iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātūmque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur et L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cōexplorā- 25 tōribus praemittitur.

The battle is delayed by the error of a Roman.

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnum tur, ipse ab hostiū castrīs nōn longius mīlia, 12 gentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā

comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hosti-
bus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque īsignibus cōg-
nōisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem sub-
dūcit, aciem īstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum
ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae
prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tem-
pore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs
exspectābat proeliōque abstinentēbat. Multō dēnique
diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs
tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium ti-
mōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi re-
nūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō, hostēs
sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra
pōnit.

Caesar, turning toward Bibracte, is followed by the Helvetians.

23 Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīdūm supererat,
cum exercituī frūmentum metīrī oportēret, et quod ā
Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiō-
sissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat,
reī frūmentāiae prōspiciendum exīstīmāvit; itaque iter
ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rē
per fugitiūs L. Aemilī, decuriōniſ equitum Gallō-
rum, hostiūs nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre
perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstīmārent, eō
magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proe-
fūrūs nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāiā
intendēdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōsiliō atque
versō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īsequī
coepērunt.



EXPLANATION.

- a.....Summit of hill of Armeey
- b.....Entrenchment for protection of baggage
- cc.....Four Legions in line of battle
- dd.....Helvetti
- d'd'.....Helvetti forced to retreat to a hill
- ff.....Boii & Tulingi
- gg.....Roman 3rd line facing Boii & Tulingi
- hh.....Helvetti renewing attack
-Roman line of march
-Helvetician line of march

SCALES

0 500 1000 - 2000 3000

0 1 2 3 4 5
SCALE OF FEET
KILOMETRES

DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII.

Both armies prepare for battle.

Postquam id animum-advertisit, cōpiās suās Caesar **24** in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, qui sus-tinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īstrūxit legiōnum quattuor ve-terānārum; [ita utī suprā, sed] in summō iugō duās **5** legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā] sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferrī et eum ab eīs, qui in superiōre aciē cō-stiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis **10** carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostrā aciem successērunt.

The battle.

Caesar prīmū suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū **25** remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae **15** tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsīt. Militēs ē locō superiōre pīlis missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs im-petum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat im-pedimentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlō- **20** rum trānsfixīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō prae-optārent scūtū manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūg-nāre. **25**

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem-referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs Bōī et Tulingī, qui hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen

hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenire; et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coēperunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs āc submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Rout of the Helvetians. Retreat of the survivors.

26 Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque āriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, 10 alterī sē, ut cooperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, 15 proptereā quod prō vällō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla cōiciēbant, et nōn nūlli inter carrōs raedāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi 20 Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt [nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō]; in finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera 25 mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī [trīduum morātī] eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si iūvīsset, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum 30 omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

They offer to surrender.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē 27 dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Qui cūm eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciter que locūtī flentēs pācem petīsset atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, 5 pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, [nocte intermissā] circiter hominum mīlia vi ēius pāgī, qui Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs sup- 10 pliciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occul-tāri aut omnīnō ignōrāri posse existimārent, pīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī, ad Rhēnum finēs- que Germānōrum contendērunt. 15

They are required to return to their own country.

Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant, 28 hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs 20 in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogībus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cō-piam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incende-rant, restituere iussit. 25

Id ēā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitā-tem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī

Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs pe-tentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgniti, ut in finibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertā-
5 tisque condiciōnem, atq̄ue ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Number of the Helvetians before and after the expedition.

- 29 In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litte-rīs Graecīs cōflectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōflecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item 10 sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. [Quārum omnium rērum] summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Lato-brīgōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. 15 Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā-verat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

Caesar receives the congratulations of the Gallic chiefs, who ask for a general council.

- 30 Bellō Helvētiōrum cōflectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lē-gātī, prīcipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-20 vēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū [terrae] Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; proptereā quod eō cōsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī 25 reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īferrent imperiō-que potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac

fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Cāesaris voluntātē facere licēret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre-iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sanxērunt.

They describe the encroachments of the Germans, and beg Caesar to defend Gaul against Ariovistus.

Eō conciliō dīmissō idem pīncipēs cīvitātum, quī 31 ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, (nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiā-rentur,) quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, prop̄terā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius pīncipātum 20 tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantō-pere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercē arcesserentur. Hōrum pīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cō- 25 piās Gallōrum hominēs ferī āc barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem

pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīssisse. ✓ Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuis-
 5 sent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs ^{esse} neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implorātūrōs ^{esse} neque recūsatūrōs, ^{esse} quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.
 10 Únum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.
 15 Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī; quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupā-
 20 visset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquānōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harū-
 dum mīlia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōferendum
 25 esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō neque hanc cō-
 suētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proe-
 liō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam,
 superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī
 30 cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cru-
 ciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtūm aut ad vo-
 luntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irā-

cundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sē- 5 dēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ario-vistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus qui apudeum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Cae-sarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī 10 victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ario-vistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

Diviciacus describes the hopeless condition of the Sequani.

Hāc ḍrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs, quī ade- 32 rānt, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē- 15 runt. Animadvertisit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquānōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem tristitiā tacitī permanēre. 20 Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, ab- 25 sentisque Ario-vistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram ades-set, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquānis vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ario-vistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in po-testātē ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī. 30

Why Caesar opposed Ariovistus.

- 33** His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum.
- 5** Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in p̄imīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumérō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat
- 10** Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum
15 trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venire populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs āc barbarōs temperatūrōs existimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent
20 atque inde in Ītaliā contendērēt [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret]; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrentū putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi sp̄iritūs, tantam arrogātiā sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur. ✕

↓ *Invited by Caesar to an interview, Ariovistus declines.*

- 34** Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum me-dium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare

opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commētū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

Caesar sends envoys with his demands.

His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis iterum ad eum 35 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō, rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendū sibi et cōgnōscendū putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret pīnum, nē quam multitūdinem hominū amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliā trādūceret; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, redderet Sēquānīsque permitteret ut quōs illi habērent, voluntātē ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellū īferret.

Sī [id] ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus senātū cēnsuisset, utī, quīcumque Galliā pīvinciam obtinēret, quod cōmodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

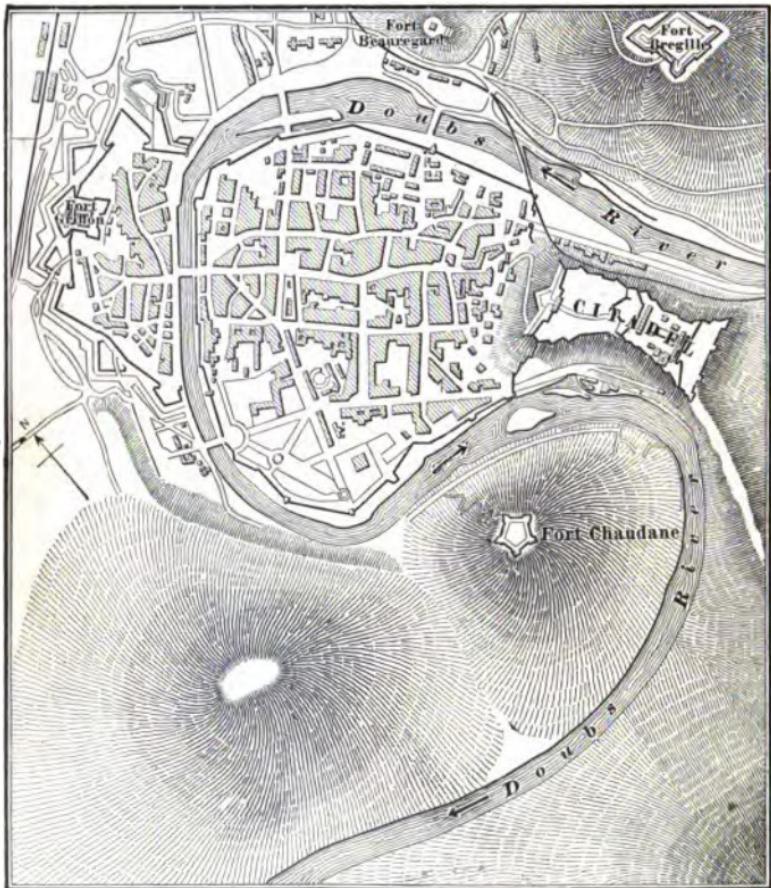
Ariovistus replies haughtily.

- 36 Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent eīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre 5 cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse 10 factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id 15 nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūtiāret sē Hae- duōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrede- rētur: intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitā- 20 tissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiiii tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

Cæsar marches rapidly forward,

- 37 Haec eōdem tempore Cæsari mandāta referēban- tur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Hae- duī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam 25 trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnaren- tur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Qui-



BESANÇON, THE ANCIENT VESONTIO.

bus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparatā māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum con- 5 tendit.

And reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei 38 Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquānōrum, contendere [trīduīque viam ā suīs finibus prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret māgnopere sibi praecavendū Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene 15 tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spātium, quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingent. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnis nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupatōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.⁴

Panic of the Roman soldiers.

Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāiae 39 commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nos- 25 trōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant, — saepenumero sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum

quidem atque aciem oculorum dīcēbant ferre p̄tuisse,
— tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit,
ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque pertur-
bāret. Hīc p̄imum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitūm, p̄ae-
fectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amicītiae causā Caesarem
secūtī nōn māgnūm in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant;
quōrum aliū aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficīs-
cendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius vo-
luntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut
timōris suspiciōnem vītārent, remanēban̄t. Hī neque
vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre pote-
rant; abditī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēban-
tur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne perīculūm mi-
serābantur. [Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnā-
bantur.]

Hōrum vōcībus āc timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī
māgnūm in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēs-
que quīque equitātuī p̄aeerant, perturbābantur. Quī
sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē
hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinē
silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovis-
tūm, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē suppor-
tārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesari
nūntiābant, cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferrī iussisset,
nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timō-
rem sīgna lātūrōs.

Caesar addresses his men, makes light of their fears, and declares his intention of advancing immediately.

40 Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō om-
niumque ordinū ad id cōsiliū adhibitīs centuriō-
nibus vehementer eōs incūsāvit: p̄imum quod aut

quam pars aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendā aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam adpetiisse: cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicaret? Sibi quidem persuādērī cōgnitīs suīs 5 postulatis atque aequitāte condicōnum perspectā eum neque statim neque populi Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quid sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset? quid tandem verērentur? Aut cūr dē suā virtūte sut dē ipsīs diligentia dēspērārent? Factum 10 eiūs horū periculum patrum nostrōrum memorīā, cum Cimbriis et Teutonīs a C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbatur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamē aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam a nobīs 15 accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habere in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armatōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum 20 sē pēmīmerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs sed iam in illōrum finib⁹, plērumque superārint; quī tamē parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitatē bellī 25 dēfatigātīs Gall⁹ Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fecisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs 30 locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut p̄ae-scribēre vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum
 5 Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevi tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn
 10 fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuis-
 15 set, repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam p̄imum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret,
 20 sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat māximē.

Courage is restored and the Romans advance.

41 Hāc ūratiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās
 25 bellī gerendī inlāta est; prīncepsque x legiō per tribū-nōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdi-cium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissi-mam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tri-būnīs mīlitum et p̄imōrum ordinum centuriōnibus
 30 ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam

dubitasse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdīcīum, sed imperatōris esse existimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlīum amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs 5 apertī exercitū dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitte-ret, ab exploratōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cō-piās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum IIII et xx abesse.

At Ariovistus's request a conference is held. Caesar's precautions against treachery.

Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad 42 eum mittit: Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrabātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnēgāsset, 15 ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spēm veniēbat prō suīs tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs 20 mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū ve-niret: aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat 25 neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētractīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis x [cui quam māximē cōfidēbat,] impōnere, ut

praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō es-
set, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn infridiculē quidam
ex militibus x legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset
Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriæ
5 locō x legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribēre.

Caesar uses conciliatory language, but repeats his demands.

43 Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus
satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā cas-
tris Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum,
ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam
10 equīs dēvēxerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōnstituit.
Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervallō cōnstitērunt.
Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē
dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. Ubi eō
ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in
15 eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus
esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima
missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs
hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum
neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habē-
20 ret, beneficiō āc liberālitàte suā āc senātūs ea praemia
cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae cau-
sae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent,
quae senātūs cōsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifica in
25 eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae prin-
cipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram
amīcitiam adpetīsset. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cō-
suētūdinem ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil
dēperdere, sed grātiā, dīgnitātē, honōre auctiōrēs vel-
30 let esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attu-

lissent, id eis ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Hae-
duīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īferret; obsidēs redderet;
sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere pos-
set, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur. 5

Ariovistus defiantly reasserts his claims.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, 44
dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhē-
num sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum
ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs do-
mum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā 10
ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntātē datōs;
stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs im-
pōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bel-
lum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē oppūgnan-
dum vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs 15
cōpiās ā sē tūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātās esse. Si
iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dē-
certāre; si pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō
recūsāre, quod suā voluntātē ad id tempus pependerint.
Amīcitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ḫrnāmentō et praeſidiō, 20
nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre atque sē hāc spē petīsse.
Si per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et
dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsā-
tūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam adpetierit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trā- 25
dūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae
causā facere; ēius reī testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogā-
tus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dē-
fenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum
Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum 30

populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs 5 impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse iniquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitūm esse rērum, ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Hae- 10 duōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā quem exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimēndī causā 15 habēre. Qui nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nō- bilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse fac- tūrum, — id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum 20 habēre, — quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiā ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ullō ēius labōre et perīculō cōflectūrum.

Caesar remains firm.

45 Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse 30 Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus

populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī anti-quissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdīcium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse 5 Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisse.

A treacherous attack by the Germans is baffled.

Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesārī nūntiā- 46 tum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōicerent. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit 10 suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ullō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsis hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam 15 in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā arrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsu's omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixi-set, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs conloquium dīrēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum est. 20

Ariovistus seizes two envoys of Caesar.

Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: 47 Velle sē dē eīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. 25

Conloquendī Caesārī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs cōicerent. Lēgātūm [ex suīs] sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et homini-

bus feris obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī filium, summā virtute et hūmānitāte adulēsentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat,
 5 et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, qui hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus, cōgnōserent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspēxisset, exercitū suō prae-
 10 sente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an specu-landī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus avoids battle. The German tactics.

48 Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum vi
 ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque qui ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs
 20 supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs v Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deēsset.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs
 25 continuuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant: Equitum mīlia erant vi, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proe-
 30 liīs versābantur; ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī

quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent. 5

Caesar moves his camp.

Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diū- 49
tiūs commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs DC ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in ar- 10
mīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs DC, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō cir-
citer hominum XVI mīlia expedīta cum omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mū-
nītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante 15
cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in cas-
tra māiōra redūxit.

Skirmishing. The Germans unwilling to fight before the full moon.

Proximō diē īstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque 50
cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prō-
gressus aciem īstrūxit hostibusque pūgnandī potestā-
tem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit,
circiter meridiē exercitū in castra redūxit. Tum dē-
mum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra 25
minōra oppūgnāret mīsit. Āriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperū pūgnātūm est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās

Ariovistus multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit.

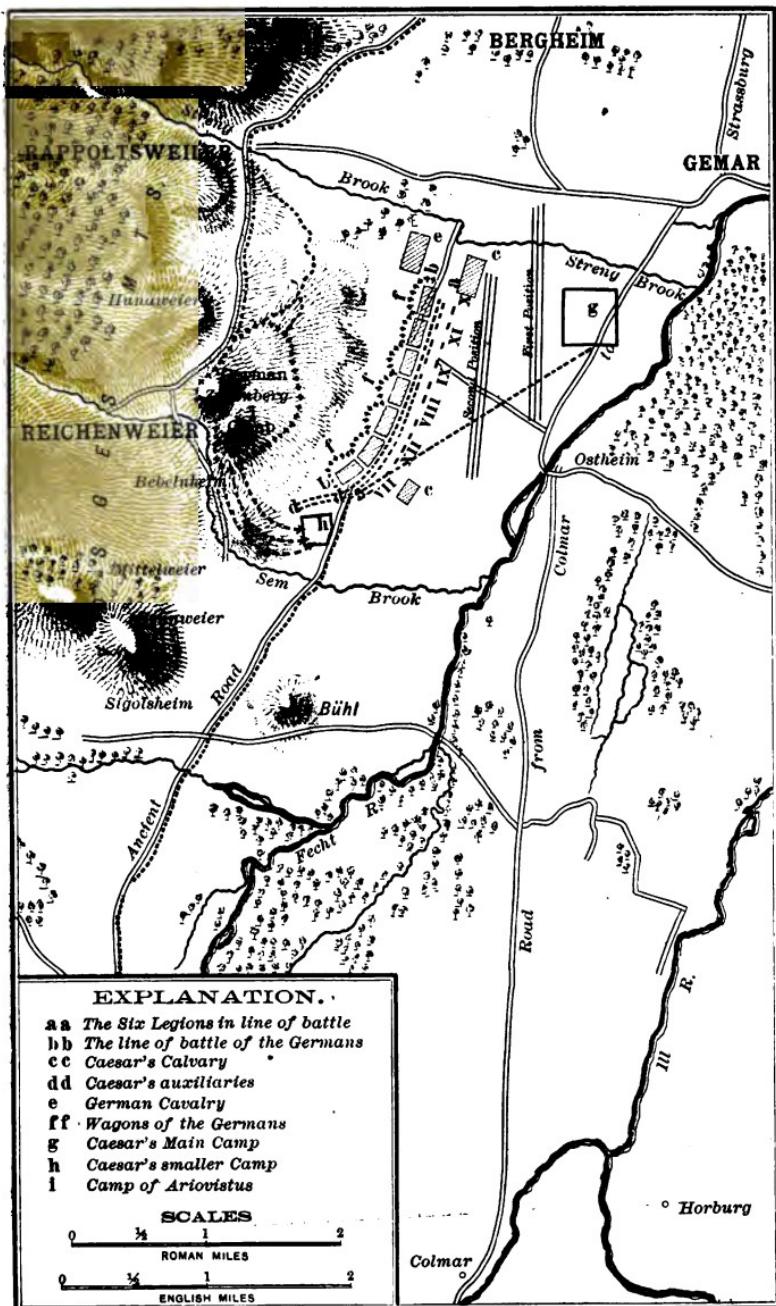
Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset, necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Caesar forces a general engagement.

51 Postridiē ēius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriis ūterētur; ipse 15 triplīcī īstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervallīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangiōnēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam 20 raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs, passī manibūs flentēs, implorābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Details of the battle.

52 Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et 25 quaestōrem praeſēcit, utī eōs testēs suaē quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Et ita nostrī āriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prō-



THE BATTLE WITH AARIVISTUS.

Digitized by Google

currerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coiciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectis pīlīs comminus gladiīs pūgnātūm est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga insilirent et scūta 5 manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostiū acīes ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam connecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, 10 quod expeditior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

Complete overthrow of the Germans. Recovery of the Roman envoys.

Ita proelium resitūtum est, atque omnēs hostes 53 terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad 15 flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter v pervenērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfīsi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repērērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōn- 20 secūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūixerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocīonis soror, quam in Galliā dūixerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit; duae filiae: hārum altera oc- 25 cīsa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitātū īsequēntem incidit. Quae quidem rēs

Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calamitāte 5 dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolūmem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus 10 est.

The army goes into winter quarters, Caesar to Cisalpine Gaul.

- 54 Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, qui ad rīpās Rhēni vēnerant, domum revertī coēpērunt; quōs Ubiī, qui proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt: īsecūtī māgnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt.
 15 Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōflectīs mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum prae posuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

LIBER. SECUNDUS.

WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERATION, B. C. 57.

All the Belgian tribes conspire against the Romans.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia [in hibernis ita uti suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōr adferēbantur litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēb omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem di erāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre ob dēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causā p̄imūm, quod verērentur, nē omni pācātā Gallia ad e exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nō nullis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim qui, ut Germān diūtius in Gallia versāri nōluerant, ita populī Rōmā exercitūm hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Gallia m lestē ferēbant, partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte anim novīs imperiis studēbant; ab nōn nullis etiam, quod in Gallia ā potentiōribus atque eīs qui ad condūcendō hominēs facultatēs habēbant vulgō régna occupābatur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi poterant.

Caesar marches quickly into their country.

Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriore Gallia novās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam qui dēdūceret Q. Pedi

um lēgātūm mīsit. Ipse, cum pīmūm pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitūm vēnit. Dat negōtiūm Senonibus reliquīsque Gallis quī fīnitī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs-
5 rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitūm in ūnum locūm condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandū nōn exīstīmāvit, quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā castra movet diēbusque circiter xv ad finēs Belgārum per-venit.

Submission of the Remi.

3 Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnīum opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eūm lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, pīmōs cīvitātīs, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent: Sē suaque omnia in fidē atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittefē; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse,
15 Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnīum furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgībus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātūm cum ipsīs habeant,
20 25 dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.

The origin and forces of the Belgae as reported by the Remi.

4 Cum ab eīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnīdīsse Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse,

sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militāri sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte 10 et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō élēcta mīlia LX tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā 15 etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgeni Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamquē summam tōtius bellī or̄nūm voluntāte dēferrī; oppida 20 habēre numerō XII, pollicēri mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv mīlia, Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs 25 xviii mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Cae-mānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri ad XL mīlia.

Caesar marches to the Aisne.

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne 5 prosecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenire prīnci- 30 pumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae

omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvi-ciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tem-pore cōfligendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūixerint et eōrum agrōs populārī cooperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venire [vīdit] neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpis flū-minis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praeſidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Šabīnum lēgātūm cum sex cohortibus relinquīt; castra in altitūdinē pedum XIII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax.

6 Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere māgnō im-petū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sus-tentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum op-pūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine homi-nūm tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testū-dine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō

lapidēs āc tēla cōicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tūm oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Cae-sarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi sūbsidium 5 sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn possē.

Caesar relieves Bibrax. The Remi advance against his camp.

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus quī 7 nūntiī ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium 10 prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostib⁹ eādem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiisque quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad cas-tra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus 15 passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignib⁹ sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum VIII in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar strengthens his intrenchments.

Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et 8 propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō superse-dēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestrībus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, peri-clitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēdītus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īstrūctā occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dē-iectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulā-

tim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum cccc et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īstrūxisset,
 5 hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenire possent. Hoc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō ~~opus~~ esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās vī legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs
 10 item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īstrūxērunt.

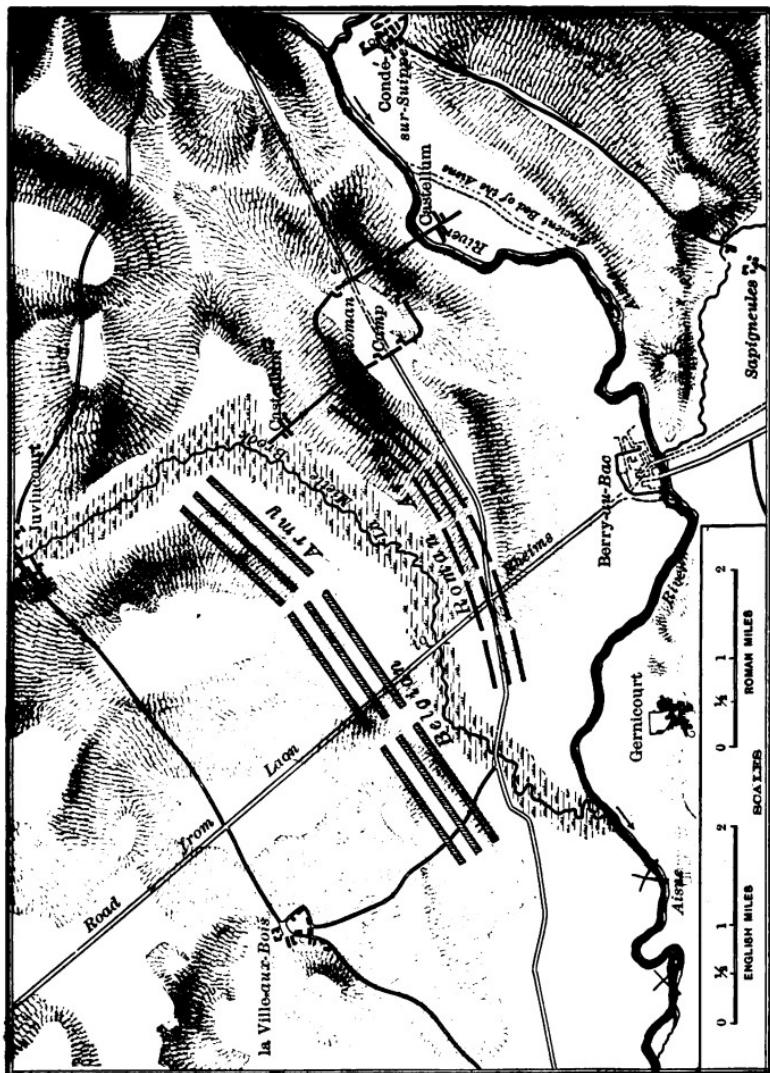
The Belgae try to cross the Aisne and attack Caesar's rear.

9 Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. In
 15 terim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōrē equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est.
 20 Ibi vadīs repertī partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum geren-
 25 dum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

They are defeated and disperse.

10 Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flū-

THE BATTLE ON THE AISNE.



mine adgressi māgnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdinē tēlōrum reppulērunt, p̄mōsque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine 5 trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nos-trōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocatō cōstituērunt optimum esse do-mum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in finēs pri- 10 mum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfen-dendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frū-mentāiae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum 15 atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

Great slaughter of the Belgae on their retreat.

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū 11 āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque im- 20 periō, cum sibi quisque p̄imum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō viderētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum 25 equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōfir-mātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui no-vissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit.

Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs prae-fēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus 30

subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs abortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extrēmō āgmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clamōre perturbatīs ordinib⁹ omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Itā sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfecērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Surrender of the Suessiones.

12 Postridiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperen, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere [cōflectō] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōrib⁹ esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūri-que altitūdinem paucis dēfendantibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnitīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneās ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

The Bellovaci also submit.

13 Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīs Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs armisque omnibus ex

oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Qui cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi 5 manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venire neque contrā populū Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre 10 pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Intercession of Diviciacus for the Bellovaci.

Prō his Dīviciācus—nam post discessum Belgārum 14 dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eūm reverterat—facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīcipib⁹s, 15 quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcissem⁹ et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Qui ēius cōsiliī prīcipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitāti intulissent, in Britanniam 20 prōfūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint. 25

The Ambiani submit to Caesar. He learns about the Nervii.

Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā 15 sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, DC obsidēs

poposcit. His trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Eōrum finēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā 5 mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūl-lum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad luxūriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanquēscere animōs [eōrum] et remittī virtūtem exīstīmārent; esse hominēs ferōs māg-10 naeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ullam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

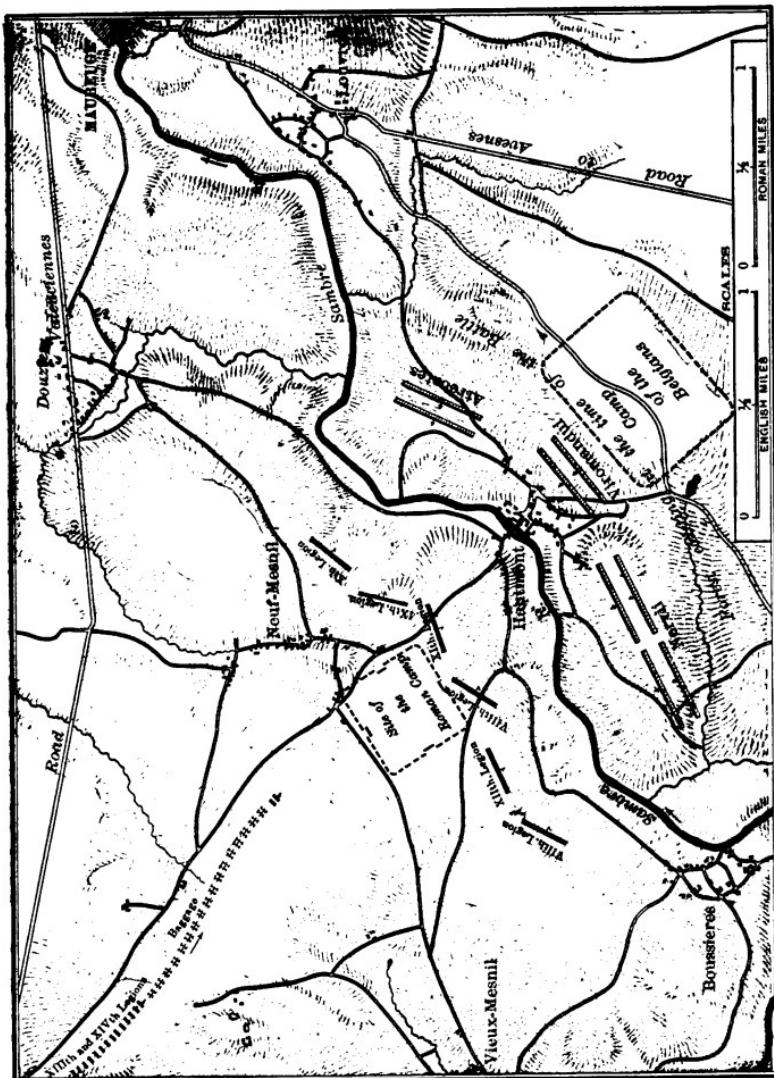
The Nervii await Caesar beyond the Sambre.

16 Cum per eōrum finēs trīdūm iter fēcisset, inveniē-15 bat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs non amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspec-tāre ūnā cum Atrebātībus et Viromanduīs, fīnitīmīs suīs — nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī 20 fortūnam experīrentur — ; exspectārī etiam ab eīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum cōniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

They decide to attack him while encamping.

17 Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīcīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Cae-sarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine

THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVI.



itineris nostri exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervenērunt, atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numerū intercedere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum pīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatiū abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil posse, —neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs, —quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsis atque inflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinē rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentībusque interiectīs effēcerant, ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentūm praeberērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidēm posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostri impedīrētur, nōn omit-tendum sibi cōsilium Nerviī existimāvērunt. 20

Character of the ground.

Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adver-sus huic et contrāriūs, passūs circiter cc infimus aper-tus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundūm flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitū vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium. 30

Fierce attack of the Nervii and confusion of the Romans.

10 Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbatur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs 5 expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostium 10 equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs vi quae pri- 15 mae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coēperunt.

Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis qui in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ūrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāve- 20 rant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcerunt. Hīs facile pulsīs āc prōturbātīs, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem 25 autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, qui in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

Discipline of the Romans in the crisis.

20 Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, [quod erat īsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret,] sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revo-

candī mīlitēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnū dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, 5 scientia atque ūsus mīlitū, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnib⁹ singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī prop̄ 10 ter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

Cæsar's speech to the Tenth Legion.

Cæsar necessāriis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs 21 mīlitēs quam [in] partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad 15 legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiore ūrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suaे p̄istinae virtūtis memoriā retainērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiūmque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī 20 committendī sīgnū dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiūmque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque 25 tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quām quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quāeque p̄ima sīgna cōnspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Difficulties of the battle.

22 Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectus-
que collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris
ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs
aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque
5 dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs p̄-
spectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī¹
neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque
ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque
in tantā rērum iniquitatē fortūnae quoque ēventūs
10 variī sequēbantur.

Two legions drive the Atrebates into the river; two rout the Viromandui; the Nervii gain Caesar's camp.

23 Legiōnis viii et x mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē
cōstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū āc lassitudine exani-
mātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs.—nam hīs
ea pars obvēnerat—celeriter ex locō superiōre in
15 flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī
gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impēdītam interfēce-
runt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in
locum iniquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs re-
dintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in
20 parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, xi et viii, prōfligātīs
Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō su-
periōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtis
ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in
dextrō cornū legiō xii et nōn māgnō ab eā intervällō
25 VII cōstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōfertissimō agmine
duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad
eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō la-
tere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum
locum petere coepit.

*The situation is alarming, and the Treveri in a panic
desert Caesar.*

Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae **24** peditēs, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā **5** portā āc summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praeципitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriē- **10** bātur, aliique aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Treverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, qui auxiliī causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra [nostra] complērī, **15** legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipatōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs **20** civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar places himself at the head of his troops.

Caesar ab x legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum **25** cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs xii legiōnis cōfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quartae cohortis **25** omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō

P. Sextiō Bāculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōflectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiorēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere āc tēla vītāre, hostēs neque
ā fronte (ex inferiore locō subeuntēs) intermittere et ab utrōque latere īstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ullum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimis [ūni] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit, ceni-
turiōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus
operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostiūm impetus tardātus est.

Labienus, after taking the enemy's camp, sends reinforcements to Caesar.

26 Caesar, cum vii legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa-
20 sīgna in hostēs īferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coēperunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fu-
25 erant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostiūm potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nos-
trīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus x legiōnem subsidiō
nostrīs mīsit. Qui cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā
30 quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra

et legionēs et imperātor versāretur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

This causes a turn in the tide of battle.

Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta **27** ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfēctī prōcubuisserent, scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perter- 5 ritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurre- rent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē- rent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legionāriīs mili- bus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salū- tis tantam virtūtem praestiterunt ut, cum prīmī eō- 10 rum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacer- vātīs cadāveribus, qui supereressent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs cōicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam, tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret **15** ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altis- simās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii are routed and most of them killed.

Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneциōnem gente **28** āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā 20 cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōri- bus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōsēnsū lēgātōs, ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā **25** cīvitātis calamitātē, ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex homi- num mīlibus LX vix ad D, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē

cōservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Atuatuci withdraw into a stronghold.

29 Atuatuci, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus 5 cōpiis auxiliō Nerviis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnc̄tis oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā 10 ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplīcī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxā et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prō- 15 vinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiam ex suīs āc praesidūm vi mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitū multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās 20 bellū īferrent, aliās inlātūm dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They laugh at the siege works of the Romans.

30 Āc pīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum 25 nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv mīliū crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, pīmū īnridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praeſertim hominēs tantulæ statūrae, — nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est, — tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse 5 conlocāre cōfiderent?

At length in alarm they offer to surrender.

Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, 31 novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caeſarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstīmāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum 10 gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Únum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audīrent, statuisset Atuatucoſ esse cōser- 15 vandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suaे virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā popu- 20 lō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfici, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēſſent.

They treacherously retain part of their arms.

Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine 32 suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitatēm cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condicōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. 25 Sē id, quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum fīnitimīſque imperātūrum nē quam dēdītīiſ populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperāren- tur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē

mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, 5 portis patēfactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsi.

Making a sally, they are repulsed with great loss. Over 50,000 are sold as slaves.

33 Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quām noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc- 10 tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nos- 15 trās mūnitōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis re- pente ex oppidō ēruptiōnēm fēcerunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus sīg- nificatiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostib⁹ ita āriter est ut ā virīs 20 fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vällō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum milibus IIII reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postridiē ēius diēi refrāctis portis, cum iam dēfende- 25 ret nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnēm ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

Crassus subdues several tribes along the coast.

Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō quem cum legiōne ūnā **34** mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rō- 5 mānī esse redāctās.

The army goes into winter quarters. Thanksgiving at Rome for Caesar's victories.

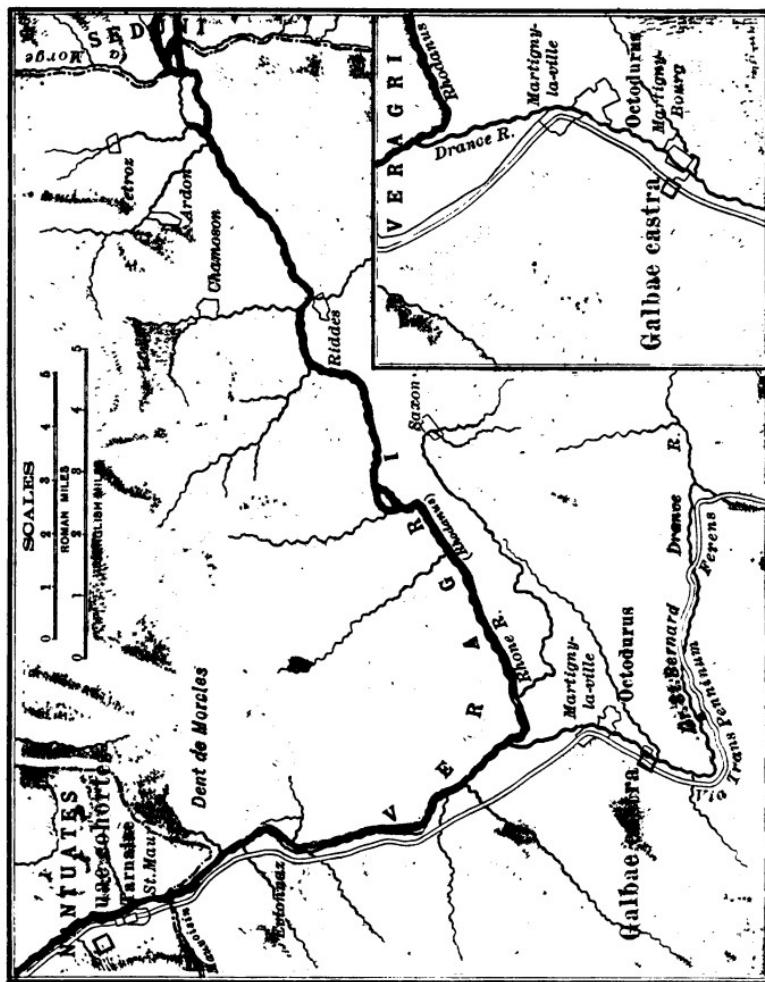
Hīs rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius **35** bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōni- bus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās **10** pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliām Īlyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Ītaliām pro- **15** fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum **xv** supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

LIBER TERTIUS.

CAESAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN; OPERATIONS IN VARIOUS PARTS OF GAUL, B. C. 56.

Galba is set to guard the passes of the Alps.

- 1 Cum in Italiā proficisci ceteret Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque misit, qui ā finib⁹ Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs 5 pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs īre cōsuērant, patēfieri volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in his locīs legiōnem hie-mandī causā conlocāret.
- 10 Galba secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnatīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgatīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, qui 15 appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; qui vīcus positūs in valle nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partēm ēius vīcī Gallis [ad hiemandū] concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam 20 cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallō fossāque mū-nīvit.



THE VICINITY OF OCTODURUS.

Uprising of the mountain tribes.

Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frū- 2
mentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per ex-
plorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gal-
lī concesserat omnēs noctu discessisse, montēsque qui
impendērent ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et 5
Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī
renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium cape-
rent: prīnum, quod legiōnem—neque eam plēnissi-
mam dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus sin- 10
gillātim, qui commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, ab-
sentibūs—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam
quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus
in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cōicerent, nē prīnum qui-
dem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstīmābant. Ac- 15
cēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum
nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum
causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium
occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiun-
gere sibi persuāsum habēbant. 20

Galba holds a council of war.

Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hī- 3
bernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque
dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvi-
sum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil
dē bellō timendum exīstīmāverat, cōsiliō celeriter 25
convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsi-
liō, cum tantum repentinī periculi praeter opīniōnem
accidisset, āc iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine
armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō

venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae dīcēbantur ut, impedimentis relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervē-
5 nissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interīm reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

Vigorous attack by the natives on the Roman camp.

4 Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darē-
10 tur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum cōicere. Nostrī pīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpūgnārē neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō
15 occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitātē pūgnāe hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdebant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, āc nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō qui-
20 dem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī āc suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

A hard battle of six hours.

5 Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continentē pūgnārētūr āc nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, pīmī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et

virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extrimum auxilium experientur. Itaque convocatis centuriōnibus celeriter milites certiorēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labore reficerent; post datō signō ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute pōnerent.

Galba finally defeats the enemy with great loss, but is obliged to withdraw to the Province.

Quod iūssi sunt, faciunt ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cōgnoscendī, quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commūtā fortūnā eōs qui in spem potiundorum castrorum vēnerant undique circumventos interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertia parte imperfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam cōiciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō quod saepius fortūnam temptare Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, māximē frumentī commeātusque inopia permōtus posterō diē omnibus eius vīci aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante in columem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Operations on the northwest coast of Gaul.

Hīs rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar 7 pācātam Galliam existimāret [superātis Belgīs, ex-

pulsis Germānīs, victis in Alpibus Sedūnīs,] atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque natiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ēius belli haec
 5 fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cū legiōne vii proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopiā frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in finitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius
 10 missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Veneti seize Roman messengers, and lead a revolt of the maritime tribes.

8 Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās.
omnis ūrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs
 habent Veneti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre
 15 cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum
 cēterōs antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī
 atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent
 ipsī, omnēs ferē qui eō mari ūtī cōsuērunt habent
 vectigālēs. Ab hīs fit initium, retinendī Sili atque
 20 Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō de-
 dissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōri-
 tāte finitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et re-
 pentīna cōnsilia — eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasi-
 diumque retainent; et celeriter missis lēgātīs per suōs
 25 prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō
 āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātū-
 rōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte
 quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmā-
 nōrum servitūtem perferre mālīnt. Omnī ūrā mari-
 30 timā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commū-

nem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī vēlit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar orders the building of a fleet. The Veneti prepare to fight.

Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, 9 quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īfluit in Ōceanum, rē- 5 migēs ex prōvinciā īstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administratīs ipse, cum p̄imum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris 10 adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisse, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine periculī bellum parāre, et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium per- 15 tinent prōvidēre īstituunt, hōc māiore spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter īscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam 20 diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; āc iamq̄ ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūri- 25 mum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īsulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Cae- 30 sarem p̄imum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plū-

rimās pōssunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osis-mōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Dia-blintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar's reasons for this campaign. "Divide and conquer."

- 10 Erant hae difficultatēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs, nē hāc parte ne-
 10 glēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegerer omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertati studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ūdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitatēs
 15 cōspīrārent, partiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Lieutenants sent to different parts of the country. Brutus commands the fleet.

- II Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātūm in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in offi-
 20 ciō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arces-sītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cō-nentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitā-niam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in
 25 Galliam mittantur āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātūm cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manū distinēdam cūret. D. Brūtūm adulēscētem

classī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeſicit, et cum pīmū possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipſe eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

The strongholds of the Veneti.

Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in 12 extrēmīs lingulīs prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus adi-
tum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod
[bis] accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvi-
bus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs ad-
fīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō 10 impediēbātur. Āc sī quandō māgnitūdine operis forte
superātī, extrūsō marī aggere āc mōlibus atque hīs
oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnis suīs
cooperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūiis reī
summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia 15
sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus
īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō fa-
cilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae
nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat
vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rāris āc 20
prope nūllīs portibus difficultās nāvigandi.

Comparison of their ships with Caesar's.

Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae 13
armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōres quam
nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum
aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērectae 25
atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempes-
tātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rō-
bore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam preferendam;
trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōfixā

BELLI GALLICI

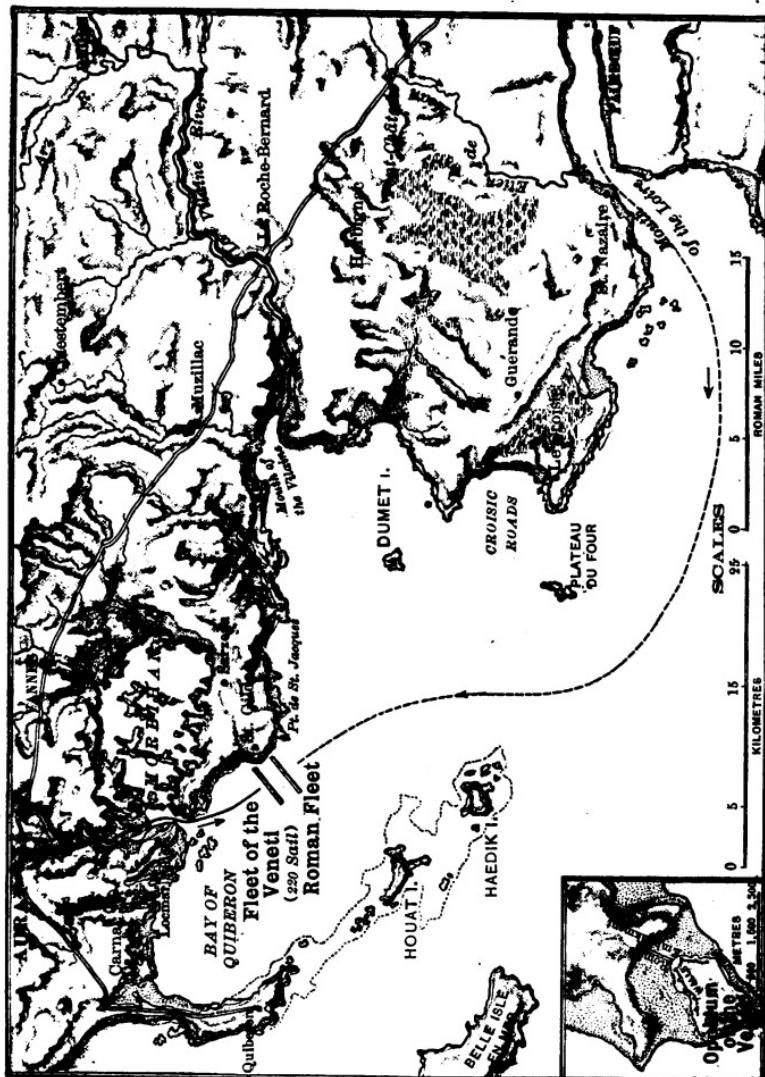
clavis ferreis digitis pollicis crassitudine; ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinctae; pellis pro velis alutaeque tenuiter confectae, [hae] sive propter inopiam linii atque eius usus inscientiam sive eum, quod est magis vere simile, quod tantas tempestates Oceanii tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commodem posse arbitrabantur.

Cum his navibus nostrae classi eius modi congessus erat ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret; reliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora. Neque enim eis nostrae rostro nocere poterant, — tanta in eis erat firmitudo, — neque propter altitudinem facile telum adigebatur et eadem de causa minus commodem copulis continebantur. Accedebat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrarent facilius et invadis cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestu relictae nihil saxa et eadem de causa minus commodem copulis continebus casus erat extimēndus.

The first naval battle on the Atlantic.

14 Compluribus expugnatissimis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque eis noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenerit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae profectae ex portu nostris adversae constituerunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centuriōibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributa, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem 30 pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI, B.C. 56.



cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex īferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent.

Una erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs 5 praeacūtae īsertae adfixaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī formā mūrālīum falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmis incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum 10 omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Cæsarīs atque omnis exercitūs 15 rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Veneti are beaten, and lose most of their ships.

Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae 15 āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī 20 trānsendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, 25 tanta subitō malacia āc tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucē ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnirent, 30

cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Terrible punishment of the Veneti.

16 Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ūrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs,
 5 omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmisīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque
 10 omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Sabinus, going among the Venelli, at first avoids a battle.

17 Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx āc summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs
 20 Lexoviīque senātū suō interfēctō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniunxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī
 25 cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre šēvocābat.

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in con-

temptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praeſertim eō absente 5 quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut op̄portūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn ex̄istimābat.

He induces Viridovix to attack him.

Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam 18 hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis quōs auxiliī 10 causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse 15 quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēducat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad cāstra īrī oportēre. 20

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctatiō, perfugae cōfirmatiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parūm diligenter ab eis erat prōvīsum, spēs Venetici belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus 25 adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab eis sit concessūm, arma utī capiant et ad cāstra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collectīs, quībus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad cāstra 30 pergunt.

Sabinus wins a decisive victory.

- 19 Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spati ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimatique per 5 vēnērunt. Sabinus suos hortātus cupientibus sīgnū dat. Impeditis hostib⁹ propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īscientiā āc dēfatigātiōne, virtūte mīlitū et superiōrum pūgnārum exer- 10 citatiōne, ut nē prīmū quidem nostrōrum impetū ferrent āc statim terga verterent. Quōs intēgrīs vīrib⁹ mīlitiēs nostri cōsecūtī māgnū numerū eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, qui ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.
- 20 Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus; cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer āc prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās 20 mēns eōrum est.

Crassus goes to Aquitania. The Sotiates attack him.

- 20 Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniā pervēnisset, quae [pars], ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominū] est tertia pars Galliae [aestimanda], cum intellegēret in eīs locīs 25 sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs prōfūgīsse, nōn mediocrem sibi dīlignantiam adhiben- dam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā,

auxiliis equitatumque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatis Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sōtiātūm finēs exercitum introdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs māgnis cōpiis 5 coactis equitatumque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti p̄imum equestre proelium com-misērunt; deinde equitatum suō pulsō atque īsequentibus nostris subito pedestrēs cōpias, quās in convalle in īnsidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adorti proelium renovārunt.

But they are defeated and surrender.

Pūgnātūm est diū atque āriter, cum Sōtiātēs superioribus victoriis frētī in suā virtute tōtius Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostrī autem quid sine imperatore et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscētulō duce 15 efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfecti vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātūm oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīnēas turrēsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās 20 cūniculīs ad aggerem vīnēasque āctīs,—cūius reī sunt longē peritissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multī locī apud eos aerāriae sectūraeque sunt,—ubi diligētiā nostrōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxerunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionē ut 25 recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetratā, arma trādere iūssi, faciunt.

The Soldurii, or Comrades.

Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animis, aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam im-

perī tenēbat, cum dc dēvōtis, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodis ūnā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem 5 cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret,—cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum 10 ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus decides to fight with other Aquitanian tribes.

23 Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vōcātiū et Tarusātiū profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī 15 commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītū paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātūtum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī quae 20 sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritātē et māgnā [cum] hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant sum- 25 mamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt.

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertisit, suās cōpiās propter 30 exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūci, hostem et vagārī et vias

obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiū relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportāri, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum existimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intel- 5 lēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

As the enemy remain in their camp, Crassus attacks them there.

Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs duplīcī aciē 24 īstitūtā, auxiliīs in medium aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsiliī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque 10 nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstīmābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine vulnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īfirmiōrēs animō 15 adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctatiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīren- 20 tur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

They resist successfully at first.

Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs co- 25 niectīs dēfēnsōrēs vällō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, 25 auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespītibus comportandīs speciem atque opī-

niōnem pūgnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter āc nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumtīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem 5 esse dīlēgentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

But are at last forced to flee from their camp.

26 Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitatiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus, quae praeſidiō castrīs relictæ intrītæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castrīs cōspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīxi-
15 mus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidēri, aut quid reī gererētūr cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clā-
mōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus,
quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōsuēvit,
ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circum-
20 ventī dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēi-
cere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equi-
tātus apertissimīs campīs cōsectātus, ex mīliū L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse
cōstābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in
25 castra recēpit.

Submission of most of the Aquitani.

27 Hāc audītā pūgnā māxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Taru-
sātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusātēs Co-

cosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Caesar invades the territories of the Morini and Menapii. They retire into marshes and forests.

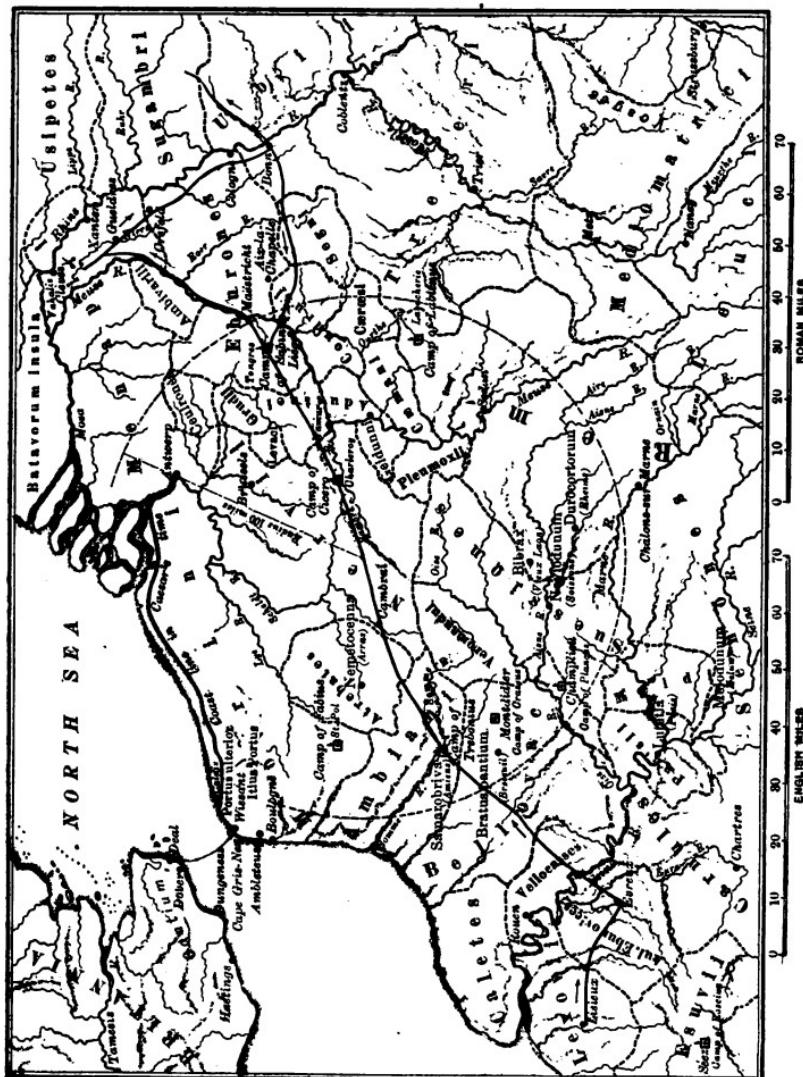
Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam **28** aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum 5 umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssent, arbitrātus id bellū celeriter cōfīci posse, eō exercitū dūxit; qui longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Galli bellū gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, conti- 10 nentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in 15 nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

After laying waste their country, he goes into winter quarters.

Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īn- **29** stituit et, nē quis inermībus imprūdentībusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstrūebat. Incrēdibilī celeritātē māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfēctō, cum iam **25** pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur,

ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempes-tatēs cōsecūtae utī opus necēssāriō intermitterētur et continuatiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs con-tinēri nōn possēnt. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum 5 agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque, incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitāti-bus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs con-locāvit.

CAMPAIGNS OF 55 AND 54 B.C.



LIBER QUARTUS.

WAR AGAINST THE GERMANS.—FIRST INVASION OF
BRITAIN, B. C. 55.

The Usipetes and Tencteri cross the Rhine. The Suebi.

Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pom- 1
pēiō M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item
Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen
Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus
īfluit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēbīs com- 5
plūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cul-
tūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima
Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dī-
cuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum 10
bellandī causā ex finib⁹ ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī
mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem
annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque
agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur.
Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque 15
longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.
Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte
atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus;
quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et
libertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disci- 20
plīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faci-

unt, et virēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locis frigidissimīs nequē vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitatēm 5 māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

They have little intercourse with foreigners. Their cavalry.

2 Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēdant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, qui 10 bus māximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importatīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotidiānā exercitatiōne summi ut sint labōris efficiunt. 15 Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt āc pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgiō ad suēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemyīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs patī adīre 20 audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī non patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

The Ubii. Their tributaries.

3 Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī mā- 25 gnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum c agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt eīus-

dem generis, sunt ceteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfacti. Hōs cum Suēbī multī saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis 5 fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs īfīrmīōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Germans conquer the Menapii.

In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs 4 suprā dīximus; quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim 10 sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multī locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex 15 eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter cūstōdiās 20 Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō, īncīos inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, qui dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs 25 factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfictīs nāvibusque eōrum occupatīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupatīs, reliquam partem hiemis sē 30 eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

The fickleness of the Gauls.

5 Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus stūdent, nihil hīs committendum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prōnuntiāre cōgat. Hīs 10 rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertī rūmōribus serviant et plēriquē ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Caesar decides to make war on the invaders.

6 Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent; omnia [que] quae postulāssent ab sē fore 20 parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, qui sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīcipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōfirmātīs 25 equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

Defiant message of the Germans.

7 Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Ger-

mānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ḍrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī laccessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō [haec] sit 5 ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patientur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē 10 ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

He commands them to leave Gaul.

Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exi- 8 tus fuit ḍrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum eīs amīcitiam esse 15 posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupārē; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praeſertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licērē, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus consīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud 20 sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

They delay.

Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dē- 9 liberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id 25 quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs

trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine.

10 Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae 5 appellātur Vacalus, īsulam efficit Batavōrum neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomaticum, Tribocōrum, 10 Trēverōrum citātū fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffliuit partēs multīs ingentibusque īsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quib⁹ sunt quī piscibus atque oīvis avium vīvere existimantur, — multīsque 15 capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

Advance of Caesar. Parleys with the enemy, who try to + gain time.

11 Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgredēretur, ḍrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, 20 petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condicōne quae ā Caesare ferrētūr sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās res cōficiendās sibi trīdūi spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīdūi morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus

passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulatīs cōgnōseret. Interim ad p̄fectōs, qui cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit qui nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō laces- 5 serentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

Roman cavalry treacherously attacked and routed by the Germans.

At hostēs, ubi p̄imum nostrōs equitēs cōspexē- 12 runt, quōrum erat v̄ milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī, qui frūmen- 10 tandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistantibus cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dē- 15 siluērunt, subfossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita per- territōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII 20 et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius ayus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulneratō dēiectus, quoad 25 potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

When envoys come with an apology, Caesar detains them.

13 Hoc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condicōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis, quī per dolum atque īsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitatē, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritatis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum existimābat.

10 Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae prae-
termittēret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē
 ēius diēi māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsi Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīcipibus māiōribusque
 15 nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt; simul, ut dī-
 cēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā atque esset
dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent;
 simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrā-
rent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī
 20 iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque,
 quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat,
 agmen subsequī iussit.

And surprises the German camp.

14 Aciē triplicī īstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōflectō, prius ad hostium castra pērvēnit quam, quid
 25 agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Qui omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti, et celeritatē adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostēm dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere

praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstīnī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commisērunt; 5 at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectan-dōs Caesar equitātum misit.

Defeat of the Germans, with great loss. Many are drowned.

Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs 15 interfici vidērent, armīs abiectī sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipi-tāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitudine, vī flūminis op- 15 pressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulneratīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostiū numerus capitū cccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque 20 Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar libertātem concessit.

Why Caesar built a bridge and crossed the Rhine.

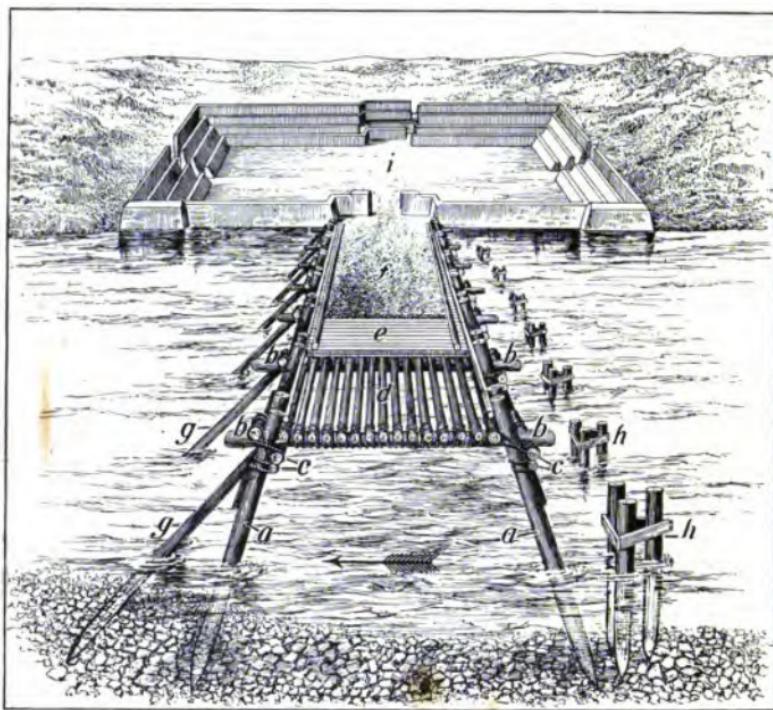
Germānicō bellō cōfēctō multīs dē causīs Caesar 16 statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa 25 fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quōque rēbus eōs timērē voluit, cum intellegērent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitū Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit

etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse, neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs
 5 Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnixerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finire; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn
 10 aequum existimāret, cūr sui quicquam esse imperī aut potestatis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubii autem, quī ūni ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcītiā fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ūrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod gravi-
 15 ter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spēmque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc
 20 novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcītiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

The bridge described.

17 Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suaē neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen
 25 id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitūm existimābat.



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

- a a*, tigna bina sesquipedalia.
- b b*, trabes bipedales.
- c c*, fibulae.
- d*, derecta materia.
- e*, longurii.
- f*, crates.
- g g*, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae.
- h h*, sublicae supra pontem immissae.
- i*, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc īstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis intervällō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat festūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendicularum, sed prōnē āc fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, eīs item contrāria duō ad eundem modum iūncta intervällō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec ¹⁰ utraque īsuūper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quanti ¹⁵ eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, pīnīs utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs ¹⁵ aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur āc longūriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur; āc nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere ²⁰ coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu possūnocērent.

Caesar crosses into Germany.

Diēbus x, quibus māteria copta erat comportāri, ¹⁸ omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar all utramque partem pontis firmō praeṣidiō relictō in fīnes Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque ³⁰ amīcitiam potentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque

ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex ēo tempore, quō pōns īstituī coeptus est, fugā comparatā hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāve-
5 rant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.

After eighteen days, he returns to Gaul without any fighting.

19 Caesār paucōs diēs in eōrum finib⁹s morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiisque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cōgnō-
10 vit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī ~~comperissen̄~~, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxorēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum con-
15 vēnīrent. Hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibidem dēcertāre cōstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnībus eīs rēbus cōfēctīs, quārum rērum causā ~~trāducere~~ exercitum cōn-
20 stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

He resolves to invade Britain.

20 Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit; quod omnībus fere Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tem-

pus [anni] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, si modo īnsulam adīset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quis- 5 quam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ūram mariti- mam atque eās regiōnēs quāe sūnt contrā Galliās nōtūm est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent 10 aut quibus īstitūtīs ūterentur, neque qui essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōnei portūs, reperīre poterat.

Volusenus and Commius sent on reconnoitering expeditions.

Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, 21
 idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā 15
 praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus
 ad sē quam p̄imū revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus
 cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissi-
 mus in Britānniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex
 finitimīs regiōnibus, et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Ve- 20
 neticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

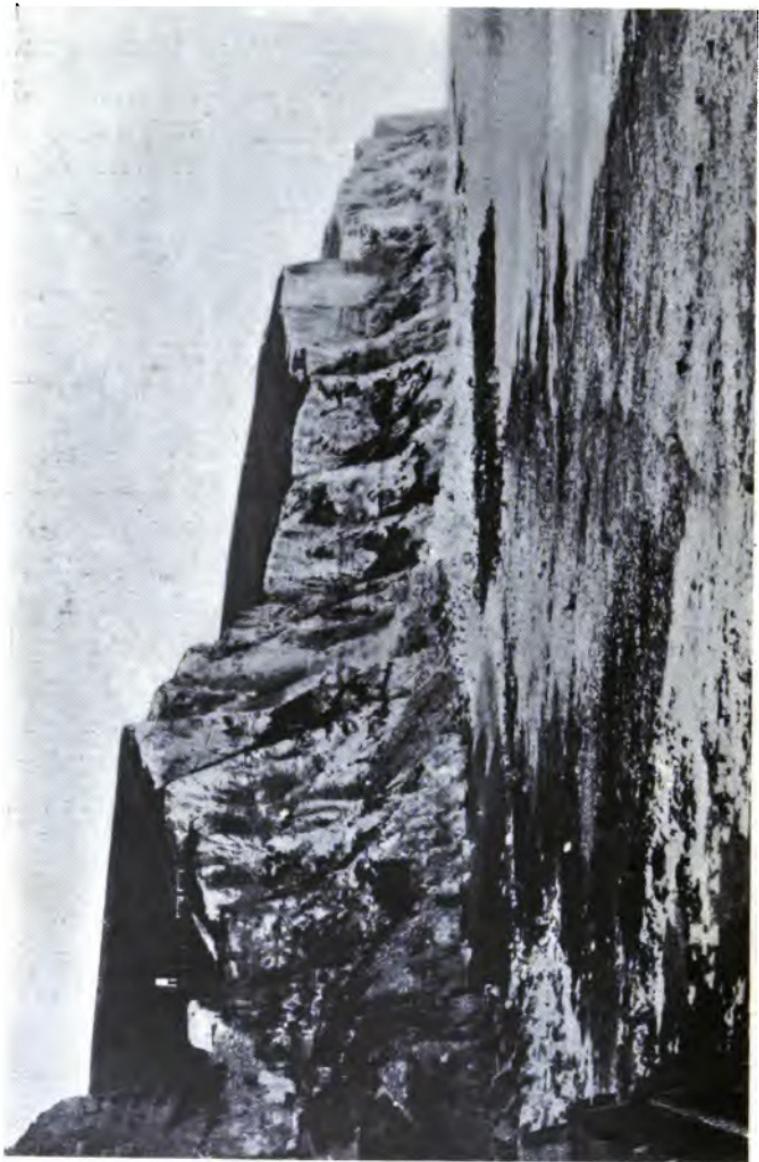
Interim cōsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs
 perlātō ad Britānnōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitāti-
 bus ad eum lēgātī veniunt qui pollicēantur obsidēs dare
 atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus 25
 auditīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sen-
 tentiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum eīs
 ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem
 ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliūm probā-
 bat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cūiusque 30

auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic impērat quās possit adēat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus, 5 quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, qui nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarī committere nōn audēret, v diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

Submission of the Morini. Preparation of a fleet.

22 Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāviūm parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperīti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post 15 tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter anni tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupatiōnēs Britanniae antepōnen- dās iūdicābat, māgnūm eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

20 Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctīs [contrāctīs que], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēlānt XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō 25 ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitū Titūriō Sabīnō et Aūrunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dū- 30 cendum dedit. Sulpiciū Rūfūm lēgātūm cum eō



THE CLIFFS OF DOVER.

praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābatur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and anchors near the shore.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-²³ dum tempestātem III ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnsendere et ⁵ sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter IIII cum pīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cū-
ius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē ¹⁰ mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ¹⁵ ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostēdit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īstābilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtūm et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et ²⁰ aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō āc plānō litore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britains resist a landing.

At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō ²⁴ equitātū et essedārīs, quō plērumque genere ī proeliīs ²⁵ ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, īgnōtīs

locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi 5 omnibus membris expedītis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla cōicerent et equos īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritātē āc studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsuērant, ūtēbantur.

*Caesar manœuvres. Gallantry of a centurion
of the Tenth.*

25 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertisit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī, atque inde ~~fūndīs~~, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī 15 āc submoyērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.
 Nām et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbari cōnstitērunt āc paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitib⁹ cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, 20 quiī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret: “Dēsilite,” inquit, “com-militōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex 25 nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admittērunt, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [prīmīs] nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

*The Romans land, but for want of cavalry cannot pursue
the Britons.*

Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque āriter. Nostri tamen, 26 quod neque ūrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus 5 vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgreditēs cōspēxerant, incitātis equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla cōiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item 10 speculātōria nāvigia militib⁹ complērī iussit; et quōs labōrantēs cōspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōse- 15 cūtis, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īsulam capere nōn pōtuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

Envoy from the Britons sue for peace.

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā re- 27 cēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; 20 obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Bri-tānniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ūrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, com- 25 prehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīsset, bellum sine cāusā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem 5 ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīcipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvītātēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt.

Caesar's cavalry transports are driven back to Gaul by a storm.

28 His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quartum 10 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum ad propinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum 15 tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īferiōrem partem īinsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorās iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prō- 20 vectae continentem petiērunt.

His fleet on the coast of Britain is nearly wrecked.

29 Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānspor- 25 tandū cūrāverat,] quās Caesar in āridū subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātāe, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent—fūni-

bus, ancoris reliquiasque armamentis amissis—ad navis gandum inutilis, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, 5 quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum in his locis in hiemem prouisum non erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post 30 proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum et equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse 10 intellegerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent,—quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat,—optimum factum esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatumque nostros prohibere et rem 15 in hiemem producere; quod his superatis aut redditum interclusis neminem poste bellum inferendi causam in Britanniam transitum confidabant. Itaque rursus coniuratiōne facta paulatim ex castris discēdere et suos clam ex agris deducere coepérunt. 20

Caesar suspects their purpose.

At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, 31 tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eoque quod ob sidēs dare intermisserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicatur. Itaque ad omnēs casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidiē in castra conferebat et quae gravissimē afflictæ erant naves, eorum materiā atque aere ad reliquias reficiendas uterbat, et quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continentī comparari iubebat. Itaque cum summō studiō a militibus ad-

ministrārētū XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

They attack Roman foragers.

- 32 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspicīōne interpositā, cum pars hominū in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī qui prō portis castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.
- 10 Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficisci ex reliquīs duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

- 15 Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla cōicī animadvertisit. Nam quod omnī, ex reliquīs partibus dēfīessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositīs armīs, in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucis interfectīs, reliquōs īcertīs ordinib⁹ perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The war chariots of the Britons.

- 33 Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnæ: prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgæ interim paulatim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitatiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecepiti locō incitatōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

Rescue of the foragers. The Britons gather in great force.

Quibus rēbus perturbatīs nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnāe 34 tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque 10 ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit. et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs 15 omnibus occupatīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestatēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserunt paucitātemque nostrōrum 20 mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciēdae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētūr, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditatūs equitātūsque cōactā ad castra vēnērunt. 25

They are defeated in battle.

Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritātē periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est,

sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus effi- 5 cere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Romans return to Gaul.

36 Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum 10 quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquā dīē aequinoctī, īfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstīmābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medianam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs inco- 15 lumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īfrā dēlātæ sunt.

The Morini attack some of Caesar's troops.

37 Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi mīlitēs circiter ccc atque in castra contendērēt, Morinī, quōs 20 Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī pīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōniere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia vi con- 25 vēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnē ex castrīs equitātūm suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam

equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectī
armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est
occīsus.

They are severely punished. Thanksgiving at Rome.

Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātūm cum eīs 38
legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, 5
quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Qui cum propter sic-
citatēs palūdum quō sē recipērēt nōn habērent; quō
perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in po-
testātem Labiēni vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta
lēgātī, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, om- 10
nibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs
incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās
abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in
Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae
omnīnō cīvitatēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reli- 15
quae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris
diērum xx supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

LIBER QUINTUS.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—FURTHER REVOLTS OF THE GAULS, B. C., 54.

Caesar orders a fleet built for a second expedition to Britain, and quiets disturbances in Illyricum.

I L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Italiam, (ut quotannīs facere cōsuērat,) lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praeſēcerat utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvēs aedificandās vete-
rēsque reficiendās curent. Eārum modum formamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō mari ūtī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod prōpter crēbrās commūtatiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; (ad onera āc multitūdinem iūmentōrum trāsportandam) paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsūi ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā adportāri iubet.

15 Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Illyri-
cum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlītēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad 20 eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent om-

nibus ratiōnibus de iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā orātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī jubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persocūtūrum dēmōstrat. Eīs ad diem adductīs (ut imperāverat) arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat qui lītem aestimant poenamque cōnstituant.

He orders the fleet to assemble at Portus Itius. Finds trouble threatening among the Treviri.

His cōfēctīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in 2 cīter pōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. / Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hibernīs, (singulārī mīlitum studiō (in summā omnium 10 rērum inopiā) circiter dc ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invenit instrūctās (esse) neque multum abesse ab eō quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possit) / Conlaudātīs mīlitibus atque eīs quī negōtiō p̄ræfuerant, quid fierī velīt ostendit atque omnēs ad 15 portū Itium convenīre jubet, quō ex portū commōdissimum in Britanniā trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum xxx [trānsmissum] ā continentī; hīc reī (quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum) re-līquit. / Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs IIII et equitibus 20 (cccc) in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, (quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque impēriō pārēbant), Germanosque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Rival chiefs of the Treviri appeal to Caesar.

Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū 3 et māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, 25 (ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duō principātū inter sē contendēbant. Indūti p̄etorīx; ex quibus alter, sus petere contendit / ut in

legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēni suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amē populi Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit, quaeque in veris gēreſentur ostēdit.

At Indūtiomārūs equitātum peditātumque cō
eīsque qui per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterā
silvam Arduennam abdītīs, quae ingenti māgnit
per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō a
tium Rēmōrum pertinēt, bellum parāre instituit
posteāquam nōn nūlli pīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et
tōritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī
citūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs pri
rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitāti
sulere nōn possent, veritus, nē ab omnībus dēserer
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcīrcō ab suīs
cēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius
tātem in officiō/continēret, nē omnīs nōbilitātis dis
plēbs propter imprūdentiam fāberētur; itaque cīvit
in suā potestāte esse, sēque, si Caesar permittere
eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātisque fort
ēius fideī permīssūrum.

4

He decides in favor of Cingetorix.

Caesar etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerē
quaeque eum rēs ab īstitūtō cōsiliō dēterrēret
men, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōsūmēre cōget
omnībus rēbus ad Britannicū bellū compa
Indūtiomārū ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre i
His adductīs, in eīs filiō propinquīsque ēius omnī
nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōsolātūs Indūtiomā
eum mittūt, officiō manēret; nihilō tā
factum cōsiliō, sēsēque erōrum ad sē convocātīs,

singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius ab sē fieri intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābatur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimū valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem pēspexis-
set. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus: [suam 5 grātiam inter suōs minui], et quī iam ante, iñimicō in nōs animō fuisse multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

Caesar's forces assemble at Portus Itius.

Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum 5 legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in Mēdīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre 10 nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae rever-
tisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō mīlia IIII, pīncipēsque ex omni-
bus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē 15 fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsi-
dum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

There is trouble again with Dumnorix the Hæduan.

Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō 6 ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in pī- 20 mīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritatis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in con-
ciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnūm cīvitātīs dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter 25 ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hos-
pitibus Caesar cōgnōverat.

Ille omnibus pīmō precibus petere contendit /uf in

Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinatē sibi negāri vidit, omni spē impetrandi ademptā, prīcipēs Galliae solici-
5 tāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit ut in continentī remanērent; metū territāre: nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nobilitāte spoliārētur; id ēsse cōsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs
10 necāret; fidem reliquis interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex usū Galliae intellēxissent, com-
mūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Dumnorix flees, but is pursued and killed.

Quā rē cōgnitā Cāesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduāe dignitātis tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiām prōgrēdī vidēbat, prōspiciendūm nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorā-
20 tus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, qui māgnam partem omnis temporis in his locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem contineret; nihilō tamen sētius omnia ēius consilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlētes
25 equitēsque cōnsendere nāvēs iubet.

At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equiti-
bus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam
30 partem equitatūs ad eum īsequendum mittit retrahīque

imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet; nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille autem revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Haedu ad Caesarem omnem revertuntur.

The Romans set sail for Britain, and find the coast deserted.

His rebus gestis, Labieno in continenti cum IIII legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rei frumentariae prouidaret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et pari numerō equitum, quem in continenti relinquens, ad solis occasum navēs solvit. Et leni Africō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum non tenuit, et longius delatus aestū ortā luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rursus aestūs commutatiōnem secūtus remis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Quā in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermissō remigandī labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiāno ferē tempore; neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eō convénissent, multitūdine navium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privatisque, quās suī quisque commodi causā fecerat, amplius DCCC unō

erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

They disembark, advance inland, and defeat the natives.

9 Caesar expōsitō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium 5 cōpiae cōnsēdissent cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et equitibus ccc qui praeſidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertīā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritūs nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās 10 relinquēbat. Eī praeſidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium prae- fēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.

Illi equitatū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitatū sē in silvās ab- 15 didērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnī- tum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverānt; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsis omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsi. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prō- pūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī pro- 20 hibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis VII, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cō- 25 sūmptā mūnītiōni castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

A storm damages the fleet.

10 Postrīdiē ēius diēi māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, perse- querentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Atriō

ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte māximā coörtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs adflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestatis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū 5 nāvium māgnūm esse incommōdūm acceptum.

The ships are repaired and drawn up on the shore.

His rēbus cōgnitī Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque 11 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs [litterisque] cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL 10 nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit eis legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs īstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, 15 tamen commōdissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnī quidem tempōribus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eās- 20 dem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem, unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permīssā Cassivellaunō, cūius fīnēs 25 ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britanni hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefererant. 30

The people and resources of Britain.

12 Britanniae pars interior ab eis, incolitur quos natos in insula ipsa memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eis qui praeuae ac bellī inferendi causā ex Belgio trānsierunt — qui omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eō pervenērunt — et bellō inlato ibi remanserunt atque agrōs colere coepérunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Utuntur [aut aere] aut nummō aureo aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus examiniatis pro nummō.

Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere utuntur importatō. Materia cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causā. Loca sunt temperatiōra quam in Galliā, remissioribus frigoribus.

Geography of the island.

13 Insula naturā triquetra, cūius unum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum D.

25 Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia insula, dimidiō minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hoc mediō cursū est insula quae appellatur Mona; com-

plūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īinsulae existimantur, dē quibus īnsulis nōn nūlli sc̄̄ seruht: tēs contiguōs xxx sub brūmāt̄ esse noctem. contātiōnib⁹ reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aqua mērī sūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vīdēbā- 5 mus. Hūius est longitūdō lāteris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cū partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed ēius angulus alter māximē ad Germāniā spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longi- 10 tūdīnem esse existimātur. Ita omnis īnsula ēst in cir- cuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Customs of the inhabitants.

Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Can- 14 tium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuetudine. Interiōrēs 15 plēriquē frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusq̄e sunt yestītī. Omnes vērō sē Britanni vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput 20 et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīq̄e inter sē commūnēs, et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberīs; sed qui sunt ex eis nātī eōrum 1 habentur liberī, quō pīmū virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Defeat of the Britons.

Equitēs hostiū essedāriique āriter proeliō cum 15 equitatū nostrō in itinere cōflixiērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compuleti, sed complūribus interfectī cupidius īpīcti nōm̄ īpīcti omnis amīsērunt.

At illi intermissō spatiō, imprimitur
occupatīs in mūnitōne ~~castris~~
~~conseruant~~, ut pugnare in eōs faciat
prō castris conlocatī, acriter pugnare, duābusque
5 missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs
legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī
spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae per-
territīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt
sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius
10 Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illī plūribus
submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

Their military tactics.

16 Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium
āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellectūm est nostrōs prop-
ter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īsequī cēdentēs
15 possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus
aptōs esse ad hūiū generis hostēm; equitēs autem
māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod
illī etiam cōsultō plērumq̄ue cēderent, et cum paulūm
ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent
20 et pedibus disparī proeliō contendērent. [Equestris
autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentib⁹ et īsequentib⁹ pār-
atque idem periculum īferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc, ut
fūmquām cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proe-
llārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs
25 aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatī-
gātīs succēderent.

Another defeat of the Britons.

17 Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōn-
stiterunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridiē
equitēs proeliō resercentur. Sed merī-

diē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā IIII legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī āriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendi fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōmīssi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praēcipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim **18** in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī **15** potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefixīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvis perfugīsque **20** Caesar praemissō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent. **25**

Cassivelaunus avoids a battle, but annoys the Romans.

Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, omni dē- **19** positiā spē contentiōnis dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter **1111** essedāriōrum relictis itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impe-

ditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque eis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et cum equitatus noster liberlus praedandi vastandique causam se in agris effunderet, omnibus viis semitisque essedariis ex silvis emittebat, et magnō cum periculō nostrorum equitum cum his cōfigebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discidi Caesar pateretur, et tantum agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur quantum in labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes submit to Caesar.

20 Interim Trinovantes, prope firmissima eorum regionum civitatis, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vene-
rat, — cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitaverat, — legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt
25 ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui prae sit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs xl frumentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsidēs ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

Other tribes follow their example. A British "Oppidum."

21 Trinovantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibrocii, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesar dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassi-

vellanni abesse silvis paludibusque ^{mīstas} mīsi satis
māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit.
 Oppidum autem Britanni vocant cum silvās impedītās
 vällō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium
 vitandae causā convenire cōnsuērunt. Eō proficisciatur
 cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque
 opere mūnitum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus op-
 pūgnāre contendit. Hostēs ^{debet esse} paulisper morāti militū
 nostrōrum impetum non tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte
 oppidi eiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris reper-
 tus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsi atque interfecti.

Cassivellaunus at last gives up resistance.

Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad 22
 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,
 quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Car-
 vilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs 15
 imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē im-
 prōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad cas-
 tra vēnissent, nostri ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum inter-
 fectīs, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs inco-
 luīmēs redūxērunt. 20

Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs
 acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dē-
 fectiōne cīvitātū, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium
 dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōsti-
 tuisset hiemāre in continentī propter repētīnōs Galliae 25
 mōtūs, neque multū aestātīs superesset, atque id facile
 extrahī posse intellegēret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in
 annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia
~~perderet~~ cōstituit. Interdīcit atque imperat Cassi-
 vellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat. 30

The Romans return to Gaul.

23 Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum māgnūm numerū habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātib⁹ exer-
5 citum reportāre īstituit. Ac sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnib⁹, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsiderārētur, at ex eīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur [et] priōris commeātūs expositis
10 mīlitib⁹ et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, per paucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclū-
derētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angus-
15 tius mīlitēs conlocāvit, āc summā tranquillitāte cōse-
cūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce ter-
ram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

Food being scarce, the army is quartered in detachments for the winter.

24 Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-
brīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentū in Galliā
20 propter siccitatēs angustius prōvenerat, coāctus est ali-
ter āc superiōrib⁹ annīs exercitum in hibernīs conlo-
cāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitatēs distribuere; ex qui-
bus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit,
alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L.
25 Rōsciō, quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit, trēs in Bellovacīs conlocā-
vit: his M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C.
Trebōnium lēgātōs praeſēcit.

Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōn-

scripserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnes, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, qui sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titūrium Sabinūm et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōni- 5 bus facillimē inopiae reī frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus pas- suum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs 10 conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, et Galliā morārī cōstītuit.

Tasgetius, a friend of the Romans, is slain.

Erat in Carnutib⁹ summō locō nātus Tasgetius, 25 cūi⁹ māiōrēs in suā cīvitātē rēgnū obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod 15 in omnibus bellis singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annūm rēgnāntem inimīcī palam multis ex cīvitātē auctōrib⁹ interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veri- 20 tus, quōd ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum im- pulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio ce- leriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre; quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lē- gātīs quaestōrib⁹que], quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, cer- 25 tior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītūm.

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the winter camp of Sabinus.

Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hīberna ventum est, 26 initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab
18

Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad finēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt (subitōque oppressis lignā-
tōribus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cēpissent vāllumque ascen-
dissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspératā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnatiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre
conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dicere vel-
lent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās mínuī posse spērārent.

Ambiorix gives treacherous advice to Sabinus.

27 Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū eī cōfitērī dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō liberātus esset quod Atuatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōsuēsset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius a Caesare remissī essent, quōs Atuatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppūgnatiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātīs; suaque esse ēius modī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinē.

Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repen-
tīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus rērum, ut suis cōpiis populum Rō-

mānum superārī posse cōfidat. Sed esse Galliae com-mūne cōsiliū; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnan-dīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venire posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praeſertim cum dē recūperandā commūnī 5 libertātē cōsiliū initum vidērētur.

Quibus quoniam prō pietātē satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnē officī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō, ut suaē āc mīlitū salūtī cōsulat. Māgnam manū Germānōrum conductam 10 Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū, velintne prius quam finitimī sentiant, ēduc-tōs ex hībernīs militēs aut ad Cicerōnēm aut ad Labiē-num, dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud sē pollicēri et 15 iūre iūrandō cōfirmāre tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnēs da-tūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēiūs meritis grā-tiam referre. Hac ōrātiōnē habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

Some of the Roman officers are unwilling to leave their camp.

Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dē- 28 ferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstīmābant; māxi-mēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātēm ignōbi-lem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rō-mānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Ita- 25 que ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt māgnaque inter eōs ex-sistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tri-būnī mīlitū et pīmōrum ūrdinū centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hībernīs iniūssū Caesaris

discēdendum exīstīmābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmū hostiū im-petum multīs ultrō vulneribūs inlātīs fortissimē susti-nuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrē-mō quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

Sabinus is anxious to retreat.

- X 29 Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum
 10 māiōrēs manūs hostiū adiūntīs Germānīs convēnis-sent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque ali-ter Carnutes interficiundi Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse cap-
 15 tūrōs neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contem-p-tiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auc-tōrem, sed rem spēctare: subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs no-strās victōriās; ārdēre Galliā tot contumēliīs acceptīs
 20 sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glō-riā reī militāris exstīntā. Postrēmō quis hōc sibi per-suādēret sine certā spē Ambiorīgē ad ēiū modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque par-
 25 tēm esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem pērventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritatē posi-tam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum qui dissen-tīrent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs
 30 esset timenda.

Cotta yields to the Gauls.

Hāc in utramquē partem disputatiōē habita, cum 30
 ā Cottā prīmisque ordinib⁹ acriter resisterētur, "Vincite," inquit, "sī ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce,
 ut māgna pars militum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear. 5
 Hi sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem
 reposcent; qui, sī per tē liceat, p̄rendinō diē cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquīs bellī
 cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiecti et relēgati longē ā cēteris
 aut ferrō aut fame intereant." 10

The Romans march from the camp.

Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque 31
 et ḍrānt, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant
 āc probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem 15
 perspicere. Rēs disputatiōne ad medianam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīni. Prōnūtiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. ~~X~~
 Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, 20
 quid ex instrumento hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur.
 [Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine periculō manēatur
 et languōre militū et vigiliis periculum augeātur.]
 Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur ut quibus esset
 persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō 25
 [Ambiorīge] cōsiliūm datum, longissimō agmine
 māximisque impedimentīs.

They are attacked by the ambushed Gauls.

At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliis- 32
 que dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocatīs īnsidiīs

Itque occultō locō ā mīli-
bus passuum cīciter dūōbus Rōmānōrum adventum
exspectābant; et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam
convallem dēmisisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō
5 sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et pīmōs pro-
hibēre ascēnsū atque iniquissimō nostrīs locō proelium
committēre coepērunt.

Sabinus loses his presence of mind. Cotta is cool and brave.

33 Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset,
trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec
10 tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidē-
rentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōsuēvit quī in
ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta,
quī cōgitāset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob
eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fūisset, nūllā in rē
15 commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīs-
que mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia
praestābat.

Cūm propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per
sē omnia obire et quid quōque locō faciendum esset
20 prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī, ut impedī-
menta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod
cōnsilium, etsī in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn
est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus
spem minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit,
25 quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum
vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat,
ut vulgō mīlites ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque
eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque
arripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complē-
30 rentur.

Cunning tactics of Ambiorix.

At barbaris cōsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs 34
 eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō
 discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī
 quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in
 victōriā posita existimārent. [Erant et virtūte et nu-
 merō pūgnandī parēs.] Nostri tametsī ab duce et ā
 fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in
 virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcur-
 rerat, ab ea parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat.
 Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut 10
 procul tēla cōciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in
 partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant; [levitātē
 armōrum et cotidiānā exercitatiōne nihil hīs nocēri
 posse,] rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs īsequantur.

The fight goes steadily-against the Romans. *

Quō praeceptō ab eīs diligentissimē observātō, cum 35
quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum
 fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam
 partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla re-
 cipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant prō-
 gressī revertī cooperant, et ab eīs qui cesserant et ab 20
 eīs, qui proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem
 locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbatur
 neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnferti vitare
 poterant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflictātī, multīs
 vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et māgnā parte diēi 25
 cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pū-
 gnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum committē-
 bant. Tum T. Balventiō, qui superiore annō primum pī-
 lum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrum-

tur; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem
ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō filiō sub-
venit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs
ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

Sabinus parleys with Ambiorix.

36 His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Am-
biorīgem suōs cohortāitem cōspexisset, interpretem
suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi
militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Sī ve-
lit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impe-
10 trārī posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō
nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem inter-
pōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videā-
tur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conlo-
quantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte im-
15 petrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum
negat atque in eō persevērat.

Sabinus is treacherously slain, and nearly all the army killed.

37 Sabinus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum
sē habēbat et prīmōrum ūrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī
iubet; et cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iüssus
20 arma abicere imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant
imperat. Interim, dum dē condicōnibus inter sē agunt
longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorīge īstituitur sermō,
paulātim circumventus interficitur.

Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ulu-
25 lātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō ūrdinēs per-
turbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māxi-
mā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde
erant ēgressī; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum
māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā

vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castīs fortissimē pūgnāns occiditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnatiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspératā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt 5 atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix induces the Atuatuci and Nervii to revolt.

Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur, neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatūcisque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, horātāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque aleiscendi Rōmānōs prō eīs quās accēperint iniūriis occasiōnem dīmittant. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negotiis subitō oppressam legiōnēm quae cum Cicerōne h̄met interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nerviī persuādet.

Attack on the camp of Q. Cicero.

Itaque cōfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Centrōnēs, 39 Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pl̄umoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hibernā advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nullī militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Atuatuci atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnēm oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma

concurrunt, vallum cōscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sus-tentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnē-bant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

Preparations for defense.

40 Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestim ā Cicerōne lit-terae, māgnis prōpositis praemiis sī pertulissent; ob-sessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex mā-teriā, quam mūnitōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādem ratiōne quā pīdiē resistitur.

Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulneratīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnatōnem opus sunt noctū compa-rantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pilō-rum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur; pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum con-cursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētūr.

The Nervii try to persuade Cicero to withdraw.

41 Tum ducēs pīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemo-rant: Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhē-nūm trānsisse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppū-

nārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eis praesidi spērent qui suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque 5 hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hibernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sīne metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs 10 discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Cae-sarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

They besiege the camp.

Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vällō pedum x et fossā 42 pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum an-nōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captivōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idō-nea, gladiis caespītēs circumcidere, manibus sagulīisque terram exhaustīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē ho-minum multitudō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mīlium passuum III in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vällī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās idem captivī docuerant, pa-rāre ac fācere coepērunt. 25

A fierce assault is bravely repulsed.

Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coörtō ventō 43 ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et ferrefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum cas-

trōrum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent.

Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus hostiū vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōstipāverant recessumque prīmī ultimī nōn dabant. Pāulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniec-tis dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of two centurions.

44 Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, qui iam prīmī ūrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae vir-tutis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs 30 iūdicābit." Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnī-

tiōnēs quaeque pars hostium cōfertissima est vīsa inrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstīmātōnē subsequitur. Medio-crī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs inmittit atque 5 ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimatō hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illūm ūniverſī tēla cōiciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāginam et gla- 10 dium ēducere cōnāntī dextram morātur manū, impen-ditumque hostēs cīrcumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illi Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitudō convertit [illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur]. Gla- 15 diō commīnus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfēctō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum dēiectus īferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus cīrcum-ventō sūbsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfēctis summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnī- 20 tiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certā-mīne utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Information of the danger at last reaches Caesar.

Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūg- 45 nātiō, et māximē, quod māgnā parte militū cōfēcta vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittē-bāntur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrō-rum militū cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus 30

Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, qui ā p̄imā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem pr̄aestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertatis māgnisque persuādet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat.

5 Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert; et Gallus inter Galōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnoscitur.

He sends messages to his lieutenants.

46 Caesar acceptis litteris hōrā circiter xi diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venire. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat; reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

Crassus meets him; but Labienus remains at his post.

47 Hōrā circiter III ab antecursōribus dē Crassi ad ventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandaē hiemis causā dēvēxerat, relinquēbat. Fabiūs, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus īteritū Sabinī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum

sustinēre nōn posset, praeſertim quōs recentī victōriā efferī ſcīret, litterās Caesari remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus eſſet; rem gestam in Eburōnibus pereſcribit; docet omnēs equitātūs pedi-tatūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III mīlia paſſuum longē, ab ſuīs caſtrīs cōſedisse.

A letter tied to a dart is thrown into Cicero's camp.

Caesar cōſiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne triūm 48 legiōnum deiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī ſalūtī auxilium in celeritatē pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnoscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis māgnīs praemiīs persuādet uti ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōſcriptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā noſtra ab hostībus cōſilia cōgnoscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentū dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs caſtrōrum abiciat. In litterīs ſcribit ſē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur, ut prīſtinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat preeceptum, trāgulam mittit.

Haec cāſū ad turrim adhaeſit, neque ā noſtrīs bīduō animadversa, tertīo diē ā quōdam mīlīte cōſpīcitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conuentū mīlitum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā adſicit. 25 Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnēm dubitatiōnēm adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls move off to meet Caesar.

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnēm relinquent; ad Caesarem omnībus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec

erant armata circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat. Perscrībit 5 in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātis suos facit certiorēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōfirmat.

Posterō diē luce pīmā movet castra et circiter milia 10 passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculū rēs tantulīs cōpiis inīquō locō dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam ob-sidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte existimābat; cōnsidit et quam 15 aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit, atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium VII, prae-sertim nūllis cum impedimentīs, tamen angustiis viārum quam māximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim 20 speculatōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

He manœuvres for an advantageous position.

50 Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliī ad aquam factīs utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpias quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Cae-sar, sī forte timōris simulatiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō con-tenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Prī-mā luce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proelium-30 que cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō

equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vällō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in his administrandis rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

The enemy attack him and are defeated.

Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitatī cōpiās trā- 51 dūcunt aciemque iniquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vällō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praeconibas que circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quiſ Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, 10 sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempserunt, ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ūrdinibus caespītum, quod ēā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vällum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum 15 Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō; māgnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

Caesar joins Cicero and praises his gallant defense.

Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat], omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum 25 militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administratae. Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque claudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque militum ap-

pellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Ciceronis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivis cōgnōscit. Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsolātur et cōnfīmat; quod 5 dētrīmentum culpā et temeritatē lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod benefīciō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor reliquātur.

Attack on Labienus deferred. Caesar decides to spend the winter in Gaul, because of the prospects of a general uprising.

53 Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritātē dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernīs Ciceronis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX, eōque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante medianam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, 15 quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, qui posterō diē castra Labiēni oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit.

20 Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum III legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnis hibernīs hiemāre cōnstituit, et quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte per 25 lātō omnēs ferē Galliāe cīvitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant; et quid reliquī cōsili caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtūs hiemis tempus sine 30 sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit quīn aliquem dē cō-

siliis āc mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī XIIII praeferēcerat, certior factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisce neque longius mīlibus passuum VIII ab hībernīs 5 suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris, discessisse adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

The Senones and others prepare to revolt.

At Caesar, p̄incipibus cūiusque cīvitatis ad sē ēvo-⁵⁴ cātīs aliōs territandō, cum sē scire quae fierent dēnūntiāret, aliōs cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in offi-¹⁰ ciō tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est cīvitās in p̄imīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerāt, cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque māiō-
rēs rēgnū obtinuerant, interficere p̄ūblicō cōnsiliō¹⁵ cōnatī, cum ille praesēnsisset āc profūgisset, ūsque ad finēs īsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt; et missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātū venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt.

Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse ali-²⁰
quōs repertōs p̄incipēs bellī īferendī, tantamque om-
nibus voluntātum commūtatiōnem attulit ut, praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Cae-
sar habuit, alterōs prō vetere āc perpetuā ergā populum²⁵
Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī offi-
ciīs, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque
adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliis
dē causīs, tum māximē quod quī virtūte bellī omnibus
gentibus p̄aferēbantur, tantum sē eius opīniōnis dē-³⁰

perdidisse ut populi Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Efforts of Indutiomarus.

55 Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtius hiemis nūl-lum tempus intermisērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs 5 mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostri interfectā multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli cīvitātī Germanōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencete- 10 rōrum trānsitu: nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptatūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finitimis equōs parāre, exsulēs damnatōsque tōtā Galliā māgnis praemiis ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōri- 15 tātem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgatiōnēs con-currerent, grātiām atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

He plans to attack Labienus, with the help of several tribes.

56 Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Se-nonēs Carnutēsque cōscientiā facinoris īstigārī, alterā 20 Nerviōs Atuatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre neque sibi voluntariōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex finibus suis prō-gredi coepisset, armātum concilium indicit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī; quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex eīs novissi- 25 mus venit, in cōspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciāti-bus adfectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetōrigem, alterius pīncipem factiōnis, generū suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtūm fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. His 30 rēbus cōflectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā

Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatis; huc itum per fines Remorum eorumque agris populatrum, ac priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnatrum. Quae fieri velit praecipit.

Caution of Labienus.

Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitionis 57 castris sese tenet, de suo ac legionis periculoso nihil timet; ne quam occasio rei bene gerendae dimitteret cogitat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomarus cognita quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equites- 10 que undique evocat; his certam diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omnibus equitatibus Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur; alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias conloquendi aut territandi causas; 15 equites plerumque omnibus tela intra vallum coiciabant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinione quibuscumque poterat rebus augebat.

Defeat and death of Indutiomarus.

Cum maiore in die contemptione Indutiomarus ad 58 castra accederet, nocte una intrumissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum quos arcessendos curaverat, tantum diligentia omnibus suis custodiis intra castra continuit ut nullam ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferriri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidianam Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coiciunt et magnam 25 cum contumeliis verborum nostrorum ad pugnam evocant. Nullus ab nostris dato responsu, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discidunt.

Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum

ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, perterritis hostibus
atque in fugam coniectis — quod fore, sicut accidit,
vidēbat — ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum, neu quis
quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum viderit,
5 quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere
nōlebat; māgna prōpōnit eīs qui occiderint praemia;
submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat ho-
minis cōnsilium fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent,
in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus inter-
10 ficitur, caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equi-
tēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc
rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae con-
venerant cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id fac-
tum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

LIBER SEXTUS.

SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY, B. C. 53.

Caesar increases his army.

Multis dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dīlēctūm habēre īstituit; simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō reī pūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex 5 Cisalpīnā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō rogāsset, ad signa convenire et ad sē proficisci iubēret; māgnī interēsse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opiniōnēm Galliae existimāns tantās vidēri Italiae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrimentī acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore 10 sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī cōpiis posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reī pūblicae et amīcītiae tribuisset, celeriter cōfēctō per suōs dīlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus, duplīcātōque eārum cohortium numerō, quās cum Q. Titūriō 15 āmiserat, et celeritātē et cōpiis docuit quid populī Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

Several of the northeastern Gallic tribes revolt.

Interfectō Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius pro- 2 pinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitārē et pecūniām pollicērī nōn dēsis- 20

tunt. Cum ā proximis impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventis nōn nullis cīvitatibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorīgem sibi societātē et foedere adiungunt. Qui-
5 bus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parāri vidēret, Nerviōs, Atuātucōs, Menapiōs, adiūntīs Cis-
rhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad
imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutib⁹ finitimi⁹sque
cīvitatibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs
10 crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō
cōgitandum putāvit.

Caesar lays waste the Nervian country and marches against the Senones.

3 Itaque nōndum hieme cōflectā proximīs IHI coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finēs Nerviōrum contendit, et priusquam illī aut convenīre aut profugere pos-
15 sent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā militib⁹ concessā vāstātisque agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōflectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut īstituerat, in-
20 dictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs Trēverōs-
que vēnissent, initium bellī āc dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbit-
rātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lute-
tiam Parisiōrum trānsfert. Cōfinēs erant hī Senoni-
bus cīvitatēmque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant; sed
25 ab hōc cōsiliō āfuisse existimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Se-
nonēs proficīscitur māgnisque itineribus eō pervenit.

Submission of the Senones and Carnutes.

4 Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, qui p̄inceps ēius cō-
sii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre.

Cōnantibus, priusquam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō senteñtiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Hae-duōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsatiōnem- 5 que accipit, quod aestīvum tempus instantis bellī, nōn quaestioñis esse arbitrābatur. Obsidibus imperatīs c, hōs Haeduīs custodiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmis, quōrum erant in clientēlā eadem ferunt respōnsa. Per- 10 agit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

Caesar goes with five legions against the Menapii.

Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō 5 in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis insistit. Cavari-num cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficisci iubet, nē quis-aut ex hūius irācundiā aut ex eō quod meruerat 15 odiō cīvitatis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circum-spiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinquī Eburōnum fini-bus, perpetuī palūdibus silvisque mūnitī, qui ūnī ex 20 Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam miserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia exīstīmābat, quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspérātā salūte aut sē in 25 Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficisci iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs v in Menapiōs proficiscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū, 30

loci praesidiō frētī, in silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt suaque eōdem cōferunt.

He forbids them to harbor Ambiorix.

6 Caesar, partitīs cōpiis cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus, adit 5 tripertitō, aedificia vīcōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coactī Menapii lēgātōs ad eum pācis petenda causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōfirmat, sī aut Ambiorīgem aut ēius lēgātōs finibus 10 suis recēpissent. His cōfirmātīs rēbus Commiūm Atrebātem cum equitātū custōdis locō in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficiscitur.

Labiēnus's doings among the Treveri.

7 Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs coactīs peditatūs equitatūsque cōpiis Labiēnum cum 15 ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisce legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Pōsitīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgī- 20 nitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritatē eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultatē, praesidiō v cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, eum xxv cohortibus māgnōque equitatū contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mīlle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit.

25 Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpisque praeruptīs. Hōc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstīmābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur cōsul- tō palam: Quoniam Germānī adpropinquāre dīcantur,

sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē pīmā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicis rēbus favēre natūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnīs mīlitūm pīmisque ḍordinib⁹ convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsili pōnit, et quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspicōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōsuētūdō, castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcēm in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

He defeats them in a decisive battle.

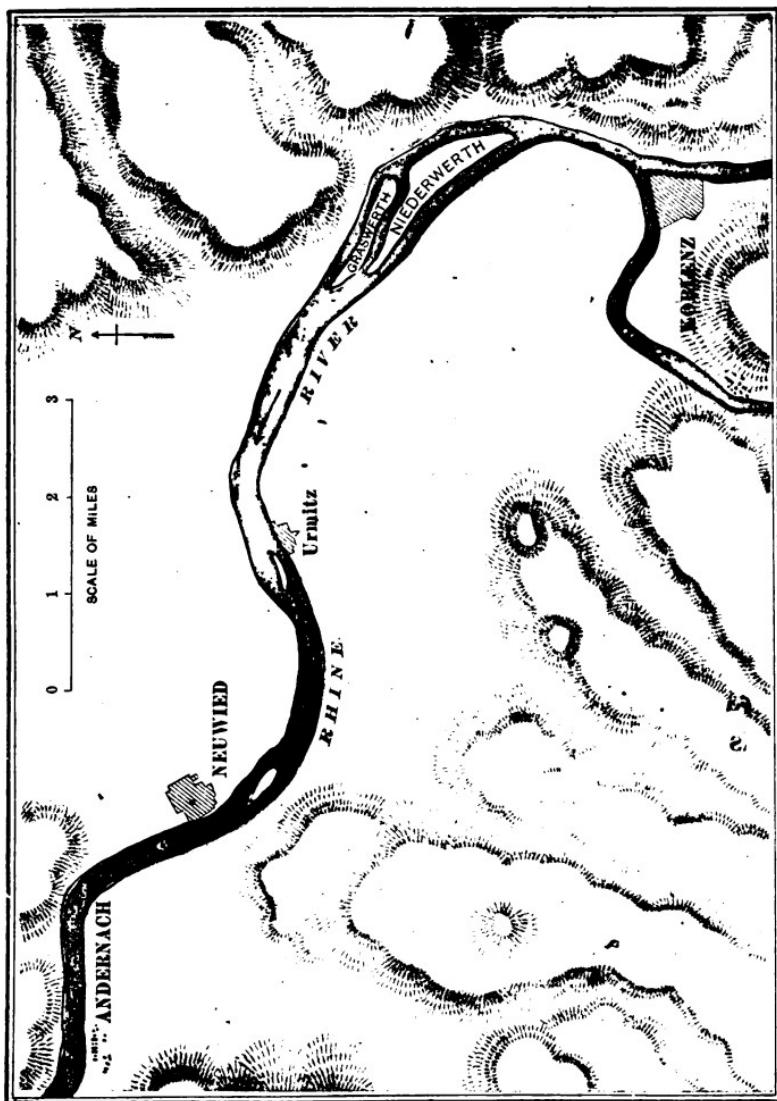
Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcessērat, cum Gallī—cohortatī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manib⁹ dīmitterent; longum ēsse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dignitatēm ut tantis cōpiīs tam exiguum manum, praeſertim fugientem atque impedītam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsire et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulatiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praeſisis paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō quōdam conlocatīs, “Habētis,” inquit, “mīlītēs, quam petīstis facultatēm; hostem impedītō atque inīquō locō tenētis; praeſtātē eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praeſtitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimātē.” Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; et paucīs turmīs praeſidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latēra dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pila in hostēs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdēbant īfestis sīgnis ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre nōn potuērunt, āc pīmō concursū in fugam consiectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, māgnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī qui auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum contulērunt. Cum hīs propinquī In-
dūtiomārī, qui dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitātī eōs ex cīvitāte excessērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem ab initio permānsisse in officiō dēmōstrāvimus, pīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time.

9 Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit,
15 duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit; quārum
ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant, ALTEA, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūixerat facere pontēm īstituit. Nōtā
20 atque īstitutā ratiōne, māgnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō; nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, qui ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūr-
25 gandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ḥrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit
30 darī, pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suē-

THE RHINE FROM KOBLENZ TO ANDERNACH.



bis auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactionēm accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirit.

He finds that the Suebi have retreated to a forest.

Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suē- 10
bōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eis nā-
tiōnibus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut 5
auxilia peditatūs equitatūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs
rēbus rem frumentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum lo-
cum dēlibit; Ubiis imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque
omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs
atque imperitōs hominēs in opīa cibāriōrum adductōs ad 10
iniquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūci; mandat
ut crēbrōs exploratōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque
apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.

Illī imperāta faciunt et paucis diēbus intermissīs re-
ferunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē 15
exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis so-
ciōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs
finēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īfinitā māgnitūdine,
quae appellētur Bācēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre,
et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum 20
Suēbōsque ab Chēruscorūm iniūriīs incursiōnibusque
prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rō-
mānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.

Customs of the Gauls. Political parties.

Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliē- 25
num esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et
quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In
Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitatībus atque in omni-
bus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis do-
mibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīcipēs

sunt qui summae auctōritātē corum iūdiciō habēre existimantur, suōrum ad mīlitūm iūdiciumque summū omnīm rērum cōsiliū mīque redeat. Idque ēius rei causā antiquitus institūtū vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe 5 contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprīti et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

Political influence of the Romans. They favor the Haedui.

12 Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis pīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquani. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlāe, Germānōs atque Arioūstum sibi adiūnixerant eōsque ad 15 sē māgnis iactūris pollicitatiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omni nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfictā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his pīncipūm filiōs 20 acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sequanōs cōsiliī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius pīncipātūm obtinērent. Quā necessitātē adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātūm profectus īfectā rē redierat.

Adventū Caesari factā commūtatiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ei qui sē ad eōrum amīcītiā adgregāverant, meliōre condicōne atque 30 aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum

grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani pīncipātūm dīmiserant. In eōrum locūm Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apūd Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī qui propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. 5 Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē pīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

The Gallic nobility, Druids and knights. Power of the Druids.

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt 13 numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duō; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plēriique, cum aut aere alienō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiorum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus 15 in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generib⁹ alterūm est druidum, alterūm equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica āc pīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs māgnus adulēscētūm numerus disciplīnae 20 causā concurrit, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnībus contrōversiīs pūblicīs pīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finībus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī qui aut 25 pīvātūs aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum āc sceleratōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne 30

incommodī accipient, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur
neque honōs ullus commūnicātur.

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, qui summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, 5 aut sī qui ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē pīncipatū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finib⁹ Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōnsecratō. Hūc 10 omnēs undique qui contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciisque pārent. Disciplina in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta exīstimātur; et nunc qui dīlignantius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō dīscendī causā proficiscuntur.

Their privileges. Their doctrines.

14 Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. [Militiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem.] Tantī excitatī prae-miīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi nu-20 merum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nullī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstiment ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs privātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.

25 Id mihi duābus dē causīs īstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs qui discunt litterīs cōfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīlignantiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In 30 pīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed

ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs, atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant et 5 iuventūti trādunt.

The knights.

Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus at- 15 que aliquod bellum incidit — quod ferē ante Caesāris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent —, omnēs in bellō 10 versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est geniere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiām potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human sacrifices.

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiō- 16 nibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolatūrōs voent; admihiſtrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, 20 nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque ēiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī māgnitūdine simulacrū habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exani- 25 mantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut lātrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods of the Gauls.

17 Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt, — hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māxi-
5 mam arbitrantur, — post hūnc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque ~~artificiorum~~ initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella
10 regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent. Cum suerāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōspicārī licet;
15 neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret; gravissimumque ēi reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitūtū est.

The Gauls claim descent from Pluto.

18 Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant
20 idque ab druidib⁹ prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatiā omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur, In reliquīs vītae īstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs
25 līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerilī aētātē ī pūblicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage laws and funeral rites.

Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine 19 accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniunctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā supēravit, ad eum pārs utriusque cum fructib⁹ 5 superiōrum temporum pervenit. Viři in uxōrēs sīcutī in libēros vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspicōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallorum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivis cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, 15 quōs ab eis dīlēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstis fūnebribus cōflectīs ūnā cremābantur.

Rumors have to be reported to magistrates.

Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rēm pūblicam ad- 20 ministrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sāctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre āc fāmā accēperit, 20 utī ad magistrātūm dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsis rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summis rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicā- 25 vērunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Customs of the Germans.

Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. 21 Nam neque druides habent qui rēbus dīvīnīs praesint

neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā qui-dem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque 5 in studiis reī mīlitāris cōsistit; ā paryīs labōri āc dūritiae student. Qui diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī statūram, alī vīrēs nervōsque cōfirmārī putant. Ìntrā annum vērō vīcēsum fēminaē nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimo 10 mīs habent rēbus; cūius reī nūlla est occultatiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No private ownership of land.

22 Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum 15 vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs, sed magistratūs āc prīcipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post 20 aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedifi- 25 cent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē faciōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitātē plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Isolation of tribes ; their chiefs ; brigandage ; hospitality.

23 Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum 30 sē vāstātīs finībus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium

virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere, simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentinae īcūrsiōnis timōre sublatō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātūm dēfendit aut īfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praeſint et vītae 5 necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīcipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Lātrōcinia nūllam habent īfāmiam quae extrā finēs 10 cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae āc dēſidiae minuenda causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīcipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, cōſurgunt eī quī et cauſam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicen- 15 tur, atque ā multitudine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēſertōrum āc prōditōrum numerō dū- cuntur omniumque hīs rērum postēa fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque 20 habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque com- mūnicātur.

Migration of Gauls into Germany.

Āc fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte 24 superārent, ultrō bella īferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mit- 25 terent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōſēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs 30 sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūſtitiae et bel-

licae laudis opiniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestate, patientiā; quā ante, Germāni permanent, eōdēm victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallis autem prōvinciarum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur; paulatim adsuēfacti superārī multisque victi proeliis, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis virtute comparant.

The Hercynian forest.

25 Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō VIIIII diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oriatur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus diversis ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs 15 propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae qui sē aut adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātūr accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus 20 quae māximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

Deer.

26 Est bōs cervī figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta cornibus. Ab ēius summō 25 sīcū palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminaē marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The elk.

27 Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōsimilis capris figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitū-

dine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crū-
ra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent; neque quiētis causā
prōcumbunt neque, si quō afflictæ cāsū concidērunt,
ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. His sunt arborēs prō
cubīlibus; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita paulum modo 5
reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestīgiīs cum
est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōn-
suērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcībus subruunt aut
accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stan-
tium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdīne reclīnā- 10
vērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā
ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox.

Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī 28
sunt māgnitūdīne paulō īfrā elephantōs, speciē et co-
lōre et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vē- 15
lōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexērunt
parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc
sē labōre dūrant adulēscētēs atque hōc genere vēnātiō-
nis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs
in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, māgnam fe- 20
runt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuē-
fieri nē parvūlī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō
cornuum et figūra et speciē multum ā nostrōrum bōum
cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs
argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō 25
pōculīs ūtuntur.

Caesar returns to Gaul and resumes the pursuit of Ambiorix.

Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit 29
Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veri-
tus, — quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē homi-
nēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, — cōstituit nōn 30

- prōgredī longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit,
 5 atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium XIII pontis tuendī causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Ei locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscētem praeſicit.
- 10 Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus, per Ardennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae māxima atque ab rīpis Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet mīlibusque amplius d in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum
 15 cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignēs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul sīgnificatiō fiat; sēsē cōfestim subsequī dicit.

Lucky escape of Ambiorix.

- 30 Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrā-
 20 que omnium opīniōnem cōflectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucis equitibus esse dīcēbatur. Multum, cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē mīlitārī potest fortūna; nam ut māgnō accidit
 25 cāsū, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum in- cideret, priusque ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam fāma āc nūntius adferrētur, sic māgnae fuit fortūnae, omnī mīlitārī īstrūmentō, quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, raedīs equīisque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effu-
 30 gere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō cir-

cumdatō sīlvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum āc flūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. Hīs pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vītandum multum fortūna valuit.

Disbandment of his troops. Suicide of Catuvolcus.

Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, 31 quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn existimāret, an tempore 10 exclūsus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dīmissis per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuē- 15 runt, hī insulis sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs efficere cōsuērunt; multī ex suis finib⁹ ēgressi sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge cōsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōfectus, cum labōrem bellī 20 aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī ēius cōsiliī auctor fuisset, taxō, cūiis māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

Caesar puts Q. Cicero in command at Atuatuca.

Sēgnī Condrūsīque, ex gente et numerō Germānō- 32 rum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad 25 Caesarem mīserunt ūrātum, nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret: nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgi auxilia mīssisse. Caesar

exploratā rē quaestioне captivōrum, sī qui ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violatūrum negāvit.

- 5 Tum cōpiis in trēs partēs distributis impedimenta omnium legiōnum Atuaticam contulit. Id castelli nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum 10 quod superiōris anni mūnitiōnēs integræ manēbant, ut militum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō impedimentis legiōnem xiiii reliquit, unam ex his tribus quās proximē cōscriptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī cas- 15 trisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

Dividing his forces, he continues the hunt for Ambiorix.

- 33 Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapiōs attingunt, proficisci iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regionem, quae Atuaticis adiacet 20 dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs III ad flūmen Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partēs īre cōstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem vii sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī, 25 quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur, frumentum dēbērī sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur; ut, rūrsus cōmūnicātō cōsiliō exploratīsque hōstium ratiōnibus, aliud initium bellī capere 30 possint.

Caesar's difficulties. Alliances sought by him against the Eburones.

Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, 34 nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armīs dēfendēret, sed in omnēs partēs dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedita spem praesidiū aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, 5 cōsēderat. Haec loca vīcīnitātib⁹ erant nōta māgnamque rēs diligentiam requirēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā — nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ā perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere —, sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus cōfertōs adire prohibēbant. Si negōtium cōfici stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interfici vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs dīlūcēndique erant mili- 15 tēs; si continēre ad sīgna manipulōs vellet, ut institūta ratiō et cōsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, neque ex occultō īsidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulis deerat audācia.

Ut in ēius modi difficultātibus, quantum diligentia 20 prōvidērī poterat, prōvidēbātur, ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum dētrimentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad finitimās cīvitātēs nūntiōs Caesar: omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs 25 Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles periclitētur; simul ut māgnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps ac nōmen cīvitatis tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Invaders from Germany plunder the Eburones.

35 Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur diēsque adpetēbat VII, quem ad diem Caesar ad impe-dimenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hic, quan-tum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs, 5 cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis āc perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma, dīripi Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo milia Sugam-brī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx mīlibus passuum īfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; prīmōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt; mul-15 tōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur.

Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palū-dēs bellō latrōciniīsque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt; pro-20 fectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum disces-sisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs “Quid vōs,” inquit, “hanc miseram āc tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Atuaticam venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās fortūnās 25 exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnitionēs audeat.” Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam, in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Atuaticam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec in-30 diciō cōgnōverant.

Cicero sends out too many foragers.

Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptis Cae- 36
sarī summā dīligențiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset āc
nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgre-
dī passus esset, VII diē, diffidēns dē numerō diērum
Caesarem fidem servatūrum, quod longius prōgressum 5
audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma adferēbātur;
simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, quī illius patientiam
paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sīquidem ex castrīs
ēgredī nōn licēret; nūllum ēius modi cāsum exspectāns
quō, VIII oppositīs legiōnibus māximōque equitātū, 10
dispersīs āc paene dēlētīs hostibus, in mīlibus passum
tribus offendī posset, v cohortēs frūmentātūm in proximās
segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō
collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōni-
bus aegrī relīctī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum con- 15
valuerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māg-
na praetereā multitudō cālōnum, māgna vīs iūmentō-
rum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

An assault on his camp by the Germans causes a panic.

Hōc ipsō tempore [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs inter- 37
veniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō, quō vēnerant cursū 20
ab decumānā portā in castrā inrumpere cōnantur; nec
prius sunt vīsī objectis ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs
adpropinquārent, ūsque eō ut qui sub vällō tenderent
mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent.
Inopināntēs nostri rē novā perturbantur, āc vix prīmū 25
impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur
hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperīre
possint. Aegrē portās nostri tuentur, reliquōs aditūs
locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtis trepidātū

castris atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat; alius delecto exercitū atque imperātore victōrēs 5 barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērius novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt, Cottaeque et Titūri calamitātem, qui in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritis cōfirmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captivō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. 10 Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manib⁹ dīmittant.

Gallantry of Baculus.

38 Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, qui pīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentionem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quīn- 15 tum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō rem esse discriminē; capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; 20 paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per mānūs trāditus servāturus. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliqui sēsē cōfirmant tantum ut in mūnitionibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

Return of the foraging party.

39 Interim cōfectā frūmentatiōne mīlitēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnitiō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo cōscriptī atque ūsūs mīlitāris imperīi ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ūra

convertunt; quid ab his praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitātē perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul cōspicātī oppūgnatiōne dēsistunt; redisse pīmō legiōnēs crēdunt quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cōgnōverant; posteā dēspectā paucitātē ex omnībus partibus impetum faciūnt.

They have to fight their way back with some loss.

Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt; hinc ⁴⁰ celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque cōciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Alii, cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent; quoniam tam propinquā sint castra, etsī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse [confidunt]; aliī, ut in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū militum virtūte servantur.

At eī quī in iugō cōstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō, neque in eō, quod probāverant cōsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant, imitārī potuērunt; sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmisērunt. Centuriōnēs, quō- ²⁵ rum nōn nūlli ex īferiōribus ūrdinib⁹ reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ūrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidērunt. Mīlitum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus, prae- ³⁰

ter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

The Germans retire and Caesar returns.

41 Germanni desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus vidabant, cum 5 ea praedam quam in silvis deposuerant trans Rhenum sese recipierunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut ea nocte cum C. Volusenus missus cum equitatu in castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitum. Sic omnium animos 10 timor occupaverat ut paene alienata mente, delatis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fugae recipuisse dicerent, neque incolumi exercitum Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Effect of the German invasion.

42 Reversus ille, eventus bellum non ignorans, unum quod cohortes ex statione et praesidiis essent emissae questus — ne minimum quidem casui locum relinquere debuisse — multum fortunam in repentinum hostium adventum potuisse iudicavit; multo etiam amplius, quod 20 paene ab ipso valllo portisque castrorum barbaros averterisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eorum consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi 25 beneficium obtulerant.

Caesar punishes the tribes which resist him.

43 Caesar, rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magnitudine equitum coacto numerō ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vicī atque omnia aedificia

quae quisque cōspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitudine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōsūmēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī ētiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen 5 hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc saepe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs dīmissō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī, nec plānē etiam abisse ex cōspectū contendērent, ut spē cōsequendi inlātā atque īfīnitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiā initūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent semperque paulum ad summam fēlicitātem dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs aut sal-
tibus sē ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs par- 15 tēsque peteret nōn māiōre equitum praeſidiō quam IIII, quibus sōlī vitam suam committere audēbat.

A council. Execution of Acco. Caesar goes to Italy.

Tāli modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitū Caesar du- 44
ārum cohortium damnō Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dē-
dūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō, dē con- 20
iūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestōnem habēre
instiūuit; et dē Accōne, quī pīnceps ēius cōsiliī fuerat,
graviōre sententiā prōnūtiātā, mōre māiōrum suppli-
cium sūmpsīt. Nōn nūlli iūdīcīum verītī profūgērunt.
Quībus cum aquā atque ignī interdīxīsset, duās legiō- 25
nēs ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reli-
quās in Senonum finib⁹ Agēdincī in hībernīs conlocā-
vit, frūmentōque exercitū prōvisō, ut instituerat, in
Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

LIBER SEPTIMUS.

THE GREAT STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE UNDER VERCINGETORIX, B. C. 52.

General movement among the Gauls.

- I Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clōdī caede; dē senātūsque cōsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dilēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliā Trānsalpīnam celeriter perforuntur. Addunt ipsi et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitū venīre posse.
- 10 Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē p̄incipēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs 15 recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitatiōnibus āc praemiis dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitīs periculō Galliā in libertātem vindicent. In p̄imīs ratiōnēm esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente im-

perātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine prae-sidiō ad legiōnēs pervaenīre possit; postrēmō in aciē praestāre interfici quam non veterem bellī glōriam liber-tātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

The Carnutes agree to begin the war.

Hīs rēbus agitatīs profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum **2** periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre principēs-
que ex omnibus bellū factūrōs pollicentur; et, quo-niam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn pos-sint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō āc fidē sanciātur petunt, conlātīs militāribus sīgnīs, quō mōre eōrum gra-vissima caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tūm conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

Massacre of the Romans at Cenabum.

The news travels fast.

Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconne- **3** todumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīg-nō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs qui negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equite. Rōmānum, qui reī frūmentāriae iūssū Cae-saris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. **20** Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit rēs, clā-mōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī orientē sōle gesta essent ante pīmam **25** cōfēctam vigiliā in finib⁹ Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix, the Arvernian, takes command.

4 Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilī filius Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūius pater prīcipātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnū adpetēbat ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, cons̄ vocātis suīs clientib⁹ facile incendit. Cōgnitō ēius cōsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobanniōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīcipib⁹, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstīmābant; expellit ex 10 oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dilēctum egentium āc perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis libertatis causā arma capiant; māgnīsque coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx 15 ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Celeriter sibi Senones, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīces, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū 20 ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus his cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae diligentiae 25 summam imperī sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō dēlīctō ignī atque omnibus tormentis necāt; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectis aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et māgnitūdine poe 30 nae perterreant aliōs.

He forces the Bituriges to join him.

His suppliciis celeriter coactō exercitū Lucterium 5 Cadūrcūm, summae hominē audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficisciatur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum quō 5 facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morāti ne- 10 que flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur, lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōsiliī fuisse cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs 15 prōnūntiārint an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

Caesar with difficulty reaches his army.

His rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille 6 urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegēret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultātē adficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitū pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente 25 in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitū contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore qui quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

He checks the designs of Lucterius at Narbo.

7 Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inrup-
5 tiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiata Caesar om-
nibus cōsiliis antevertendum exīstīmāvit, ut Narbō-
nem proficīscerētur. Eō cūm vēnisset, timentēs cōn-
firmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Are-
comicīs, Tolōsātībus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca
10 hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit; partem cōpiārum ex
prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat
in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, conve-
nīre iubet.

*Crossing of the Cevennes through the snow. Vercingetorix
returns to defend the Arverni.*

8 Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et re-
15 mōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat,
in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Ar-
vernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūriSSimō tempore anni
altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in
altitudinem pēdum vi atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō
20 mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pēvēnit. Quibus
oppressī inopīnantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mū-
nītōs exīstīmābant, āc nē singulārī quidem umquam ho-
minī eō tempore anni sēmitae patuerant, equitibus im-
perat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māxi-
25 mum hostibus terrōrem īferant. Celeriter haec fāma
āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem per-
terrītī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut
suīs fortūnīs cōsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripi patiā-

tur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trāns-lātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Caesar goes to seek reinforcements. Vercingetorix moves against the Boii.

At Caesar bīdūm in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec 9 dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, 5 per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscētem hīs cōpiīs praeſicit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus suīs inopīnantibus, 10 quam māximīs potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legionēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam 15 dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōſilī, celeritātē prae-curreret. Eō cum pervēniſſet, ad reliquās legionēs mittit, priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitūm re- 20 dūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum op̄pidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar conlo-cāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnārē īstituit.

Caesar decides to relieve them.

Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōſilium 10 capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquā partē hiemis ūnō 25 locō legionēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Haeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amicīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hīber-

nīs edūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultatēs perpetiā quam, tantā contumeliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntatēs alienāre. Itaque cohortatūs Haē 5 duōs dē supportandō commeatū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

He takes two towns near the Loire.

II Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre īstituit, eōque bīduō circumvallāvit; tertio diē missis ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne, arma cōferrī, iūmenta prō- 15 dūcī, sescentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōficeret C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse, ut quam pī- mūl iter cōficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur. Quī tum pīmūl adlātō nūntiō dē oppūgnatiōne Vel- launodūni, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī existimā- 20 rent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitte- rent, comparābant.

Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnatiōnem dif- fēt, quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint militib⁹s imperat; et, 25 quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris conti- gēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante medianam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsire coēpērunt. Quā rē per exploratōrēs nūntiātā 30 Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditas esse iusserat, portīs in-

Cæsari
censis intrömittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsideratīs quīn cunctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdī fu-gam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit 5 atque in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.

Surrender of Noviodunum followed by an attempt to defend it, on the approach of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, op- 12 pūgnatiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad 10 eum vēnissent ḫrātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaequē vitae cōnsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōficeret quā plē-raque erat cōsecutus, arma cōferrī, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs darī iubet.

Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrā- 15 rentur, centuriōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmissīs qui arma iūmentaque conquirerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, qui agmen Vercingetorīgis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexérunt atque in spem auxili vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, 20 portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepérunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significatiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab eis inīrī cōsili intellēxissent, gladiī dēstric-tis portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs re-cēpērunt. 25

Caesar takes Noviodunum and moves on Avaricum.

Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proelium- 13 que equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germā-nōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum

habēre instituerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt, atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōfligātī rūrsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā 5 plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōflectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnitissimumque in finib⁹ Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō 10 cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōfidēbat.

Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste the country and to burn the towns.

14 Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vellauno-dūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum geren-
15 dum atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic reī studendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiis 20 petere; hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportērē hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque versus, quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppe-
25 tere, quod quōrum in finib⁹ bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur; Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum perīculō longius ā castrīs prōcessūros; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentīs exuant, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Prae-
30 tereā oppida incendī oportērē quae nōn mūnitōne et

loci nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad
dērectandam militiam receptacula, neu Rōmānis prō-
posita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam.
Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius
aestimāri dēbēre, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem ab- 5
strahī, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.

They obey, but spare Avaricum.

Omnium cōsensū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē 15
amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem
fit in reliquīs cīvitātibūs. In omnibus partibus incendia
cōspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolore omnēs ferē- 10
bant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope
explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōn-
fidēbant. Dēliberātūr dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō,
incendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gal-
līs ad pedēs Biturīges, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius 15
Galliae urbēm, quae et praesidiō et ḍrnāmentō sit cīvi-
tātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē loci
nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod, prope ex omnibus par-
tibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et
perangustum aditum. Datur potentibus venia, dissuā- 20
dente pīmō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente, et pre-
cibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs op-
pidō idōneī dēliguntur.

Vercingetorix observes closely the movements of Caesar.

Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus sub- 16
sequitur, et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque 25
mūnitum, ab Avaricō longē milia passuum xvi. Ibi
per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēi tempora quae
ad Avaricū gererentur cōgnōscebat et quid fierī vel-
let imperābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentā-

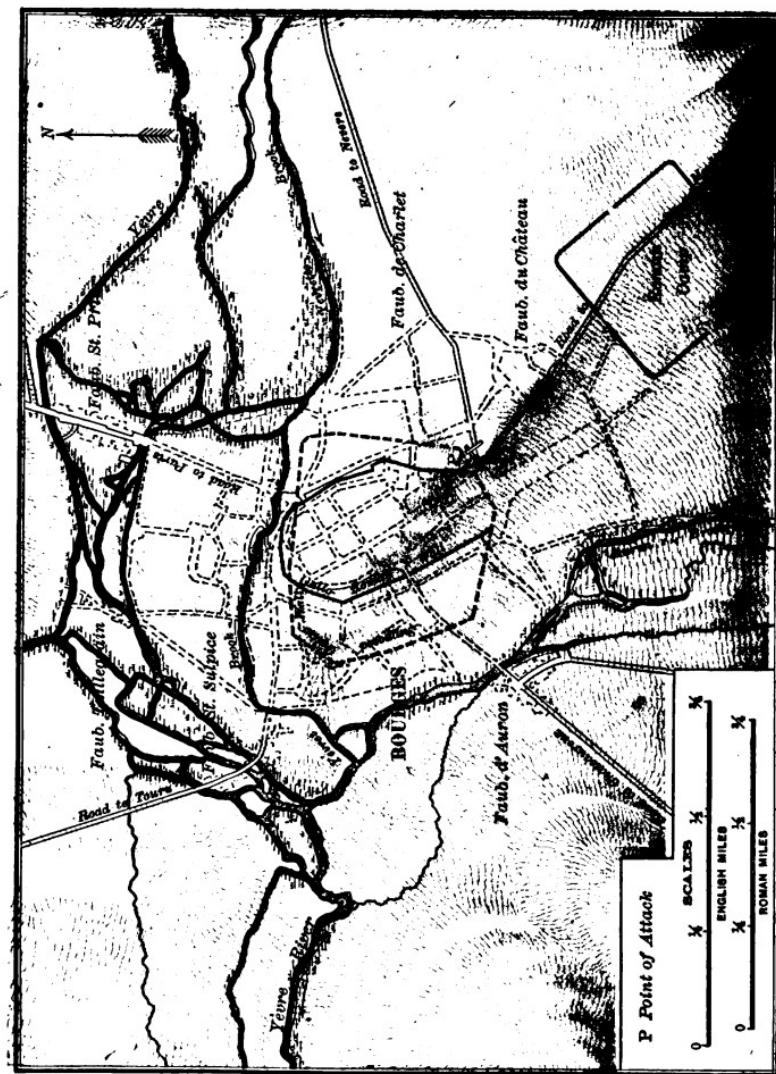
tiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque cum longius neces-
sāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō
adficēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab
nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporib⁹ diversisque
5 itinerib⁹ irētur.

The Romans bravely bear privations.

17 Castris ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae
intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dixi-
mus, angustum habēbat, agḡossem apparāre, vineās
agere, turrēs duās cōstituere coepit; nam circumvāl-
10 lāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs
atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit; quōrum alterī,
quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant;
alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua
et īfīrma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsūmpsērunt.

15 Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāiae adfectō exer-
citū, tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indīlgentiā Haeduōrum, in-
cendiīs aedificiōrum, ūsque eō ut complūrēs diēs frū-
mentō mīlitēs caruerint, et pecore ex longinquiōrib⁹
vīcis adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nūlla tamen
20 vōx est ab eīs audita populi Rōmānī māiestātē et supe-
riōrib⁹ victōriis indigna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in
opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret et, sī acerbīus ino-
piam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātiōnem dīceret,
ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: Sīc sē complūrēs
25 annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam
acciperent, numquam īfectā rē discēderent; hōc sē
ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem
relīquissent; praestāre omnēs perferre acerbītātēs, quam
nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs qui Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum in-
30 terīssent parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōnibus tri-

THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM.



būnīsque militūm mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Caesar approaches Vercingetorix.

Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex cap- 18
tīvīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pā-
bulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum 5
cum equitātū expeditīsque qui inter equitēs proeliārī
cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs
posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus
rēbus cōgnitīs mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hos-
tium castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explōrā- 10
tōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedimenta-
que sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in
locō ēditō atque apertō īstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūn-
tiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferrī arma expediri
iussit. 15

And finds him strongly intrenched.

Collis erat lēniter ab īfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex om- 19
nibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cin-
gēbat, nōn lātior pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptī
pontibus Gallī fiduciā locī continēbant generātimque
distribūtū [in cīvitātēs] omnia vada [āc saltūs] ēius 20
palūdis obtinēbant, sīc animō parātī ut, si eam palūdem
Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs premerent
ex locō superiōre; ut, qui propinquitatē locī vidēret,
parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum existimā-
ret; qui iniquitatē condicōnis perspiceret, inānī si-
mulatiōne sēsē ostenāre cōgnōseret. 25

Indīgnantēs militēs Caesar, quod cōspectum suūm
hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnū
proeli exposcentēs ēdocet quantō dētrimentō et quot
virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōstāre victōriam; 30

quos cum sic animo paratos videat ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquitatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum vitam laude sua habeat cariorem. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppugnacionem oppidi pertinabant administrare instituit.

The Gauls suspect Vercingetorix. His defense.

- 20 Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulatus, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitat discessisset, quod sine im-
10 periō tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessū Romanī tantā opportunitate et celeritate vénissent; non haec omnia fortuitō aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae male Caesaris concessū quam ipsorum habere beneficō—tali modō accusatus ad haec
15 respondit: Quod castra movisset, factum inopiā pabuli, etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipse sine munitione defendereret; equitum vero operam neque in loco palustrī desiderari debuisse, et illuc fuisse utilem
20 quo sint prefecti. Summam imperii se consulto nulli discendentem tradiisse, ne is multitudinis studiō ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollietatem studere omnēs vidēret, quod diutius labore ferre non possent. Romanī si casū intervenerint, fortū-
25 nae; si alicuius indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere et virtutem despiceret potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi turpiter se in castra recēperint. Imperium se a Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare, quod ha-
30 bēre victoriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata; quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi ma-

gis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur.

“Haec ut intellegātis,” inquit, “ā mē sincērē prō-nūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlītēs.” Prōdūcit ūervōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucis ante diēbus excēperat et famē vinculīsque excruciaverat. Hī iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, mīlītēs sē esse legiō-nāriōs dīcunt; famē atque inopiā adductōs clam ex cas-trīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam vīrēs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse; itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. “Haec,” inquit, “ā mē” [Vercingetorīx] “beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īsimulātis; cūjus ūerā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrēm famē paene cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat, ā mē prō-vīsum est.”

They acquit him with enthusiasm.

Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs crepat, quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cūius ūratiōnē adprobant: Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem, nec dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt ut x mīlia hominum dē-lēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent; quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriæ cōstāre intellegēbant.

Skillful defensive operations of the Gauls at Avaricum.

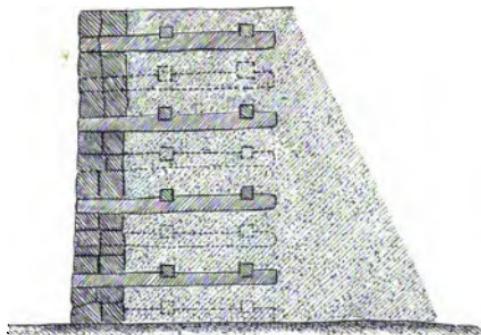
Singulārī mīlitūm nostrōrum virtūtī cōsilia cūius- que modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus 30

sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae à quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcēs āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstīnāverānt, tormentis intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant, eō 5 scientius, quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāiae atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrū ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriis intēixerant. Tum crēbris diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōibus aut aggerī ignem īferē- 10 bant aut mīlītēs occupatōs in opere adoriēbantur; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium mālis adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et prae- 15 acūtā māteriā et pice ferrefactā et māximī ponderis saxīs morabantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohi- bēbant.

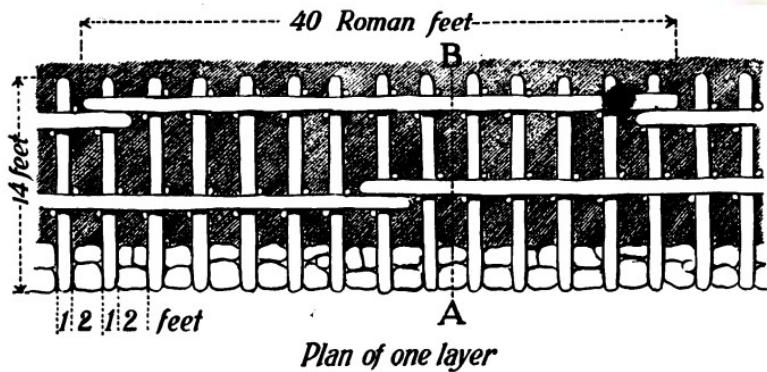
How a Gallic wall was built.

23 Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs dērectae perpetuae in longitūdinem paribus intervallīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō conlo- 20 cantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervalla grandibus in fronte saxīs efferciuntur. Hīs conlocatīs et coagmentatīs aliis īsuper ordō additur, ut idem ilhud intervallū servētur neque inter sē contingent trabēs, 25 sed, paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur.

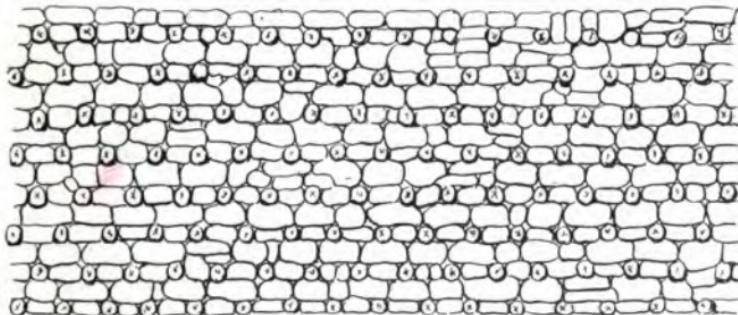
Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternīs trabibus āc saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs 30 ordinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet oportūnitātem; quod et ab incen-



Section through A B



Plan of one layer



Front view

A GALLIC WALL.

diō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus re-vincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

A sortie by the Gauls.

His tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnatiōne mīlitēs, cum 24 tōtō tempore frīgore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, 5 tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubā- ret mīlitēsque hortārētūr nē quod omnīnō tempus ab 10 opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cūniculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat. Aliī facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in 15 aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs qui-bus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut, quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui reī ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īstitūtō Caesaris duea semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partītīs tem- 20 poribus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad re- stinguendūm concurreret.

Their splendid courage.

Cum in omnibus locīs, cōsūmptā iam reliquā parte 25 noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōiae redintegrārētur, eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant, nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum ani-madvertisēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessis succē-

derent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit īspectantibus nōbis quod dignum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstīmāvimus.

- 5 Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī āc picis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turrīs prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trāngressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne 10 ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertīo quartus, nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus vacuus relictus locus, quam restīncētō aggere atque omni partē submōtīs hostib⁹, finis est pūgnandī factus.

Preparing to abandon the city, the defenders are dissuaded by the women.

- 26 Omniā expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē consilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra 20 Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātrēs familie repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et 25 commūnēs līberōs hostib⁹ ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīriū īfirmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē fugā Rō- 30 mānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab

equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur; cōnsiliō dēstiterunt.

The Romans storm the walls.

Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turrī dērēctīsque operibus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coörtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem 5 arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere ver-
sārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit, legiōnibusque [intrā vīneās] in occultō expedītīs cohortātūs ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum victōriæ percipe- 10 rent, eīs, quī prīmī mūrum ascendissent praemia prōposuit militibusque sīgnum dedit. Illi subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

Most of the townspeople are slain.

Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti, 28 in forō āc locīs patentiōribus cuneātim cōstitērunt, hōc animō ut, sī quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venīrētur, aciē instrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tolle- 20 rētur, abiectis armīs ultimās oppidī partēs continentī impetū petivērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est īterfecta. Nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsī caede et la- 25 bōre operis incitātī nōn aetātē cōflectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt.

Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlīum • XL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōrē audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. 30

Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, procul in viā dispositis familiāribus suīs p̄incipibusque cīvitātum disparandōs
 5 dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuīque cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

Vercingetorix urges the Gauls to continue the war.

29 Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōnsolātus cohortātusque est, nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in
 10 aciē vīcissem Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius reī fuerint ipsī imperitī. Errāre, sī quī in bellō omnēs secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī,
 15 cūius reī testēs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentia
 Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquiis Gallīs cīvitātēs dissentīrent, hās suā diligentiā adiūctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtius Galliae effectūrum,
 20 cūius cōsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab eīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī, ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium impetūs sustinēre possent.

They are encouraged to do so.

30 Fuit haec ūrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et māximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō, neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōspectum multitudinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstīmābātur, quod rē integrā p̄imō incendendum

Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minūunt, sīc hūius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfirmatiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; prī- 5 mumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īstituērunt; et sīc erant animō cōsternātī hominēs īsuētī laboris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda existimārent.

He raises more troops.

Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx animō 31 labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque eārum 10 principēs dōnīs pollicitatiōnibusque adliciēbat. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ḍrātiōne subdolā aut amīcitiā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, 15 imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittariōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. His rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat, explētur. Interim Teutoma- 20 tus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitibrogum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat ad eum pervēnit.

The Haedui, having a political dispute, appeal to Caesar.

Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus sum- 32 mamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nac-tus, exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōflectā, cum ipsō anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōstituisset,

sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque elicere sive obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīcipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum, ut māximē necessāriō tempore cīvitāti subveniat: Summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singuli magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōsuēssent, duo magistrātū gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem et iūlīstrem adulēscētē; alterum Cotum, antīquissimā familiā nātum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiācus proximō annō eundem magistrātū gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armis, dīvīsum senātū, dīvīsum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore, utī pars cum parte cīvitatis cōflīgat. Id nē accidat positum in ēius diligentiā atque auctōritātē.

He goes in person and decides the question.

33 Caesar etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmentōsum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniuncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ūrnāsset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōfideret auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huic reī praevertendum exīstimāvit; et quod lēgibus Haeduōrum eīs qui summum magistrātū obtinērent excēdere ex finib⁹ nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgib⁹ eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs proficisci statuit, senātūmque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit.

Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset, docērēturque paucis clam convocātis aliō locō, aliō tempore, atque oportuerit, frātrem ā frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convictolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātis intermissijs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

He sends Labienus northward, and goes himself toward Gergovia.

Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, — cohortātus Haeduōs ut 34 contrōversiārum āc dissēnsiōnis oblīviscerentur atque omnibus omissīs [hīs] rēbus huic bellō servīrent, eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā Galliā exspectārent, equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia x sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in præsidiīs reī frūmentāiae causā dispōneret, — exercitum in duās partēs dīvīsit: 35 quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit; sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptis ēius flūminis pontibus, 20 ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

He outwits Vercingetorix and crosses the Allier.

Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōspectū ferēque ē regiōne Caesarii castra pōnēbat, dispositis explorātōribus, nēcūbi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent. Erat in māgnīs Caesari difficultā- 25 tibus rēs nē māiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī solet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs po-

sitīs, ē regiōne ūniūs eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedimentis, ut cōnsuērat, mīsit, distrāctis 5 quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur.

Hīs, quam longissimē possent prōgredī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēi tempore coniectūram caperet in castra per-
ventum, īsdem sublīcīs, quārum pars īferior integra
10 remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerēt, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

Reaching Gergovia, he gets an advantageous position.

36 Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam per-
vēnit equestrique eō diē proeliō levī fectō, perspectō
urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs adītūs
difficilēs habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē ob-
sessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit quam rem frū-
20 mentāriam expeditisset. At Vercingetorīx castrīs prope
oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē inter-
vallīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās conlocā-
verat; atque omnibus ēius iugī collibus occupātīs quā
dīspicī poterat, horribilem speciem praebebāt; princi-
25 pēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capien-
dum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubē-
bat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administrandum
vidērētur; neque ūllū ferē diem intermittēbat
quīn equestri proeliō interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quō-
30 que esset animī āc virtūtis suōrum, perīclitārētur.



VIEW OF GERGOVIA FROM THE SOUTH.

Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcībus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulatiōne liberā prohibitūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn īfīrmō tenēbātur. Tamen 5 silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō duās ibi legiōnēs conlocāvit fossamque duplīcem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam 10 singulī commeāre possent.

A revolt is organized among the Haedui.

Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis 37 Haeduus, cui magistrātūm adiūdicātūm ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscēntib⁹ conloquitur, quōrum erat 15 prīnceps Litaviccus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscētēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Únam esse Haeduōrum cīvitātem, quae certissimam Galliae victōriam distineat; ēius auctōritātē 20 reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōsistēndī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō adfectū, sic tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūnī libertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgib⁹ ad 25 Caesarem disceptātōrem, quam Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant?

Celeriter adulēscēntib⁹ et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel prīncipēs ēius cōsilī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvi- 30

tātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōfidēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus x illis mīlibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerēt, atque ea dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurserent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat cōstituūnt.

-Litaviccus on the way to Gergovia incites his troops to desert the Romans.

38 Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum cir-
citer xxx ā Gergoviā abesset, convocatīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimāns, “Quō proficīscimur,” inquit, “mīlēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; pīn-
cipēs cīvitātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īsimulātī
prōditionis, ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt.
Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt;
nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus meīs propinquīs
interfectīs, dolōre prohibeōr quae gesta sunt prōnūn-
tiāre.” Prōducuntur eī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī
vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat
multitūdinī expōnunt: Omnes equitēs Haeduōrum
interfectōs, quod conlocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ip-
sōs sē inter multitūdinem mīlitum occultāsse atque ex-
mediā caede effūgisse.

Conclāmant Haeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant ut sibi
cōsulat. “Quasi vērō,” inquit ille, “cōsili sit rēs,
āc nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam cōtendere et cum
Arvernīs nōs met coniungere. An dubitāmus quīn ne-
fariō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficien-
dōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est,
persequāmur eōrum mortem, quī indīgnissimē inter-
iērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus.” Ostendit
cīvēs Rōmānōs quī ēius praesidiū fiduciā ūnā erant.
30 Continuō māgnūm numerū frūmentī commeātūsque

dīripit; ipsōs crūdēliter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitāte Haeduorum dīmittit; eōdem mendaciō dē caede equitum et pīncipum permovet; hortātur ut simili ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

Eporēdorix informs Caesar.

Eporēdorix Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulē- 39
scēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīviciācō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dignitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē pīncipatū contentiō; et in illā magistrātuūm contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitave, alter prō Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex hīs Eporēdorix cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; 15
ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prāvis adulēsentium cōsiliīs ab amīciā populī Rōmāni dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō aestimāre possit. 20

Who marches swiftly and puts down the revolt.

Māgnā adfectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, 40
quod semper Haeduōrum cīvitātī praecipue indulserat, nūllā interpositā dūbitatiōne legiōnēs expeditās 1111
equitatūmque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatiū tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs po- 25
sita in celeritāte vidēbātur; C. Fabium lēgātūm cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs profūgisse.

Adhortatus mīlitēs, nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum xxv, agmen Haeduōrum cōspicātur; immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impe-
 dit, interdīcītque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant.
 Eporēdorīgem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstīmābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellālare iubet. Hīs cōgnītis et Litavicci fraude perspectā,
 Haeduī manūs tendere et dēdītiōnem sīgnificāre, et
 prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Lita-
 viccus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum
 nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs,
 Gergoviam profugit.

He hastens back to Gergovia.

41 Caesar nūntiis ad cīvitātem Haeduōrum missīs quī
 15 suō benefīciō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōris [noctis] exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta
 20 dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatigārent, quibus prop̄ter māgnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vällō permanendum; multitūdine sagittārum atque omniī genere tēlōrum multōs vulnerātōs ; ad haec
 25 sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabiūm dis-cessū eōrum, duābus relīctīs portīs, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vällō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnītis Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra per-
 30 vēnit.

Other plots of the Gauls.

Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī p̄imis **42** nūntiīs ab Litavicco acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatiū relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illī hominū generī est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē **5** compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem p̄oclīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitūm, iter ad legiōnēs facien- **10** tem, fidē datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs qui negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; rēpugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectī māiōrem multitūdinē ad arma con- **15** citant.

The Haeduī seek an insincere reconciliation.

Interim nūntiō adlātō omnēs eōrum mīlitēs in po- **43** testāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt; Litaviccī frātrumque bona **20** pūblicant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt **25** cīvitātēsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant.

Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: Nihil sē propter īscien-
tiam levitātemque vulgi gravius dē cīvitātē iūdicāre

neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inibat, quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet āc rūrsus omnem 5 exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

Caesar sees a chance to gain an advantage at Gergovia.

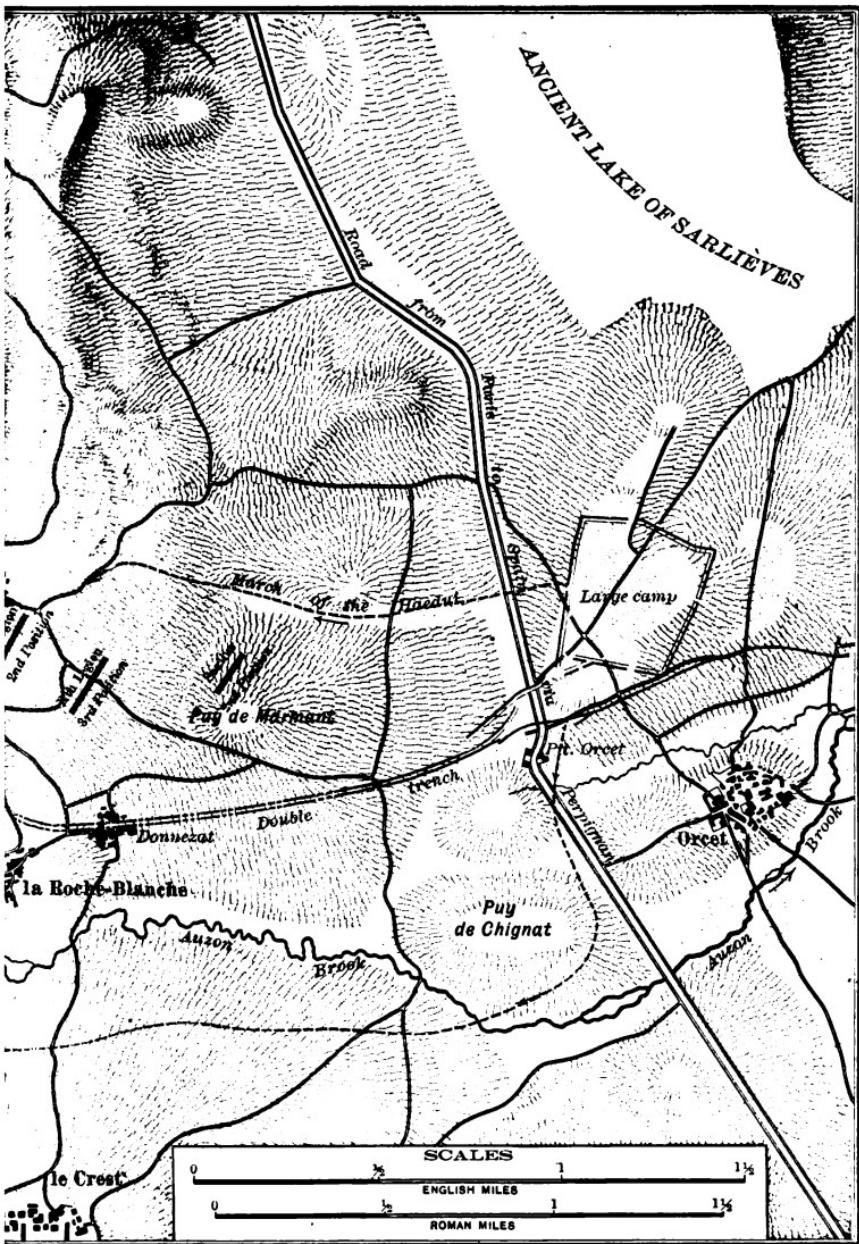
44 Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertisit collem quī ab hostibus 10 tenēbatur, nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Admirātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse 15 ēius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō sī alterum āmīssent, quīn paene circumvällātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī 20 vīdērentur. Ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercingetorīgē ēvocātōs.

Skillful disposition of his troops.

45 Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum 25 numerum impedimentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus, equitū speciē āc simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentatiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem



THE SIEGE



GERGOVIA.

omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset, explorārī poterat. Legiōnem x eōdem luce mittit et paulum prōgressam īferiōre cōnstituit locō silvīsque occultat. Augētur 5 Gallī suspīciō, atque omnēs illō ad munitiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur.

Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus, tēctis īsignibus suōrum occultatīsque sīgnīs mīlitāribus, rārōs mīlitēs, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex māiōribus 10 castrīs in minōra trādūcit, lēgātīsque quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat quid fierī velit ostendit; in pīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hōc ūnā celeritāte posse 15 vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proeli. Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnū dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

He captures the Gallic camp by a sudden attack.

Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēcta 46 regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs.20 aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatiū itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs vi pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum im- petum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, īferiōre 25 omnī spatiō vacuō relīctō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnitioñem per- veniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; āc tāntā fuit in castrīs capiēndīs celeritās ut Tēutomatus, 30

rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut meridiē conquiēverat, superiore parte corporis nūdā, vulnerātō equō, vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

The army is eager to assault the town.

- 47 Cōsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar, receptū canī iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, continuō signa cōnstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlites nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercedēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā 10 Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs, nihil adeō arduum sibi exīstīmābant, quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possent; neque finem prius sequendī fēcērunt, quam mūrō oppidī portīsque adproximārunt.

Tum vērō ex omnibus urbīs partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstīmārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentum-20 que iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs, passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īfanti- bus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō 25 legiōnis viii, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab eīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mū-30 rum extulit.

Reinforcements join the Gauls.

Interim eī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā 48 dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, pīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque pīmus 5 vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō pāssum capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōnspec- 10 tum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūgnae dēfatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

A doubtful struggle.

Caesar, cum iniquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās 49 augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praeſidiō reliquerat, mīsit ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īfīmō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret; ut, sī nos- trōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quōminus liberē hostēs ī- 20 sequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōstiterat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

Gallant action of Petronius.

Cum ācerimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō 50 et numerō nostrī virtūte cōfiderent, subitō sunt Hae- 25 duī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendaе causā miserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perter-

ruerunt; ac, tametsi dextris umeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacium esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causam milites ab hostibus factum existimabant.

5 Eodem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quique unā mūrum ascenderant circumventi atque interfecti dē mūro praecipitabantur. M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portas excidere cōnatus esset, a multitūdine oppressus ac sibi despérans, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis qui illum secuti erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē unā vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certae vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriæ adductus in periculum dēdūxi. Vos datā facultate vobis cōsulite." Simul in mediōs hostes intrūpit 15 duobusque interfectis reliquos a portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliarii suis "Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis virēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abite dum est facultas vosque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suis salutē fuit.

Repulse of the Romans.

51 Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus amissis dēiecti sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallos insequentēs legiō x tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiore locō cōstiterat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis 25 cohortēs excēperunt, quae ex castris minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi primum plānitiam attigērunt, infestis contrā hostem signis cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suos intrā mūnitionēs redūxit. Eō diē milites 30 sunt paulō minus DCC dēsideratī.

Caesar chides his troops for impetuosity, but praises them for their bravery.

Posterō diē Caesar contionē advocātā temeritātem 52 cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vi-dērētur, neque signō recipiēdī datō cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Ex- 5 posuit quid iniquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avari-cum sēnsisset, cum sine dūce et sine equitātū dēprehēn-sīs hostibus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter iniquitātem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitū- 10 dinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuis-set, tantō opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehēn-dere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque 15 exitū rērum sentīre exīstīmārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem dēsiderāre.

Caesar moves away to the country of the Haedui.

Hāc habitā contiōne et ad extrēmū [ōrātiōnē] 53 cōfīrmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permō-vērentur, neu, quod iniquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī 20 hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnsērat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō eques-trī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum re- 25 dūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostētātiōnē minuendam mīlitumque ani-mōs cōfirmandōs factum exīstīmāns, in Haeduōs

mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īsecūtis hostibus, tertio diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit.

His suspicions of their intentions are confirmed.

54 Ibi a Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Haeduīs appellātus, discit cum omnī equitātū Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōfirmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitatis existi-
10 mābat; tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus eīs breviter sua in Haeduōs me-
rita exposuit: quōs et quam humilēs accēpisset, com-
pulsōs in oppida, multatōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs sociīs,
15 impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumeliā extortīs; et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdi-
nem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstīnum statum redī-
sent, sed omnīum temporū dīgnitātem et grātiām an-
tecessisse vidērentur. His datīs mandatīs eōs ab sē
20 dīmisit.

The Gauls kill the Roman garrison at Noviodunum and burn the town.

55 Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs Galliae frūmentum, pecūniām pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnam partem
25 contulerat; hūc māgnum numerū equōrum, hūius belli causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēmptū miserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū cīvitatis cōgnōvissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab

Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs māxi-
mae auctōritātis, Convictolitavem magistrātum māg-
namque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad
Vercingetorīgem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pū-
blicē missōs; nōn praetermittendum tantum commo- 5
dum exīstimāvērunt.

Itaque interfectī Noviodūnī custōdibus quīque eō
negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniām atque equōs
inter sē partitī sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad
magistrātum dēducendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā 10
sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cuī esset ūsuī Rō-
mānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt
nāvibus āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō
corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cō-
gere, praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere 15
equitātumque omnibus locīs iniciendī timōris causā os-
tentāre coepērunt; sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclū-
dere [aut adductōs inopiā ex prōvinciā expellere] possēnt.
Quam ad spēm multum eōs adiuvābat quod Li-
ger ex nīvibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trān- 20
sīrī vidērētur.

Caesar crosses to the north bank of the Loire.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitī Caesar mātūrandūm sibi cēn- 56
suit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut
prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret.
Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam con- 25
verteret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciun-
dum exīstimābat, cum īfāmia atque indīgnitās reī et
oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impe-
diēbat; tum māximē quod abiūnctō Labiēnō atque eīs
legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat, vehementer timēbat. 30

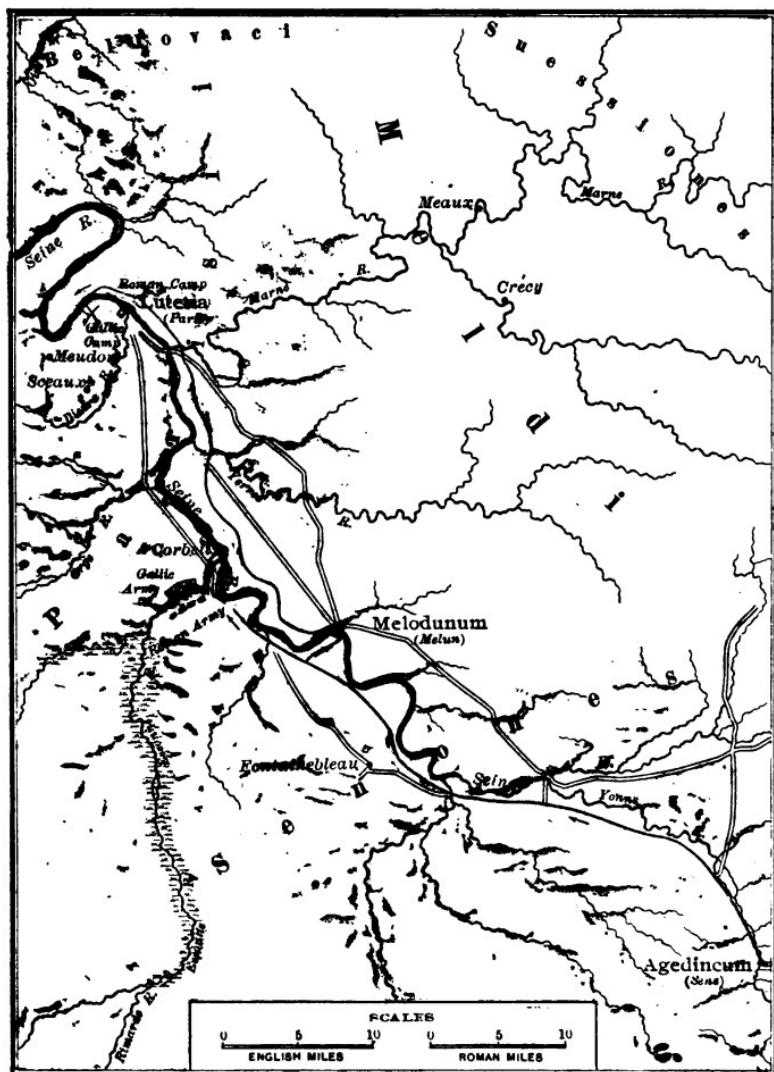
Itaque admodum māgnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus cōflectis contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit; vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitatē opportūnō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus primō aspectū perturbatīs incolumem exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agris et pecoris cōpiam nactus, replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere īstituit.

Labienus marches toward Lutetia.

57 Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō, quod nūper ex Ītaliā vēnerat, relictō Agēdinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidiō, cum IIII legiōnibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum positum in īsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimis cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōflectus aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei militāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae īflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īstituit.

*He falls back and captures Metiosedum.
The Gauls follow him.*

58 Labiēnus primō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnire cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius fierī animadvertisit, silentiō ē castris tertīā vigiliā ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat, itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus.



THE CAMPAIGN OF LABIENUS AGAINST THE PARISII.

Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter L celeriterque coniūctīs atque eō mīlitibus impositīs et reī novitāte perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trā- 5 dūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab eis, quī Metiosēdō profūgerant, Lutetiam incendī, pontēsque ēius oppidi rescindī iubēnt; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsidunt. 10

He learns of Caesar's repulse, and of the spread of the insurrection.

Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam 59 dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rū-mōrēs adferēbantur; Gallique in conloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse cōfirmābant. Bellovacī au- 15 tem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īfidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commū-tatiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōsiliūm atque anteā sēnsērat intellegēbat; neque iam ut aliquid adqui- 20 rēret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitās in Galliā māxi-mam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, instābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; 25 tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclū-sās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantis subitō diffi-cultatiib⁹ obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium peten-dum vidēbat.

A stratagem of Labienus.

60 Itaque sub vesperum cōsiliō convocātō cohortātus ut ea quae imperāset diligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit; et p̄imā cōflectā vigiliā ⁵ mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. V cohortēs quās minimē firmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstīmābat castrīs praesidiō relinquīt; v ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās ^{dē} mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentīs adversō flūmine ¹⁰ māgnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquirīt etiam lītres; hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitatās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvēs adpellī iusserat.

Causes the Gauls to divide their forces.

61 Eō cum esset ventum, explorātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositi, inopīnantēs, quod māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque equitibus Rōmānīs administrātibus quōs eī negōtiō praefererat, celeriter trānsmittitur. Unō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostib⁹ nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuētūdinem tumultuārī, et māgnūm īre agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī, et paulō īfrā militēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, ²⁰ quod exīstīmābant tribus locīs trānsire legiōnēs [atque omnēs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgre- ²⁵

derētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Labiēnus routs them, and rejoins Caesar.

Prīmā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportatī et 62 hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātūs, ut suae p̄ristinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum 5 proeliōrum retinērent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius ductū saepenumero hostēs superāssent, prae-sentem adesse existimārent, dat sīgnū proelī. Prīmō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstite-rat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam cōiciuntur; ab 10 sinistrō, quem locum XII legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ūr-dinēs hostium trānsfixī pilis concidissent, tamen ācer-rimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspicīōnē fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. 15

At incertō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum VII le-giōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātūm quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnēm ostendērunt sīnaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quis-quam locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque 20 sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At eī qui in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēnī erant relīctī cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum victō-rum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sīc cum suīs fu- 25 gientibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxē-runt, ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cō-fectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum, ubi impedimenta tōtiū exercitūs relicta erant; inde cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervenit. 30

The revolution spreads. Vercingetorix is formally elected commander-in-chief. The Haeduī are jealous.

63 Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritātē, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs ūtuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs 5 dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Pe-tunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēs-que bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperiū trādātur; et rē in contrō-versiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte 10 indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitū-dinis suffrāgiis rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercin-getorīgem probant imperātōrem.

Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingones, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, 15 quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs p̄rincipātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtatiōnem et Cae-saris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt; neque tamen sus-20 ceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquiis sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscētēs Eporēdorīx et Virido-mārus Vercingetorīgī pārent.

The plans of Vercingetorix.

64 Ille imperat reliquiis cīvitātibus obsidēs, dēnique eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō, 25 celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentatiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque

Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant, aedificiaque incendant; quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequī videant.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī 5 sunt finitimi prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Areco- 10 micōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandes- tīnis nūntiis lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum p̄rincipib⁹ pecūniās, cīvātī autem impe- 15 riūm tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar sends for German cavalry.

Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohōr- 65 tium duārum et xx, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Hel- vii suā sponte cum finitimis proeliō congressi pelluntur, et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Caburi filiō, p̄rincipe cīvi- 20 tatis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis māgnā cum cūrā et diligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū su- 25 periōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus iti- neribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus 30

idōneis equis ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitib⁹ Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix urges the Gallic cavalry to attack the Romans.

- 66 Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs; equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperatī, conveniūnt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit, convocatīsque ad cōsilium praefectīs equitū vēnissē tempus victōriæ dēmōnstrat: Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere; id sibi ad praeſentem obtinendā libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; māiōrib⁹ enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adoriantur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōfidat, relictīs impedimentīs suaे salūtī cōſulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriarū et dīgnitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitib⁹ hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant equitēs sāctissimō iūre iūrandō cōfirmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequītārit.

The attack is made, but fails.

- 67 Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandū adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē

*From the
Northwest.*



*From the
Southwest.*



*From the
Southeast.*



*From the
Northeast.*



VIEWS OF MONT AUXOIS, THE SITE OF ALESIA.

aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertitō dīvīsum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur únā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta inter legiōnēs recipiuntur. Si quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Caesar aciemque cōvertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxili cōfirmābat.

Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiis cōssēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfēctionem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiis praefuerat, et Eporēdorix, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contendērant.

Vercingetorix retreats to Alesia, which Caesar decides to besiege.

Fugātō omni equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs cōlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentis in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīs-

que hostibus, quod equitātū, quā māximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlētēs Alesiam circumvallārē īstituit.

Description of Alesia.

69 Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summiō admodum 5 ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī 10 altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūixerant. Ēius mūnītiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs īstituēbātur, cir- 15 cuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus āc fir- mīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

Battle of cavalry on the plain. The Gauls badly beaten.

70 Opere īstitutō fit equestre prolium in eā plānitiē, quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā VI ab utrīsque contendit. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, 25 nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostiū peditātū fiat.

Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur: hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit mā-

gna caedēs; nōn nūlli relīctis equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trānscedere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vällō cōnstituerat prōmoyērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturban-
tur; venīrī ad sē cōfestim exīstimatēs ad arma con- 5
clāmant; nōn nūlli perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudi, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfictīs, complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry, and calls for aid from all Gaul.

Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs 71 perficiantur, cōsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdēntibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant; sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem ha- 15 beant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertātē meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīlēgentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interi- tūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī 20 posse parcendō.

Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermis- sum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frū- mentum omne ad sē referī iubet; capitis poenam eīs quī nōn pāruerint, cōnstituit; pecūs, cūius māgna erat 25 cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, yirītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātīm mētīrī instituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum admini- strāre parat.

Caesar's blockading works. Trenches.

72 Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfūgīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īstituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantum patēret, quantum summa labra distārent; reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit, [id] hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatiū complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militū cingerētur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs cōicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus āc dēmissī locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem āc vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit; huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandib⁹ cervīs ēminentib⁹ ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, qui ascēsum hostium tardārent; et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedidit quae pedēs lxxx inter sē distārent.

An elaborate system of obstructions and defenses.

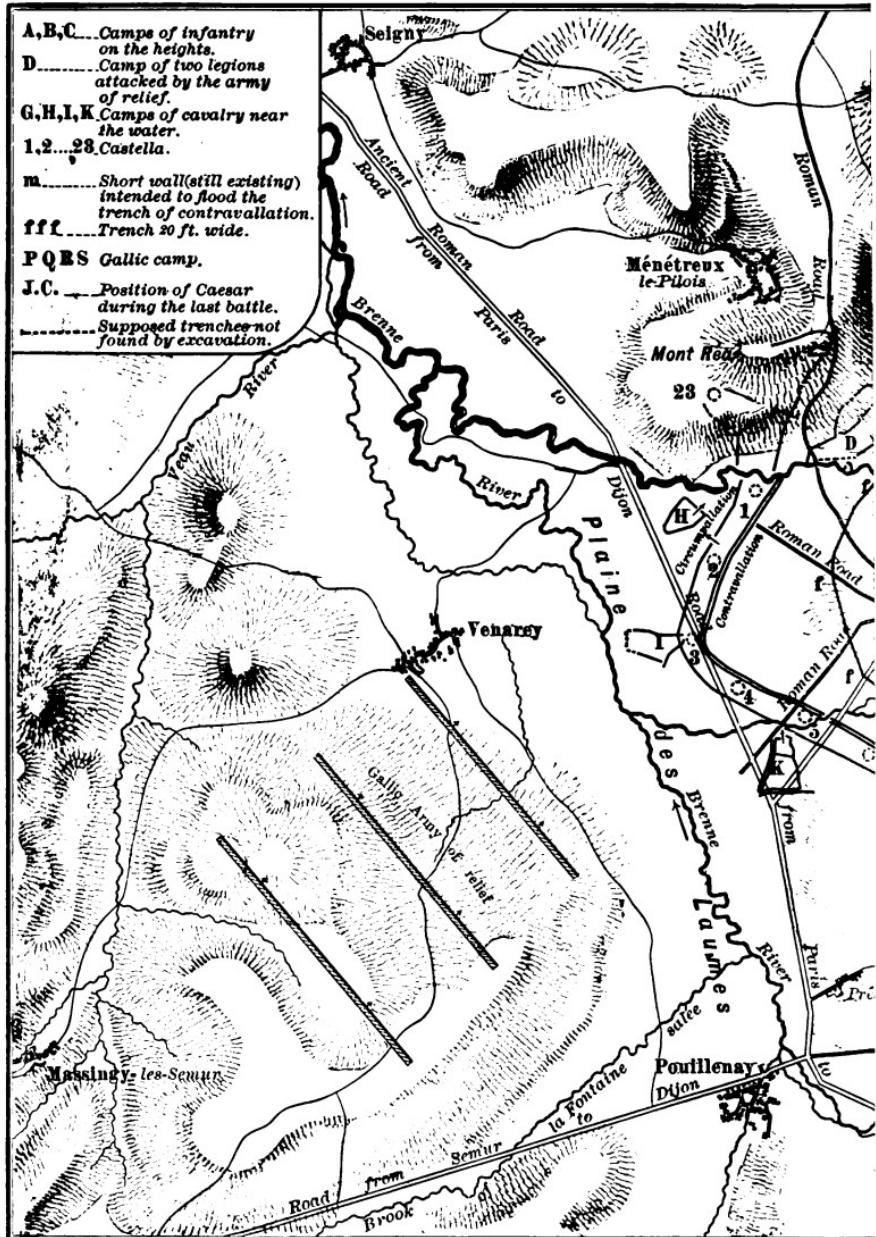
73 Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; āc nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūrib⁹ portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militū mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admōdum firmīs rāmis abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs āc praeacūtīs cacū minib⁹, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īfimō revinctī, nē

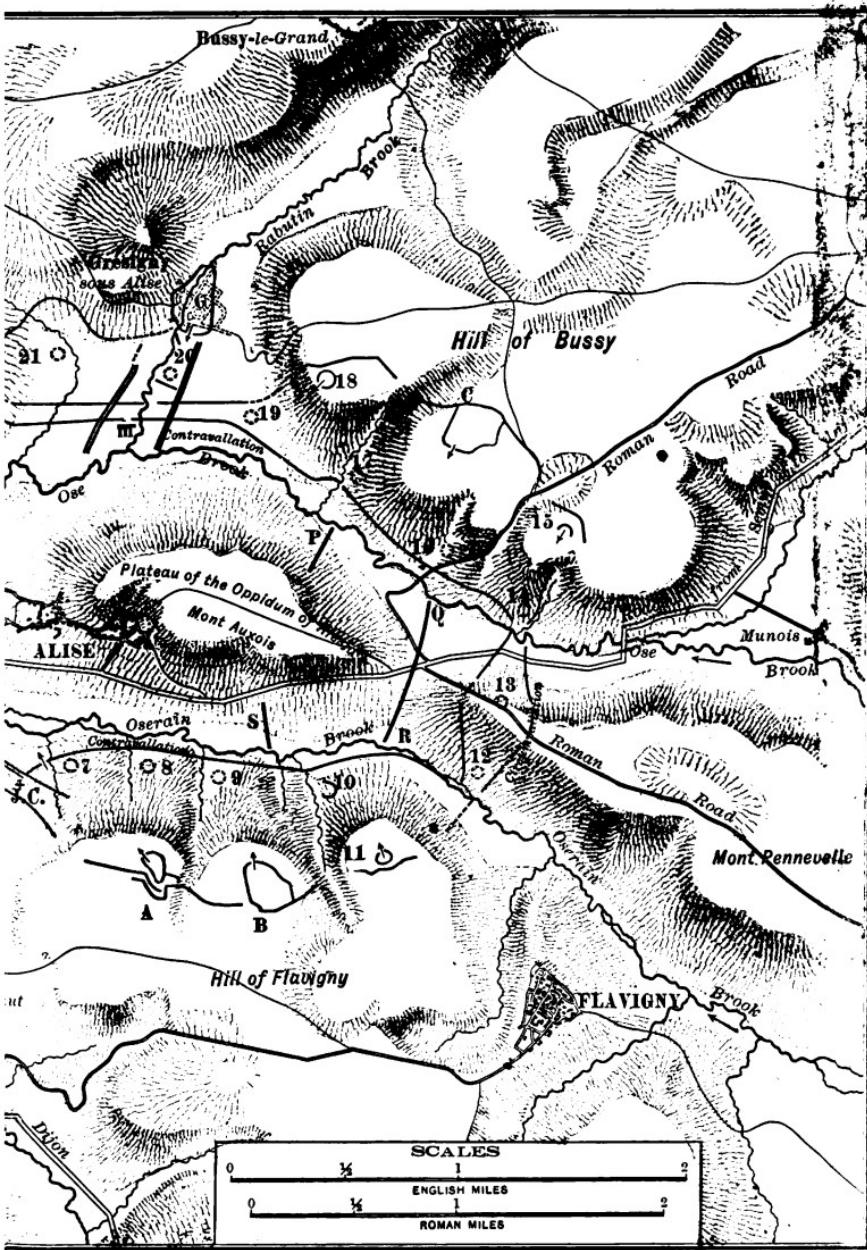
A, B, C Camps of infantry
on the heights.
D Camp of two legions
attacked by the army
of relief.
G, H, I, K Camps of cavalry near
the water.
1, 2...28 Castella.

m Short wall(still existing)
intended to flood the
trench of contravallation.
fff Trench 20 ft. wide.

P Q R S Gallic camp.

J.C. Position of Caesar
during the last battle.
Supposed trenches not
found by excavation.





† ALESIA.

revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ūrdi-nēs, coniūctī inter sē atque implicatī; quō quī intrāver-
rant, sē ipsī acūtissimis vällis induēbant. Hōs cippōs
appellābant.

Ante hōs obliquīs ūrdinibus in quīncūncem dispo-si-tīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īfīmū fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et prae-ūstī dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius dīgitīs IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandi et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īfīmō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibūs ac virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ūrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitū-dine flōris līlīum appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedēm longae ferreīs hāmis īfixīs tōtae in terram īfodiēban-tur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Similar defenses against the outer enemy.

Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtūs quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā XIIIII mīlia passuum complexus parēs ēiusdem generis mūnitionēs, diversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat ēius discessū] mūni-tionūm praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum XXX pābu-lum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

General levy of Gauls for the relief of Alesia.

Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō pīn-cipūm indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statūtū, sed cē-

tum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habere possent.

Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiā-
5 vīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcībus, [Blannoviīs,] mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleu-
tetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Ar-
vernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonībus, Bitu-
rīgībus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibūs duodēna mīlia;
10 Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcībus; octōna Pictonībus
et Turonīs et Parīsīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibūs, Am-
biānīs, Mediōmatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs,
Nitiobrogiībus; v mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomānīs; totidem
Atrebātībus; IIII Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs et] Aulercīs
15 Eburovīcībus III; Rauracīs et Bōis bīna; x ūniversīs
cīvitātībus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum
cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in nu-
merō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osis-
mī, Venetī, Lexovij, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci suum
20 numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque
arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque
cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā
Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia mīserunt.

The Gallic army approaches.

76 Hūius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus,
25 fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britan-
niā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem
esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinīs
attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cō-
sēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis
30 recte vanda neque Beneficiis neque amīcitiae ~~me~~

moriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in bellum incumberent.

Coāctis equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum finib⁹ recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātūr, praefectī cōnstituēbantur: Commiō 5 Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsōbrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attri-
buuntur, quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Om-nēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, 10 neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tan-tæ multitudinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, foris tantæ cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

Council of war in Alesia. Desperate plan of Critognatus.

At eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā 77 auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūmptō omniī frū-mentō īsciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Āc variis dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetere-unda ūrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātis, “ Nihil,” in-quit, “ dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissi-mam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs 25 habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mol-litia, nōn vīrtus, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse, 30

Qui sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.

“ Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem, — tantum apud mē dignitās potest, — sī nūllam praeterquam vī-
5 tae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō ca-
piendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum mīlibus LXXX
ūnō locō interfectis propinquīs cōsanguineisq̄e nos-
trīs animī fore exīstīmātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus
10 proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre qui vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum ne-
glēxērunt; nec stultiā āc temeritatē vestrā aut animī imbēcillitatē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt,
15 dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitatīs? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotidiē exercētī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōn-
firmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praeceptō, hīs utiminī testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius reī
20 timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

“ Quid ergō meī cōsiliī est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonum-
que fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī āc similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus qui aetātē ad bellum inūtilēs
25 vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādi-
dērunt. Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertatis causā īstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulatā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitatē, finibus qui-
30 dem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquē-
runt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt,

nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condicōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquis nātiōnibus geruntur, īgnōrātis, 5 respicte finitimat Galliam quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgib⁹ commūtātis, secūrib⁹ subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.”

The inhabitants of the town are driven out, but Caesar refuses to let them pass.

Sententiīs dictīs cōstituunt ut eī qui valētūdine 78 aut aetātē inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque 10 omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condicōnem. Mandubii, qui eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōrib⁹ exīre 15 cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessis- sent, flentēs omnibus precibus ūrābant ut sē in servi- tūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vällō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of the relieving army.

Intereā Commiū reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa 79 imperī permīssa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōsīdunt. Pos- terō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plāni- tiem, quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum III patēre 25 dēmōnstrāvimus, complent, pedestrēsque cōpiās pau- lum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōrib⁹ cōsti- tuunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum.

Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnīum animī ad laetitiām excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpīs ante oppidūm consistunt, et proximām fossām crātibūs integunt atque aggere explent, sēque
5 ad ēruptiōnēm atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

A hard battle in the valley. Defeat of the Gauls.

80 Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātūm ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnībus castrīs, quae sum-
10 ium undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs mīlītēs intentī pūgnāe prōventūm exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succur-
15 rerent et nostrōrum equitūm impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdē-
bant.

Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnībus partibus et eī quī mūnītiōnībus continēbantur et eī quī ad 20 auxiliū convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnīum rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē aut turpiter factū cēlārī poterat; utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occi-
25 cāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetūm fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfictīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nos-
trī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colligendī fac-
30 ultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prōcesserant

maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recē-
pērunt.

They attack the Romans at night.

Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō 81 crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressi ad campestrēs mūnī- 5 tiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificatiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidi- bus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque quae ad op- pūgnatiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem 10 tempore clāmōre exauditō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Ver- cingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrilibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, āc glandibus 15 Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs ademptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla cōiciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus haē partēs ad dēfenderidum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēixerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulte- 20 riōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

But are again repulsed.

Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multi- 82 tūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius suc- cessērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō āc tūrribus 25 trāiectī pilīs mūrālibus interibant. Multīs undique vul- neribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx ad- peteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At

interiorēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus adpropinquā-
5 rent. Ita rē īfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

Last effort of the relieving forces.

83 Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem cir-
10 cuitūs opere circumplexī nōn potuerant nostri; neces- sāriōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēce-
rant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebi-
lus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium
15 LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quō- que pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; ade- undī tempus dēfiniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātūr. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernū, ūnum ex IIII
20 ducibūs, propinquūm Vercingetorīgis, praeſiciunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfēctō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit mīlītēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merī-
diēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā
25 dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitā-
tus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cō- piae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Coöperation of the besieged. Great straits of the Romans.

84 Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiaē suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reli-

quaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temp-tantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnītiōnibus disti-nētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad 5 terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, qui post tergum pūgnantibus exsistit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vi-dent virtūte cōstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae ab-sunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Hard fighting on both sides.

Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte 85 gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Mā-ximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercas-sivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgnū habet mōmentū. Aliī tēla cōiciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgā-tīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in 20 mūnītiōnēm coniectus et ascēnsū dat Gallīs, et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī cōtegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Caesar encourages his troops.

His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohorti- 86 bus vī subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī susti-nēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohō-tātūr nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmi-cātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere.

Interiorēs, dēspératīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnitiōnum, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, ag-
5 gere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōrīcam rescindunt.

His activity in the fight.

87 Mittit pīmum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesār, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātū; pos-trēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs sub-10 sidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostib⁹, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs ne-15 que fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coactīs XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesār ut proeliō intersit.

The Gauls are finally defeated with great slaughter.

88 Ēius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō [quō ī-sīgnī in proeliīs ūtī cōsuērat] turmisque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locī superiōrib⁹ haec dēclīvia et dēvēxa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrīmque clāmōre sublātō ex-25 cipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī omissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius,

dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellanus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caudem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, 5 cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē auditā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis āc tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessi, omnes hostium cōpiae dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur; mā- 10 gnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Surrender of Vercingetorix.

Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id 89 bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitatūm sed cōmūnis libertatis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for- 15 tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīcipēs prōdūci. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō cas- 20 trīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dē- ditur; arma prōciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Ar- vernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Distribution of Caesar's troops for the winter.

Thanksgiving at Rome.

Hīs rēbus cōfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvi- 90 tātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit.

Captivōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.

T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficisci iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutis lum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipient. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Bīturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulīs 10 legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cōgnitīs Rōmae diē-
15 rum xx supplicatiō redditur.

N O T E S

NOTE.—The references in the notes are to the pages and lines of the text. W., West's Grammar; B., Bennett's Grammar; A., Allen and Greenough's Grammar; H., Harkness's (Complete or Short) Grammar. N., "note"; R., "remark"; *i. e.*, *id est*, "that is"; *sc.*, *scilicet*, "namely," or "supply"; *sqq.*, *sequentes*, "and the following"; *e. g.*, *exempli gratia*, "for example"; *cf.*, *confer*, "compare"; *lit.*, "literally."

BOOK ONE—B. C. 58

INTRODUCTION—GAUL AND ITS NATIONS, ch. I.

THE HELVETIAN WAR, MARCH TO JUNE, ch. 2-29. In the spring of 58 B. C. the whole Helvetian nation, amounting to 360,000 souls, attempted to pass through the midst of Gaul in order to settle in the west of the country. Their own country was confined, largely mountainous, and not fertile. Moreover, they were constantly harassed by German tribes on the north. Preparations for the migration had been previously made under the direction of Orgetorix. Before their departure he was charged with a treasonable conspiracy, and killed himself. Caesar parleyed a fortnight with the Helvetians, while he assembled troops and fortified the south bank of the Rhone, to prevent their crossing into the Roman Province. They were thus forced to go through the narrow pass between the Rhone and the Jura Mountains. Caesar pursued them, skirmished with them, and defeated them in two bloody battles in which more than 200,000 of them perished. Then he forced the remnant to return to their country, where, before starting, they had burned all their dwellings.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS, JUNE TO SEPTEMBER, ch. 30-54. Quarrels between the two important Gallic tribes, the Sequani and the Haedui, had led to war. About three years before, the former had asked the assistance of some of the Germans and their king Ariovistus. These allies took a large part of the territory of the Sequani, and otherwise greatly oppressed them. The Romans, in 59 B. C., foreseeing the danger from the Helvetian invasion, made an alliance with the Haedui, and at the same time recognized the claims of Ariovistus. But after crushing the Helvetians, Caesar was at liberty to espouse the cause of his allies the Haedui, deliver the Sequani from their oppressors, and drive Ariovistus out of Gaul. This was accomplished after much marching and maneuvering, and some negotiations, by a decisive battle in Alsace, south of Strasburg, between the Vosges Mountains and the Rhine, in the month of September.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE I

I. Gallia: see map, frontispiece. The term *Gallia*, as here used, excludes Cisalpine Gaul and the Province, but includes most of the Netherlands, the country on the west bank of the Rhine, and much of Switzerland, and thus extends far beyond the limits of modern France.

est . . . divisa: *is divided*, not *has been divided*; this is not a true perfect tense, but a present, *divisa* being a predicate adjective; W. 293; B. 337; A. 291. b; H. 394. i. When you look up a grammar reference be careful to notice the examples. They will often be of more help than the statement of a rule.

omnis: *taken as a whole.*

quarum: partitive genitive; W. 355; B. 201. i; A. 216. a. 2; H. 440. 5.

unam: sc., *partem*. It is best in translating this sentence to change to the passive construction, in order to preserve more nearly the order and emphasis of the Latin; thus: *One of which is inhabited by the Belgians, etc.*

2. Belgae: the population of Gaul was much mixed even in Caesar's day. Successive hordes of invaders of Celtic race and language had been coming into the country for several centuries, conquering the earlier inhabitants, intermarrying with them, and, except in the south, imposing their language upon them. These Celtic conquerors were a tall, fair race; the populations which preceded them were shorter and darker. The conquering race were most numerous in the northern part of Gaul, and were less modified by mixing with the earlier inhabitants. They were the latest comers and the least civilized of the Celts. But they were much mixed with German tribes in the northeast. See Bk. II, ch. i.

aliam: *the second, lit. another.*

Aquitani: Iberians, a short, dark people, living on both sides of the Pyrenees. They were but slightly mixed with the conquering Celtic race, and retained their own language.

qui: *those who*; the antecedent of *qui* is *ei* understood, the subject of *incolunt*.

3. Celtæ: in the great central division of the country the population was more mixed than in Aquitania, and less purely Celtic than in Belgic Gaul. The language was Celtic, and the physical characteristics of the Celtic race were common enough to make a decided impression upon foreign observers.

Galli: the people of the great central division of Gaul—*Gauls*, in the narrower sense of the word.

4. lingua: ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H.

480 The *Aquitani* spoke Iberian languages; the *Galli* proper, Celtic; the *Belgae*, Celtic, sometimes mixed with German.

inter se: from each other; *inter* expresses any reciprocal relation; W. 425. 1; B. 245; A. 196. f; H. 502. 1.

6. *dividit*: singular, because the two rivers form a single boundary line; W. 298. 1; B. 255. 3; A. 205. b; H. 392. 4.

7. *Horum omnium*: partitive genitive, with *fortissimi*.

propterea quod: because (lit. "on account of this, that"), or, and the reason is that.

8. *cultu atque humanitate*: refinement and civilization.

provinciae: the Roman province of Transalpine Gaul, afterward called *Gallia Narbonensis*, had been organized about 120 B. C. Its name survives in modern *Provence*. See map, frontispiece.

9. *mercatores*: traders and peddlers, traveling with pack-animals or wagons. They sold other commodities, but especially wine, and the phrase "a slave for a jar of wine" was proverbial.

commeant: go back and forth. The most traveled route was along the line of the Loire.

10. *ea*: object of *important*.

quae . . . pertinent: the author refers especially to the wines of Italy. Barbarians are prone to intoxication, and readily adopt the drinks of civilized peoples.

ad effeminandos animos: the gerundive with *ad* is used to express purpose, or that toward which something tends. W. 639. 3, 640; B. 338. 3, 339. 2; A. 300; H. 628.

11. *Germanis*: dative with an adjective of nearness; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

trans Rhenum: the Rhine has been for ages the historic boundary, between the Gauls, or French, and the Germans.

12. *continenter*: adverb formed from the present participle of *contineo*. It is important to notice groups of related words, and see how the same idea appears in different parts of speech. Compare in a lexicon the meanings of *contineo*, *continens*, *continenter*, *continentia*, *continuus*, *contentus*.

Qua de causa: For this reason; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 180. f; H. 510. Note that a preposition of one syllable is apt to stand between its noun and the modifier of the latter.

13. *Helvetii*: notice that they are counted as Gauls, though living in what we call Switzerland. See map, frontispiece.

quoque: i. e. as well as the *Belgae*.

reliquos: the rest of.

virtute: ablative of specification; *in valor*; in same construction as *lingua*, etc., in line 4 above.

14. *proeliis*: ablative of means or manner.
 15. *finibus*: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 464. 1.
 17. *Eorum*: i. e. of the Gauls, the people put for the country.
Gallos obtinere: indirect discourse, depending on *dicitum est*; the direct form would be *Galli obtinent*. *Obtinere* is to occupy (hold against others), not "to obtain." For the construction, see W. 598, 599, 600; B. 331. 1; 332. N; A. 272, R; H. 615. *Gallos* here = *Celtas*.
 19. *ab*: on the side of, in the direction of.

PAGE 2

1. *vergit*: extends, stretches.
septentriōnes: the north; the "seven oxen" (*septem triones*) which draw the "plow," the seven stars in the "Great Bear" or "Dipper." The word is used in the singular two lines below.
 2. *Galliae*: "Celtic" Gaul, just described, not *Gallia omnis*.
 6. *ad Hispaniam*: near, next to Spain. This part of the ocean is the Bay of Biscay.
spectat, etc.: looks, faces; it extends north and west from the frontier of the Roman Province.



CHAPTER 2

9. *Orgetorix*: for this and all other proper names, see Vocabulary. Make it a rule to notice the quantity of the penult syllables of proper names and to pronounce them correctly. There is no reason why proper names should not be as correctly pronounced as any other words.

M. *Messala* [et] M. *Pisone consulibus*: the Romans designated a date by naming the consuls of the year in question. Translate: in the consulship of, etc. *M.* = *Marco*. Notice hereafter that bracketed words are generally not to be translated; they are words which have crept into the text by mistakes in copying or otherwise. The year here designated is 61 B. C. The construction is ablative absolute, *Messala* (and) *Piso* being consuls. W. 397, 398; B. 227. 1; A. 255. a; H. 489.

10. *cupiditate*: ablative of cause or means.
coniurationem: this word means a league formed with an oath; con, together; iuro, to swear.—The Romans used the word in the same bad sense as the English "conspiracy." Caesar calls this a *conspiracy*, but he was looking at the matter from the Roman point of view.

11. *civitati*: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 2.

11. *ut . . . exirent*: this clause is the direct object of *persuasit*; W. 511, 512; B. 294, 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565. In regard to the sequence of tenses, *persuasit . . . exirent*, see W. 462, 463; B. 267, 268. 1; A. 286; H. 543.

12. *perfacile esse . . . potiri*: indirect discourse, depending upon *dicens* or *dixit*, implied in *persuasit*; W. 598, 599, 600; B. 313, 314. I. 2; A. 330. *e*; 336. 2. N. 2; H. 642. I. *Potiri* is the subject of *perfacile esse*; W. 623; B. 327; A. 189. *d*; H. 615.

cum . . . praestarent: since they excelled; W. 542; B. 286. 2; 314; A. 326; 336. 2; H. 598.

virtute: ablative of specification.

13. *imperio*: why ablative? W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. I.

14. *Id*: this refers to the preceding clause *perfacile . . . potiri*.

hoc: ablative of cause; W. 384; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475.

15. *una ex parte*: on one side; the order of words is like *qua de causa*, page 1, line 12; see note.

16. *qui*: agrees in gender not with *flumine*, but with *Rhodano*.

21. *His rebus siebat*: thus it happened; the subject of *siebat* is the clause *ut . . . possent*; W. 523; B. 297. 2; A. 332. *a*. 2; H. 571. I.

For the tense of *siebat*, see W. 448, 449; B. 260; A. 277; H. 534.

minus: less . . . than they wished.

22. *finitimis*: why dative? W. 332; B. 187. III. 2; A. 228. N. 2; H. 429.

qua ex parte: and in this respect.

23. *bellandi*: objective genitive depending on an adjective of desire; W. 352; B. 338. I. *b*; A. 218. *a*; H. 451. I.

24. *Multitudine*: in ch. 29 the number is stated as 368,000.

26. *Milia passuum*: miles; *mille passus* = 5,000 Roman feet = 4,854 English feet; *passus* = 2 *gradus* = 5 Roman feet = 4 feet 10 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches English. *Gradus* is a step, *passus* is the distance from the place where either foot is put down in walking to the place where it is put down again —i. e., two steps. Here *milia* is accusative of extent of space; W. 324; B. 181; A. 257; H. 417; *passuum*, partitive genitive.

27. *ccxl*: *ducenta et quadraginta*, 240.

clxxx: *centum et octoginta*, 180; probably a copyist's mistake for lxxx.

patebant: the imperfect is the appropriate tense for description; the perfect for the narrative of events.

Probably the real reason for this exodus of the Helvetians was the pressure of German nations behind them.

CHAPTER 3

29. constituerunt : sc. *Helvetii*.

ea : object of *comparare*.

pertinerent : subjunctive, because it expresses the thought of the Helvetians, the subject of *constituerunt*, rather than that of the author ; W. 620 ; B. 323 ; A. 340 ; H. 649, 652.

PAGE 3

1. comparare : object or complement of *constituerunt* ; W. 626 ; B. 328. 1 ; A. 271. a ; H. 609.

carorum : two-wheeled carts, often covered. This is a word of Celtic origin, akin to our "car."

quam maximum : *as large as possible* ; W. 414. 4 ; B. 240. 3 ; A. 93. b ; H. 159. 2.

3. suppeteret : subjunctive of purpose ; W. 506, 517 ; B. 282 ; A. 317 ; H. 568.

5. sibi : dative of reference with *satis*.

6. duxerunt : *they reckoned*.

confirmant : historical present ; so *deligitur* and *suscipit*, line 8, *persuadet*, line 9, and *dat*, line 16 ; W. 447, (1) ; B. 259. 3 ; A. 276. d ; H. 532. 3.

8. civitates : the independent clans or tribes of Gaul, numbering sixty, more or less. Gaul was not a nation, but a geographical expression.

9. filio, Sequano : appositives to *Castico* ; W. 291 ; B. 169. 2 ; A. 183, 184 ; H. 393.

10. regnum : *headship* ; personal, not hereditary power ; there were at that time few regular monarchies in Gaul.

annos : accusative of duration ; W. 324 ; B. 181. 1 ; A. 256 ; H. 417.

11. obtinuerat : *had held* ; do not translate *obtineo*, "obtain."

amicus : this title was sometimes conferred by the Roman Senate as a compliment ; predicate nominative ; W. 290 ; B. 168. 2. b) ; A. 185, 239. 1. N. 2 ; H. 393.

12. ut . . . occuparet : *to seize*, not "to occupy" ; this clause is the object of *persuadet*, just like the clause *ut de finibus . . . exirent*, page 2, line 10. As to the sequence of tenses, see W. 462, 470 ; B. 294, 295. 1 ; A. 286 ; 287. e ; H. 543, 546.

13. Dumnorigi : dative with *persuadet*, line 16 ; W. 330 ; B. 187. II. a ; A. 227 ; H. 426. 2.

14. principatum : this word has much the same meaning as *regnum*, explained in the note to line 10.

15. plebi acceptus : *popular* ; two or more Latin words are often

best rendered by a single one in English, and *vice versa*; *acceptus* is here not a perfect participle, but an adjective.

ut idem conaretur: *to make the same attempt*, lit. *to attempt the same*: notice that the Latin often expresses by a verb what the English expresses by a noun.

17. Perfacile factu: *very easy to do*; this is the predicate with *esse*, of which the subject is *conata perficere*; the clause *perfacile factu esse conata perficere* is the object of *probat*; *factu*, supine; ablative of specification; W. 655; B. 340. 2; A. 303; H. 635.

probat: *he tried to prove*; this sense of a verb is called the “*conative*” (*conor*, to try); W. 446. 2; B. 259. 2; A. 276. b; H. 530.

18. ipse: Orgetorix.

obtenturus esset: first periphrastic conjugation; W. 188; B. 115; A. 129; H. 236. This is needed because there is no future subjunctive. The subjunctive is used here because it expresses not the author's thought, but that of Orgetorix; as *pertinherent* in ch. 3. 1, expresses the thought of the Helvetii.

19. esse dubium: this is the infinitive of indirect discourse, reporting what Orgetorix said; the subject is the clause *quin . . . possent*.

quin, etc.: a clause introduced by *quin* after a negative expression of doubt; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. d; H. 595. I.

Galliae: partitive genitive; W. 355; B. 201. 1; A. 216. a. 2; H. 440. 5.

plurimum: why accusative? W. 316; B. 176. 3. a; A. 238. b; H. 416. 2.

20. se, suis . . . suo: the reflexive pronoun and its possessive adjective regularly, though not invariably, refer to the subject of the verb of the sentence in which they occur; W. 421. 1; B. 244. I. I, II; A. 196; H. 503.

Copiiis: not “forces,” “troops,” as usual, but *means, wealth*.

21. regna: used in the same sense as in line 10, above.

conciliaturum: sc. *esse*, which is usually omitted in the future infinitive.

22. inter se: *to each other*; construe with *dant*.

fidem et ius iurandum dant: *gave a promise confirmed by an oath*. This is a case of the construction called *hendiadys*; W. 740; B. 374. 4; A. 385; H. 751. 3. N. 1.

regno occupato: = *cum (or si) regnum occuparisset*; ablative absolute equivalent to a clause; W. 397, 399; B. 227. 2. a), b); A. 255. d. I. 4; 310. a; H. 489.

23. tres . . . populos: do not say “three people,” but *three nations*; i. e. *Helvetios, Sequanos, Haeduos*.

24. Galliae: *potior* sometimes takes not the ablative, but the genitive; W. 371; B. 212. 2; A. 249. *a*; H. 477. I. 3.

sese: subject of *posse*.

posse: the present infinitive for the future, which is more regular with *spero*.

CHAPTER 4

25. Ea res: *this*; it is generally best not to translate *res*, "thing" or "affair."

per indicium: = *per indices*, through informers.

Moribus: why ablative? W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N.; H. 475. 3.

26. ex: we should say *in*; similarly the Latin says *pugnare ex equo*, "to fight on horseback."

27. damnatum: = *if condemned*; sc. *eum*, object of *sequi*; W. 651; B. 337. 2. *b*; A. 292; H. 638. 2.

poenam sequi: this infinitive clause is the subject of the impersonal *oportebat*; W. 623; B. 330; A. 270. *b*; H. 615.

ut . . . cremaretur: substantive clause in apposition with *poenam*; W. 509; B. 294; A. 329. 2; N. before 331; H. 571. 4.

28. Die: why feminine? W. 98; B. 53; A. 30. *a*. 73; H. 135; ablative of time; W. 406; B. 230; A. 256; H. 486.

causae: objective genitive depending on *dictionis*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 400. 2.

dictionis: genitive defining *die*; W. 348; B. 195; A. 213; H. 439.

29. familiam: *retinue*, not a family, but a household in the feudal sense, including a large number of servants and vassals.

ad: adverb with *decem*. It does not affect the case of the numeral when so used, as a preposition would.

milia: in the plural a noun; in the singular an indeclinable adjective; W. 133; B. 80. 5; A. 94. *e*; H. 168; accusative here in apposition with *familiam*.

30. obaeratos: *debtors*; for derivation, see Vocabulary; for the condition of these unfortunate persons, see page 149, ll. 13-16.

PAGE 4

1. eodem: adverb of place.

2. per eos . . . eripuit: by this means he escaped having to plead his cause.

ne . . . diceret: a negative clause of purpose; W. 506; B. 282; A. 317; H. 568.

se eripuit: i. e. he intimidated the judges and so avoided a trial.

Cum . . . conaretur : a clause of time ; W. 536 ; B. 288. I. B. ; A. 325 ; H. 600. II.

3. **ius suum** : i. e. the authority of the state to punish traitors.

4. **magistratus** : nominative plural.

5. **cogerent** : same construction as *conaretur*, line 3.

neque : = *et non*.

6. **ut** : with the indicative here means *as*, sometimes *when*.

quin . . . consiverit : *that he took his own life*, lit. "but that he decreed death to himself." A clause introduced by *quin* follows negative expressions of doubt and the like ; W. 576 ; B. 298 ; A. 319. d ; H. 595. I.

ipse : *self*; agrees in Latin with the subject, in English with the object.

CHAPTER 5

8. **nihilo** : ablative of degree of difference ; W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 479 ; *nihilo minus* is practically one word, "none-the-less," but the Latin never uses hyphens.

9. **conantur** : historical present ; W. 447. (1) ; B. 259. 3 ; A. 276. d ; H. 532. 3.

ut . . . exeant : substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *id*.

10. **Ubi** : notice that *ubi*, "when," takes the indicative ; *cum*, usually the subjunctive ; W. 530, 531 ; B. 287. 1 ; A. 324 ; H. 602.

paratos esse : not perfect passive ; *paratos* is to be taken as a predicate adjective, *ready*. Cf. *divisa*, page 1, line 1.

oppida : walled *towns*.—*vicos*, line 11 : open *villages*.

11. **numero** : ablative of specification ; W. 396 ; B. 226 ; A. 253 ; H. 480.

12. **incendunt . . . comburunt** : *set fire to . . . burned up*.

13. **portaturi erant** : *intended to carry*; for the periphrastic conjugations, see W. 188 ; B. 115 ; A. 129 ; H. 236.

14. **domum** : accusative of limit of motion with the verbal noun *reditionis* ; W. 325. 2 ; B. 182. 1. b ; A. 258. b ; H. 419. I.

reditionis : objective genitive, depending on *spe* ; W. 351 ; B. 200 ; A. 217 ; H. 440. 2.

spe sublata : ablative absolute ; W. 397 ; B. 227 ; A. 255 ; H. 489.

15. **ad . . . subeunda** : why gerundive and not gerund? W. 639. 3 ; 640 ; B. 339. 2 ; A. 296, 300 ; H. 628.

essent : subjunctive of purpose ; W. 517 ; B. 282 ; A. 317 ; H. 568.

trium mensium : genitive of measure ; W. 354 ; B. 203. 2 ; A. 215. b ; H. 440. 3.

16. **molita cibaria** : *meal*; unground grain was *frumentum*. Allowing $\frac{1}{4}$ lb. of meal apiece each day for 368,000 persons for 90 days, we

should have a total of nearly 25,000,000 lbs. This quantity would require more than 12,000 carts, allowing 2,000 lbs. to each cart. If 20 feet of road were allowed for each cart the line of march would extend about 47 miles.

domo: ablative of place from which; W. 405; B. 229. 1. b; A. 258. a; H. 462. 4.

efferre: object of *iubent*; W. 629; B. 331. II; A. 330. B. 2; H. 565. 3.

17. Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis: dative with *persuadent*; W. 330; B. 187. II, a; A. 227; H. 426. 2. See map, frontispiece.

18. uti: older form of *ut*, common in Cæsar.

usi: participle of *utor*; *adopting or to adopt and*, etc.

consilio: ablative with *usi*; W. 387; B. 218. I; A. 249; H. 477.

exustis: ablative absolute; translate in the active voice, *burning their towns, etc., or to burn their towns and*, etc.

19. una: adverb.

cum eis: i. e. *Helvetiis*; *secum* would be more regular, but this avoids ambiguity.

Boios: a Celtic tribe, then homeless, and wandering about in Gaul and other parts of Europe. Modern Bohemia gets its name from them.

20. Noricum: now eastern Bavaria and Upper Austria.

21. Noreiam: now *Neumarkt*, 125 miles S. W. of Vienna.

receptos: translate this by a separate indicative; *they received and*, etc.; *ad se* belongs to *receptos*, *sibi* to *adsciscunt*.

CHAPTER 6

23. itineribus: this word is not to be translated; the antecedent is often repeated in Latin in the relative clause; W. 303. 2; B. 251. 3; A. 200; H. 399. I.

24. possent: a clause of characteristic; W. 588; B. 283; A. 320; H. 591. 5.

unum (iter) . . . alterum (iter): in partitive apposition with *itinera*; W. 292. 2; B. 169. 5; A. 184. a; H. 393. 4.

Sequanos: see map, frontispiece. To reach the *Sequani* they had to go down the north bank of the Rhone, where it runs close under the Jura Mountains. This is now the route of the railway from Geneva to the French cities.

26. Singuli: *in single file*; distributive numeral; W. 130; B. 81. 4. a; A. 95. a; H. 164.

ducententur: subjunctive of characteristic, like *possent*, two lines above.

27. perpauci: *per-* is intensive; *very few*.

prohibere: the direct object is not expressed, but it is easy to supply one.

possent: subjunctive of result; W. 519; B. 284. 1; A. 319; H. 570.

28. provinciam: the Roman Province of Gaul referred to in chapter 1, and explained in a note to page 1, line 8. This was one of the provinces of which Caesar was governor, and this is what Caesar nearly always means in these Commentaries by the word *provincia*.

multo: ablative of degree of difference.

29. propterea quod: because; and the reason is that, etc.; cf. page 1, line 7, and note.

Allobrogum: on the south bank of the Rhone, in the Province.

PAGE 5

1. nuper pacati: subdued by C. Pomptinus, B.C. 61.

2. locis: ablative of place; on the omission of the preposition, see W. 402. 2; B. 228. 1. b; A. 258. f. 1; H. 485. 2.

vado: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. c; H. 476. There is now only one ford between Geneva and *Pas de l'Écluse*.

transitur: = *transiri potest*.

4. finibus: dative with *proximum*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

5. Allobrogibus: dative with *persuasuros*.

persuasuros: sc. *esse*, as also with *coacturos*, two lines below; future infinitive, indirect discourse for *persuadebimus*.

6. bono animo: well-disposed; sc. *esse*; ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224. 1; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

viderentur: subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 1, 2; H. 643.

7. vi: how is this declined? W. 85; B. 41; A. 61; H. 107.

suos: refers to *Allobrogibus*.

ut . . . paterentur: this clause is the object or complement of *persuasuros* and *coacturos*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

8. eos: i. e. *Helvetios*.

9. die: ablative of time when; W. 406; B. 230; A. 230; H. 486. Repetition of antecedent in relative clause is like that of *itineribus*, page 4, line 23. On the gender of *die*, see note to same word, page 3, line 28.

10. convenient: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose; on which they should assemble; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317; H. 590.

a. d. V. Kal. Apr.: = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*; translate as if it were *die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles*; *ante diem*, etc., is followed by the accusative, as if it were a preposition. This date was March 28th. But the Roman calendar was then very erroneous. It was re-

formed by Caesar in 46 B.C. W. 720, 721; B. 371. 5. *d*; A. 376; H. 754. III. 2.

11. consulibus: this ablative absolute construction, the usual Roman way of expressing dates, was explained in the note to page 2, line 9. The year indicated is 58 B.C.

CHAPTER 7

12. Caesari cum: in Latin the tendency is to put the emphatic word first; translate as if *cum* were the first word.

nuntiatum esset: when is the subjunctive used with *cum*? W. 536; B. 288. I. *B*; A. 325; H. 600. II.

eos . . . conari: substantive clause, in apposition with *id*, subject of *nuntiatum esset*.

13. urbe: Rome, THE CITY; *ab*, not *ex*, because he had been near but not in the city, on account of his military *imperium* as *pro-consul*. An ex-consul was regularly entitled to a province for a year *ex consulatu* (as we say *ex officio*), but Caesar, by a special law, had received the government of three provinces for five years.

14. quam maximis: as great as possible; W. 414. 4; B. 240. 3; A. 93. *b*; H. 159. 2. Caesar sometimes traveled 100 miles a day.

ulteriorem: = *Transalpinam*.

15. contendit: Plutarch (Life of Caesar, 17) says that Caesar went from Rome to Geneva in eight days.

Provinciae: dative with a verb of commanding; W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227. *f*; H. 426. 1, 6.

16. imperat: orders to furnish, levies, makes requisition.

17. legio una: this was the veteran 10th legion, afterward so famous.

18. rescindi: *iubeo* and *veto* are followed by the accusative and infinitive; W. 629; B. 331. II; A. 271. *b*; H. 642. 5.

19. certiores facti sunt: a Latin idiom; were informed.

legatos: in predicate apposition with *nobilissimos*; as envoys; W. 290; B. 168; A. 183, 185; H. 393.

20. cuius legationis: = *quorum legatorum*.

21. qui dicerent: purpose; who were to say; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

22. sibi: why dative? W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430. From this point on the sentence is in indirect discourse. *Sibi esse in animo*: an idiom; that they had in mind, intended, etc. The direct form would be *nobis est in animo*. The subject of *esse* is the clause ending with *facere*.

24. rogare: sc. *se*, the subject. The direct form would be *rogamus ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat*.

liceat: this would be subjunctive even in direct discourse, being in an object clause of purpose, depending on *rogare*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

25. memoria: why ablative? W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.

L. Cassium: the army of Cassius was swept away in 107 B. C. by the Cimbri and Teutones, whom the Helvetians joined as allies. This was one of six Roman armies so destroyed.

26. occisum: sc. *esse*; also with *pulsum*, *missum*, *concedendum*, and *temperatueros*.

27. iugum: two spears set upright with one laid across the top, under which a defeated army marched, in token of submission. Compare the English word *sub-jug-ate*.

concedendum: impersonal; *that concession should be made, that it (the request of the Helvetii) should be granted*; W. 233. 3; B. 337. 7. b) 1; A. 146. d; H. 302. 7.

non: connect with *concedendum* in translation.

neque: = *et non*.

28. inimico animo: ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

data facultate: ablative absolute; = *si facultas data esset*; W. 397, 399; B. 227. 2. b); A. 255. 4; H. 489. 1.

29. faciundi: gerundive, not gerund; W. 640; B. 339. 1; A. 297, 298; H. 626. 1; for the spelling *-undi* instead of *-endi*, see W. 192; B. 116. 2; A. 12. d; H. 243; *itineris faciundi* modifies *facultate*.

PAGE 6

1. spatium: i. e., *temporis*.

2. convenienter: subjunctive with *dum* implying purpose; W. 533; B. 293. III. 2; A. 328; H. 603. II. 2; *dum* means here not "while," but *till*.

3. diem: *time*.

se . . . sumpturum: direct form, *sumam*.

si . . . vellet: direct form *si vultis*, or *voletis*; subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 337. I. 1; H. 646.

4. ad: *at, about*.

Id. April.: *Idus Apriles*; April 13th; W. 719; B. 371, 372; A. 376. b; H. 754. I. 3.

reverterentur: *they were to come back*; for imperative of direct discourse; W. 599; B. 316; A. 339; H. 642. His actual expression was *revertite*, "come back!"

CHAPTER 8

5. **legione . . . militibus**: ablatives of means or instrument; although the soldiers were persons, Caesar was using them as his instruments.

6. **lacu Lemanno**: see map opposite page 6 of the text for this and the other places mentioned.

7. **influit**: the Rhone flows into the lake at its head and out again at its foot.

8. **milia pasuum**: *miles*; see explanation given in note to last line of Chapter II.

9. **xviii**: read *undeviginti* or *decem et novem*; the distance is measured following the windings of the river.

murum . . . fossamque: Caesar, of course, did not run a wall and ditch all the way from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse. For much of the distance the cliffs are steep and fortifications unnecessary. Where the slope was gentle he cut straight down for sixteen feet, and, throwing the earth toward the river, made a kind of wall and moat. See section opposite page 6. This was on the south bank of the river. He had to fortify in this way only about three miles of the nineteen. With the number of men at his disposal this required only three or four days.

pedum: why genitive? W. 354; B. 203. 2; A. 215. b; H. 440. 3.

10. **praesidia**: the *garrisons* of the *castella*.

11. **castella**: *redoubts* or small forts; indicated on the map.

quo: used instead of *ut* in a clause of purpose on account of the comparative adverb *facilius*; W. 507; B. 282. I. a; A. 317. b; H. 568. 7.

se invito: *against his* (Caesar's) *will*; ablative absolute; W. 399; B. 227. I; A. 255. a; H. 489. *Se* refers to the subject of *posset* and *communit* and *disponit*; W. 421. 2; B. 244. I, II; A. 196. a. 2; H. 504.

12. **conarentur**: subjunctive because a subordinate clause in informal indirect discourse, expressing Caesar's thought; imperfect, as *posset* also is, in sequence after the historical presents *disponit*, *communit*; W. 462, 470; B. 267, 268. 3; A. 287. e; H. 543, 546. It amounts to the same to say that *conarentur* is subjunctive because of its dependence upon the subordinate infinitive *prohibere*; W. 620; B. 324. 2; A. 342. In direct discourse *conarentur* would be future indicative, *conabuntur*.

14. **negat**: = *dicit . . . non*; not "he denies," but *he says . . . not*.

more et exemplo: according to custom and precedent; W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 248. R; H. 475. 3.

16. **vim facere**: use force.

conentur: present subjunctive for future indicative of direct discourse; subjunctive because a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; present after a primary tense, *ostendit*; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

(*se*) **prohibiturum (esse)**: object of *ostendit*.

17. ea spe deiecti: *disappointed in this hope*; why is *spe* ablative? W. 374; B. 214; A. 243. b; H. 461.

navibus: probably brought from the lake, *lacus Lemannus*. For the construction see W. 397; B. 227; A. 255; H. 489.

18. qua: *where*; adverb.

20. si . . . possent conati: *after trying, to see whether they could*, etc.; *si . . . possent* is equivalent to an indirect question; W. 593; B. 300. 3; A. 334. f; H. 649. II. 3.

operis munitione: *by the strength of the works*.

21. conatu: why ablative? W. 374; B. 214; A. 243; H. 461.

CHAPTER 9

22. una: emphatic, *only one*.

qua: ablative of the way by which; W. 386; B. 218. 9; A. 258. g; H. 476.

Sequanis invitio: like *se invito*, line 11, expresses condition.

23. angustias: notice on the map how close the mountains come to the river.

24. sua sponte: *by their own influence*; usually "of their own accord."

possent: *cum* is causal; W. 542; B. 288. 1. B; A. 326; H. 598.

25. eo deprecatore: *by his intercession*; ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227. 1; A. 255. a; H. 489.

26. impetrarent: *they might gain their request*; subjunctive of purpose; W. 506; B. 282. 1; A. 317; H. 568.

gratia: *popularity*.

27. plurimum: adverbial accusative; W. 316; B. 176. 3. a; A. 240. a, b; H. 416. 2.

Helvetiis: why dative? W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234; H. 434.

29. novis rebus: *a revolution*, change of government; dative with *studeo*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227. 3; H. 426. 1.

PAGE 7

1. quam plurimas: *as many . . . as possible*.

2. habere: *to keep*.

3. ut . . . patiantur: this clause is the object of *impetrat*; W. 506,

510; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565. In the same way *uti . . . dent* is the object of *perficit*; W. 521, 522; B. 297. 1; A. 332; H. 571. 3.

4. **obsides**: we hear a good deal of *hostages* in the Commentaries. It was usual to require them as pledges of good faith, to be punished for any breaches of compact on the part of their countrymen.

uti : translate before *obsides*.

Sequani : sc. *obsides dant*; likewise with *Helvetii*, line 5.

5. **ne . . . prohibeant . . . transeant** : object clauses of purpose, depending on the notion of bargaining, implied in giving hostages; W. 511; B. 295; A. 331; H. 565.

itinere : why ablative? W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 46.;

CHAPTER 10

7. **nuntiatur** : *word is brought*; the subject of this "impersonal" verb is the clause *Helvetiis esse*, etc.

Helvetiis, etc. : cf. *sibi esse in animo*, page 5, line 22, and note. The Helvetians intended to settle in the western part of Gaul, perhaps in the country of the Santones (or Santoni).

8. **Santonum** : the name of this tribe appears in the modern city of *Saintes* and province of *Saintonge*.

9. **non longe** : it was about 100 miles.

quae civitas : i. e. *Tolosa* (*Toulouse*).

10. **Id** : i. e. *iter . . . facere* above.

si fieret : future condition depending on *intellegebat*; direct form would be *si fiet*. The apodosis *futurum (esse)* would be *erit*.

11. **ut . . . haberet** : sc. *provincia*; substantive clause of result, subject of *futurum (esse)*; W. 523; B. 297. 2; A. 329. N; H. 571. 1.

12. **locis** : best taken as ablative absolute.

13. **finitimos** : predicative ; as *neighbors*.

14. **munitioni** : i. e. along the Rhone ; dative after a verb compounded with *præ*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

T : *Titum* ; always read the full name in case of abbreviations.

Labienum : Caesar's ablest lieutenant.

15. **Italiam** : as usual in Caesar, this means Cisalpine Gaul, which was not officially a part of Italy till 43 B. C.

magnis itineribus : by forced marches : see Introduction, page xlvi; also page 5, line 14, and note.

16. **duas . . . legiones** : the 11th and 12th.

tres : the 7th, 8th and 9th. The 10th was near Geneva. Thus Caesar had six legions besides the troops from the Province, mentioned in chaps. 7 and 8.

17. **Aquileiam** : a strongly fortified town at the head of the Adriatic,

a Roman colony, founded 181 B. C. It was within Caesar's provincial jurisdiction as governor of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

qua proximum iter . . . erat: this was by way of *Mont Genève*, a safe and easy pass.

19. Ibi: in the Alps.

21. itinere: ablative of separation; W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243. a; H. 464.

Compluribus: connect with *proeliis, his* with *pulsis*; this is the "interlocked" order; B. 350. 11. d); A. 344. h.

22. Ocelo: probably to be identified with Avigliana or Drubiaglio on the Dora Riparia river.

23. citerioris provinciae: *Gallia Cisalpina.*

25. Segusiavos: clients of the Haedui, and therefore friendly to the Romans. They lived west of the Rhone. Caesar apparently encamped in the angle of the Rhone and Saône (*Arar*), outside the boundaries of his province.

CHAPTER 11

28. angustias: referred to at the beginning of ch. 6 and ch. 9.
See notes to those passages.

PAGE 8

1. populabantur: note the tenses; they *had arrived* (*pervenerant*) and *were plundering*. The Helvetians had advanced only about 100 miles during Caesar's absence, which must have lasted 30 or 40 days.

2. possent: subjunctive in a clause of time and cause; W. 536, 542; B. 286. 2; 288. B; A. 325, 326; H. 598, 600.

3. rogatum: accusative supine, expressing purpose with a verb of motion; W. 654; B. 340. 1. a; A. 302; H. 633.

Ita se . . . meritos esse, etc.: sc. *dicentes.*

The Haedui are called *socii* of the Romans by Livy (Bk. lxi), referring to the year 121 B. C.; Cicero calls them sarcastically *fratres nostri*. See Tacitus, Ann. xi. 25.

5. nostri: i. e. *Romani*; agrees with *exercitus*.

vastari: B. 270. 2; A. 271; H. 607.

7. necessarii: *necessitudo* means community of interests.

8. depopulatis: passive here, though the verb is deponent; W. 185. 2; B. 112. b; A. 135. b.

9. ab oppidis; notice the preposition here and the absence of it with *itinere*, page 7, line 5; both times in connection with *prohibere*.

10. Allobroges: probably those in the angle of the Rhone, south of Culoz.

12. sibi : possessive dative.

solum : noun ; not from *solus*, -a, -um.

reliqui : partitive genitive.

13. exspectandum (esse) sibi : that he must not wait ; *sibi* is the so-called dative of agent ; W. 339 ; B. 189. 1 ; A. 232 ; H. 431.

15. pervenirent : subjunctive with *dum* expressing purpose, until they should arrive ; W. 533 ; B. 293. III. 2 ; A. 328 ; H. 603. II. 2.

CHAPTER 12

16. Flumen est : there is a river. The *Arar* (Saône) formed the boundary between the Sequani and the Haedui.

17. in Rhodanum influit : at the city of *Lugdunum* (Lyons).

lenitate : ablative of quality ; W. 394 ; B. 224 ; A. 251 ; H. 473. 2.

It might possibly be taken as ablative of manner with *influit*.

18. fluat : subjunctive in indirect question ; W. 590 ; B. 300. 1 ; A. 334 ; H. 649. II. The question is the subject of *iudicari non possit*.

possit : subjunctive of result.

19. transibant : the place where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not definitely known.

20. tres . . . partes : three fourths.

21. copiarum : what is the difference in meaning of *copia* and *copie* ?

traduxisse : some compounds of *trans* take two objects, as here *partes* and *flumen* ; W. 320 ; B. 179. 1 ; A. 239. 2. b ; H. 413.

22. citra : on the east bank.

Ararim : notice this accusative in -im ; A. 55. d ; 56. a. 1 ; H. 102. 3. N.

de tertia vigilia : after midnight ; *de* means "counting from the beginning of." See Introduction, page lii, on the meaning of *vigilia*, and method of reckoning time of day and night.

23. castris : it seems likely that this camp was close to a place now called Sathonay, in the angle of the Rhone and Saône, a very few miles from Lyons.

profectus : from *proficiscor*.

25. Eos : = *eam partem*.

26. concidit : what is the meaning of *concidit*?

mandarunt : = *mandaverunt* ; W. 189 ; B. 116. 1 ; A. 128. a ; H. 238.

27. in . . . silvas : accusative because motion is implied in *abdiderunt* ; they went into the woods and hid themselves.

This battle probably occurred near Trévoix, on the east bank of the Saône, some 15 miles north of Lyons.

28. pagus : properly a *district*, *canton*, here means the people of the district. This canton corresponded approximately to the modern Zürich.

29. divisa est : is divided, not has been divided, as on page 1, line 1.

30. domo: no preposition is used with *domi*, *domum*, *domo*; W. 404, 405; B. 229. 1. b; A. 258. a; H. 462. 4.

PAGE 9

1. L. Cassium, etc.: this occurrence is referred to page 5, line 25. See note on that passage.

2. casu . . . consilio: ablatives of cause.

deorum: Caesar had little or no religious belief, but often talks of the power of fortune, e. g. Bk. VI, ch. 42; Bel. Civ. iii. 105.

3. quae pars := *ea pars . . . quæ*; W. 303. 3; B. 251. 4. a); A. 200. b. N; H. 399. 3.

4. princeps . . . persolvit: *was the first to pay*; W. 412; B. 239; A. 191; H. 497. 3. Notice the three words in succession beginning with the same letter. Such "alliteration," as it is called, is quite common in Latin. Sometimes it is accidental, often intentional.

6. ultus est: from *ulciscor*.

eius: i. e. *Caesaris*.

7. soceri: Caesar's (4th and) last wife was Calpurnia, daughter of Lucius Calpurnius Piso.

legatum: it was correct etiquette to speak of officials by their appropriate titles.

8. proelio: ablative of time; W. 406; B. 230. 2; A. 256; H. 486.

CHAPTER 18

10. posset: subjunctive of purpose.

in: *over*.

faciendum curat: *had built*, i. e. *caused to be built*; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. b) 2); A. 294. d; H. 622.

12. diebus xx: *within twenty days*; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487.

13. ut flumen transirent: *namely, crossing the river*, substantive clause explaining *id*, object of *fecisse*; W. 521, 522; B. 297. 3; A. 332; II. 571. 3.

illum: i. e. *Caesarem*; **illum . . . fecisse** is indirect discourse, depending on *intellegent*.

14. cuius legationis := *quorum legatorum*.

15. bello Cassiano: ablative of time, *in the war with Cassius*. This had been in 107 B. C. Divico was therefore an aged man in 58 B. C.

17. Si pacem, etc.: from this point the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse, depending on *egit* and reporting the language of Divico. The whole passage is given in direct form in A. 339. In the first sentence the verbs *ituros (esse)* and *futuros (esse)* are declaratory; *reminisceretur* is

imperative. In the next, *tribueret*, line 25, and *despicaret*, line 25, are prohibitive. *Didicisse*, line 26, is declaratory. *Committeret*, line 28, is prohibitive. All the other verbs in the passage are subordinate. *Faceret* stands for *facies*; *constituisset* and *voluisset* for *constitueris* and *volueris* (future perfects); *ituros* and *futuros* for *ibunt* and *erunt*, or (*nos*) *ibimus* and *erimus*.

20. *bello*: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.
perseveraret: sc. *Caesar*.

21. *incommodi*: he means the defeat of Cassius; the use of a mild term for a serious thing is called "euphemism." Why genitive? W. 364; B. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

22. *Quod*: conjunction; *as to the fact that*; W. 549; B. 299. 2; A. 333. a; H. 588. II. 3. N.

23. *unum pagum*: the Tigurini; see page 8, line 28.

adortus esset, transissent: subjunctives because in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

24. *suis*: *their countrymen*; W. 409; B. 236. 1; A. 190. a; H. 503. 4.
ob eam rem: *for that reason*.

25. *ipsos*: i. e. *Helvetios*.

26. *Se*: i. e. *Helvetios*.

ut . . . contendenter . . . niterentur: subjunctives of result.

27. *dolo . . . insidiis*: ablative with *niterentur*; W. 389; B. 218. 3; A. 254. b; H. 476. 3.

28. *ne committeret*: *he should not allow*.

CHAPTER 14

PAGE 10

1. *His*: sc. *rebus*, or *legatis*, or regard it as neuter.

Eo: ablative of cause; *for this reason*; W. 384; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475.

The rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse, except the words *Divico respondit* and *Hoc responso dato discessit*. The direct form is given in H. 653, and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar, in the note to this passage.

dubitacionis: with what kind of words is the partitive genitive used? W. 355, 356; B. 201. 2; A. 216. a. 2; H. 441.

2. *quod . . . teneret*: W. 605; B. 286. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

commemorassent: subjunctive because it is subordinate to *teneret*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

3. *eo . . . quo*: ablatives of degree of difference; *the (more, etc.) . . . the (less, etc.)*; W. 393; B. 223; A. 106. c; 250. R; H. 479.

4. *merito*: ablative of cause or of that "in accordance with which" something happens.

qui si : = si populus Romanus.

5. iniuriæ : objective genitive with *concius* ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. a ; H. 450 ; 451. 1.

sibi : need not be translated.

fuisse : corresponds to *fuit* in direct discourse ; B. 304. 3 ; A. 264. b ; H. 583. 3. Translate as if it were *futurum fuisse* ; W. 617. 2 ; B. 304. 321. 2 ; A. 308. d. N ; 337. b. 2 ; H. 647. 2, 3.

6. cavere : subject of *fuisse*.

eo : thereby, referring to the clauses following, *quod . . . intellegeret . . . putaret*.

deceptum : sc. *populum Romanum . . . esse*.

commissum : = *quicquam commissum esse*.

7. timeret : subjunctive of characteristic (*quare* is a relative = *propter quod*), as well as a subordinate verb in indirect discourse ; W. 588, 605 ; B. 283, 314. 1 ; A. 320, 336. 2 ; H. 591. 4.

timendum : sc. *esse* ; impersonal passive ; W. 233. 3 ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. d ; H. 302. 6, 7.

8. Quod : now, or *but*, lit. "as to which" ; W. 316 ; B. 185. 2 ; A. 240. b ; H. 510. 9. *Quod si . . . vellet* : *But if he were willing* ; direct discourse *If I were willing* : *si velim* or *volo*.

contumeliae : genitive with a verb of forgetting.

9. num : not to be translated ; it introduces a rhetorical question with its verb, *posse*, in the infinitive ; W. 240. 5 ; 280. 2 ; B. 162. 2. b ; A. 210. c ; 338 ; H. 642. 2.

iniuriarum : objective genitive with *memoriam*, line 11 ; W. 351 ; B. 200 ; A. 217 ; H. 439, 440. 2.

The wrongs are specified in the *quod* clauses which follow.

eo invito : we might expect *se*, as the reference is probably to Caesar ; but *eo* may possibly mean *populo Romano*.

11. Allobrogas : notice the accusative plural of Celtic proper names of the third declension, ending in *-as*.

12. Quod : *the fact that* ; *quod . . . gloriarentur* and *quod . . . admiringarentur* are subjects of *pertinere*.

sua : of the Helvetians.

victoria : over Cassius in 107 B. C.

14. eodem pertinere : *had the same significance, were to the same effect*.

Consuesse : as to the form, W. 189 ; B. 116. 1 ; A. 128. a. 1 ; H. 238. The present means *to grow or become accustomed*, the perfect *to be accustomed*.

15. quo : used with a comparative adverb, *gravius*, to introduce a clause of purpose ; W. 507 ; B. 282. 1. a ; A. 317. b ; H. 568. 7.

18. *Cum* : concessive ; W. 571 ; B. 309. 3 ; A. 326 ; H. 598.
 19. *ab eis* : i. e. *Helvetiis*; *sibi* : *Caesari*.
ea : object of *facturos (esse)*.
 20. *Haeduīs* : dative with *satisfaciant* ; supplied from line 21.
ipsis : i. e. *Haeduīs* ; dative with *intulerint*.
 22. *Sese . . . esse factūrūm* : in direct discourse, *faciam*.
 24. *consuerint* : subjunctive of result.
 25. *testem* : again alluding to the victory over Cassius.
 26. *discessit* : sc. *Divico*.

CHAPTER 15

27. *movent* : sc. *Helvetiī* ; historical present.
 28. *equitatum* : see Introduction, page xxxviii.

PAGE II

1. *coactum habebat* : means nearly the same as *coegerat* ; B. 337. 6 ; A. 292. c ; H. 431. 3.
qui . . . videant : clause of purpose ; plural because the antecedent of *qui* is the collective *equitatum* ; W. 301. 2 ; A. 199. b ; H. 397.
 2. *quas . . . faciant* : indirect question ; W. 590 ; B. 300. 1 ; A. 210, 338 ; H. 649. II.
Qui : *They*, the horsemen.
cupidius : *too eagerly*.
novissimum agmen : *the rear* of the Helvetian army. See Introduction, page xlvi.
 3. *alieno* : *unfavorable*, lit. "another's" ; similarly *suus* may mean "advantageous."
loco : why ablative ? W. 402. 2 ; B. 228. 1. b) ; A. 258. f. 1 ; H. 483, 485. 2.
 4. *de nostris* : = *nostrorum* ; the ablative with *de* or *ex* is commonly used, instead of a partitive genitive, with numerals ; B. 201. 1. a ; A. 216. c ; H. 444.
 6. *equitibus* : ablative of instrument ; W. 386 ; B. 218. 10 ; A. 248. c. 1 ; H. 476.
 8. *agmine* : B. 228. 1. b) ; A. 258. f. 2 ; H. 483, 485.
 9. *proelio* : ablative of means ; W. 386, 389 ; B. 218 ; A. 248. c. 1 ; H. 476.
nostros : sc. *milites*.
 10. *Satis habebat* : *was content* ; lit. "considered it enough."
 11. *rapinis*, etc. : ablative of separation ; W. 374 ; B. 214. 2 ; A. 243 ; H. 464.

prohibere: object of *habebat, satis* being predicate; *he considered it enough to prevent, etc.*; W. 625; B. 177. 2; 328. 1; A. 330. B; H. 613.

12. **dies**: accusative of duration; W. 324; B. 181; A. 256; H. 417.

13. **primum**: sc. *agmen*; *van or vanguard*.

14. **quinis aut senis**: *five or six each (day)*; distributive numerals; W. 130, 132; B. 78. 1. c; A. 95; H. 162. 3; 163, 164.

milibus: ablative of distance or “degree of difference”; *amplius* does not affect the case of the following noun as other comparatives do; W. 393, 382; B. 223, 217. 3; A. 247. c; 250; H. 471. 4; 479.

CHAPTER 16

15. **Haeduos . . . frumentum**: two accusatives with a verb of asking; W. 318; B. 178. 1. a; A. 239. c; H. 411.

16. **essent . . . polliciti**: implied indirect discourse; *which (he said) they had promised*; W. 605; B. 323; A. 341. d; H. 649. I.

publice: *in the name of the state, as a community*.

flagitare: historical infinitive; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610. This verb is one of the class known as frequentatives; W. 273. 2; B. 155. 2; A. 167. b; H. 364.

frigora: *cold seasons*; the climate was colder in those days, before the forests were cleared and the marshes drained.

18. **frumenta**: the plural is used for standing grain, the singular for the threshed grain.

19. **ne . . . quidem**: always separated by the emphasized word; W. 240. 6; B. 347. 1; A. 151. e; H. 677.

pabuli: *green fodder*; this had been eaten by the cattle of the Helvetians.

20. **frumento**: ablative with *uti*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

flumine: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 258. g; H. 476.

21. **propterea**: connect with the following *quod*; *for the reason that, for this reason . . . because*.

iter . . . averterant: the Helvetians had turned to the N. W. into the valley of the *Liger* (Loire); see map, opposite page 10 of the text.

23. **Diem ex die**: *day after day*; *diem* is accusative of duration; translate as if it were *Caesarem ducere* (*they kept putting off*) *ex die in diem*. *Ducere* is historical infinitive. So is *dicere*.

conferriri, comportari, adesse: sc. *frumentum*; they all depend on *dicere*, and form a climax.

25. **diutius**: *too long*.

intellexit: sc. *Caesar*.

26. **die** : do not translate ; W. 303. 2 ; B. 251. 3 ; A. 200. *a* ; H. 399. I.

metiri : infinitive, subject of the impersonal *oporteret* ; W. 623 ; B. 327. 1 ; A. 270. *b* ; H. 615. Grain was served out regularly twice every month ; see Introduction, page xli.

oporteret : subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

27. **eorum** : *Haeduorum*.

28. **Diviciaco et Lisco** : ablatives in apposition with *principibus*.

magistratui : dative with *praeerat* ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 429.

29. **vergobretum** : Latinized from the Celtic words *guerg breth*.

30. **annuus** : predicate adjective ; translate as if it were an adverb.
in suos : over his countrymen.

PAGE 12

2. **tam necessario tempore** : *in a crisis so pressing*.

3. **propinquis hostibus** : ablative absolute ; W. 397 ; B. 227. 1 ; A. 255. *a* ; H. 489.

sublevetur : this verb and *sit destitutus*, line 5, are in the subjunctive because Caesar the writer is giving the causes alleged by Caesar the speaker on this occasion ; in other words, he is quoting himself as a third person, in indirect discourse ; W. 545 ; B. 286. 1 ; A. 321 ; H. 588. II.

4. **magna ex parte** : *in great measure*.

5. **suscepit** : causal subjunctive.

multo : ablative of degree of difference.

CHAPTER 17

8. **quod** : object of *tacuerat* ; sc. *id*, object of *proponit*.

Esse, etc. : indirect discourse to the end of the chapter. The passage is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar in the notes to this chapter.

9. **plurimum valeat** : adverbial accusative ; see note on *plurimum*, page 3, line 19. The same construction is seen in *plus possint*.

There was a sort of feudal system in Gaul ; hence the power of great landowners with many retainers. See Bk. VI, ch. 15.

10. **possint** : this verb, as perhaps also *valeat*, line 9, is in the subjunctive of characteristic.

11. **improba** : *reckless*.

12. **ne . . . conferant** : *from furnishing* ; a substantive clause of purpose ; W. 514 ; B. 294, 295. 3 ; A. 331. *c.* 2 ; H. 568. 2, 8 ; plural because *multitudinem* is a collective noun.

debeant : sc. *conferre*.

praestare : *that it was better*, etc.; here Liscus is quoting the arguments used to stir up the people against the Romans.

15. superaverint : perfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

16. una : adverb.

reliqua : *the rest of*.

Haeduis : dative with a verb of "taking away"; W. 337; B. 188. 2. d; A. 229; H. 427.

sint erupturi : nearly = *eripiant*, but emphasizes the intention more; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. d; H. 595. i.

17. quaeque : = *et quae*.

18. a se : sc. *Lisco*.

19. Quin etiam : *nay even, moreover*.

quod : *in that*; W. 549; B. 299. 2; A. 333; H. 588. II. 3.

necessariam : adjective like adverb; *of necessity*.

20. id : refers to the clause *quod . . . enuntiarit*.

21. tacuisse : intransitive; in line 8 it is transitive.

CHAPTER 18

23. pluribus praesentibus : *in the presence of a number of persons*; ablative absolute.

24. iactari : *to be discussed*, "bandied about."

dimittit . . . retinet : the omission of the conjunction (*asyndeton*) is common in Caesar; W. 253; B. 341. 4. a; A. 208. b; 346. c; H. 657. 6.

25. solo : sc. *Lisco*; *in private*. Cf. *quaerit ex solo* with *ab aliis quaerit*, line 27; W. 319; A. 239. c, N. 1; H. 411. 4.

27. vera : predicate adjective.

28. Ipsum : *the very man*; indirect discourse as far as *desperare*, page 13, line 19. The direct form is given in full in Allen and Greenough's Caesar, in the note on this passage.

summa audacia : *(a man) of the greatest boldness*; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

29. rerum novarum : *revolutions, political changes*; very frequent in Gaul in those times; objective genitive with *cupidum*; W. 352; B. 204. i; A. 218. a; H. 450. i.

PAGE 13

1. annos : accusative of duration.

portoria : *customs duties*.

2. vectigalia : *revenues in general*; they were farmed out, i. e. the right to collect them was sold to the highest bidder, who then paid the

amount of his bid into the state treasury and kept the surplus for himself.

pretio: ablative of price; W. 395; B. 225; A. 252; H. 478.

redempta habere: *had farmed*; nearly = *redemisse*; like *coactum habebat*, page 11, line 1.

3. **illo licente**: ablative absolute; *when he bid*.

4. **rem familiarem**: *property*.

auxisse . . . comparasse: the subject is still *Dumnorigem*.

5. **ad largiendum**: gerund with *ad*, expressing purpose; W. 639. 3; B. 338. 3; A. 300; H. 628.

7. **neque = et non**.

domi: locative case; W. 403. 2; B. 232. 2; A. 258, *d*; H. 484. 2.

8. **largiter posse**: cf. *plurimum possent*, ch. 3. 7; *plus possint*, ch. 17. 1.

potentiae: material power or personal influence; *potestas* is legal, and *imperium* military authority.

causa: W. 384; B. 219; A. 245. *c*; H. 475. 2.

9. **Biturigibus**: this name appears in the modern *Bourges*, the ancient *Avaricum*.

10. **conlocasse**: *had given in marriage*.

ipsum: *Dumnorigem*; his wife was the daughter of Orgetorix, page 3, line 16.

11. **ex matre**: *on the mother's side*; they were not children of the same father.

nuptum: supine, expressing purpose; W. 654; B. 340. 1. *b*; A. 302; H. 633. 1. See *nubo* and *duco* in the Vocabulary (last meaning under *duco*). A woman "veiled herself" for her husband, a man "led" his wife to his home.

12. **cupere**: *was well disposed toward*.

Helvetiis: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 4. N.

13. **odisse**: defective verb, lacking present, imperfect, and future tenses. Perfect serves as present, etc.

suo nomine: cf. same, page 216, line 20; a mercantile phrase; *on his own account*, ablative of cause.

15. **Diviciacus**: he was a Druid (see Introduction, page lxiv), and had been in Rome in 63 B. C., the year of Cicero's consulship and Caesar's praetorship, to get aid for the Haedui against the German king Ariovistus (Cic. De Div. I. xli. 90).

16. **Si quid accidat**: *if anything should happen*; we have the same euphemism in English, meaning "anything unlucky" or "disastrous." In direct discourse *accidat* would be *accidet*.

17. **per**: *by means of, by the help of*.

regni obtinendi: connect with *spem*; W. 640; B. 338. 1. a; 339. 1; A. 298; H. 626. This is an objective genitive.

18. imperio: *under the rule*; ablative of time and cause.

19. desperare: this is the last word in the indirect quotation.

20. quod proelium, etc. : *in regard to the defeat of the cavalry which had taken place*, etc.; W. 549; B. 299; A. 333; H. 588. II. 3. N.

23. auxilio Caesari: dative of "tendency" and dative of person affected; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. b; A. 233. a; H. 433.

CHAPTER 19

26. Quibus: translate by a demonstrative pronoun.

27. accederent: = *adderentur*; why subjunctive? W. 536, 542; B. 288. 1. B, 286. 2; A. 325, 326; H. 598, 600. II.

quod . . . traduxisset: this and the three following *quod*-clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *res*; their verbs are in the subjunctive because of their dependence on *accederent*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

eos: *Sequanos et Helvetios*.

dandos curasset: *had caused . . . to be given*; cf. *faciendum curat*, page 9, line 10; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. b) 2); A. 294. d; H. 622.

29. non modo . . . civitatis: *not only without his own (Caesar's) bidding or that of the (Haeduan) state*, etc.; W. 103. 1; 384; B. 57. 1; 219. 2; A. 71. b; 245; H. 143. 1; 475. 3.

30. ipsis: sc. *Caesare et Haeduis*.

magistratu: *Lisco*.

PAGE 14

1. causae: partitive genitive with *satis*.

arbitrabatur: sc. *Caesar*.

2. animadverteret: cf. note on *timeret*, page 10, line 7; subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic, though it would be subjunctive also because in a dependent clause of indirect discourse depending on *arbitrabatur*; W. 587, 605; B. 283. 1; 314. 1; A. 320, 336. 2; H. 591. 4; 643, 652.

4. rebus: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227; H. 426. 1.

unum: *one consideration*.

7. cognoverat: *he was acquainted with*; *cognosco* means "I am learning"; *cognovi*, "I have learned," "I know." Notice the omission of conjunctions in this sentence.

ne: *that*, with a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. f; H. 567. 1.

eius: *Dumnorigis*.

- suppicio**: punishment, especially execution.
- 8. prius quam**: translate as one word.
- 9. conaretur**: why subjunctive? W. 534; B. 291, 292. 1. a; A. 327; H. 605; imperfect after the historical present *isbet*.
- 10. cotidianis**: ordinary; lit. "every-day."
- 11. principem**: a leading man.
- 12. cui**: in whom; dative of reference.
- omnium rerum**: about everything.
- eo**: = *Diviciaco*.
- 13. quae . . . sint dicta**: indirect question.
- 15. de eo**: i. e. *Dumnorige*.
- apud se**: i. e. *Caesarem*.
- 16. ut . . . statuat . . . inbeat**: substantive clauses of purpose; W. 511, 512; B. 295; A. 331; H. 565.
- eius**: i. e. *Diviciaci*, limits *animi*, "feelings"; *animi* is objective genitive with *offensione*, "wounding."
- 17. ipse**: sc. *Caesar*.
- causa cognita**: after hearing his case.

CHAPTER 20

- 19. complexus**: translate by present active participle.
- 20. gravius**: too severe; agrees with *quid*; W. 414. 2; B. 240. 1; A. 93. a; H. 498.
- 21. Scire se**, etc.: sc. *dixit*; indirect discourse to *avertentur*, page 15, line 1. This passage is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.
- nec quemquam**: and that no one.
- ex eo**: neuter, from that fact.
- 22. ipse**: *Diviciacus*; *per se*, line 24, *suam*, *sese*, line 26, *ipse*, line 29, *sua*, line 30, and *se*, page 15, line 1, also refer to *Diviciacus*.
- 23. gratia**: why ablative? W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.
- domi**: among the Haedui.
- ille**: *Dumnorix*.
- 24. per se**: by his (*Diviciacus's*) help.
- crevisset**: from *cresco*; connect with *propterea quod*; the subject is *Dumnorix* understood.
- 25. opibus ac nervis**: influence and power; ablative with *uteretur*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.
- 26. uteretur**: subordinate verb in indirect discourse.
- 28. Quod si**: But if, Now if.
- quid**: euphemistic like *incommodi*, page 9, line 21; and *si quid accidat*, page 13, line 16.

ei: sc. *Dumnorigi*.

accidisset: represents the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

30. non . . . factum (esse): *that it had not been done*; object of **existimaturum**.

voluntate: causal ablative.

PAGE 15

1. futurum (esse) uti, etc.: *the result would be that*, etc., *it would come to pass that*, etc.; the usual periphrasis for the future passive infinitive; W. 636; B. 270. 3. a; page 57, foot-note 3; A. 147. c. 3; 288. f; H. 619. 2; 571. I.

3. peteret: W. 536; B. 288. 1. B; A. 325; H. 600.

4. consolatus: remember that this verb is deponent; translate as if it were a present participle.

5. faciat: subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose, without *ut*, the object or complement of *rogat*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331. f; R; H. 565.

tanti: genitive of price; W. 361; B. 203. 3; A. 252. a; H. 448. I.
 eius: i. e. *Diviciaci*.

apud se: i. e. *Caesarem*.

6. rei publicae: objective genitive with *injuriam*.

voluntati, etc.: *in deference to his wish he (Caesar) pardons*, etc., *lit.*
“makes a present to his wish,” etc.

8, 9. reprehendat, intellegat, queratur: subjunctives of indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210. 2; 338; H. 649. II.

10. ut . . . vitet: an object clause of purpose, complementary to *monet*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

11. praeterita: neuter plural, = *res praeteritas*.

Diviciaco: *for the sake of Diviciacus*.

12. agat . . . loquatur: subjunctives of indirect question.

CHAPTER 21

14. hostes: the Helvetians were in the valley of the Liger (Loire), S. E. of Bibracte.

16. qualis esset: indirect question.

in circuitu: *if one went around*, i. e. ascended from the other side; or at different points all around.

17. cognoscerent: subjunctive in relative clause of purpose.

misit: sc. *exploratores* or the like.

18. esse: sc. *ascensum*.

De tertia vigilia: see Introduction, page lii, and note on same words, page 8, line 22.

T. Labienum : see page 7, line 14, and note.

legatum pro praetore : *lieutenant with pretorian power* ; see Introduction, page xi ; Labienus was really second in command and had this special title, i. e. he had an independent *imperium* of his own ; the other lieutenants were probably simply *legati* whose authority was not independent, but only delegated to them by the commander-in-chief. A *propraetor* would rank above them in that case, and also above the *quaestor*.

19. cum . . . eis ducibus : *with those men as guides*, referring to the scouts of the preceding day.

21. consilii : partitive genitive.

de quarta vigilia : not far from 2 A. M., for sunrise is about 4 A. M. in June in that latitude.

22. itinere : W. 386 ; B. 218. 9 ; A. 258. g ; H. 476.

24. rei militaris : *warfare* ; objective genitive after an adjective of skill ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. a ; H. 451. 1.

25. L. Sullae . . . M. Crassi : Sulla had carried on the war against Mithradates, king of Pontus, 88–84 B. C., and Crassus the war against Spartacus and his gladiators in 71 B. C.

in : sc. *exercitu*.

CHAPTER 22

27. summus : *the top of*, etc. ; W. 416 ; B. 241. 1 ; A. 193 ; H. 498. 1.

teneretur : why subjunctive? W. 536, 542 ; B. 288. 1. B ; 286. 2 ; A. 323, 326 ; H. 598, 600. II.

28. ipse : Caesar.

29. passibus : ablative of distance or degree of difference ; W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 479. 3.

PAGE 16

1. cognitus esset : connect with *cum*, page 15, line 27.

2. equo admisso : (*riding*) at full speed.

3. voluerit : subjunctive in subordinate clause of indirect discourse, depending on *dicit*.

4. insignibus : here a noun ; it refers to devices on shields, crests of helmets, etc., as well as to standards.

6. dicit . . . instruit : historical presents ; W. 447 (1) ; B. 259. 3 ; A. 276. d ; H. 532. 3.

7. ne . . . committeret : substantive clause, subject of *erat . . . praecceptum* ; W. 511, 512 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331. h ; H. 564. II.

ipsius : *Caesar's*.

8. *visae essent*: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative; Caesar's order in direct form was *ne . . . committas, nisi . . . visae erunt.*

9. *monte occupato*: ablative absolute.

10. *proelio*: ablative of separation; W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243. b; H. 461.

11. *Multo denique die*: *not till late in the day.*

12. *pro viso*: *viso* is used substantively; *as (a thing) seen*, i. e. *as if he had seen it.*

13. *quo . . . intervallo*: five or six miles, as appears from page 11, line 14. Why ablative? W. 390; B. 220. 1; A. 248; H. 473. 3.

consuerat: sc. *sequi.*

14. *milia*: accusative of extent of space.

CHAPTER 23

15. *diei*: W. 348, 720; B. 201. 3. a; A. 214. g; H. 446. 5.

16. *cum*: *before, or within which*, i. e. (before the time) when.

metiri: sc. *Caesarem* as subject; see note on page 11, line 26.

oporteret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

17. *Bibracte*: identified with Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun; for the declension see B. 39. 2; A. 57. d'; H. 103. 2.

18. *milibus passuum xviii*: see note on *milia passuum*, page 2, line 26; *milibus* here is ablative of distance or degree of difference with *aberat*, its case not being affected by *amplius*.

19. *rei*: dative; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 426. 4. N.

prospiciendum: sc. *esse*: impersonal passive.

20. *avertit*: toward the north.

Bibracte: accusative, limit of motion; W. 325. 2; B. 182; A. 258. b'; H. 418.

21. *fugitivos*: *runaway slaves*; ordinary deserters are *transfugae*.

decurionis: leader of a *decuria* of cavalry; see Introduction, page xxxviii.

22. *existimarent, confiderent* (line 28); subjunctive because the reasons are not known to Caesar, but only conjectured; W. 545; B. 286. 1; A. 321; H. 588. II.

eo magis: *all the more*; *eo* is causal, and is explained by the clause *quod . . . commisissent.*

23. *superioribus . . . occupatis*: concessive ablative absolute; *though they had taken possession*, etc.; W. 397, 399; B. 227. 2. c); A. 255. d. 3; H. 489. I.

24. *commisissent*: subjunctive because subordinate to *existimarent*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

25. *itinere converso*: *reversing the direction of their march.*

a novissimo agmine: *from the rear*; see Introduction, page xlviij and page ii, line 2, and note.

CHAPTER 24

PAGE 17

1. animum advertit: a compound, often written as one word, *animadvertisit*; in either case it takes a direct object, in this case *id*.

2. collem: probably the hill of Armecey, just south of Montmort. Excavations here in 1886 revealed the remains of an ancient entrenchment, and in 1889 nine trenches were found, filled with ashes, charcoal, and human bones. The distance from Mont Beuvray suits what Caesar says of his distance from Bibracte on the morning of the battle, at the beginning of the last chapter.

sustineret: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

3. in colle medio: *half-way up the hill*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

4. triplicem aciem: for explanation see Introduction, page xlviij. Each legion was in three lines, and the four legions side by side.

legionum: genitive of definition or material; W. 348; B. 197; A. 214. e; H. 440. 4.

5. summo: *at the top of*; used like *medio*, line 4.

duas legiones: the new legions raised that year, the 11th and 12th (page 7, line 16), which were not yet steady enough to be trusted in battle.

7. auxilia: non-Roman troops, light infantry, see Introduction, page xxxviii.

8. sarcinas: *packs or knapsacks*; see Introduction, page xlvi.

9. superiore acie: i. e. the two legions on the hill.

10. muniri: see entrenchments on plan opposite page 17.

cum . . . carris: like the Germans, they used to go to war with their families and goods in wagons. Their women encouraged them to fight, and the wagons formed a rude defense for their camps.

12. confertissima acie: ablative absolute or, perhaps, ablative of manner.

phalange: on the Gallic manner of fighting see Introduction, page lxvii.

reicto . . . equitatu: cavalry was no match for considerable bodies of infantry, and was not expected to do much of the actual fighting in a pitched battle.

CHAPTER 25

14. suo: sc. *equo remoto*; officers often dismounted before battle; cf. Sall. Cat. 59.

omnium; the officers, not the cavalry.

17. *e loco superiore*: this was a great advantage in throwing their spears and then in charging.

pilis: the *pilum* and the method of using it are described in the Introduction, page xxxv.

18. *in eos*: sc. *hostes* or *Helvetios*.

19. *Gallis . . . impedimento*: *the Gauls were greatly hindered in fighting*; two datives, one of reference, one of tendency; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. *a*; A. 233. *a*; H. 433.

20. *pluribus . . . scutis . . . transfixis*, etc.: they stood in so close order that their shields overlapped; hence the long iron point of a *pilum* could pierce several shields at once.

21. *ferrum*: *the iron point*.

inflexisset: when is the subjunctive used with *cum*? W. 536, 542; B. 286. 2; 288. *B*; A. 325, 326; H. 600. II, 598.

22. *sinistra*: sc. *manu*; the shield was carried on the left arm.

23. *multi ut*: transposed in order to emphasize *multi*.

iactato bracchio: i. e. in trying to shake the spear point out of the shield.

praeoptarent: subjunctive of result.

24. *nudo*: *unprotected*.

26. *pedem referre*: *to retreat*.

27. *mons*: see plan opposite page 17.

eo: *this*.

28. *Capto*: *gained, reached*.

29. *agmen . . . claudebant*: *brought up the rear*.

PAGE 18

1. *novissimis praesidio*: two datives, like *Gallis . . . impedimento*, page 17, line 19.

ex itinere: *on the march*.

2. *ab latere aperto*; *on the exposed (left) flank*. This phrase often means the right side in contrast to the left, which the shield protected.

circumvenire: sc. *cooperunt*, from below.

5. *conversa . . . intulerunt*: *faced about and advanced in two directions*; it is often best to translate a participle by an independent verb; i. e. the first and second lines facing forward, the third line wheeling to oppose the Boii and Tulingi (*venientes*).

CHAPTER 26

8. *ancipi*ti: literally, "facing both ways"; figuratively, *uncertain*. The latter is meant here.

1. **pugnatum est**: impersonal; *the fight went on*; W. 442. 4; B. 138. IV; A. 146. d; H. 302. 6.
9. **possent**: sc. *hostes*.
10. **alteri . . . alteri**: *Helvetii . . . Boi et Tulingi*.
11. **Nam, etc.**: i. e. (They did not run away, but retired in good order) *for, etc.*
12. **proelio**: ablative of time; W. 406; B. 230. 1; A. 256, 259. a; H. 486. 1.
13. **cum**: *although*; W. 571; B. 309. 3; A. 326; H. 598.
14. **hora septima**: a little after 1 P. M. at this season of the year; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note.
15. **pro vallo**: *as a barricade*.
16. **e loco superiore**: i. e. from the top of their barricade.
17. **coiciebant**: *hurled (from above)*.
18. **mataras**: Gallic spears.
19. **tragulas**: heavy javelins hurled by means of a thong or strap.
20. **subiciebant**: *threw from below*.
21. **impedimentis castrisque**: ablative with *potiti sunt*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.
22. **e filiis**: usual equivalent of the partitive genitive used with numerals; *of his sons*.
23. **captus est**: singular agreeing with the nearest subject; W. 298; B. 255. 2; A. 205. d; H. 392.
24. **nocte**: time how long is sometimes expressed by the ablative; B. 231. 1; A. 256. b; H. 417. 2.
25. **in fines Lingonum**: the southern part of Champagne, sixty or seventy miles north of Bibracte. The chief town is *Langres*. Napoleon III (*Jules César*) puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.
26. **cum**: causal.
27. **Lingonas**: accusative plural of third declension in *-as*, like *Allobrogas*, page 10, line 11. See note there.
28. **ne . . . iuvarent**: W. 599; B. 316; A. 339; H. 642.
29. **qui si**: *if they*, i. e. the Lingones.
30. **iuvissent**: direct discourse would be *iuveritis*, future perfect. W. 615, 616; B. 319. B. a; A. 337. 1, 3; H. 644. 2.
31. **se (eos) eodem loco . . . habiturum (esse)**: *that he would treat them in the same way*; direct discourse would be *vos habebo*.
32. **triduo intermisso**: *after an interval of three days*.
33. **eos**: *Helvetios*.

CHAPTER 27

PAGE 19

2. *Qui cum* : *And when they* ; W. 304. 2 ; B. 251. 6 ; A. 201. e ; H. 510.

3. *convenissent* : transitive ; *had met*.

ad pedes : *at his (Caesar's) feet*.

4. *eos* : i. e. *Helvetios*, subject of *exspectare* depending on *iussisset*.

5. *essent* : subjunctive because subordinate to *exspectare* ; W. 620 ; B. 324. 1 ; A. 342 ; H. 652.

7. *perfugissent* : subjunctive, because indirectly quoting Caesar's *perfugerant* ; W. 605 ; B. 323 ; A. 341 ; H. 649. I.

Dum . . . *conquiruntur*; *dum*, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative even when referring to past time ; W. 533 ; B. 293. I ; A. 276. e ; H. 533. 4 ; 604. 1. Translate as if it were imperfect.

8. *ea* : neuter plural, referring to *obsides*, *arma*, *servos*, regarded as so many *things* ; W. 295. 2 ; B. 235. B. 2. b) B) ; A. 187. 2. b ; H. 395. 2 ; 398.

9. *pagi* : *pagus* is explained in note to page 8, line 28.

Verbigenus : between the modern Bern and Lucerne.

10. *perterriti* : agrees in case with *milia*, but in gender with *hominem*, of whom the *milia* consisted ; W. 294. 2 ; B. 235. B. 2. c) ; A. 187. d) ; H. 389. 2.

ne : *that or lest* after a verb of fearing ; W. 516 ; B. 296. 2 ; A. 331. f) ; H. 567. I.

12. *occultari* : i. e. from Caesar.

13. *ignorari* : i. e. by any one.

existimarent : subjunctive as expressing the supposed reason in the minds of the Helvetians.

prima nocte : *early in the evening* ; W. 416 ; B. 241. I ; A. 193 ; H. 498. I.

CHAPTER 28

16. *Quod* : notice how the Latin uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence where the English uses a personal or demonstrative ; see note to *Qui*, line 2.

quorum : the antecedent is *his*.

17. *his* : antecedent of *quorum*, and indirect object of *imperavit*.

uti conquererent . . . reducerent : sc. *Helvetios* ; these clauses are direct objects of *imperavit* ; W. 512 ; B. 295. I ; A. 331 ; H. 565. His command in direct form was *Conquirite . . . reducite, si mihi purgati esse vultis*.

sibi : dative of reference ; W. 335 ; B. 188. I ; A. 235 ; H. 425. 4.

purgati: participle used as a predicate adjective, like *divisa*, page 1, line 1.

18. in . . . habuit: *he treated as enemies*; euphemistic; the meaning is that he put them to death.

19. in ditionem accepit: *the rest he allowed to surrender*; they became formally subjects of the Roman republic, and so entitled to Caesar's protection as well as bound to obedience.

21. unde: *e quibus*.

iussit: cf. this verb with dependent infinitive, and *imperavit*, line 23, with its dependent *ut . . . facerent*.

22. quo . . . tolerarent: a clause of purpose; W. 507; B. 282. 2; A. 317; H. 590.

23. ut . . . copiam facerent: *to furnish*; the clause is the direct object of *imperavit*.

24. ipsos: sc. *Helvetios*, etc.

oppida, etc.: cf. page 4, lines 10-12.

26. ea maxime ratione: *chiefly for this reason*.

27. ne . . . Germani . . . transirent: a negative clause of purpose. The sadly diminished Helvetians, however, could scarcely keep out the Germans. They sent only 8,000 men to the relief of Alesia, Bk. VII, ch. 75.

PAGE 20

1. Allobrogibus: the Allobroges were inside the Province; the addition is only by way of explanation.

Boios: object of *conlocarent*, line 3.

petentibus Haeduis: dative with *concessit*.

2. erant cogniti: sc. *Boi*. The Haedui gave them land between the Liger (*Loire*) and the Elaver (*Allier*). They were anxious for help against their neighbors and rivals, the Sequani.

3. illi: *Haedui*.

5. atque: *as*; B. 341. 1. c); A. 156. a; H. 508. 5.

CHAPTER 29

6. tabulae: *lists*, lit. "tablets"; thin boards coated with wax, on which they wrote with a sharp iron instrument called a *stilus*.

litteris Graecis: in Greek characters, not in the Greek language. Having no alphabet, the Gauls borrowed from the Greeks at Massilia (*Marseilles*). A similar use of Greek letters occurs at page 133, line 14, and page 150, line 22.

8. tabulis: repeated antecedent, not to be translated; W. 303. 2; B. 251. 3; A. 200; H. 399.

ratio: *an account*.

qui : interrogative adjective ; W. 148 ; B. 90 ; A. 104 ; H. 184. 1.

9. domo : why no preposition? W. 403. 2 ; 405 ; B. 229. 1. b) ; A. 258. a ; H. 462. 4.

10. pueri, senes mulieresque : sc. *exissent*.

11. capitum : *individuals, souls* ; however, it need not be translated at all.

12. cclxiii : *ducenta sexaginta tria* ; read all numbers in Latin words ; **xxxvi** : *triginta sex* ; W. 132 ; B. 79 ; A. 94 ; H. 163.

13. xiiii : *quatuordecim* ; **xxiii** : *viginti tria* ; **xxxii** : *triginta duo*.

15. fuerunt : agrees with *milia*, which is nominative, *ad* being an adverb here.

ccclxviii : *trecenta sexaginta octo*. Deducting the Boii, adopted by the Haedui, the figures show a loss of about 250,000 in this short campaign ; but more may have escaped than the record showed.

CHAPTER 30

18. Galliae : used in the restricted sense, the land of the *Galli* proper.

19. gratulatum : supine expressing purpose ; W. 654 ; B. 340. 1 ; A. 302 ; H. 633.

20. Intellegere, etc. : indirect discourse depending on *dixerunt* implied with *gratulatum convenerunt* ; the direct quotation would be *intelligimus*.

Helvetiorum : subjective genitive ; W. 350 ; B. 199 ; A. 214 ; H. 440. 1.

21. populi Romani : objective genitive ; W. 351 ; B. 200 ; A. 217 ; H. 440. 2.

22. repetisset ; this would be *repetisti* in direct discourse.

ex usu : *to the advantage of*, "of use to."

23. accidisse : depends on *intellegere*.

24. eo consilio : *with this intention* ; the *uti*-clauses, following, are in apposition with it ; W. 511, 518 ; B. 282. 1 ; A. 317. a ; 331 ; H. 564. III.

florentissimis rebus : adversative or concessive ablative absolute ; W. 397, 399 ; B. 227. 1, 2. c) ; A. 255. 3. d) ; H. 489. 1.

25. reliquissent : for *reliquerunt* of direct discourse.

uti . . . inferrent, potirentur (line 26), **deligerent** (line 27), substantive clauses of purpose, in apposition with *eo consilio*, line 24.

imperio : ablative with *potirentur* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477.

26. domicilio : dative of purpose ; W. 343 ; B. 191. 1 ; A. 233 ; H. 425. 3.

copia : sc. *locorum*.

PAGE 21

i. **stipendiarias**: predicate adjective; W. 293; B. 233. 2; A. 186. b; H. 394.

3. **uti sibi . . . liceret**: *permission*, lit. "that it might be allowed them."

concilium totius Galliae: Caesar had no authority to forbid or permit an assembly of Free Gaul. But it was politic to secure his *voluntas*, his "good-will," in advance.

7. **ne quis**: *that no one*; W. 149; B. 252. 1; A. 105. d; H. 186.

enuntiaret: for the construction, see W. 511; B. 295. 1; A. 331. d; H. 565.

nisi quibus: i. e. *nisi eis quibus*.

8. **mandatum esset**: *some instruction should be given*; pluperfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

inter se sanxerunt: *they bound themselves to one another by an oath*, etc.

CHAPTER 31

10. **idem**: nominative plural.

11. **fuerant**: sc. *apud eum*.

13. **agere**: subject of the impersonal *liceret*; W. 623; B. 327. 1; A. 270. b; H. 615.

14. **Caesari**: dative of reference; translate as if genitive; W. 335; B. 188. I. N; A. 235. a; H. 425. 4. N.

Non minus . . . viderent (line 18): this passage is in indirect discourse; the direct form would be: *Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea quae dixerimus enuntientur, quam uti ea quae volumus impetreremus, propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos (esse) videmus.*

id: i. e. *ne . . . enuntiarentur*; the substantive clause is in apposition with the pronoun.

19. **Diviciacus**: cf. page 12, line 22.

Galliae, etc.: indirect discourse to the end of the chapter; direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

Galliae totius: an exaggeration; he means only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

20. **factiones**: *parties*.

21. **Arvernos**: in modern *Auvergne*; they had been conquered in 121 B.C., but not made into a province.

22. **contenderent**: translate by the pluperfect; W. 449. 4; B. 260. 4; A. 277. b; H. 535.

23. *uti . . . arcesserentur*: substantive clause of result, subject of *factum est*; W. 521, 523; B. 297. 2; A. 332. a; H. 571. 1.

Sequanis: the *Sequani* were allies of the *Arverni*, and being unequal to the *Haedui*, had asked aid of the Germans.

mercede: ablative of price; W. 395; B. 225; A. 252; H. 478.

26. *adamassent*: *amare* is “to love”; *adamare*, “to fall in love with.” *traductos*: sc. *esse*.

27. *plures*: sc. *Germanos*.

esse: sc. *eos* or *Germanos*.

ad: preposition, connect with *numerum*.

28. *clientes*: *tributary states, vassals*.

PAGE 22

1. *omnem . . . amisisse*: this is, of course, an exaggeration.

3. *fractos*: sc. *eos*, antecedent of *qui* and subject of *coactos esse*.

4. *plurimum*: adverbial accusative with *potuissent*.

6. *sese . . . repetituros*: sc. *esse*; substantive clause, expressing the promise contained in the oath *iure iurando civitatem obstringere*.

8. *recusaturos, quominus . . . essent*: *refuse to be*; the clause introduced by *quominus* is an object clause of purpose; W. 507, 514; B. 295. 3; A. 317. b. N. 1; H. 568.

9. *illorum*: *Sequanorum*.

10. *Unum . . . esse*: *was the only one*.

qui . . . potuerit: primary tense, contrary to the rule of sequence; a clause of characteristic; W. 587; B. 283. 2; A. 320. b; H. 591. 5.

12. *Romam*: accusative of place to which; on Diviciacus's visit to Rome, see note to page 13, line 15.

13. *postulatum*: how is the accusative supine used?

15. *peius*: used substantively, subject of *accidisse*.

victoribus: adjective.

16. *Ariovistus*: German *Heerfürst*, “prince of the host.”

17. *tertiam partem*: what is now known as upper Alsace.

18. *optimus*: the land of the *Sequani* was approximately the fine district of Franche-Comté.

19. *altera*: *a second*.

20. *mensibus*: ablative of degree of difference with *ante*, adverb; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250; H. 479. 3.

Harudum: the *Harudes* had been living north of the Lake of Constance, east of the Tulingi.

21. *eum*: *Ariovistum*.

quibus . . . pararentur: a relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

22. *Futurum esse . . . uti*: *that the result would . . . be that, etc.*; the *uti*-clauses are the subjects of *futurum esse*.

23. *omnes*: sc. *Galli*.

24. *neque enim*: *for, of course, . . . not*.

25. *Gallicum*: sc. *agrum*.

hanc: of the Gauls.

26. *illa*: of the Germans; W. 426. 2; B. 246. 1; A. 102. a, b; H. 505. 1.

27. *ut semel*: *as soon as*, lit. "when once"; *vicerit* would be *vicit* in direct discourse. Through the rest of this quotation the tenses are the same as they would be in direct discourse. This makes the style more vivid and shows a livelier interest in the subject.

28. *proelium*: antecedent repeated with the relative, as often before.

Magetobrigam: the locality is unknown.

29. *nobilissimi cuiusque*: the English says *all*, the Latin *each*; W. 433. 3; B. 252. 5. c); A. 93. c; H. 515. 2.

30. *omnia exempla cruciatusque*: *hendiadys*; *all sorts of torture*; W. 740; B. 374. 4. A. 385; H. 751. 3. N. 1.

31. *edere*: *inflicts (publicly)*.

ad: *at or according to*.

PAGE 23

3. *auxili*: partitive genitive with *quid*.

4. *Gallis*: the so-called dative of agent; W. 339; B. 189. 1; A. 232; H. 431.

idem: subject of *esse faciendum*; in apposition with it are the clauses *ut . . . emigrent . . . petant . . . experiantur*.

6. *quaecumque*: indefinite relative pronoun; its antecedent is *fortunam*.

7. *Haec si*: *haec* has the emphatic position; reverse the words in translating.

8. *dubitare*: sc. *se*, i. e. *Diviciacum*.

9. *quin . . . sumat*: object clause after verb of doubting; W. 576; B. 298; A. 332. g. R; H. 595. 1.

10. *exercitus*: genitive; sc. *auctoritate*.

12. *Rhenum*: accusative governed by *trans* in *traducatur*; W. 320; B. 179. 3; A. 239. 2. b; H. 413. For the mood of *traducatur* after a verb of hindering, see W. 514; B. 295. 3; A. 331. e. 2; H. 596. 2.

CHAPTER 32

15. *fletu*: ablative of manner; W. 390; B. 220. 1; A. 248; H. 473. 3.

16. *unos*: *only, alone*; W. 131; B. 66; A. 94. a; H. 166. 1.

17. **facerent**: subjunctive in a clause subordinate to the infinitive *facere*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652. The scene which follows is very characteristic of the Gauls.

18. **quae . . . esset**: indirect question.

20. **respondere . . . permanere**: historical infinitives; notice that this kind of infinitive has a nominative subject; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610.

21. **quaereret**: when does *cum temporal* take the subjunctive? Translate in the pluperfect tense; W. 449. 4; B. 260. 4; A. 277. b; H. 535.

23. **Hoc**: *for this reason*, explained in *quod soli*, etc. The rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

24. **ne . . . quidem**: always separated by the emphasized word; B. 347; A. 345. b; H. 677.

25. **absentis**: *even when he was absent*.

26. **velut si . . . adesset**: a conditional clause of comparison; W. 567; B. 307. 1. 2; A. 312; H. 584.

27. **horrerent**: here transitive.

reliquis: *to the rest* (of the Gauls).

28. **Sequanis**: dative of agent with *perferendi*.

CHAPTER 33

2. **sibi . . . curae futuram**: sc. *esse*; *that he would attend to that matter*. Notice the future infinitive after a verb of promising.

5. **secundum ea**: *accordingly*.

6. **res**: *considerations*.

7. **putaret**: subjunctive of result or characteristic; *quare = propter quas = ut propter eas*, referring to *multae res*; W. 586. 2; B. 283, 284. 2; A. 319. 2; 320; H. 591. 2.

8. **fratres consanguineosque**: predicate accusatives with *appellatos*; W. 290; B. 169. 2; A. 185; H. 393. 9; it seems to have been common for the Romans to speak of the Haedui as kinsmen. There are several allusions to them as brethren in Roman literature, e. g. Cic. *ad Fam.* vii. 10. 4; Tac. *Ann.* xi. 25; Lucan. i. 427, 428.

11. **quod**: *a situation which*; the antecedent of *quod* is the idea contained in the preceding infinitive clauses.

16. **periculoseum**: sc. *esse*; the subject is *Germanos consuescere . . . transire . . . et . . . venire*.

17. **sibi . . . temperatueros . . . quin . . . exirent**: *would restrain themselves from going forth*; on the case of *sibi*, see W. 330; B. 187. II.

a; A. 227; H. 426. 4. N.; on the *quin* clause, see W. 577; B. 295. 3; A. 319. *d*; H. 594. II; 595. 2.

18. *ut : as*.

19. **Cimbri Teutonique**: these nations had kept Italy in terror for several years. They were destroyed by Marius in 102 and 101 B. C.

fecissent: subjunctive because subordinate to a subjunctive; being a secondary subordinate clause in indirect discourse, introduced by *existimabat*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; II. 643.

22. **rebus**: dative with a verb compounded with *ob*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

· **quam maturime**: *as quickly as possible*.

occurrentum: sc. *esse sibi*; impersonal passive of intransitive verb.

24. **ferendus non videretur**: Latin puts the negative with the verb, English with the adjective.

CHAPTER 34

25. **placuit ei**, etc.: *he decided to send*; the subject of *placuit* is the clause *ut . . . mitteret*.

26. **postularent**; subjunctive of purpose.

medium utriusque: *midway between the two*.

27. **conloquio**: dative of purpose; W. 343; B. 131. 1; A. 233; H. 425. 3.

velle, etc.: indirect discourse depending on the idea of *saying* implied in *postularent*.

29. **Si quid**, etc.: indirect discourse to end of chapter depending on *respondit*; the direct form is given in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

ipsi: *Ariovisto*; *sese* and *se* refer to Ariovistus, *eum* and *ille* to Caesar.

PAGE 25

1. **opus esset**: what constructions are found with *opus* and *usus*? W. 389; B. 218. 2. *a*; A. 243. *e*. R; H. 477. III. and N.

venturum fuisse: conclusion of a condition contrary to fact, in indirect discourse; W. 617. 2; B. 321. *A. 2. a*; A. 337. *b*; H. 647.

si quid . . . se velit: *if he (Caesar) wished anything of him (Ariovistus)*; *velle* is used, like a verb of asking, with two accusatives; W. 318; B. 178. 1. *a*; A. 239. *c*; H. 411. This condition would be a simple indicative in direct discourse: *Si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet*.

6. **mirum**: neuter, because it refers to the indirect question clause *quid . . . negoti esset*.

7. **vicisset**: subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

Caesari . . . populo: possessive dative; W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430.

8. **negoti**: partitive genitive; connect with *quid*.

CHAPTER 35

10. **Quoniam**, etc.: indirect discourse to the end of the chapter; direct form in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

11. **adfectus**: although treated; *beneficio* is explained by the clause *cum . . . esset*.

12. **consulatu suo**: ablative of time. Caesar had been consul in 59 B. C., a year before.

rex atque amicus: the Roman Senate often conferred complimentary titles on barbarian chiefs in order to gain their good-will; e. g. Catamantaloedes, page 3, lines 10-12.

13. **hanc . . . gratiam referret**: *he requited it in this way*; *gratiam* is explained by the clause *ut . . . putaret*.

sibi: *Caesari*.

14. **neque de communi re . . . cognoscendum**: *that he did not need to learn or inquire about the common interest*.

15. **sibi**: refers to Arioistus, subject of *putaret*.

16. **haec esse**: *that the following were the things which*.

ab eo: *Ariovisto*.

quam: indefinite pronoun; *any*.

19. **redderet**: to the *Haedui*.

permitteret ut . . . liceret: *should allow*.

illi: *Sequani*.

20. **voluntate eius**: *with his (Ariovistus's) consent*.

illis: *Haeduīs*.

neve . . . neve: not *neque . . . neque*, because in a clause of purpose; B. 282. 1. *d*; H. 316. 5; 561. 4.

23. **Si . . . fecisset . . . futuram (esse)**: direct form: *si . . . feceris . . . erit*.

25. **impetraret**: sc. *Caesar*; the direct form of this conditional sentence would be: *Si non impetrabo . . . non neglegam*.

M. **Messala . . . consulibus**: i. e. B. C. 61; see note to page 2, line 9.

26. **uti**: connect with *defenderet*.

27. **provinciam**: as his province; predicate accusative; W. 317; B. 177; A. 239. 1; H. 410. 1.

obtineret: do not translate "obtain."

quod . . . posset: so far as he could; W. 589; B. 283. 5; A. 320. *d*; H. 591. 3.

commodo : W. 391 ; B. 220. 3 ; A. 253. N ; H. 475. 3.

29. se : a repetition of *sese*, line 25, after the parenthetic clauses.

CHAPTER 36

PAGE 26

1. Ius esse, etc. : indirect discourse through the whole chapter.

ut . . . imperarent : substantive clause of result ; W. 524. 3 ; B. 297.

3 ; A. 332 ; H. 571. 2.

qui : the antecedent is *ei*, subject of *imperarent*.

2. eis : dative with *imperarent* ; W. 330 ; B. 187. II. a ; A. 227 ; H. 426. 1.

3. victis : participle used as noun ; dative with *imperare*.

ad : according to.

6. quem ad modum . . . uteretur : indirect question.

suo . . . suo : *its* (the Roman people's) . . . *his* (Ariovistus's).

9. stipendiarios : *stipendum* is a tribute or tax of fixed amount.

10. Magnam . . . injuriam : what is hyperbaton ? W. 740 ; B. 350.
II. a) ; A. 386 ; H. 751. 5.

qui . . . faceret : by making or since he was making ; W. 586. 4 ; B. 283. 3. a ; A. 320. e ; H. 592.

suo . . . sibi : the first refers to Caesar, the second to Ariovistus.

11. vectigalia : see note on this word, page 13, line 2.

13. iniuria : wrongfully ; ablative of manner ; W. 390 ; B. 220. 2 ; A. 248. R ; H. 474.

si . . . convenisset : if they abode by their agreement, lit. "in that which had been agreed upon."

14. penderent : this is the verb meaning to pay, because originally metal used as money was uncoined and therefore had to be weighed.

15. longe . . . afuturum : would be far from being of any use.

fraternum : the Latin often uses an adjective where the English would put a genitive.

16. Quod . . . denuntiaret : as for Caesar's declaring ; a substantive quod-clause ; W. 549 ; B. 299. 2 ; A. 333. a ; H. 588. II. 3. N.

sibi : sc. *Ariovisto*.

se : sc. *Caesarem*.

17. secum : with Ariovistus.

18. sua : refers to *neminem*, the subject of *contendisse*.

congrederetur : subjunctive for imperative in indirect discourse ; W. 599 ; B. 316 ; A. 339 ; H. 642. The subject of this verb, of *vellet*, and of *intellecturum (esse)* is Caesar.

19. quid : adverbial accusative, with *possent* ; W. 316 ; B. 176. 2. a ; A. 240. a ; H. 416. 2.

20. inter : during.

CHAPTER 37

23. Treveris: a nation living along the Mosel. Their capital is now the city of *Trèves* or *Trier*.

veniebant: the imperfect is the tense for something going on at the same time as something else.

Haedui: sc. *veniebant*.

24. questum: supine of *queror*, expressing the purpose for which they came; W. 654; B. 340; A. 302; H. 633.

26. datis: by giving.

27. pagos centum: *the people of one hundred cantons*; the district used for the population as at page 8, line 28.

Sueborum: for a description of this nation see Bk. IV, ch. 1. The name is often used as a general term for the interior tribes of Germany.

PAGE 27

1. maturandum sibi: sc. *esse*; *that he must hasten*; impersonal passive; W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. d; 230; H. 621. 2.

2. veteribus: i. e. already in Gaul.

3. resisti: impersonal passive.

5. magnis itineribus: by forced marches, perhaps twenty-five miles a day; see Introduction, page xlvii.

contendit: it is uncertain where he started from. The council of Gallic tribes described in chaps. 30–33 seems to have met Caesar north of Bibracte, somewhere in the country of the *Lingones*.

CHAPTER 38

6. tridui: genitive of measure; W. 354; B. 203. 2; A. 215. b; H. 440. 3.

viam: this is what is called a cognate accusative; W. 313; B. 176. 4. a; A. 238; H. 409. Trace Caesar's route on the map opposite page 10.

7. occupandum: gerundive, not gerund; W. 640; B. 339. 2; A. 296; 300. N; H. 628 and foot-note.

8. Vesontionem: now *Besançon*.

quod: this relative agrees in gender with the predicate noun *oppidum*, instead of with its antecedent *Vesontionem*; W. 301; B. 250. 3; A. 199; H. 396. 2.

10. Id: i. e. the occupation of Vesontio by Ariovistus.

ne: after *praecavendum*, a verb of hindering; W. 514; B. 295. 3; A. 331. e. 2; H. 566.

12. ad bellum := *bello*.

usui : dative of "tendency" or service ; W. 342 ; B. 191 ; A. 233 ; H. 425. 3.

15. **Dubis** : Celtic, the "black river" ; modern French, *Doubs*.
ut : *as if*.

16. **spatium** : object of *continet*.

17. **pedum** : genitive of measure, not affected in case by *amplius* ; W. 382 ; B. 217. 3 ; A. 247. c ; H. 471. 4.

DC : *sexcentorum* ; 600 feet at the top of the plateau ; the whole distance is 1,600 feet. DC may be a mistake in copying MDC.

qua : *where*.

intermittit : *is interrupted* ; i. e. it does not make a complete circle.

18. **altitudine** : ablative of quality ; W. 394 ; B. 224 ; A. 251 ; H. 473. 2.

radices : object of *contingant* ; the subject is *ripare*.

19. **Hunc (montem) . . . arcem** : two accusatives with one verb ; W. 317 ; B. 177. 1 ; A. 239. 1. a ; H. 410. 1.

Excavations at Besançon have revealed remains of both the Gallic and the Roman *Vesontio*.

CHAPTER 39

25. **moratur** : sc. *Caesar*, present indicative with *dum*, *while* ; W. 533 ; B. 293. I ; A. 276. e ; H. 533. 4.

nostrorum : *of our soldiers*, who asked about the enemy.

26. **vocibus** : *remarks, talk*.

27. **magnitudine** : ablative of quality ; so *virtute* and *exercitatione*. The Italians were on an average much smaller than the men of the Teutonic race ; cf. page 82, line 1.

PAGE 28

2. **timor** : this is the general word for fear ; if it is opposed to *metus* it means fear without sufficient reason, timidity or cowardice, while *metus* means fear of something definite, a well-grounded apprehension.

4. **tribunis . . . praefectis reliquisque** : for the character and duties of the *tribuni militum* and the *praefecti*, see Introduction, pages xxxix and xl. *Reliquis* no doubt refers to the *aides* or *attachés*, called *contuberniales*, attached to Caesar for personal and political reasons, and often worse than useless as officers ; page xli.

5. **urbe** : *Roma*.

amicitiae causa : a very polite phrase for political considerations.

7. **alias alia causa inlata** : *one alleging one reason, another another, or on different pretexts*.

quam . . . diceret: which they said made it necessary; *diceret* is singular to correspond with *alius . . . petebat*; for its mood, see W. 545; B. 323; A. 341. *d.* R; H. 649. I.

8. eius voluntate: with his (*Caesar's*) permission; W. 390; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N; H. 475. 3.

11. vultum fingere: control their expression, put on a bold face.

12. abditi: hiding themselves; middle or reflexive meaning of the passive; W. 442. 3; B. 256. I; A. 111. *a.* N.; H. 517.

17. in castris: in the service.

milites centurionesque: the private soldiers were all professionals; the centurions were promoted from the ranks; see Introduction, page xxix.

18. qui equitatui praeerant: *praefecti* and *decuriones*; see Introduction, pages xxxviii and xl.

20. vereri: this verb expresses awe or respect, such as is felt in the presence of a superior.

22. rem frumentarium: translate as if this were nominative, subject of *posset*; W. 516; B. 374. 5. *a*; A. 334. *c*.

ut: that . . . not, after a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f.* foot-note; H. 567. I.

24. castra moveri: translate in the active voice; to break camp.

signa ferri: to advance.

iussisset: for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

25. dicto: dative; W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227. N. 2; H. 433. 4.

dicto audientes: = obedient.

CHAPTER 40

27. omniumque ordinum . . . centurionibus: ordinarily only the *centuriones primorum ordinum* were thus consulted; see Introduction, page xxx. Apparently the centurions of six legions, 360 in number, were summoned to this council.

29. quod: connect with *putarent*; because (as he said) they thought; W. 545; B. 323; A. 341; H. 649. I.

PAGE 29

1. quam in partem: in what direction; connect with *ducerentur*, which is subjunctive in indirect question. This question is the subject of *quaerendum aut cogitandum esse*: translate, that they had a right to ask, etc.

2. Ariovistum, etc.: indirect discourse as far as *futuram*, page 30, line 20. This whole famous speech is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

se consule: *in his (Caesar's) consulship*, 59 B. C.; ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227. 1; A. 255. a; H. 489.

4. **cur . . . iudicaret**: *why was any one to suppose?* the direct form would be *iudicet*, *why is any one to suppose?* W. 493; B. 277; 300. 2; A. 338. a; H. 559. 5. N.

5. **quidem**: *at least*.

persuaderi: impersonal passive of a verb taking its object in the dative; W. 331; B. 187. II. b; A. 230; H. 426. 3. The subject is the infinitive clause *eum . . . repudiaturum (esse)*, in which *eum* refers to Ario-vistus, *suam* to Caesar.

8. **Quod si**: *but if*; W. 316; B. 185. 2; A. 156. b; 240. b; H. 510. 9.

9. **intulisset**: this stands for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

vererentur: this would stand for either *veremini* or *vereamini* of direct discourse; probably it is meant for the latter.

10. **factum**: sc. *esse*; *had been made*.

11. **periculum**: *a trial, a test*.

patrum . . . memoria: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487. The battles of *Aquae Sextiae* and *Vercellae*, in which the Romans under Marius nearly destroyed the *Cimbri* and *Teutoni* respectively, were in 102 and 101 B. C.; see Introduction, pages ix and lxiii.

13. **meritus**; sc. *esse*; *meritus* is attracted to the case of the subject of *videbatur*; W. 631. 2, 3; B. 328. 2; A. 271. c; H. 611. 2. N. 2.

videbatur: this is the only instance in the Gallic War of the imperfect indicative with *cum*; the subjunctive would be more regular here, but the author apparently wishes to emphasize the reality of the fact asserted; W. 607; B. 314. 3; A. 336. d; H. 643. 4.

14. **factum**: sc. *esse periculum*.

servili tumultu: ablative of time, referring to the *revolt of the slaves* and gladiators, many of whom were Germans, under Spartacus, B. C. 73-71. A *tumultus* meant a war in Italy or on its frontiers; *bellum*, a foreign war.

15. **quos**: the antecedent is *servorum* implied in *servili*; *of the slaves, whom, etc.*

usus ac disciplina: *experience and training*; they had been trained as gladiators by their Roman masters, and had also acquired some knowledge of Roman military methods.

quam: agrees with the nearer of the two antecedents.

16. **quantum haberet**: indirect question; translate in present tense.

17. **boni**: partitive genitive with *quantum*.

18. **inermes**: accusative agreeing with *quos*, and referring to the condition of the insurgents at the beginning of the revolt.

19. *superassent* : sc. *Romani*; in direct discourse the verb would be *superavimus*.

22. *illorum* : sc. *Germanorum*.

qui tamen : the *Helvetii*; *and yet they*.

23. *esse . . . potuerint* : *could not have been*.

24. *quos* : *any*.

adversum proelium : *adversum* is an adjective; for the fact referred to see page 21, line 28; page 22, line 2.

25. *hos . . . posse* : *that they might learn*, etc.

26. *defatigatis Gallis* : ablative absolute.

27. *sui potestatem* : *a chance at him*, i. e. *to attack him*.

28. *desperantes* : sc. *Gallos*; object of *adortum*.

29. *adortum* : *assailing*; agrees with *Ariovistum*.

30. *Cui rationi . . . hac* : transpose the clauses, and translate as if it were *Hac ratione . . . cui*; W. 303. 3; B. 251. 4. a; A. 200. b; H. 399. 3.

31. *ipsum* : *Ariovistum*; notice that the emphasized word stands between *ne* and *quidem*.

PAGE 30

1. *Qui . . . conferrent* : (*Those*) who attributed their fear to their pretended anxiety about the corn-supply, etc.

2. *facere* : its subject is *eos* understood, antecedent of *Qui*.

3. *praescribere* : sc. *officium*, from *de officio*; translate *to dictate* (to their commander).

4. *sibi . . . curae* : two datives; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. a; A. 233. a; H. 433.

5. *subministrare* : *were now supplying*.

6. *esse* : *were beginning to be*.

frumenta : *crops*; the singular means *grain*.

7. *Quod . . . dicantur* : as for its being said of them that they, etc.; W. 549; B. 299. 2; A. 333. a; H. 588. 3. N. The verb of this *quod*-clause is in the subjunctive because this is a subordinate clause of indirect discourse depending on *commoveri*.

audientes . . . laturi : why nominative? W. 631. 1; B. 328. 2; A. 271. c; H. 612. 1.

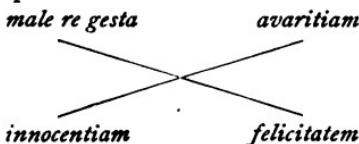
8. *dicantur* : personal construction, where the English prefers the impersonal; W. 631. 3; B. 332. c; A. 330. a. 1; H. 611. 1.

nihil : *no way, not at all*; W. 316; B. 176. 2. b; A. 238. b; H. 416. 2.

9. *scire* : sc. *se*.

quibuscumque : dative with *dicto audiens*, which is practically a compound word. Its antecedent is *eis*, understood with *defuisse*.

11. *innocentiam*: *integrity* contrasted with *avaritiam*, as *felicitatem*, line 12, *success*, is contrasted with *male re gesta*, line 10. The arrangement of these four expressions is what is called *chiasmus*:



W. 675; B. 350. 11. c; A. 344. f; H. 666. 2.

12. *perpetua vita*: *through his whole life*; ablative of time how long; B. 231. 1; A. 256. 2. b. N.; H. 417. 2.

14. *longiore*m**: *a more distant*.

conlatus suisset: *he had intended to put off*.

15. *repraesentaturum*: *sc. esse*; *he would do at once*.

de quarta vigilia: what time was this? See Introduction, page lxii. The date was about the 1st of September. The battle, described in ch. 52, occurred before the full moon, which came on September 18th. Caesar probably reached Vesontio in the latter half of August.

16. *quam primum*: *as soon as possible*; W. 414. 4; B. 240. 3; A. 93. b; H. 159. 2.

17. *utrum . . . an*: introducing a double indirect question; W. 594; B. 300. 4; A. 211; H. 380, 650.

20. *praetoriam cohortem*: *body-guard*; see Introduction, page xl.

CHAPTER 41

23. *mirum in modum*: *wonderfully*.

25. *princeps . . . gratias egit*: *was the first to thank*; W. 412; B. 239; A. 191; H. 497. 3.

x: for *decima* here, usually for *decem*.

26. *optimum . . . fecisset*: *had expressed the highest opinion*.

29. *primorum ordinum*: the meaning of this term is discussed in the Introduction, page xxx.

30. *egerunt*: *arranged*.

uti . . . satisfacere: *to make their apology*; a substantive clause of purpose, object of *egerunt*.

PAGE 31

1. *summa belli*: *the (whole) management of the campaign*.

suum iudicium . . . existimavisse: *suum* is predicative; *had not thought it was their business to decide*.

2. *imperatoris*: predicate genitive of possession, coördinate with *suum*; W. 360; B. 198. 3; A. 214. c; H. 439, 447.

4. *ei*: *in him.*

5. *ut . . . duceret*: (*such*) *that it led*; result; a *quod*-clause would have been natural, and would have been used had it not been for *quod . . . habebat*.

This route led through the gap between the Jura and the Vosges, the great historic route between Central France and Germany; see map opposite page 10.

milium: sc. *passuum*.

locis apertis: *through open country*; ablative of the way by which, a variety of the ablative of means, or ablative absolute.

7. *Septimo die*: by this time Caesar is supposed to have reached a point between Gemar and Ostheim on the Fecht. He had made his circuit of fifty miles at the beginning of the seven days, and then continued his advance directly. Ariovistus was twenty-four miles farther north.

9. *milia*: accusative of extent of space.

CHAPTER 42

11. *Quod*, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of saying involved in sending envoys.

postulasset: sc. *Caesar*.

12. *per se*: *as far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned*.

accessisset: sc. *Caesar*.

14. *ad sanitatem*: *to his senses*, to a healthy state (of mind).

15. *petenti*: sc. *Caesari*.

16. *ultro*: i. e. without being asked.

17. *suis*: Caesar's; so *suis*, line 18.

eum: Ariovistus.

18. *fore*; its subject is *uti . . . desisteret*; W. 636; B. 270. 3; A. 288.

f; H. 571. 1; 619. 2.

pertinacia: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214; A. 243; H. 464.

19. *conloquio*: dative of purpose; W. 343; B. 191. 1; A. 233; H. 425.

20. *ultra citroque*: *back and forth*.

22. *Vereri*, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on "saying" implied in *postulavit*.

23. *veniret*: for *veniat*, jussive or imperative subjunctive, in indirect discourse, by secondary tense sequence; W. 599, 482; B. 316; A. 339. R. N. 1; H. 642.

24. *alia ratione*: *on any other terms*.

25. *interposita causa*: *by alleging an excuse*.

26. *Gallorum equitatui*: mostly Haedui and their allies, about 4,000 in number; see page 10, line 28.

27. **commodissimum esse**: predicate, of which the subject is *impone*, line 29.

omnibus equis . . . detractis: ablative absolute.

28. **Gallis equitibus**: dative with *detrahere*; W. 337; B. 188. 2. d; A. 229; H. 427.

eo : = *in eos (equos)*.

PAGE 32

1. **si quid . . . esset**: if there should be any need of action. Future condition in indirect discourse; secondary tense sequence, after *statuit*.

quid : why accusative? W. 316; B. 176. 3; A. 240. a; H. 416. 2.

facto : ablative with *opus*; W. 389; B. 218. 2. c; A. 243. e; H. 477. III.

2. **Quod cum fieret**: this is the usual order of words in a *cum*-clause containing a relative pronoun; *while this was going on*.

non inridicule : = *ridicule*, just as "not bad" means "decidedly good"; this form of speech is called *litotes*; W. 740; B. 375. 1; A. 209. c; H. 752. 8.

3. **ex militibus**: equivalent in sense to the partitive genitive; B. 201. 2; A. 216. c; H. 444.

4. **pollicitum**: agrees with *Caesarem*, understood, subject of *rescribere*; *that Caesar, having promised, or who had promised*.

5. **ad equum rescribere**: the wit lies in the double meaning of this phrase, *was enrolling as horsemen* and *was enrolling as knights*, for the "knights" were a kind of lesser nobility at Rome.

CHAPTER 43

6. **tumulus**: perhaps to be identified with the *tertre de Plettig*, a gently sloping hill, which rises about 180 feet above the plain, on the west bank of the Fecht, between Ostheim and Gemar.

terrenus : i. e. not rocky, hence smooth and round.

10. **equis** : *on horseback*, lit. by means of horses.

passibus cc : *ducentis*; *at the distance of 200 paces*; i. e. 1,000 feet; *passus* = 2 *gradus* = 5 feet; ablative of degree of difference; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250, 257. b; H. 417. 3; 479.

12. **ex equis**: see note on *ex vinculis*, page 3, line 26.

se : plural, Ariovistus and Caesar.

14. **ventum est**: passive impersonal; translate, *they came*; W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. d; H. 302. 6.

initio : ablative of time.

15. **quod . . . appellatus esset**: subjunctive in informal indirect discourse, i. e. Caesar is quoting himself like a third person; the *quod*-clauses are substantive, in apposition with *beneficia*.

16. **munera**: Livy (30. 15) gives an account of such gifts of honor, sent to Masinissa, king of Numidia.

17. **missa**: sc. *essent*.

quam rem: *and this, or a tribute which*; the Latin idiom is "which thing," not "a thing which."

18. **illum**: *Ariovistum*.

19. **aditum**: access to the Roman Senate.

23. **necessitudinis**: *alliance*.

ipsis: *Romanis*; dative with *intercederent*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

intercederent: *existed between themselves and the Haedui*; subjunctive in indirect question, *quam*, line 22, being an interrogative adverb.

24. **honorifica**: how is this adjective compared? W. 124; B. 71. 5; A. 89. c; H. 153.

in eos: *in their behalf*.

25. **ut**: *how*; interrogative adverb.

26. **prius . . . quam . . . adpetissent**: what construction is found with *priusquam* in direct discourse? in indirect? W. 534, 605; B. 291, 292, 323; A. 327, 336. B. a. N. 2; H. 605, 643.

28. **ut . . . vellet**: *to desire*; its objects are the infinitive clauses, *socios . . . depere* . . . *esse*.

sui nihil: *nothing of their own (power, dignity, etc.)*; *sui* is the possessive adjective used substantively in the partitive genitive with *nihil*; W. 355; B. 201. 2. a; 237. 2. a; A. 216. a. 1; H. 440. 5.

30. **quod vero**, etc.: translate in this order: *quis pati posset, id, quod . . . attulissent, eis eripi*.

quod . . . attulissent: i. e. the power and influence, etc., of the Haedui.

PAGE 33

1. **eis**: dative with a verb of taking away, like *equitibus*, page 31, line 28.

2. **eadem**: explained in the substantive clauses which follow, *ne . . . inferret . . . redderet . . . pateretur*; W. 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

5. **at**: *at least*.

quos: *any*; W. 149; B. 252. 1; A. 105. d; H. 512. 1.

CHAPTER 44

7. **Transisse**, etc.: indirect discourse through the whole chapter; the direct form of part of it is given in Harkness's Caesar.

8. **rogatum et arcessitum**: participles, with a causal sense, agreeing with *sese*; W. 651; B. 337. 2. f); A. 292; H. 638. 1.

9. **spe . . . praemiis**: = *spe praemiorum*; *hendiadys*; W. 740; B.

374. 4; A. 385; H. 751. 3. N. 1. Cf. *exempla cruciatusque*, page 22, line 30.

10. *sedes . . . obsides*: objects of *habere*; translate *concessas* and *datos* by relative clauses.

14. *omnes Galliae civitates*: this is, of course, an exaggeration.

ad se oppugnandum: gerundive expressing purpose.

15. *castra habuisse* := *pugnavisse*.

17. *experiri*: *to try issues with him*.

decertare: *to fight it out*.

18. *pace*: ablative with *uti*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. I.

uti: infinitive of *utor*; complementary to *velint*; W. 626; B. 328. 1; A. 271; H. 607.

de stipendio recusare: *to refuse payment of the tribute*.

19. *sua voluntate*: this is inconsistent with the account given by Diviciacus, ch. 31, and the Haeduan envoys, ch. 37.

20. *sibi . . . praesidio*: two datives; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. a); A. 233. a; H. 433.

22. *per*: *by the action of*; A. 246. b; H. 468. 3.

23. *subtrahantur*: *sub* implies underhand means.

25. *Quod . . . traducat*: *as to his bringing over*; W. 549; B. 299. 2; A. 333. a; H. 588. II. 3. N.

26. *sui munieri*: connect with *causa*, line 27; gerund or gerundive construction? W. 642; B. 339. 5; A. 298. a, c.; H. 626. 3.

28. *quod . . . defenderit*: *that his warfare had been not offensive, but defensive*.

29. *prius . . . venisse*: a false statement, for the Romans had conquered the Arverni seventy-three years before.

populum (venisse): why not *populus venisset*? B. 314. 4; A. 336. a. R; H. 643. 2.

PAGE 34

2. *sibi*: may be left untranslated; it refers to Caesar, but *suis* refers to Ariovistus, as do *suam*, line 3, *suo*, line 5, and *se*, line 6.

3. *Provinciam*: notice the emphatic position of the predicate noun at the beginning of the sentence.

hanc . . . Galliam: the part of Gaul near the Rhine.

illam: the part near the "Province."

4. *Ut*: *as*, correlative to *sic*, line 5.

ipsi: *Ariovisto*.

7. *Quod . . . diceret*: *as to Caesar's saying*, etc.

8. *non se*, etc.: sc. *he wished to reply*, or the like.

imperitum . . . rerum: *inexperienced, unsophisticated*; as to the construction of *rerum*, see W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 451. 1.

9. *bello . . . proximo*: ablative of time; B. C. 62 and 61.

Allobrogum: with (against) the *Allobroges*.

10. *ipsos*: *Haeduos*.

13. *Debere se*: that he had reason.

14. *sui opprimendi causa*: gerund or gerundive? See note on *sui munier:di*, page 33, line 26.

15. *Qui*: sc. *Caesar*.

17. *Quod*: moreover.

eum: *Caesarem*.

interfecerit: sc. *Ariovistus*.

nobilibus: Caesar, as the recognized head of the democratic party, was hated by the Senate and nobility of Rome.

18. *gratum*: substantively used; a thing pleasing.

19. *compertum habere*: nearly = *comperisse*; B. 337. 6; A. 292. c; H. 431. 3.

21. *eius*: sc. *Caesaris*; Ariovistus knew of the civil strife at Rome.

Quod si: if, however.

24. *eius*: *Caesaris*.

confecturum: sc. *se* (i. e. *Ariovistum*).

CHAPTER 45

25. *in eam sententiam . . . quare*: to this effect (to show) why.

26. *negotio*: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243. b; H. 461.

posset: subjunctive in indirect question introduced by *quare*.

27. *uti . . . desereret*: substantive clause, object of *patri*.

29. *Ariovisti*: predicate possessive genitive; W. 360; B. 198. 3; A. 214. c; H. 447.

superatos esse: in B. C. 121.

PAGE 35

1. *ignovisset*: this "pardon" was politic; it would have been very difficult to make a province of their country, situated beyond the Cevennes mountains. See map, frontispiece.

2. *antiquissimum quodque tempus*: priority, lit. "each earliest time"; W. 433. 3; B. 252. 5. c); A. 93. c; H. 515. 2. This is said in reply to Ariovistus's statement, who on page 33, line 29, "*Se prius*," etc., claimed priority against the Romans.

6. *suis*: its own, referring to *quam* (sc. *Galliam*), subject of *uti*.

suis legibus uti: be independent, lit. "enjoy its own laws."

voluisset: sc. *senatus*.

CHAPTER 46

7. **geruntur**: present tense with *dum*; W. 533, 447; B. 293; A. 276.
e; H. 533. 4.

8. **tumulum**: accusative with *propius*, as if the latter were a preposition; B. 141. 3; A. 261. a; H. 420. 5.

11. **ne quod omnino telum**: *that no weapon at all.*

12. **periculo legionis**: *danger to the legion*; the genitive is objective.

13. **committendum (esse)**, etc.: *that occasion should be given for saying*; the clause *ut . . . posset* is the subject of the infinitive *committendum (esse)*.

15. **per fidem**: *through (misplaced) confidence*, or else *per = in violation of, contrary to*, as in *per-fidia, per-iurium*.

17. **usus**: translate simply *with*; connect with *arrogantia*.

Gallia: ablative of separation; connect with *interdixisset*.

Romanis: why dative? W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 225. d. N. 1; H. 426. 7; 464. 3.

interdixisset: subjunctive in indirect question, *qua* being interrogative.

18. **ut**: interrogative; *how*; translate it before *impetum*.

CHAPTER 47

21. **Biduo**: ablative of degree of difference with *post*; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250; H. 479. 3.

22. **Velle**: indirect discourse as far as *mitteret*, line 25, depending on the idea of "saying" implied in *legatos misit*.

coptae: passive, because its complementary infinitive *agi* is passive; B. 133. 1; A. 143. a; H. 299. 1.

23. **uti**: (*asking*) *that*.

24. **constitueret**: subjunctive in a substantive clause after a verb of desiring implied; W. 515; B. 296. 1; A. 331. b; H. 565.

minus = *non*, as often with *si*.

suis . . . se: the first refers to Caesar, the second to Ariovistus.

26. **visa non est**: *did not appear (reasonable)*.

eo magis: *all the more (for this)*; *eo* is causal.

27. **diei**; why genitive? W. 348, 720; B. 201. 3. a; A. 223. e. N. 2; H. 446. 5.

28. **quin . . . coicerent**: *from throwing*; a result clause; W. 577; B. 284. 3; A. 319. d; H. 595. 2.

Legatum: *as an envoy*; in line 25 *legatis* means *lieutenants*.

PAGE 36

2. C. Valerium Procillum: the father of this man having received the honor of Roman citizenship from Valerius Flaccus, governor of the Province of Gaul in B. C. 83, took the *praenomen* (*Gaius*) and *nomen* (*Valerius*) of his patron, retaining his own Gallic name as a *cognomen*. The son's name is similarly composed.

3. humanitate: *culture, education.*

4. civitate: *with citizenship.*

6. multa . . . utebatur: *spoke readily;* *multa* agrees with *qua*, ablative with *utebatur*.

longinqua consuetudine: *by long practice.*

7. in eo: *in his (Procillus's) case.*

eset: subjunctive, because the reason is not stated as a fact, though it is true, but as the thought in the mind of the person who decided to send the envoy. It makes no difference that the author is writing about his own doings; he speaks of himself always in the third person. W. 605; B. 323; A. 321. 2. N. 2; H. 588. II.

8. hospitio: this relation was sacred, and Metius would naturally be protected by it.

12. Quid: *why?*; adverbial.

venirent: a question in indirect discourse; the direct form would be *venitis?*

an: introduces the second member of an alternative question; the first member, as here, is often omitted; W. 281; B. 162. 4. a; A. 211, b; H. 380. 3.

13. conantes: agrees with *eos* understood, the object of *prohibuit* and *coniecit*.

This high-handed act was done for effect on the minds of Ariovistus's soldiers.

CHAPTER 48

15. milibus: distance considered as measure of difference is in the ablative. It may be regarded as extent of space, and be expressed by the accusative.

16. sub monte: i. e. at the foot of the Vosges.

17. diei: as on page 35, line 27. We say the "eve" or the "morrow" of a day.

praeter castra Caesaris: this flank movement would not have been safe if Ariovistus had not been moving along high ground on the slopes of the Vosges west of Caesar's camp.

18. castra: see plan opposite page 38 of the text.

19. *uti . . . intercluderet*: purpose clause in apposition with *consilio*; W. 518; A. 317. *a*; H. 568. 3.

frumento: ablative of separation.

The object of cutting off Caesar's supplies was to force him to retreat.

20. *supportaretur*: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *intercluderet*, to which it is subordinate; W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.

22. *vellet*: imperfect subjunctive, because depending on *desset*. Standing merely as a conditional sentence, the form would be *si . . . volet . . . deerit*.

24. *castris*: *in the camp*; the preposition *in* may be omitted when the idea of means is prominent in an ablative of place; W. 401, 402; B. 228. 1; A. 258. *f*. 1; H. 485.

26. *hoc*: referring, as is frequently the case, to what follows.

se . . . exercuerant: *were trained*; the Latin reflexive is often best translated by the English passive, or the Latin passive by the English reflexive.

27. *numero*: ablative of specification, defining *totidem*; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

28. *singuli singulos*: *taking a man apiece*; W. 130; B. 81. 4. *a*); A. 95. *a*; H. 164. 1.

30. *versabantur*: *associated*.

PAGE 37

1. *si qui*: = *si quis*.

2. *equo*: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243. *b*; H. 461.

si quo erat . . . prodeundum: *if there was occasion to advance anywhere*.

4. *sublevati*: *supporting themselves*; W. 442. 3; B. 256. 1; A. 111. *a*; H. 517.

CHAPTER 49

6. *eum* and *se*: both refer to Ariovistus; *eum* is the subject and *se* the object of *tenere*.

7. *ultra*: i. e. toward Vesontio; Caesar fortifies a second camp south of that of Ariovistus, in order to keep open the line of communication with his base of supplies. This second was smaller than the first; see lines 17-19.

9. *castris*: dative with *idoneus*, an adjective of fitness; W. 333; B. 192. 2; A. 234. *a*; H. 434.

acie triplici: see Introduction, pages xlvi and xlvii.

11. *castra munire*: for a description of the plan and fortification of a Roman camp, see Introduction, pages xlviii-lii.

13. **expedita**: translate as if it were *expeditorum*, agreeing with *homines* understood. Infantry only is meant.

14. **quae copiae**: *copiae* is virtually a repeated antecedent, as it means the infantry and cavalry already specified; W. 303. 2; B. 251. 4. b); A. 200. a; H. 399. 1.

15. **Nihilo**: ablative of degree of difference with *setius*.

CHAPTER 50

20. **instituto suo**: according to his usual practice. What kind of an ablative? W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N; H. 475. 3.

25. **quae . . . oppugnaret**: relative clause of purpose.

PAGE 38

5. **quod . . . esset**: that (as they told him) it was customary; *esset* subjunctive, representing the cause, not as a fact, but as the statement of the informants.

ut . . . declararent: substantive clause explaining *consuetudo*.

6. **materes familiae, etc.**: a similar statement is found in Tacitus, *Germania*, 8.

sortibus: it was characteristic of the Germans to use lots or divining tablets in order to predict the future.

7. **utrum . . . necne**: interrogative particles introducing a double or alternative question; W. 594; B. 162. 4; A. 211; H. 650. 1.

ex usu: advantageous.

8. **fas**: the will of God, fated, right.

9. **novam lunam**: compare on this point Tacitus, *Germania*, 11, and the account of the Spartans' delay before the battle of Marathon. The new moon in question here occurred on September 18th.

CHAPTER 51

10. **praesidio . . . castris**: two datives; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2; A. 233. a; H. 433.

11. **alarios**: auxiliaries, light-armed troops, thus named because in battle they were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*).

12. **pro**: distinguish the meaning here and in *pro . . . numero*, lines 13, 14.

14. **ad speciem**: to make a show (of strength), for effect; making the number of legionaries appear larger than it was.

15. **acie**: as to the breadth of the front of a legion in triple line of battle, see Introduction, page xlivi. Here six legions were arrayed. See plan opposite page 38 of the text. Notice that one cohort was probably detached from each legion to guard the camp.

17. *generatim*: *by tribes*—each nation by itself; see map, frontispiece, for the location of these nations in Germany.

paribus intervallis: ablative of manner or attendant circumstance; W. 390; B. 221; A. 248; H. 473. 3.

20. *raedis*: four-wheeled vehicles, with leather coverings.

carris: two-wheeled carts.

21. *Eo*: *there or therein*—i. e. in the wagons and carts.

23. *se*: i. e. the women; the pronoun refers not to the subject of *traderent*, but to the subject of *implorabant*.

CHAPTER 52

24. *singulos*, etc.: i. e. a lieutenant (*legatus*) over each of five legions and the *quaestor* over the sixth. The object of this arrangement was to develop a spirit of competition.

26. *a*: *on*.

eam partem: the left wing of the enemy, opposite his own right wing.

28. *ita*: connect with *acriter*; *itaque* (line 29) = *et ita*, with *repente*, etc.

PAGE 39

1. *spatium*: connect with the gerund *coiciendi*, the object of which is *pila*.

3. *phalange*: cf. page 17, line 12, and see Introduction, page lxvii; notice the Greek accusative of this word in line 5.

5. *insilirent . . . revellerent . . . vulnerarent*: subjunctives of characteristic; W. 587; B. 283. 2; A. 320. *a*; H. 591. 1.

6. *desuper*: ordinarily the Roman soldier pressed close to his enemy and thrust at him under the edge of his shield.

7. *a sinistro*: on the German left.

10. P. Crassus: a son of M. Crassus the triumvir; see Introduction, page xiii; cf. Bk. III, ch. 20 *sqq.*, where Caesar entrusts to him an important command.

adulescens: perhaps he is called "young" to distinguish him from his father, the triumvir; but the same word is applied to several other persons in the Commentaries, where no such purpose is evident.

11. *expeditior*: *freer*.

CHAPTER 53

16. *Rhenum*: by fleeing down the Ill they could reach the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battle-field. The numeral V, "five," in the text is probably an error. Some authorities give the number as "fifty"; e. g. Plutarch says "four hundred furlongs."

17. **viribus**: causal ablative with *confisi*; W. 385; B. 219. 1; A. 254.
b; H. 476. 3.

tranare *contenderunt*: by great effort swam across.

18. **inventis . . . reppererunt**: *invenire* is to come upon, to find without seeking; *reperire* is to find by seeking.

20. **ea**: *in it*; really an instrumental ablative.

profugit: his death is mentioned in Bk. V, ch. 29, as having occurred previous to the writing of that book.

reliquos omnes: Plutarch says 80,000 were slain. We are tempted to think this an exaggeration.

22. **Duae . . . uxores**: a German ordinarily had but one wife; see Tacitus, *Germania*, 18.

Sueba: there is a description of this nation in Bk. IV, ch. 1-3.

natione: ablative of specification.

23. **duxerat . . . duxerat**: *he had brought . . . he had married*.

25. **altera . . . altera**: appositives to *duae*; W. 292. 1; B. 253. 1;
A. 184. a; H. 393. 4.

27. **Procillus**: see ch. 47.

28. **trinis**: three sets of, or simply *three*, the distributive numeral being used because *catenae* is usually found in the plural; W. 130; B. 81. 4. b);
A. 95. d; H. 164. 4.

in . . . Caesarem . . . incidit: fell in with (encountered) Caesar.

29. **hostes**: object of *insequentem*.

quidem: this word is "post-positive," i. e. it never begins a sentence;
W. 240. 6; B. 347. 1; A. 345. b; H. 677.

PAGE 40

2. **honestissimum**: never translate *honestus* "honest."

3. **hospitem**: the relation of guest and host was a sacred one among the ancients, permanent in its character, often hereditary, a private international relation even in the absence of public ones.

4. **eius**: sc. *Procilli*.

5. **quicquam**: adverbial accusative.

6. **ter**: see note on **sortibus**, page 38, line 6. Cf. Tacitus, *Germania*, 10, and our proverbial "three guesses."

consultum (esse): impersonal.

7. **necaretur . . . reservaretur**: indirect discourse for the direct deliberative questions, *necetur . . . reservetur*?

8. **sortium beneficio**: thanks to the lots.

9. **M. Metius**: see page 36, line 8.

eum: *Caesarem*.

CHAPTER 54

11. Suebi . . . venerant: see statement about the *Suebi* in ch. 37.
13. Ubii: living near the site of Cologne; enemies of the *Suebi*.
- Rhenum: accusative with *proximi*; B. 141. 3; A. 261. *a*; 234. *e*; H. 435. 2; cf. *propius tumulum*, page 35, line 8.
15. una aestate: the defeat of the Helvetii probably occurred late in June or early in July; that of Ariovistus about September 10th or 15th.
16. hiberna: see Introduction, page lii.
17. in: among.
18. citeriorem: = *Cisalpinam*.
- ad conventus agendos: to hold the assizes. As governor of Cisalpine Gaul Caesar had to visit its cities and administer justice. Moreover, in that country he was nearer Rome and able to keep a closer watch on political events there.

BOOK TWO—B. C. 57

SUBJUGATION OF THE BELGIC GAULS. Learning that the Belgae, excepting the Remi, were forming a confederation against the Romans, Caesar takes the field and fortifies a camp on the Axona (Aisne) River, where he soon afterward inflicts a crushing defeat upon the allied Belgae. This is followed by the submission of the city of Noviodunum and the nations of the Bellovaci and Ambiani (ch. 1–15). When advancing against the Nervii, Caesar is suddenly attacked by them and their allies, and barely escapes defeat. After a desperate struggle the Nervii are beaten and almost annihilated (ch. 16–28). The Atuatuci surrender after a siege, but, acting treacherously, are sold into slavery (ch. 29–33). The campaign ends with the reduction of several tribes along the coast (ch. 34, 35).

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 41

1. **Cum esset Caesar:** *when Caesar was*; a temporal clause with its verb in the imperfect subjunctive; W. 536; B. 288. 1. *B.*; A. 325; H. 600. II.

in citeriore Gallia: in northern Italy, then called Cisalpine Gaul. See page 40, line 18 and note. What is the difference between *in* with the accusative and *in* with the ablative? W. 325. 1; 401; B. 143; A. 152. *c*; H. 420. 3; 490. 3. N. B.—Do not translate words in brackets.

2. **ita uti:** *just as*; A. 107; H. 584. 5.

demonstravimus: i. e. in the last chapter of Bk. I. Caesar, as the author, speaks in the first person, often plural; but he speaks of Caesar, the actor in the narrative, in the third person.

3. **adferebantur:** the imperfect tense indicates a repeated occurrence—something which happened several times, or often, or usually; W. 449. 1; B. 260. 2; A. 115. 2. *b*; H. 534. 3.

litteris: *letters*, though *litterae* usually means *a letter*. Ablative of means or instrument; W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. *c*; II. 476.

Labieni: Caesar's ablest lieutenant; for all proper names consult the vocabulary. At this time he had charge of Caesar's army, which was wintering among the Sequani; see map, frontispiece.

certior fiebat: *was informed (from time to time)*; *certior fieri* is a Latin “idiom.”

4. omnes Belgas . . . coniurare: that all the Belgians were conspiring; the subject of the infinitive is in the accusative; W. 322; B. 184; A. 240. *f*; H. 415. In regard to the Belgae, see Bk. I, ch. 1, and notes; also Motley, Dutch Republic, Introduction, §§ II, III. Here is an instance of *oratio obliqua*, indirect discourse, depending on *rumores adferabantur* and *certior siebat*; the direct form of quotation would be *omnes Belgae . . . coniurant, obsidesque inter se dant*; W. 597, 598, 599; B. 313, 314, 331. I; A. 272; H. 613. 3.

quam: subject of *esse*, for *quos*, attracted into agreement with the predicate noun *partem*; W. 301; B. 250. 3; A. 199; H. 396. 2.

partem: predicate accusative with *esse*; W. 290; B. 167, 168; A. 176; H. 393.

dixeramus: in Bk. I, ch. 1. Here Caesar, as the author, speaks in the first person.

5. coniurare: any combination against Rome, no matter how justifiable, is called by Roman writers a "conspiracy."

coniurare . . . dare: infinitives in indirect discourse, depending upon *rumores adferabantur* and *certior siebat*. The infinitive with its subject accusative is used as the subject or object of verbs of thinking, saying, and the like; W. 597, 599; B. 314; A. 336; H. 613.

obsides: see note on *obsides*, page 7, line 4.

6. inter se: to each other; W. 425. 1; B. 85. 2; 245; A. 196. *f*; H. 502. 1.

Coniurandi: gerund; genitive limiting *causas*; W. 639. 1; B. 338. I. *a*; A. 298; H. 626.

has: as follows; a common meaning of the pronoun *hic*.

causas: subject of *esse*; the infinitive clause depends upon *certior siebat*.

7. quod vererentur: because (as it was said) they were afraid, etc.; a reason alleged by other persons than the writer or speaker has its verb in the subjunctive mood. Moreover, this is a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 545, 605; B. 314, 323; A. 321, 336. 2; H. 588. II.

ne: that or lest after a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. 1.

omni pacata Gallia; ablative absolute; when or if all Gaul should be subdued; W. 397; B. 305. 1; 227. 2. *b*; A. 310. *a*; H. 489.

Gallia: he means Gaul in the narrower sense—central Gaul, *Gallia Celtica*; see Bk. I, ch. 1.

8. noster: as usual in Caesar = *Romanus*.

quod . . . sollicitarentur: same construction as *quod vererentur*, line 7.

non nullis: *some*: ablative of agent; W. 379; B. 216; A. 246; H. 467, 468.

9. partim qui: *partly by those who or some of whom*; sc. *ab eis* (i. e. *Gallis*) as antecedent of *qui*. Notice that the verbs of the relative clauses, *noluerant*, line 10, *ferebant*, line 12, *studebant*, line 13, are all indicatives stating facts as real, regardless of their being in indirect discourse; W. 607; B. 314. 3; A. 336. b; H. 643. 3.

ut . . . ita: *as . . . so or while . . . yet*; A. 107; H. 586. II. 5.

Germanos . . . versari: this infinitive clause is the object of *noluerant*; W. 626; B. 331. IV; A. 271. a. N. 1; H. 614.

11. moleste ferebant: a Latin "idiom"; *they took it ill, were annoyed, were vexed*; the object of *ferebant* is *exercitum hiemare atque inverascere*; W. 625; B. 331. V; A. 333. b; H. 614.

12. mobilitate ac levitate: ablatives of cause; W. 384; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475.

13. novis imperiis: *a change of masters*; dative with *studebant*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227; H. 426. I.

ab non nullis: sc. *solllicitarentur*.

14. ad conducendos homines: *to hire men*, i. e. mercenary soldiers; the accusative gerundive with *ad* expresses purpose; W. 639. 3; 640; B. 339. I; A. 300; H. 628.

15. regna: see note to *regnum*, page 3, line 10.

16. eam rem: *that or this*; *res* is very often not to be translated, and rarely translated "thing"; it refers here to the seizure of sovereign power —*regna occupabantur*.

imperio nostro: *under our rule*; ablative of attendant circumstance; W. 391; B. 221; H. 473. 3.

consequi: complementary infinitive with *poterant*; W. 626; B. 328. I; A. 271; H. 607. 2.

17. poterant: *would be able*.

CHAPTER 2

18. nuntiis: ablative of means or cause.

duas legiones: the 13th and 14th; he already had six, the 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th; the eight legions and the auxiliary troops probably amounted to about 60,000 men.

19. inita aestate: *at the beginning of summer*; lit. "summer having been begun"; ablative absolute. The Romans often vaguely divided the year into summer and winter, as we sometimes do.

20. in . . . Galliam: connect with *deduceret* in translating; the phrase really belongs to both verbs in the sentence.

qui deduceret: to lead (them); relative clause of purpose; the antecedent of *qui* is *Pedium*; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

Q. Pedium: Caesar's nephew or grand-nephew.

PAGE 42

1. legatum: appositive to *Pedium*; W. 291; B. 169. 1, 2; A. 183, 184; H. 383. 3. Concerning *legatus* see Introduction, page xl.

cum primum pabuli, etc.; i. e. in June; *pabulum*, "forage," was needed for the transport animals as well as for the cavalry horses.

2. inciperet: imperfect subjunctive with *cum* temporal; see note on *Cum esset*, page 41, line 1.

ad exercitum: perhaps at Vesontio, the chief city of the Sequani, now Besançon; see map, opposite page 10 of the text.

Dat negotium: he charged; *dat* is the historical present, often used for the perfect in lively narrative; W. 447. (1); B. 259. 3; A. 276. d; H. 532. 3.

Senonibus: this nation lived north of the Haedui, on the upper Seine. Their name is preserved in the modern Sens (Latin *Agedincum*).

3. Belgis: dative with *finitimi*, an adjective of nearness; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

uti . . . cognoscant . . . faciant: substantive clauses in apposition with and explaining *negotium*.

4. quae . . . gerantur: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *cognoscant*, on which it depends; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

se: him (Caesar), referring to the subject of the main verb *dat*; W. 421. 2; B. 244. II; A. 196. a. 2; H. 504.

5. certiorem faciant: inform; a Latin "idiom"; notice that two Latin words may often be best rendered by one English word, and *vice versa*.

6. manus: bodies of troops; accusative plural, subject of *cogi*. The clause *manus cogi* is the object of *nuntiaverunt*.

7. dubitandum: sc. *esse*, which is usually omitted in the periphrastic passive when it is impersonal; B. 337. 7; A. 113. d. N; 146. d; H. 612.

2. N. 1. Translate: that he must not hesitate.

quin . . . proficisceretur: *quin* introduces clauses after negative expressions of doubting and hindering; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. d; H. 595. 1. Translate: to advance; ordinarily the infinitive follows *dubito*, in the sense of "hesitate"; W. 626; B. 298. b; A. 271.

8. Re . . . provisa: after attending to, etc.; ablative absolute.

9. movet: breaks; again a historical present.

diebus: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487.

fines Belgarum: supposing he marched ten miles a day, this would be about one hundred and fifty miles from Vesontio, at or near which the legions had probably wintered. He would cross the *Matrona* (Marne), thirty or forty miles southeast of *Durocortorum* (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

CHAPTER 3

11. **Eo**: into the country of the *Belgae*.

de improviso: just like the corresponding English phrase, *of a sudden*.

celerius omni opinione: *sooner than any one expected*; ablative with the comparative; W. 380; B. 217. 4; A. 247. b; H. 471. 8.

12. **venisset**: pluperfect subjunctive with *cum* temporal; W. 536; B. 288. B; A. 325; H. 6co. II.

Remi: see map opposite page 81 of the text. They were friendly to the Romans, who had made them the second power in Gaul by defeating Arioivistus.

Galliae: in the narrower sense, Celtic Gaul; see Bk. I, ch. 1. Dative with *proximi*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

ex Belgis: = partitive genitive; B. 201. 1. a; A. 216. c; H. 444.

13. **primos civitatis**: *chiefs*; adjective used substantively; W. 409; B. 236; A. 188; H. 494.

14. **qui dicerent**: *to say*; relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317; H. 590. What follows for the rest of the chapter is what the envoys said, quoted indirectly.

Se suaque: objects of *permittere* and referring to its subject, *Remos*, understood.

sua omnia: *all their interests*.

fidem: *protection*, the duty of a loyal superior to his vassal.

15. **se**: subject of *consensisse* and *coniurasse*.

17. **coniurasse**: shorter form of *coniuravisse*; W. 189; B. 116. 1; A. 128. a. 1; H. 238.

paratos: predicate adjective; *paratos esse* is not perfect passive infinitive.

et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

dare . . . facere . . . recipere . . . iuvare: infinitives complementary to *paratos esse*; W. 626; B. 328. 1; A. 273. b; H. 608. 4. With the last two infinitives understand *eum* or *Romanos* as objects.

18. **oppidis**: no preposition is used because the ablative is thought of as the means as well as the place; B. 218. 7.

frumento . . . rebus: ablative of means.

20. **cis**: on the south or west side, nearest the Romans.

incolant: subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

his: i. e. *Belgis*.

22. ut . . . potuerint: a clause of result after *tantum . . . furorem*; W. 527, 528; B. 284. 1; A. 319; H. 570.

ne . . . quidem: notice that the emphasized word always stands between these particles; B. 347. 1; A. 151. e; H. 677.

Suessiones: object of *detergere*; this name survives in the modern Soissons.

fratres: appositive to *Suessiones*.

23. iure: general system and principles of law; **legibus**, specific enactments, *statutes*. Ablative with *utantur*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. After *utantur* supply *et*, connecting it with *habeant*. This omission of the conjunction is called *asyndeton*.

24. ipsis: *Remis*.

25. quin . . . consentirent: from uniting (agreeing); a *quin*-clause is regularly used after negatives, especially negative verbs of hindering and the like (*detergere*); W. 577; B. 295. 3. a; A. 319. d; 332. g; H. 595. 2.

CHAPTER 4

26. ab eis: sc. *legatis*; W. 319; A. 239. 2. c. N. 1; H. 411. 4.

quae . . . quantaeque . . . essent . . . quid . . . possent: indirect questions, objects of *quaereret*; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 334; H. 649. II; 643.

27. quid: adverbial accusative; *quid . . . possent*; what power they had; W. 316; B. 176. 3. a; A. 240. a; H. 409. 1.

28. plerosque, etc.: indirect discourse as far as *sumerent*, page 43, line 5, depending on *reperiebat*. The direct form is given in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar. In regard to the German nationality of the Belgae, cf. what Tacitus says about the Nervii, in *Germania*, 28. Of the Belgae in general we may say that they were probably originally Celtic, but were much mixed with Germans on the borders.

a Germanis: ablative of source; W. 378; B. 215. 2; A. 244. 2. a. R; H. 467.

Rhenum: object of *trans* in *traductos* (*trans-ductos*); W. 320; B. 179. 1; A. 239. 2. b; H. 413.

29. ibi: west of the Rhine, in Gaul.

PAGE 43

i. solos: the only (people).

memoria: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487.

omni . . . vexata: when all (the rest of) Gaul was harassed; ablative absolute.

2. **Teutonos Cimbrosque**: see note to page 29, line 11.

3. **ingredi**: *from entering*; we might have a subjunctive clause; W. 629; B. 295. 3; A. 271. a; 331. 2; H. 595. 2; 596. 2; 566. 2.

prohibuerint: even in direct discourse this would be subjunctive, being in a clause of characteristic after *solos*; W. 587, 588. 2; B. 283. 2; A. 320. b; H. 591. 5.

qua ex re: *and from this fact*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. e; H. 510.

fieri: the subject of this infinitive is the clause *uti . . . sumerent*; W. 523; B. 297. 2; A. 332. a. 2; H. 571. 1.

rerum: objective genitive depending on *memoria*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2.

4. **memoria**: ablative of cause.

5. **sumerent**: the sequence of tenses requires this to be imperfect, after *reperiebat*, page 42, line 27. In direct discourse it would be *sumant*; W. 462; B. 267. 1, 2; A. 285, 286; H. 543, 544.

6. **De**, etc.: indirect discourse depending on *dicebant* (line 7) through the rest of the chapter.

eorum: *Belgarum*.

habere explorata: nearly = *exploravisse*; B. 337. 6; A. 292. c; H. 640. 2. *Explorata* is a predicate adjective agreeing with *omnia*, object of *habere*.

Remi: see page 42, line 12.

7. **propterea quod**: see note on page 1, line 7. It introduces *cognoverint*.

propinquitatibus: plural; relations of nearness, *ties of blood*.

8. **quisque**: each delegate in the *concilium* of the Belgae.

9. **pollicitus sit**: indirect question, *quantam* being interrogative; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 338; H. 649. II.

10. **cognoverint**: subjunctive because a subordinate verb (causal clause) in indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 336. 2; H. 643. The primary tense is not according to the rule of sequence, after *dicebant*, but a narrative is often made more vivid by employing the tense used by the speakers of the report. Notice that the perfect of *cognosco* has a present sense, because *I have learned* means *I (now) know*.

Plurimum: adverbial accusative.

inter eos: *inter Belgas*.

Bellovacos: near the modern Beauvais; see map opposite page 81.

virtute: ablative of specification or cause; W. 396, 384; B. 226, 219; A. 253, 245; H. 480, 475.

12. **armata milia**: = *hominum armatorum milia*; W. 133; B. 80. 5; A. 94. e; H. 168.

13. *totius*: how is this adjective declined? W. 112; B. 66; A. 83; H. 93.

14. *Suessiones*: see page 42, line 22.

15. *possidere*: the subject is *Suessiones*.

regem: royal power or something like it still existed, apparently among the Belgae. See note on *regnum*, page 3, line 10, and Introduction, pages lxiv and lxv.

17. *cum . . . tum*: *both . . . and, not only . . . but also*; W. 248; B. 290. 2; A. 107; H. 657. 4. N. 1.

regionum: limits *partis*, which in turn limits *imperium*.

18. *Britanniae*: this is the earliest mention of Britain by a Roman author.

obtinuerit: *had held*; see note on *cognoverint*, line 10.

20. *summam . . . belli*: *supreme command in the war*; *summam* is the subject of *deferri*.

voluntate: ablative of manner or cause; W. 391; B. 220. 2; A. 248. R; H. 475. 3; 473. 3.

21. *habere*: sc. *Suessiones* as subject.

22. *Nervios*: for the location of this and the other nations see map opposite page 81 of the text. The names of some of them survive in those of modern cities: *Atrebates* in Arras; *Ambiani* in Amiens (the ancient *Samarobriva*); *Caleti* in Calais; *Viromandui* in Vermandois; *Condrusi* in Condroz.

feri: predicate adjective; for comparison with *magis* and *maxime* see W. 129; B. 74, 75. 2; A. 89. d; H. 159.

habeantur . . . absint: subjunctives in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse; but the tenses are retained as they would be used by the speakers in direct discourse; see note on *cognoverint* above. This use of primary tenses for secondary is called *repraesentatio*.

27. *qui*: refers to the last four tribes only.

uno nomine: by a common name.

appellantur: indicative because the relative clause is an explanation added by the author, not properly a part of the indirect discourse.

arbitrari: sc. *posse confidere*, from line 11, or the like. The subject of *arbitrari* is *se*, i. e. *Remos*, supplied from the beginning of the chapter.

CHAPTER 5

29. *cohortatus . . . prosecutus*: these participles should be translated in the present tense; W. 647; B. 336. 5; A. 290. b; H. 640. 1.

30. *senatum*: the Romans naturally gave to Gallic institutions, etc., the name which most nearly corresponded in their own language.

convenire . . . adduci: the infinitive with its subject accusative is used regularly with *iubeo*; W. 629; B. 331. II; A. 271. b; H. 565. 3.

31. **obsides**: as *hostages*; predicate appositive to *liberos*.

Quae omnia: all this; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. e; H. 510.

The relative pronoun refers more distinctly backward and connects a sentence more closely with what goes before than a demonstrative. Latin is more precise than English, and is fonder of relative words at the beginning of sentences.

PAGE 44

1. **diligenter ad diem**: punctually to the day.

2. **Haeduum**: distinguish this Diviciacus from the one mentioned page 43, line 16.

3. **quanto opere . . . intersit**: how greatly it concerns; indirect question.

4. **rei publicae . . . salutis**: why genitive? W. 369. (a); B. 211. 1; A. 222; H. 449. 1, 2.

communis: i. e. of Romans and Haeduans.

manus . . . distineri: this clause is the subject of *intersit*.

5. **ne . . . configendum sit**: that they may not be obliged to fight; a clause of purpose; impersonal use of the second periphrastic conjugation; W. 233. 3; 507; B. 282; 337. 7. b 1); A. 317; 294. b; H. 302. 7; 568.

6. **Id**: this, i. e. *manus distineri*; the infinitive clause is a substantive, and may be represented by a neuter pronoun.

fieri posse: (he says) can be done; infinitive depending on *docet*, line 2. *Posse* forms the conclusion in indirect discourse, the verbs of the condition being the perfect subjunctives *introduxerint* and *coeperint*; W. 613; B. 319. A, B. a; A. 337; H. 646. The direct form would be *Id fieri potest* (or *poterit*) *si vestras copias . . . introduxeritis . . . coeperitis* (future perfect indicative).

7. **populari**: complementary infinitive with *coeperint*.

eum: *Diviciacum*.

8. **Postquam . . . cognovit**: a temporal clause; *postquam* is generally followed by the perfect indicative; W. 530, 531; B. 287. 1; A. 324; H. 538. 3; 602.

9. **flumen . . . exercitum**: two accusatives with a verb compounded with *trans*; W. 320; B. 179. 1; A. 239. 2. b; H. 413.

Axonam: now the Aisne; at the place where Caesar crossed it flows nearly west; see plan opposite page 46 of the text.

10. **ibi**: see plan, showing this camp near Berry-au-Bac.

11. **Quae**: see note on *Quae*, page 43, line 31.

res: position.

12. **et . . . et**: both . . . and.

latus unus: object of *muniebat*.

ripis: ablative of means.

15. **post eum quae erant**: *his rear*; *quae = ea loca quae*.

tuta . . . reddebat: *made secure*; *tuta* is predicate accusative, the direct object being *ea*, understood antecedent of *quae*; W. 317; B. 177. 1, 2; A. 239. 1. a. N. 1; H. 410. 1.

16. **commeatus**: *subject of possent*.

17. **ut . . . portari possent efficiebat**: *made it possible for supplies to be carried*; the clause *ut . . . possent* is the object of *efficiebat*; W. 522; B. 297. 1; A. 332; H. 571. 3. Notice the imperfects, *muniebat*, *reddebat*, and *efficiebat*, which describe a state of things which lasted some time, not momentary acts.

18. **In**: *over, across*.

praesidium: see plan. Traces of ancient entrenchments have been discovered at Berry-au-Bac.

19. **in altera parte**: i. e. on the south bank, for Caesar had crossed to the north bank. The arrangement described secured the line of supplies and of possible retreat.

Q. Titurium Sabinum: *Q. = Quintum*; always read the full name when abbreviations occur. Sabinus is prominent in the narrative, appearing in several books of the Commentaries.

21. **pedum xii**: genitive of measure; W. 354; B. 203. 2; A. 215. b; H. 440. 3.

duodevinti pedum: *eighteen feet broad* (at the top); see Introduction, page xlvi.

CHAPTER 6

23. **nomine**: ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

Bibrax: appositive to *oppidum*. This place can not be certainly identified with any modern town; it may have been, perhaps, on or near the hill of Vieux-Laon.

24. **milia passuum**: see note to same words, page 2, line 26. *Milia* here is accusative of extent of space.

ex itinere: *on the march*.

25. **Aegre . . . sustentatum est**: *resistance was made, or they held out with difficulty*.

26. **eadem atque**: *the same as*; B. 341. 1. c); A. 156. a; H. 508. 5. **oppugnatio**: *method of attack*.

27. **haec**: *as follows*.

circumiecta multitudine: ablative absolute.

28. **moenibus**: indirect object of *circumiecta*; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429. 2.

murum: this is the general word for *a wall*; *moenia* means the whole *walls* enclosing a camp or a city, the circuit of fortifications.

iaci: complementary infinitive with *coepti sunt*, which is passive because *iaci* is; B. 133. 1; A. 143. a; H. 299. 1.

29. defensoribus: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214; A. 243; H. 462.

testudine facta: *after forming a tortoise*; for the explanation of this maneuver see Introduction, page lvii. The construction is ablative absolute.

31. Quod: *now this*.

tum: *in the present instance*.

PAGE 45

1. coicent: plural because *multitudo* means *multi homines*, being a "collective" noun; W. 297. 1; B. 254. 4; A. 205. c; H. 389. 1. The clause is both temporal and causal; W. 536, 542; B. 286. 2; 288. 1. B; A. 325, 326; H. 598; 600. II.

consistendi: gerund; genitive limiting *potestas*; W. 639. 1; B. 338. 1. a); A. 298; H. 626.

2. nulli: emphatic position at the end of the sentence; dative of possessor; W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430. How is *nullus* declined? W. 112; B. 66; A. 83; H. 93.

oppugnandi: limits *finem*; the same construction as *consistendi*.

fecisset: pluperfect subjunctive with *cum* temporal.

3. Remus: not a personal name; *a Reman, one of the Remi*.

summa nobilitate: ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

suos: *his countrymen*; substantive use of the possessive adjective; W. 409; B. 236. 1; A. 188, 190. a; H. 494.

4. oppido: dative with *prae-erat*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

ex eis: instead of the partitive genitive, with the cardinal numeral *unus*; B. 201. 1. a; A. 216. c; H. 444.

legati: *as envoys*; predicate appositive to *qui*.

5. eum: *Caesarem*.

mittit: historical present; W. 447 (1); B. 259. 3; A. 276. d; H. 532. 3.

6. sibi . . . sese: refer to Iccius, subject of *mittit*.

sustinere: *hold out*; transitive usually, but here used without an object, as was *sustentatum est*, page 44, line 25. The message sent by Iccius, if in direct form, would read: *Nisi subsidium mihi submittes, diutius sustinere non possum (or potero)*.

CHAPTER 7

7. **Eo**: *thither*, i. e. to Bibrax.
de: *about*.
isdem: ablative with *usus*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. I.
ducibus . . . nuntii: *as guides . . . as messengers*.
usus: translate as if present; W. 647; B. 336. 5; A. 290. b; H. 640. I.
8. **Numidas et Cretas**: these nations, especially the Cretans, were famous in ancient times as archers, and often employed as mercenaries. The same remark may be made of the Balearians as slingers.
9. **subsidio oppidanis**: two datives: W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. b); A. 233. a; H. 433.
mittit: historical present.
10. **cum spe defensionis**: *together with the hope of holding the town*.
studium: limited by *propugnandi*.
11. **hostibus**: dative of reference; but translate: *from the enemy*; W. 335; B. 188. 1; A. 235; H. 427.
12. **potiundi oppidi**: gerund or gerundive? W. 640; B. 339. I; A. 296. R; 298; H. 626, 623. I. About the ending *-undi*, see W. 192; B. 116. 2; A. 12. d; H. 243.
13. **morati**: sc. *hostes*; only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle.
14. **vicis . . . incensis**: ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227; A. 255; H. 489.
quo: adverb.
15. **omnibus copiis**: ablative of accompaniment: W. 392; B. 222. I; A. 248. a. N; H. 474. 2. N. I.
- a . . . **duobus**: *less than two miles off*. *A* here = adverb, *away*; **milibus** is ablative of degree of difference; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250; H. 417. 3. *Minus* does not affect the case of *milibus*; W. 382; B. 217. 1, 3; A. 247. c; H. 471. 4.
16. **castra**: see plan opposite page 46 of the text.
quae: *and this*.

CHAPTER 8

19. **primo**: adverb.
20. **opinionem virtutis**: *their reputation for valor*; *virtutis* is an objective genitive; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2.
- proelio supersedere**: *to refrain from a general engagement*; *proelio* is ablative of separation.
21. **proeliis**: *small combats, skirmishes*.
quid: adverbial accusative; W. 316; B. 176. 2. a); A. 240. a; H. 511. 5.

quid . . . posset: *what the enemy's courage amounted to*; lit. "what the enemy was able in respect of courage." Indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210. 2; 334; H. 649. II.

22. periclitabatur: *kept trying to discover*; W. 449. 1; B. 260. 2; A. 277; H. 530, 534. 3.

24. loco . . . idoneo: *since the place was*, etc., or *since there was a place*, etc.; causal ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227. 2. d); A. 255. d. 2; H. 489. I.

ad aciem instruendam: gerundive expression of purpose, explaining *opportuno*; W. 639. 3; 640; B. 339. 2; A. 300; H. 628.

25. atque: how does this differ in meaning from *et?* W. 248; B. 341. I. c); A. 156. a; H. 657. I.

quod . . . redibat: this long sentence describing the hill explains the adjectives *opportuno* and *idoneo*.

ubi: = *in quo*.

castra: see plan.

26. tantum . . . quantum loci: *just so much space as*; *loci* is partitive genitive; *tantum* is accusative of extent of space with *patebat*, and *quantum* is the object of *occupare*.

adversus: *in front*, facing the enemy.

28. ex utraque parte: *on each side*.

lateris deiectus: *lateral slopes*; lit. *descents of the side*.

PAGE 46

2. transversam: *at right angles*—to the length of the hill; see plan.

passuum: genitive of measure; in this case, of length; W. 354; B. 203. 2; A. 215. b; H. 440. 3.

3. ad extremas fossas: *at the ends of the ditches*; W. 416; B. 241. I; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

4. tormenta: see Introduction, pages lv and lviii.

instruxisset: this would be future perfect indicative, but is attracted into the subjunctive by *ne . . . possent*, on which it depends. *Possent* being a secondary tense, sequence requires that *instruxisset* should be also. W. 620, 462; B. 267, 324; A. 325. c; 342; H. 543.

5. quod . . . poterant: this being the statement of an actual fact, the indicative is properly used. *Poterant*: *were strong*.

multitudine: ablative of cause or means.

ab: *on*.

6. Hoc facto . . . legionibus . . . relictis: ablatives absolute. The two legions were the 13th and 14th, the raising of which was mentioned page 41, lines 18, 19.

8. *si quo*: indefinite, *if anywhere = wherever*; sc. *duci*.

si . . . esset: for *si erit* attracted into the subjunctive because of its subordination to the clause *ut . . . possent*.

subsidio: dative of purpose or "tendency"; W. 342; B. 191. 1; A. 233; H. 425. 3.

duci: infinitive, complementary to *possent*.

9. *in acie*: see Introduction, page xlii, in regard to the formation in order of battle.

10. *eductas*: translate as an indicative coördinate with *instruxerunt*; *had led out and (then proceeded to draw up)*.

CHAPTER 9

11. *Palus*: see plan; this was the low ground along the Miette.

nostrum: possessive adjective, not genitive plural of *ego*. It agrees with *exercitum* and is coördinate with the possessive genitive *hostium*, which limits *exercitum*: *our army and the enemy's*.

12. *Hanc*: *paludem*.

si: (*to see*) whether; W. 593; B. 300. 3; A. 334. f; H. 649. II. 3.

13. *si . . . fieret*: this is a future condition *si . . . fier* put into the subjunctive mood and past time by its dependence on the purpose clause *ut . . . adgredierentur*.

15. *contendebatur*: impersonal; *a contest was going on*.

16. *secundiore . . . proelio nostris*: *though the cavalry skirmish was more favorable to our side*; ablative absolute.

17. *nostris*: why dative? W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

18. *ad flumen*: i. e. lower down-stream, where they were concealed by hills beyond the marsh.

19. *demonstratum est*: page 44, lines 12-14.

21. *eo consilio*: *with this purpose*; ablative of cause, explained by the clauses *ut . . . expugnarent . . . interscinderent*; W. 518; A. 317. a.

si possent: *if they should be able*; a future indicative condition put into past time and into the subjunctive by dependence upon *ut . . . expugnarent . . . interscinderent*. Similarly *si minus potuissent* is a future perfect condition dependent on *ut . . . popularentur . . . prohiberent*.

castellum: on the south bank of the Aisne; see page 44, lines 18-20.

22. *pontem*: see plan. The object was to cut off Caesar's supplies and line of retreat.

23. *si minus potuissent*: *if (having tried) they should prove unable*.

24. *nobis usui*: two datives; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. a; A. 233. a; H. 433.

ad bellum gerendum: gerundive expressing purpose.

25. *commeatu*: ablative of separation.

CHAPTER 10

26. certior factus: *being informed.*

ab Titurio: ablative of voluntary agent; W. 379; B. 216; A. 246; H. 468.

27. levis armaturae: genitive of quality; W. 354; B. 203; A. 215; H. 440. 3.

Numidas: these were trained runners, who could move almost as fast as cavalry.

28. ponte: ablative of the way by which.

ad eos contendit: *hastened against them*, i. e. the Belgae, who were trying to cross the Aisne a mile or two to the west of the bridge. The probable scene of this fight is marked on the plan.

Acriter . . . pugnatum est: *there was a sharp fight.*

PAGE 47

2. per: *over.*

conantes: accusative agreeing with *reliquos*.

4. equitatu: ablative of means or instrument, not agent.

circumventos interfecerunt: *they surrounded and killed.*

5. Hostes: the main body in line of battle, facing the legions.

expugnando . . . transeundo: why not gerunds? W. 640; B. 339.

2; A. 296, 301; H. 623, 631. 1.

oppido: Bibrax.

6. spem se: the former is the subject, the latter the object, of *sefeliisse.*

neque: = *et non.*

7. causa: ablative of cause; limited by *pugnandi*; W. 384, 639. 1; B. 338. 1. c); A. 245. c; H. 475. 2.

8. ipsos: i. e. *hostes.*

res frumentaria: provisions; the Gauls had no adequate commissariat. Their campaigns were necessarily short.

9. optimum: predicate adjective, neuter, agreeing with the subject of *esse*, which is the clause *domum . . . reverti*; the clause *optimum esse*, etc., is direct object of *constituerunt*; W. 628; B. 331. I; A. 331. d; H. 613.

domum suam: accusative, limit of motion; W. 325. 2; B. 182. 1. b); A. 258. 2. b; H. 418, 419. 1.

10. quemque: subject of *reverti.*

11. introduxissent: attracted from the future perfect indicative by dependence upon *convenirent*; W. 462, 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 644. 2.

12. convenirent: sc. *ut*; substantive clause, second object of *constituerunt*; W. 513; B. 295. 4; A. 331. d; 332. h; H. 565.

ut . . . decertarent . . . uterentur: clauses of purpose.

13. copiis: here *supplies*, not "forces"; why ablative? W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

15. Diviciacum atque Haeduqs, etc.: Caesar had requested the Haedui to make this demonstration in his favor; page 44, lines 1-7.

16. finibus: dative with *ad-propinquare*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

17. cognoverant: *had learned*.

His: sc. *Bellovacis*; dative with *persuaderi* (impersonal passive); W. 330; B. 187. II. b; A. 227; H. 426. 2. *His persuaderi non poterat*: *These (the Bellovacii) could not be persuaded*.

18. suis: *to their countrymen*; substantive use of the possessive adjective. Thus Caesar succeeded in his intention of separating the Belgian forces; page 44, lines 1-5.

CHAPTER 11

19. Ea re constituta; ablative absolute.

secunda vigilia: ablative of time; on *vigilia* see Introduction, page lii.

strepitu: ablative of manner; W. 390; B. 220; A. 248. N; H. 473. 3. N.

20. castris: ablative of the place from which; the preposition *e* is included in the participle *egressi*.

nullo certo, etc.: *without any definite*, etc.

21. cum . . . peteret . . . properaret: *cum* causal is followed by the subjunctive; W. 542; B. 286. 2; A. 326. N. 2; H. 598.

22. fecerunt ut . . . videretur: *made their departure look like*, etc.; *ut . . . videretur* is the object of *fecerunt*; W. 522; B. 297. 1; A. 332; H. 571. 3.

23. fugae: dative with an adjective of likeness; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

per: the proper preposition where an agent is regarded as the instrument of another's will; A. 246. b; H. 468. 3. N.

24. speculatores: *spies*, individuals in disguise, mingling among the enemy; *exploratoribus*, line 27; *scouts*, especially small squads of horsemen.

cognita; connect with *Hac re*; ablative absolute.

25. discederent: subjunctive in indirect question; W. 590; B. 300; A. 334; H. 649. II.

26. equitatumque: the "army" means especially the legions, hence it is possible to say: *the army and the cavalry*.

castris: ablative of place and means; W. 401, 386; B. 218. 7; A. 258. f; H. 485.

Prima luce : *at daybreak.*

27. re : *the fact of the retreat of the Belgae.*

qui . . . moraretur : *relative clause of purpose* ; W. 586. 1 ; B. 282. 2 ; A. 317 ; H. 590.

novissimum agmen : cf. page 11, line 2, and see Introduction, page xlvii.

29. His : i. e. *equitibus*, implied in *equitatum* ; dative with *prae-fecit*.

Q. Medium : see page 41, line 20, and note. For all proper names refer to the Vocabulary.

PAGE 48

1. milia passuum : see note to same words page 2, line 26. *Milia* is accusative of extent of space ; W. 324 ; B. 181. 1 ; A. 257 ; H. 417.

2. eorum fugientium : not "of those fleeing," but *of them as they fled*.

3. cum ab extremo, etc. : *since (those) at the rear to whom (our men) had come, were making a stand.*

cum . . . consisterent : causal.

4. ventum erat : impersonal passive of an intransitive verb ; W. 233. 3 ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. d ; H. 302. 6.

5. priores : sc. *hostes* ; the foremost in the retreating column, *those in the van*.

6. viderentur . . . continerentur : subjunctive because dependent on (*cum*) *ponerent* ; W. 620 ; B. 324. 1 ; A. 342 ; H. 652.

7. clamore : *shouting.*

8. praesidium ponerent : *sought safety.*

10. quantum . . . spatium : *as the length of daylight allowed.*

11. erat imperatum : like *ventum erat*, line 4.

CHAPTER 12

13. diei : W. 348, 720 ; B. 201. 3. a ; A. 223. e ; H. 446. 5.

prius quam se . . . reciperent : *before they could recover*, not "before they recovered" ; W. 534 ; B. 292 ; A. 327 ; H. 605.

Now follows an account of the reduction of the Belgian nations in detail, after the confederacy had been broken up.

15. Remis : dative with *proximi* ; W. 333 ; B. 192. 1 ; A. 234. a ; H. 434. 2.

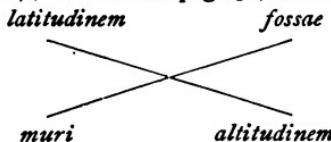
magno itinere : *by a forced march* ; in regard to the length of marches see Introduction, page xlvii.

16. Noviodunum : Celtic, "Newtown," perhaps the modern Soissons, some twenty-five miles west of the battle-field on the Aisne, but this point can not be determined with certainty. There were two other towns of this name, now, probably, Nevers and Sancerre.

17. **ex itinere**: i. e. immediately on his arrival, without stopping to form a regular siege.

oppugnare: distinguish the meaning of this from that of *expugnare*, line 19.

18. **latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem**: the second phrase reverses the order of the first; this arrangement is called *chiasmus*, from the Greek letter X (chi); see note on page 30, line 11.



W. 675; B. 350. 11. c; A. 344. f. N; H. 666. 2.

19. **paucis defendantibus**: though the defenders were few; W. 397; B. 227. 2. c); A. 255. 3; H. 489. 1.

expugnare: to take by assault or storm; *oppugnare* is simply to assault or besiege.

20. **vineas agere**: to move up sheds; see Introduction, page lviii.

quaeque: = *et ea quae*; *ea*, understood, being the object of *comparare*.

ad oppugnandum: gerund expressing purpose; W. 639. 3; B. 338. 3; A. 300; H. 628.

21. **usui**: W. 342; B. 191; A. 233. a; H. 425. 3.

22. **proxima nocte**: i. e. the second night after the battle on the *Aisne*.

23. **aggere . . . turribus**: see Introduction, pages liii, liv, lv, and lviii.

24. **iacto**: thrown up.

magnitudine . . . celeritate: ablative of means or cause.

25. **quae**: (the like of) which.

27. **ut conservarentur**: this clause is the object both of *petentibus* and *impetrant*; W. 512; B. 295. 1; A. 332; H. 565, 566.

CHAPTER 13

29. **primis**: used as a noun, *the principal men*; W. 409; B. 236; A. 188; H. 494.

30. **Galbae**: see page 43, lines 18, 19.

2. **Qui cum**: and when they.

3. **Bratuspantium**: perhaps near the modern Breteuil, between Beauvais and Amiens, but the identification is absolutely uncertain.

4. **circiter**: adverb; connect with *V*, i. e. *quinque*.

5. **maiores natu**: *natu* is ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226. I; 57. 1; A. 253; 91. c; H. 480.

6. **voce**: *tone of voice*; they could not, of course, speak Latin.

7. **fidem**: *protection*; i. e. they surrendered at discretion and trusted to Caesar's good faith.

10. **pueri**: *children*, of both sexes.

passis manibus: W. 397; B. 227. 2. c); A. 255. d. 5; H. 489; *passis* is from *pando*.

suo more: W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 248; H. 475. 3.

11. **ab Romanis**: W. 319; A. 239. 2. c. N. 1; H. 411. 4.

CHAPTER 14

12. **his**: *Bellovacis*.

13. **eum**: *Caesarem*.

facit verba: *pleaded*.

14. **Bellovacōs**, etc.: indirect discourse through the rest of the chapter, depending on *facit verba*. In direct form we should have *Bellovaci* . . . *fuerunt*, etc.; W. 598, 599, 605; B. 331. I; A. 330. B. 1; H. 641, 642.

15. **impulsos**: emphatic by its position; the idea is: (*not voluntarily, but*) *driven*, etc.

16. **dicerent**: subjunctive because in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

17. **omnes**: *all sorts of*.

indignitates: abstract nouns in Latin are generally used only in the singular, but see W. 101. 2; B. 55. 4. c); A. 75. 3. c; H. 138. 2.

18. **defecisse** . . . *intulisse*: the subject is *Bellovacos*.

19. **Qui**: sc. *eos* as antecedent and as subject of *profugisse*.

principes := *auctores*.

quod : *because*.

20. **civitati**: dative with *in-tulissent*.

in Britanniam: this gave an excuse for the invasion of Britain later.

22. **sua**: *his usual, his characteristic*.

eos: *Bellovacos*.

23. **Quod si fecerit** . . . *amplificaturum (esse)*: and *that if he (Caesar) did this . . . he (Caesar) would increase*; direct form *si feceris . . . amplificabis*; W. 613; B. 319. A. B. a; A. 307. a; 337; H. 646.

24. **quorum**: the antecedent is *Belgas*.

25. **consuerint**: sc. *Haedui*; *they were accustomed*; the perfect often has a present meaning; *consuesco*; "I am growing accustomed"; *consuevi*: "I am accustomed"; W. 455; B. 262. A; A. 143. c. N.; H. 299.

2. This is the conclusion of a general condition; B. 320, 318; A. 309. c; H. 646, 644. 2.

CHAPTER 15

26. *honoris . . . causa*: *out of respect for.*

Diviciaci . . . Haeduorum: objective genitives limiting *honoris*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2; *causa*: W. 349; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475. 2. It is almost equivalent to a preposition with the genitive case, standing after its noun.

27. *recepturum . . . conservaturum*: sc. *esse*, which is usually omitted with the future infinitive. Caesar's actual words were *recipiam . . . conservabo*.

28. *quod erat*: indicative, giving a real reason.

civitas: i. e. *Bellovacorum*.

magna . . . auctoritate: ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

29. *multitudine*: ablative of specification.

DC: *sexcentos*; an unusually large number of hostages.

PAGE 50

1. *oppido*: Bratuspantium.

4. *Nervii*: the fiercest of the Belgian tribes.

5. *reperiebat*: see note on *adferebantur*, page 41, line 3.

Nullum, etc.: indirect discourse from here to the end of the chapter. Direct discourse would begin: *Nullus est aditus*, etc.; W. 597, 598; B. 331. I; A. 336; H. 641, 642, 643.

6. *mercatoribus*: dative of possessor; W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430.

nihil . . . vini: *vini* is partitive genitive; we should say *no wine*; *nihil* is the object of *inferri*.

pati: sc. *eos*, i. e. *Nervios*, as subject; its object is the clause *nihil . . . inferri*.

8. *quod . . . existimarent*: *because (as it was said) they thought*; W. 605; B. 314. 1; 267. 1, 2; A. 321; H. 588. II. 1.

relanguescere: verbs ending in *-sco* are called inceptives; W. 273. I; B. 155. 1; A. 167. a; H. 277.

9. *magnae virtutis*: genitive of quality, coördinate with the qualifying adjective *feros*, connected with it by *-que*.

11. *qui . . . dedissent . . . proiecissent*: these relative clauses are not independent statements of fact, but integral parts of the indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643. Probably these verbs would be subjunctives even in direct discourse, as embodying a reason in the mind of the accusers of the rest of the Belgae; W. 586. 4; B. 283. 3. a; A. 320. e; 341. d; H. 592.

patriam: adjective agreeing with *virtutem*.

CHAPTER 16

14. *eorum*: *Nerviorum.*

triduum: accusative of duration.

iter: trace the route on map opposite page 81.

fecisset: subjunctive with *cum* temporal; W. 536; B. 288. I. B.; A. 325; H. 600.

15. *Sabim*: now the *Sambre*, which flows northeast into the Meuse or Maas; as to the ending of the accusative, W. 82; B. 37; A. 56. a. 1; H. 102. 2.

18. *Atrebatis et Viromanduis*: smaller tribes adjoining the Nervii.

19. *his*: dative with *persuaserant*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227; H. 426. 2.

20. *uti . . . experirentur*: substantive clause, direct object of *persuaserant*; W. 512. 1; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

21. *mulieres*: direct object of *coniecisse*, line 23.

22. *quique*: not plural of *quisque*, but = *et (eos) qui*.

per aetatem: *on account of their age*, i. e. too young or too old.

23. *coniecisse*: sc. *Nervios* as subject.

quo: *in* or *ad quem*.

exercitui: dative of possessor, like *mercatoribus*, line 6.

CHAPTER 17

26. *qui . . . deligant*: relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590. About the Roman camps, see Introduction, pages xlviii-lii.

ex . . . Gallis: when is *ex* with the ablative used rather than the partitive genitive?

27. *dediticiis Belgis*: viz. the Suessiones, the Bellocaci, and the Ambiani.

28. *una*: adverb.

29. *eorum dierum*: *during those days*.

PAGE 51

2. *inter singulas legiones*: *between each legion and the next one*.

3. *numerum*: *quantity*.

4. *neque . . . negoti*: *and that it was no trouble*. In Latin the negative goes with the connecting word, and we find *neque . . . quicquam* rather than *et . . . nihil*.

5. *in castra*: of course this camp had to be constructed after the arrival of the troops.

venisset . . . abessent: future conditions thrown into the past in indirect discourse after *demonstrarunt*; in direct form, *venerit . . . aberunt.*

spatium: accusative of extent.

6. sarcinis: see Introduction, page xlvi.

adoriri: subject of *esse quicquam negoti.*

qua . . . direptis: ablatives absolute, equivalent to conditional clauses.

7. futurum (esse): object of *demonstrarunt*, like *numerum intercedere* and *esse quicquam*; the subject of *futurum (esse)* is the following clause: *ut . . . auderet.* *Futurum esse ut . . . auderent* is a roundabout way of saying *ausuros esse*; this is the conclusion of the condition implied in the ablative absolute.

9. Adjuvabat: the object is *consilium*; the subject, the clause *quod . . . effecerant.* *Adjuvabat* occupies the position of emphasis. Translate: *What supported the advice of those, etc. . . . was the fact that, etc.*

10. cum . . . possent: causal; W. 542; B. 286. 2; A. 326; H. 598.
nihil: adverbial accusative; so is *quicquid*, line 12; W. 316; B. 176.
2. b; A. 240. b; H. 416. 2.

11. neque enim: *and (that is natural) for . . . not, or and in fact . . . not.*

ei rei: *this branch (of their army), i. e. the cavalry; dative with student;* W. 330; B. 187. II; A. 227; H. 426. I.

12. quo . . . impedirent: when is *quo* used to introduce a purpose clause?

14. teneris arboris: young trees partly cut through (*incisis*) were bent down (*inflexis*); then their branches continued to grow, making an impenetrable hedge.

15. in latitudinem: sideways.

enatis: i. e. along the now horizontal trunk. Thorn-bushes were planted in the intervals (*interiectis*) between the trees. Such hedges are said to be still common in this region, and traces of similar ones are found in England, which are centuries old. They made an effective protection for farms against cavalry raids.

16. ut . . . praevererent: clause of result, object of *efficerant.*

instar muri: *like a wall;* W. 347; B. 198. 2; A. 223. e; H. 446. 4.

17. quo: *into which.*

18. posset: subjunctive by attraction to mood of *praevererent*, or because it is the verb of a characteristic clause describing *munitum*; equivalent to *impenetrable to an enemy's entrance or even to his sight.*

19. omittendum: sc. *esse.*

20. sibi: so-called dative of agent; W. 339; B. 189. 1; A. 232; H. 431.

CHAPTER 18

21. *haec* : *the following; as follows*; B. 246. 2; A. 102. *f*; H. 507.
See plan, opposite page 51.

locum : the antecedent of a relative pronoun is often repeated in Caesar ; W. 303. 2 ; B. 251. 3. A. 200. *a* ; H. 399. 1.

castris : we find the dative of purpose of *concrete* nouns in a few military expressions ; W. 343 ; B. 191. 1 ; A. 233. *b* ; H. 425. 3.

22. Collis : see plan.

aequaliter declivis : *sloping evenly down*.

23. supra : page 50, line 15.

vergebat : the imperfect is the proper tense for description.

24. nascebatur : *rose*.

25. infimus : *at the bottom*; opposed to *ab superiore parte*; W. 416 ; B. 241. 1 ; A. 193, 260. *b* ; H. 497. 4.

28. in aperto loco : notice on the plan where the woods were.

secundum : preposition.

30. pedum . . . trium : genitive of measure ; W. 354 ; B. 203. 2 ; A. 215. *b* ; H. 440. 3.

CHAPTER 19

PAGE 52

2. copiis : ablative of accompaniment ; W. 392 ; B. 222. 1 ; A. 248. *a*. N ; H. 474. 2. N. 1. .

ratio ordoque : the two words embodying a single idea take a singular verb ; W. 298. 1 ; B. 255. 3 ; A. 205. *b* ; H. 392. 4.

aliter . . . ac : *otherwise than*; B. 341. 1. *c*) ; A. 156. *a* ; H. 516. 3.

se habebat : *was or were*.

4. consuetudine : *according to his habit*; W. 391 ; B. 220. 3 ; A. 245 ; H. 475. 3.

5. expeditas ducebat : on the order of march see Introduction, page xlvi.

6. conlocarat : for *conlocaverat*; W. 189 ; B. 116 ; A. 128. *a*. 1 ; H. 238.

duae legiones : the 13th and 14th ; see page 41, line 18, and note.

7. praesidio impedimentis : two datives ; W. 342, 345 ; B. 191. 2. *a* ; A. 233. *a* ; H. 433. Cf. *subsilio oppidanis*, page 45, line 9 ; *nobis usui*, page 46, line 24.

10. identidem : *repeatedly*.

13. quem ad finem : = *ad eum finem ad quem* ; W. 303. 3 ; B. 251. 4 ; A. 200. *b* ; H. 399. 3.

orrecta . . . pertinebant : *extended*; translate the two words by one.

cedentes : i. e. *Nervios* ; no pronoun is needed in Latin in such cases, because of the inflection of the participle.

15. opere : i. e. the entrenchments of the camp.

dimenso : *staked out*; lit. "measured off"; passive meaning, though a deponent verb; B. 112. b; A. 135. b.

17. visa sunt : a true passive, *was seen*, not "seemed."

quod tempus . . . convenerat : *which had been agreed on as the time*, or, *the moment which had been agreed on*. *Tempus* is a sort of appositive to the clause *ubi . . . visa sunt*.

18. eos : *Nervios*.

ut : *as, just as*; notice that *constituerant* is indicative.

19. ipsi sese confirmaverant : *they had resolved*.

25. adverso colle : *up the hill*; ablative absolute.

26. in opere occupati : *at work on the entrenchments*.

CHAPTER 20

27. Caesari : dative of agent; translate as nominative: *Caesar had to do*, etc.

vexillum : see Introduction, page xlvi.

28. proponendum : sc. *erat* or *erant* with each of the gerundives in this sentence.

29. signum tuba : this was the signal to fall into rank, in line of battle; see Introduction, page xlvi. *Tuba* is ablative of instrument.

opere : referring to the last sentence of the last chapter.

PAGE 53

1. qui : sc. *ei* as antecedent and subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*).

aggeris : *material*, to strengthen the rampart of the camp, e. g. sods and stakes, see Introduction, page xlvi.

2. arcessendi : those who were beyond hearing distance had to be fetched by messengers.

cohortandi : even when the verb is deponent, the gerundive is passive.

3. signum : i. e. *proeli committendi*, given by a blast of trumpets and horns.

7. quid . . . oporteret : indirect question.

9. singulis legionibus : *from their respective legions*.

singulos legatos : *the several lieutenants*; or put the nouns in the singular and say *each lieutenant*, and *from his respective legion*.

10. nisi munitis castris : *until after the camp had been fortified*; ablative absolute.

11. nihil iam : *no longer*; *nihil* = emphatic *non*.

12. videbantur : sc. *administranda*.

CHAPTER 21

14. **necessariis . . . imperatis**: *after giving (only) the (most) necessary orders.*

ad cohortandos milites: this expresses the purpose of the act of the verb *decucurrit*.

15. **quam partem** : = *eam partem quam*; *partem* is in apposition with *milites*; *whatever part of them chance put in his way*; if we read *in* as part of the text, it would mean *in whatever direction chance offered*.

16. **devenit**: *happened to come.*

17. **uti . . . retinerent . . . perturbarentur . . . sustinerent**: substantive clauses of purpose depending on *cohortatus*; W. 512. 1; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

virtutis: objective genitive with *memoriam*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2.

18. **neu**: for *neve*, which is used instead of *et ne*; B. 282. 1. d; H. 568. 6.

animo: ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

19. **quod . . . aberant**: this is the reason why he *signum dedit*.

20. **quam . . . posset**: *than the cast of a javelin*; lit. "than that a javelin might be thrown thither"; *quam quo = quam ut eo*; W. 521, 525; B. 284. 4; A. 320. c; H. 570. 1.

21. **in alteram partem**: *in the other direction*, i. e. to the other wing; from the 10th and 9th legions on the right wing, to the 12th and 7th on the left; see plan.

22. **pugnantibus occurrit**: *found them (already) fighting*. No pronoun is needed, because of the inflection of the participle.

23. **hostium**: connect with *animus*.

24. **ad insignia accommodanda**: *to put on their decorations*, e. g. the crests of their helmets, which showed to which legion a soldier belonged, medals (*phalerae*) gained by personal valor, and the like.

25. **galeas**: worn hanging on the breast, when the soldier was not engaged in battle.

scutis: ablative of separation, or dative; W. 337; B. 188. 2. d); A. 229; H. 427. On the march the shields were carried in cases to protect them from the weather.

26. **defuerit**: *failed, was wanting*.

Quam: connect with *partem*; *to whatever part (of the field)*.

27. **casu devenit**: *chanced to come*.

28. **suis**: sc. *signis*: meaning the standard of each man's own cohort or maniple; see Introduction, pages xliv and xlv.

CHAPTER 22

PAGE 54

1. *ut . . . ut : as . . . as.*
2. *rei militaris ratio atque ordo : military science and method.*
3. *cum : causal, introducing resisterent and impediretur ; W. 542 ; B. 286. 2 ; A. 326 ; H. 598.*
4. *aliae alia in parte : some in one place and some in another ; W. 437. 2 ; B. 253. 2 ; A. 203. c ; H. 516. I.*
- saepebus . . . interiectis : ablative absolute, indicating the cause or means of *impediretur* ; W. 397 ; B. 227. 2. d) ; A. 255 ; H. 489. See page 51, lines 14 sqq. The -que attached to *saepebus* connects *resisterent* and *impediretur*.*
5. *densissimis : very thick ; W. 414. 3 ; B. 240. 2 ; A. 93. b ; H. 498.*
- ante : = supra ; page 51, lines 9-18.*
6. *neque : here begins the main clause of the period, of which the verb is *poterant*, line 8.*
- certa : definite.*
7. *quid . . . opus esset : indirect question, subject of *provideri* ; W. 590 ; B. 300. I. a) ; A. 210. 2 ; 334 ; H. 649. II.*
- quaque : ablative feminine of *quisque*.*
9. *fortunae : genitive limiting *eventus*, antithetic to *rerum*.*

CHAPTER 23

11. *in sinistra parte : where Labienus was in command.*
- acie : genitive ; this form occurs sometimes in nouns of the 5th declension ; B. 52. 3 ; A. 74. a ; H. 134. 2.*
12. *pilis emissis : see Introduction, page xxxv.*
13. *Atrebates : object of *compulerunt* ; see page 50, line 18.*
14. *ea pars : the left of the Roman army.*
- ex loco superiore : from the high ground to which the Atrebates had run up from the river.*
15. *conantes : i. e. *Atrebates*, object of *insecuti*.*
16. *impeditam : embarrassed in the attempt to cross the river.*
17. *Ipsi : the men of the 9th and 10th legions.*
18. *locum iniquum : the farther bank where the ground sloped up.*
- resistentes hostes : accusative.*
19. *alia in parte : i. e. in the center, in front of the camp.*
20. *diversae : separately ; W. 412 ; B. 239 ; A. 191 ; H. 497.*
21. *Viromanduis : see page 50, line 18.*
- ex : starting from.*
22. *totis fere castris : totis has the emphatic position ; this separation of *totis* and *castris* is a case of *hyperbaton* ; W. 740 ; B. 350. II. a) ; A. 386 ; H. 751. 5.*

23. a . . . a : *in . . . on.*

nudatis : the 8th and 11th in front and the 9th and 10th on the left, by leaving their places to pursue the enemy, had exposed the camp, except on the right, where the 12th and 7th still stood.

24. non magno . . . intervallo : *at no great distance.*

25. confertissimo agmine : ablative of manner.

26. duce Boduognato : ablative absolute.

summam imperi : the chief command.

27. aperto latere : *on the exposed flank*; this expression ordinarily means the right side, because the left of each man was protected by his shield. By going around the right flank of the legions the Nervii could reach the rear of the Roman camp.

28. summum castrorum locum : *the height occupied by the camp.*

CHAPTER 24

PAGE 55

1. *levis armaturae pedites* : see Introduction, page xxxviii ; *armaturae* is genitive of quality ; W. 354 ; B. 203 ; A. 215 ; H. 440. 3.

2. *una* : adverb.

3. *pulsos* : sc. *esse*.

dixeram : page 52, lines 21, 22.

4. *adversis* : *face to face.*

hostibus : dative ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 429.

5. *decumana porta* : see Introduction, page li ; the rear of the camp was probably higher than the front toward the Sambre.

6. *nostros victores* : the center and left wing.

8. *respexissent . . . vidissent* : W. 536 ; B. 288. 1. B ; A. 325 ; H. 600. II.

hostes : *Nervios*.

9. *praecipites* : *headlong*; it agrees with *calones*. See note to page 54, line 20.

eorum qui, etc. : refers to the baggage-train coming up with the 13th and 14th legions.

10. *clamor* : *shouting*; *fremitus* : *uproar* in general; the two words constitute virtually one notion, and therefore *oriebatur* is singular.

11. *alii aliam in partem* : *each in a different direction* ; W. 437. 2 ; B. 253. 2 ; A. 203. c ; H. 516. 1.

perterriti : what is the force of *per-?* A. 170. c. N ; H. 374. 10.

ferebantur : reflexive in meaning, not passive ; W. 442. 3 ; B. 256. 1 ; A. 111. a ; H. 517.

13. *quorum* : possessive genitive ; *virtutis* : objective genitive ; *virtutis opinio* : *reputation for valor.*

14. **a civitate**: ablative of personal agent with *missi*; the state is thought of as a collective person.

15. **cum**: introduces *vidissent*, line 18; the idea of cause enters largely into this sentence.

compleri: *was filling (being filled)*, not "was filled"; this and the following infinitive clauses are objects of *vidissent*.

16. **legiones**: the 7th and 12th, on the right wing.

17. **Numidas**: light-armed troops from Africa.

19. **domum**: limit of motion; W. 325. 2; B. 182. 1. b); A. 258. 2. b; H. 418, 419. 1.

pulsos superatosque: sc. *esse*; the clause is object of *renuntiaverunt*.

20. **castris impedimentisque**: ablative with *potitos (esse)*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. 1.

hostes potitos (esse): object of *renuntiaverunt*.

CHAPTER 25

22. **Caesar**: subject of *processit*, page 56, line 9, and *iussit*, line 11; the participles *profectus*, line 23, and *cohortatus*, page 56, line 10, agree with *Caesar*; the chief subordinate clause is *ubi . . . vidit*, which is so long that *vidit*, line 25, is repeated in line 6, page 56.

23. **signis**: the standards of the cohorts. They were crowded into a confused mass by the sudden onset of the Nervii.

24. **sibi ipsos**: to each other; *ipse* agrees with the subject not with the object of a reflexive verb.

sibi . . . impedimento: see page 52, line 7, *praesidio impedimentis* and note.

25. **quartae cohortis**: on the left of the line. See Introduction, page xlvi, for the arrangement of the cohorts of a legion in battle array. However, we are not sure that the regular order was preserved so far as that in this sudden, desperate fight.

28. **in**: *among*.

primipilo: see Introduction, page xxix; connect with *confecto*, ablative absolute.

PAGE 56

1. **Baculo**: he survived these wounds and appears again, page 64, line 26, and page 164, line 12.

fortissimo: W. 414. 3; B. 240. 2; A. 93. b; H. 498.

2. **iam . . . non**: *no longer*.

3. **tardiores**: *rather slack*; W. 414. 2; B. 240. 1; A. 93. a; H. 498.

ab novissimis: *in the rear*; so again in line 8.

4. **neque**: coördinate with *et*, line 5.

5. **ex inferiore loco**: i. e. from the river-bank.
 6. **rem esse in angusto**: *that the situation was critical.*
 7. **subsidiū**: *reserve*; the 13th and 14th legions were still too far off to be of use.
 8. **militi**: dative with a verb of "taking away"; W. 337; B. 188. 2. d); A. 229; H. 427.
eo: adverb.
 10. **nominatim**: Caesar was personally acquainted with a great many even of his private soldiers.
 11. **signa inferre**: *to advance.*
manipulos laxare: *to open out their ranks.*
quo: when is *quo* used to introduce a clause of purpose? W. 507; B. 282. I. a; A. 317. b; H. 568. 7.
 12. **gladiis**: ablative with *uti*; W. 387; B. 218. I; A. 249; H. 477. I.
Cuius: *his*, Caesar's.
 13. **militibus**: dative with *in-lata*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.
 14. **in . . . navare**: *in the utmost personal danger (nevertheless) to do his best.*

CHAPTER 26

17. **iuxta**: *next to the 12th*, whose situation has just been described.
constiterat: *was standing.*
 19. **ut . . . inferrent**: *that the legions (7th and 12th) gradually draw together, face in opposite directions (back to back), and charge the enemy.* These substantive clauses are the objects of *monuit*.
 20. **aliis alii**: *to each other.*
 21. **ne**: after a verb of "fearing"; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. f; H. 567. I.
aversi: *in their rear, from behind.*
ab hoste: the plural of this word is more common than the "collective" singular.
 23. **legionum duarum**: the 13th and 14th.
 25. **proelio nuntiato**: the time of this participle is prior to that of *incitato*.
cursu incitato: *at full speed.*
in summo colle . . . conspiciebantur: i. e. they began to appear over the edge of the hill above the camp.
 26. **Labienus**: at the head of the 9th and 10th legions, he had driven the Atrebates across the river (first part of chapter 23), and captured the enemy's camp; now he could look back across the valley to the Roman camp.
 27. **quae res . . . gererentur**: in direct question.

28. **X** : = *decimam*.

29. **Qui** : referring to *milites*, implied in *legionem*, line 28.

30. **quo . . . esset** : *how matters stood*.

PAGE 57

1. **versaretur** : *were involved*; it agrees with the nearest of the several subjects; W. 298. 1; B. 255. 2; A. 205. d; H. 392.

nihil . . . fecerunt : *came up as fast as they could*, lit. *left nothing undone for speed*.

2. **reliqui** : partitive genitive with *nihil*.

CHAPTER 27

4. **etiam (eī) qui** : *even such as*.

procubuisserunt : subjunctive in a clause of characteristic; W. 587; B. 283. 2; A. 320; H. 591. 1.

5. **scutis** : ablative with *innixi*; W. 389; B. 218. 3; A. 254. b; H. 476. 3; *innitor* is used also with the dative and with *in* and the accusative.

calones : nominative; **hostes** (line 6) : accusative.

6. **inermes** : agrees with *calones*.

inermes armatis: Latin often puts close together words that are related in etymology; B. 350. 10.

9. **praeferrent** : *tried to show themselves superior*; third verb of the clause of result introduced by the *ut* in line 4; *ut . . . delerent*, line 7, is a clause of purpose.

At : marks the transition from the Romans to the enemy.

in extrema spe : *in utter despair*; lit., "at the end of hope."

10. **primi** : *the foremost*.

11. **iacentibus** : *the fallen*; dative with *insisterent*.

12. **his** : refers to *proximi*.

13. **qui superessent** : *the survivors*.

ut : *as if*; connect with *ex tumulo*.

14. **coicerent . . . remitterent** : sc. *ut*; subjunctives of result, co-ordinate with *insisterent* and *pugnarent*.

ut non, etc. : a clause of result depending on the statements of the preceding sentence; translate in the order: *ut iudicari deberet homines tantae virtutis non neququam*, etc.

17. **quae** : *actions which*.

facilia . . . redegerat : *had rendered easy*; how are *facilis* and *dificilis* compared? W. 123; B. 71. 4; A. 89. b; H. 152. 3.

This was the most desperate and sudden of all Caesar's battles. His army was saved from destruction only by the steadiness of perfect discipline and the presence of a great commander.

CHAPTER 28

19. *ad internecionem . . . redacto*: not precise, for three years later the Nervii were persuaded to revolt (Bk. V, ch. 38), and five years later they were able to send 6,000 men to serve in the Gallic war of independence (Bk. VII, ch. 75).

21. *pueris*: *children*.

aestuaria: *tidal rivers and inlets*.

22. *dixeramus*: page 50, lines 21-24.

23. *impeditum . . . tutum*: sc. *esse*; depending on *arbitrarentur*.

27. *vix ad D*: *to barely five hundred*.

possent: subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause of the indirect quotation depending on *dixerunt*, line 28; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 649. 1. But this might be a subjunctive of characteristic in direct quotation.

28. *Quos*: *and these*.

29. *usus (esse)*: *usus* is attracted into the nominative, the case of the subject of *videretur*; W. 631. 3; B. 328. 2; A. 330. b. 1; H. 611. 1; 612. 1.

misericordia: Caesar's dealings with barbarians were in ordinary cases comparatively merciful, judged by the standard of his time and nation. It is not fair to judge by modern standards.

CHAPTER 29

PAGE 58

4. *Atuatici*: see map, opposite page 81.

supra: page 50, lines 20, 21.

5. *auxilio Nerviis*: W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. b); A. 233. a; H. 433.

venirent: *were on the way*.

7. *oppidum*: a fortified stronghold, possibly what is now the citadel of Namur at the junction of the Sambre and Meuse or Maas, more probably at Mont Falhize, on the Meuse, a few miles below Namur, but not to be certainly identified with any modern site.

8. *Quod cum*: *and while this*.

9. *partibus*: *sides*.

10. *in latitudinem*: *in breadth*.

11. *pedum CC*: genitive of measure; connect with *aditus*.

13. *praeacutas*: *with pointed ends*.

in muro: *on, not in, the wall*; the beams and stones were intended for missiles to be thrown down upon their assailants.

ex Cimbris Teutonisque: ablative of source; W. 378; B. 215; A.

244. a. R; H. 467; see page 29, line 12, and note.

15. *impedimentis*: flocks and herds as well as goods.

16. **agere**: referring to cattle; **portare**: referring to inanimate property.

17. **custodiam**: = *custodes*.

praesidium: *a garrison*.

18. **vi milia hominum**: this was originally a Teutonic military colony, which was afterward adopted into the nation of the *Atuatuci*.

Hi: the 6,000; **eorum**: the main body of Cimbri and Teutoni.

19. **obitum**: *destruction*; i. e. in the battles of Aquae Sextiae and Vercellae in 102 and 101 B. C.

alias . . . alias: adverbs.

20. **inlatum (bellum) defenserent**: *defended themselves against invasion*.

21. **hunc . . . locum**: land between the Maas and the Scheldt.

CHAPTER 30

23. **primo adventu**: ablative of time.

25. **pedum xii**: i. e. in height.

26. **xv milium**: the number seems far too large. Probably it has been wrongly copied in the MSS.

27. **oppido**: ablative of place and means; B. 218. 7; A. 258. f; H. 485; cf. *castris continuuit*, page 47, line 26, and note.

vineis . . . aggere . . . turrim: see Introduction, pages lviii, lii, liii, liv, and lv.

28. **procul**: the tower, built out of range of the enemy's shots, was afterward advanced on rollers close to the city wall (*turris ambulatoria*).

inridere . . . increpitare: historical infinitives; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610.

29. **quod . . . institueretur**: the cause is represented by the subjunctive not as a fact, but as the reason in the minds of the townspeople; W. 545; B. 323; A. 321, 341. d; H. 588. II.

PAGE 59

1. **a tanto spatio**: *so far off, at so great a distance*; **a** is an adverb here; **spatio**, ablative of degree of difference.

Quibusnam: the enclitic *-nam* gives a sarcastic emphasis to the interrogative pronoun.

3. **Gallis . . . contemptui**: W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. a); A. 233. a; H. 433.

6. **confiderent**: a question put into indirect discourse, if a real one expecting an answer, takes its verb in the subjunctive; W. 590; B. 315; A. 338; H. 642. 2, 3.

CHAPTER 31

7. *moveri*: sc. *turrim*; *that it was actually moving.*

9. *locuti*: *speaking*; agreeing with *qui*, the subject of *dixerunt*, line 13.

10. **Non**: connect with *sine* in translating.

non se existimare . . . possent: indirect quotation, object of *locuti*.

12. **se suaque**: objects of *permittere*; the subject of *permittere* is *se*, line 10. *Se . . . permittere*, indirect quotation, object of *dixerunt*, line 13. So is the remainder of the chapter.

13. **Unum**: *one thing only*, explained by the clause *ne . . . despiciaret*.

petero . . . deprecari: depend on *dixerunt*.

14. *si . . . statuisset*: direct discourse would be *si . . . statuisti*.

pro sua, etc.: *in accordance with his usual*, etc.

quam . . . audirent: *which they were (always) hearing of.*

16. **Sibi**: dative with *inimicos*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234; H. 434. 2.

17. **virtuti**: dative with *invidere*; W. 332; B. 187. II. a; A. 227, H. 426. 2.

a: *against*.

18. **traditis armis**: *if they should give up their arms*; W. 397; B. 227. 2. b); A. 310. a; H. 489. 1.

possent: subjunctive in subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

Sibi: dative of reference.

praestare: *that it was better.*

si . . . deducerentur: future condition put into indirect discourse, after historical perfect *dixerunt*; direct form: *si deducemur*.

19. **quamvis . . . pati**: *to endure any treatment whatever*; *quamvis*, accusative feminine of *quivis*. This clause is the subject of *praestare*.

21. **consuissent**: for *consuevissent*; W. 189; B. 116. 1; A. 128. a; H. 238.

CHAPTER 32

22. **consuetudine sua**: ablative of manner or cause; W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 245; H. 475. 4.

23. **merito**: ablative of cause.

conservaturum, si . . . dedidissent: in direct discourse: *conservabo*, *si . . . dederitis*; W. 613; B. 319. A., B. a; A. 337; H. 646.

24. **aries**: it was a practice of ancient conquerors to destroy cities which were not surrendered before the battering-ram touched the wall.

attigisset: attracted from the future perfect indicative of direct discourse ; W. 605. 462 ; B. 291, 292, 314. 1 ; A. 327. a ; H. 649. II ; 543.

26. *in*: *in the case of*.

fecisset: W. 605 ; B. 314. 1 ; A. 336. 2 ; H. 643.

27. **ne quam**, etc.: substantive clause with a verb of commanding ; W. 512 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331 ; H. 565.

28. **ad suos**: used rather than *suis*, because the messengers had to go back and carry the message ; *ad suos* is the limit of motion.

quae imperarentur facere dixerunt: *said that they would do (at once) what was commanded*; sc. *eos* or *suos* as subject of *facere*; *imperarentur*, subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse ; *facere*, present instead of future, because the idea is *to do immediately* ; A. 276. c ; H. 618. 1. The subject of *dixerunt* is the envoys (speaking on their return to Caesar after consulting their countrymen at home).

29. **multitudine**: connect with *iacta* ; ablative absolute.

PAGE 60

2. **summam muri**, etc. : it was the chasm between the towp wall and the end of the embankment (*agger*) built by the besiegers which was filled up by the arms thrown into it.

5. **pace sunt usi**: *they remained quiet*.

CHAPTER 33

6. **Sub**: *toward*.

ex oppido exire: notice the repetition of *ex*.

7. **quam**: *any* ; connect with *iniuriam*.

8. **Illi**: i. e. *oppidani*.

9. **praesidia**: *guards, outposts*, along the line of works.

10. **denique**: *at least*.

12. **ex cortice . . . viminibus**: ablatives of material ; A. 244. c ; H. 467.

13. **pellibus**: ablative of means, *quae* being the object of *induxerant*.

14. **tertia vigilia**: see Introduction, page lii.

qua: *where*.

17. **Celeriter**: emphasized by its position.

ignibus: by flaming torches.

18. **eo**: *thither*.

concursum est: impersonal passive ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. d ; H. 302. 6.

19. **ut a viris fortibus . . . pugnari debuit**: *as brave men were bound to fight*.

20. **in extrema spe**: see page 57, line 9, and note.

iniquo loco: ablative of place without a preposition ; W. 402. (2) ; B. 228. 1. b) ; A. 258. f ; H. 485. 2.

21. *iacerent*: subjunctive of characteristic.

22. *una virtute*: *valor alone*.

ad: *about*; adverb with *milibus* *iiii*, the case of which it does not affect.

24. *diei*: W. 348, 720; B. 201. 3. *a*; A. 214. *g*; H. 446. 5.

iam: *any longer*.

25. *sectionem*: *booty, spoil*; probably so called from "cutting" it up into lots for division. This included the prisoners of war, sold as slaves. But it appears from Bk. V, ch. 38 and 39, that some of the *Atuatuci* were left in the country.

27. *capitum*: *individuals, souls*; i. e. the number of slaves bought was reported by the buyers.

CHAPTER 34

PAGE 61

1. *P. Crasso*: cf. page 39, line 10; also Bk. III, ch. 7, 8, 9, 11, and 20-27.

legione una: the 7th, as appears from page 66, line 5.

2. *Venetos*, etc.: for these nations, see map, frontispiece. The name of the Veneti appears in that of the French town of Vannes, that of the Redones in Rennes. The story of the campaign against the Veneti in the following year forms an important part of Bk. III.

Coriosolitas: this form of accusative plural, in the third declension, is found in Celtic names.

3. *maritimae civitates*: in the territory of modern Brittany and Normandy.

4. *Oceanum*: the Atlantic; the Mediterranean was *mare*.

CHAPTER 35

8. *perlata*: *spread from tribe to tribe (per)*.

9. *incoherent*: subjunctive because in a clause logically depending on *uti . . . mitterentur*; W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.

10. *se*: refers not to *qui*, but to *nationibus*, line 8, as is shown by the feminine participles *daturas, facturas*.

11. *policerentur*: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

Italiam: Cisalpine Gaul, as it was called, i. e. northern Italy as far south as the Rubicon; see note on page 7, line 15.

12. *Illyricum*: one of the provinces under Caesar's jurisdiction; see Introduction, page lxii.

13. *Carnutes*, etc.: see map, frontispiece. These names survive, Carnutes in Chartres, Andes in Anjou, Turonos in Tours. The legions were thus quartered along the line of the Loire, in the middle of Gaul.

14. **quaeque civitates** : = *et civitates quae*.

15. **gesserat** : sc. *Crassus*; these nations were far from the country where Caesar had been fighting.

hiberna : see Introduction, page lii.

17. **supplicatio** : *a solemn thanksgiving*, usually lasting three or four days. The longest one up to this time, lasting ten days, had been in honor of Pompey after the war against Mithradates (Cic. *Prov. Cons.* II, 27). Caesar's party was now in power at Rome, and his services received full recognition from the government.

quod : sc. *id*, referring to the statement just made ; W. 304. 2 ; B. 247. I. 6 ; A. 200. e. N ; H. 399. 6.

18. **nulli** : very emphatic in its position. How is *nullus* declined? W. 112 ; B. 66 ; A. 83 ; H. 93.

BOOK THREE—B. C. 56

CONQUEST OF NORTHWEST AND SOUTHWEST GAUL. Caesar's lieutenant Galba, stationed in the Alps for the winter, is obliged by the hostility of the natives to withdraw (ch. 1-6). In the spring, Caesar proceeds against the tribes of Aremorica, in the northwest of Gaul. A tedious campaign against the Veneti, the principal nation of that region, is finally decided by a naval battle, after which the Veneti are severely punished for their resistance (ch. 7-16). Sabinus, another lieutenant, subdues the Venelli along the northern coast (ch. 17-19). Crassus conducts a successful expedition into Aquitania, resulting in the submission of most of that country (ch. 20-27). Caesar finishes the year's campaign by laying waste the territory of the Morini and Menapii along the northern coast (ch. 28, 29).

Chapters 1-6 relate to events in the late autumn of 57 B. C.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 62

1. **in Italiam**: Caesar's destination being the prominent idea, these words occupy an emphatic position at the beginning of the sentence; see note to page 40, line 18.—**Ser. Galbam**: he became *praetor urbanus* in 54 B. C.; was one of the conspirators against Caesar in 44; his great-grandson was emperor in 68-69 A. D.

2. **legione xii**: Caesar had eight legions at this time; see note on *duas legiones*, page 41, line 18.—**Nantuates**, etc.: see map, opposite page 10.

3. **qui a finibus**, etc.: Geneva, at the west end of Lac Leman, was at the northeastern corner of the Allobrogian territory.

4. **summas**: *the tops of*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

5. **iter per Alpes**: the famous Great St. Bernard pass, which was then the shortest route over the Alps and to Octodurus (*Martigny*) in the Rhone Valley. Napoleon crossed it in 1800.

6. **magno cum periculo**: *but only with great danger*; ablative of accompaniment or attendant circumstance.—**portoriis**: *transit dues, tolls*.—**mercatores**: see note on page 1, line 9.

7. **Huic: Galbae.**

8. *si . . . arbitraretur*: future condition in informal indirect discourse.—*uti . . . conlocaret*: object clause of purpose, depending on *permisit*; W. 512; B. 295. 2; A. 331; H. 564. I.

10. *proeliis factis*, etc.: five ablatives absolute, indicating successive events, all prior to the time of *constituit*.

12. *cohortes*: see Introduction, page xxix.

13. *in Nantuatibus*: in the vicinity of the modern St. Maurice.—*reliquis*: viz. eight.

14. *vico*: an unwalled village.

16. *adiecta*: adjoining.

17. *hic*: sc. *vicus*.—*flumine*: the *Drance*, which flows into the Rhone below Martigny, which is generally agreed to have been on the site of *Octodurus*; i. e. *Octodurus* lay between Martigny-Ville and Martigny-Bourg, which are one mile apart.

18. *Gallis*: i. e. the inhabitants of the village.

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 63

2. *eo*: i. e. into that part of the village occupied by Galba's troops.—*iussisset*: sc. *Galba*.

3. *quam . . . concesserat*: indicative: an independent statement of fact, not part of the indirect quotation depending on *certior factus est*; but *impenderent*, line 5, is treated according to the general rule for verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.

4. *omnes*: sc. *Gallos*.—*montes*: the lower heights commanding the valleys.

5. *impenderent*: W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

7. *Id*: refers to the following clause, *ut . . . caperent*, a substantive clause of result in apposition with and explaining *id*, the subject of *acciderat*.

9. *neque eam plenissimam*: and that not having its full complement of men, a fact explained in the two following ablatives absolute. There had been a heavy loss in the battle with the Nervii. As to the number in a legion, see Introduction, page xxx.

10. *detractis . . . duabus*: see page 62, line 13.—*singillatim*: as individuals.

11. *commeatus petendi causa*: W. 639. 1; 640; B. 339. 1; A. 296, 298. c; H. 626. 1.

12. *tum etiam* := *deinde*.

13. *cum . . . decurrent . . . coicerent*: in direct discourse this would be future indicative, *cum . . . decurremus . . . coiciemus*.—*ipsi*: the natives.

15. **Accedebat, quod**: *there was the further fact that, or simply and besides.* The *quod*-clause is the subject of *accedebat*.

16. **abstractos (esse)**: infinitive with subject accusative depending on *dolebant*; B. 331. V; A. 333. b; H. 614.

17. **nomine**: *by way of, as*; lit. "by the name of."

20. **sibi persuasum habebant**: *were convinced*; *persuasum* agrees with the clause *Romanos . . . conari*.

CHAPTER 3

21. **cum**: causal.—**opus**: *the work of constructing or fitting up.* He took the Gallic houses, but built the usual camp fortifications.

22. **perfectae**: agrees with the nearest subject; W. 298. i; B. 235. B. 2. b) γγ; A. 205. d; H. 392.

23. **esset provisum**: *provision had been made.*

25. **consilio**: who composed the *consilium*? Introduction, page xxx.

26. **Quo**: W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. e; H. 510.

27. **praeter opinionem**: *contrary to expectation.*

29. **subsidio**: dative of purpose; W. 343; B. 191. i; A. 233; H. 433. i. Translate *neque subsidio veniri (posset)*: *neither could help come*; W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. d; H. 302. 6.

PAGE 64

5. **ad salutem**: *to (a place of) safety.*—**Maiori . . . parti placuit**: *the majority voted.*

6. **ad extremum casum**: *for a last resort.*

CHAPTER 4

8. **spatio**: sc. *temporis*.—**vix ut**, etc.: *scarcely enough to allow time*, etc.—**rebus . . . administrandis**: gerundive, dative of purpose. This is not as frequent as the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

10. **decurrere . . . coicere**: historical infinitives; W. 631. i; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610.

11. **gaesa**: heavy Gallic javelins; their particular shape is not known.—**integris viribus**: ablative absolute; *while their strength was still unimpaired.*

12. **propugnare**: this and the other infinitives in the sentence are historical.—**neque ullum**: the Latin prefers this to *et nullum*, which would correspond to the English idiom.

13. **loco superiore**: i. e. the rampart of the camp.

14. **defensoribus**: ablative of separation; W. 374, 375; B. 214. i. b); A. 243; H. 462.

15. *hoc superari*: *they were at a disadvantage* (lit. "surpassed") in this respect.

17. *alii . . . succedebant*: *while others took their places*.

18. *non modo*: here = *non modo non*; B. 343. 2. *a*; A. 149. *e*; H. 656. 3.

19. *defesso*: indirect object of *dabatur*.—*excedendi*: gerund limiting *facultas*, as also do *relinquendi* and *recipiendi*.

20. *sui recipiendi*: gerund or gerundive? W. 642; B. 339. 5; A. 298. *a*; H. 626. 3.

CHAPTER 5

22. *Cum iam . . . pugnaretur*: *when the fight had been going on*. The Latin uses the imperfect because the fight still continued; W. 449. 4; B. 260. 4; A. 277. *b*; H. 535. 1.

24. *languidioribusque nostris*: *and as our men became more weary*; ablative absolute.

25. *vallum scindere*: i. e. by breaking down or pulling up the palisades.—*fossas*: there probably was but one; we say "walls" when there is but one; each side of the camp is thought of separately.

27. *Baculus*: cf. what was said about him in Bk. II, ch. 25.—*Nervico*: notice how the Latin avoids prepositional phrases, such as "with the Nervii," when attributive to nouns, and prefers adjectives agreeing with the nouns.—*proelio*: ablative of time. This battle is described in Bk. II, ch. 19–28.

29. *tribunus militum*: Introduction, page xxxix.—*consili*: *resourcefulness*.

PAGE 65

1. *unam*: *only one*.—*esse . . . experientur*: in direct discourse: *una est spes . . . si . . . experiemus*. The future condition becomes imperfect subjunctive after the historical present *docent*, which is regarded here as a secondary tense; W. 470, 613; B. 268. 3; 319. *A, B*; A. 287. *e*; 337; H. 546, 646.

4. *certiores facit*: usually "informed"; here *ordered, commanded*; "told" has both senses; historical present.—*intermitterent*: in direct discourse would be *intermittite*; W. 602; B. 316; A. 339; H. 642. The construction of the four following imperfect subjunctives is the same.

5. *missa*: *thrown at them*.—*exciperent*: *catch on their shields*. Their own missiles being nearly exhausted, they were to gather up and throw back those of the enemy.

CHAPTER 6

8. *Quod* : sc. *id* as antecedent and object of *faciunt*.—*iussi sunt*: sc. *facere*, of which *quod* is the object.—*portis*: ablative of the “way by which”; W. 386; B. 218. 9; A. 258. 9; H. 476. See plan of a camp, Introduction, page li.

10. *sui colligendi*: cf. *sui recipiendi*, page 64, line 20, and see note.—*facultatem*: connect with *cognoscendi* as well as with *colligendi*.

11. *potiundorum*: as to the spelling see W. 192; B. 116. 2; A. page 89, foot-note 2; H. 243.

12. *circumventos interficiunt*: *cut off* (from the main body) *and killed*.

13. *ex . . . milibus*: equivalent to a partitive genitive; connect with *tertia parte*.

16. *locis . . . superioribus*: see page 63, lines 4–6.

17. *armis*: ablative of separation; *exutis* agrees with *copiis*; their arms were thrown away in their flight.

20. *alio . . . aliis*: *one (purpose) . . . other (results)*; W. 437. 2; B. 253; A. 203; H. 516. He had come expecting to pass a quiet winter, securing good order by the mere presence of his troops.

22. *eius vici*: sc. *Octoduri*.

24. *incolumem*: predicative, *brought it safe*.

CHAPTER 7

27. *cum*: concessive.

PAGE 66

2. *inita*: *at the beginning of*.—*Illyricum*: this country formed part of Caesar’s jurisdiction; see Introduction, page lxii.

4. *haec*: *the following*.

5. *P. Crassus*: see page 39, line 10, and page 61, line 1.

6. *proximus*: *very near or nearest* of Caesar’s lieutenants.—*mare Oceanum*: *the (Atlantic) ocean*; accusative with *proximus* as if it were *prope*; W. 242; B. 141. 3; A. 234. e; H. 435. 2; it is also used with the dative.—*Andibus*: see map, frontispiece; the name survives in the modern Anjou; they were not on the seacoast.

7. *praefectos*: officers of the auxiliaries; *tribunos*: officers of the legions.

8. *complures*: connect with *civitates*.

CHAPTER 8

12. *Huius . . . civitatis*: i. e. *Venetorum*, corresponding approximately with the modern department of Morbihan in Brittany.

13. *omnis orae maritimae* := *omnium orae maritimae civitatum*; *of all the coast states of those parts (earum regionum)*.

14. **Veneti** : a rugged, seafaring people, chief of the nations of Aremorica (now Brittany); they carried on trade between Gaul and Britain. The population of the region is still Celtic. It furnishes the best seamen for the French navy. The Veneti and their allies then controlled a commerce extending from Ireland to Spain.—**Britanniam**: Britain was an important Celtic country maintaining extensive commercial, social, and political relations with the Continent.

15. **consuerunt** : *are accustomed*; W. 455 ; B. 262. *A* ; A. 279. *e. R* ; H. 299. 2.—**scientia . . . usu** : ablatives of specification.

18. **omnes . . . habent vectigales** : *levy tolls on almost all*; *vectigales* is predicate accusative; lit. “they hold all tributary.”—**eo mari uti** : *to sail that sea*.

19. **retinendi** : we should say *by detaining*.—**Sili atque Velani** : see line 11.

20. **per** : *in exchange for*.—**suos . . . obsides** : object ; **se**, subject of *recuperaturos (esse)*.

22. **Gallorum subita**, etc. : there are several references, in Caesar, to the national fickleness of the Gauls ; e. g. page 68, line 11 ; page 84, lines 2, 3 ; page 117, line 25 ; and page 195, line 4.

26. **acturos . . . esse latus** : *sc. se*.

28. **quam . . . quam** : *which . . . rather than*; *magis* is not needed with the second *quam*, being included in *malint* ; *malle = magis velle*.

PAGE 67

1. **Si velit . . . remittat** : indirect discourse for *si vis . . . remitte*. The present subjunctive is used because *mittunt*, historical present, is here counted as a primary tense and is therefore followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive. The same principle applies to *solllicant* (page 66, line 27) . . . *malint* (page 66, line 29).

CHAPTER 9

4. **aberat longius** : *was too far away* to take action in person. Caesar was at Lucca, in Etruria, till some time in April. He reached the army in May.—**naves . . . longas** : *galleys* ; see Introduction, page lix. The Gallic ships had sails only, as appears from page 71, lines 11, 12.

5. **in** : *on*.—**Ligeri** : the Loire ; see maps, frontispiece, and opposite page 70.

6. **institui** : *to be trained or to be procured*.

8. **cum primum** : *as soon as*.

10. **Veneti . . . civitates** : subjects of *instituunt*, line 16.

11. **quod** : connect with *intellegebant*.—**quantum . . . admisissent** : indirect question ; *in se admittere = to commit*.

12. **legatos . . . retentos**, etc.: a phrase explaining *facinus*; translate: *in that ambassadors had been*, etc. They were not really ambassadors, and Caesar is not quite candid in so calling them.—**quod non men**: *a title which*, i. e. the title of ambassador.—**ad** : = *apud*.

16. **instituunt**: *begin*.—**hoc**: ablative of cause.—**spe**: ablative of attendant circumstance or manner; W. 391; B. 221; A. 248; H. 473. 3.—**multum**: adverbial accusative.

17. **natura**: *confido* takes an ablative of cause or means; W. 385; B. 219. 1; A. 254. b; H. 476. 3.—**Pedestria . . . itinera**: *land routes*.

19. **inscientiam locorum**: i. e. on the part of the Romans;

20. **neque** : = *et* (with *confidebant*) *non* (with *posse*).

21. **ut**: *although*, the only instance of this meaning in the *Gallic War*; W. 571; B. 308; A. 313. a; H. 586. II.

22. **plurimum**: adverbial accusative.

23. **posse**: this and *habere*, line 24, *novisse*, line 25, *esse*, line 26, all depend upon *perspiciebant*, line 27.—**facultatem**: *means of obtaining*.

24. **gesturi essent**: subjunctive in dependent clause of indirect discourse.

26. **aliam . . . atque**: *other than, different from*.—**concluso**: *land-locked*, meaning the Mediterranean. There is no perceptible tide in the Mediterranean.

28. **frumenta**: *the crops*.

PAGE 68

1. **Socios**: predicate accusative with *adsciscunt*, the direct objects being *Oisimos*, etc. The name of the *Lexovii* survives in Lisieux, of the *Namnetes* in Nantes, of the *Diablintes* in Jablins. The tribes named extended along the coast as far as modern Flanders.

3. **auxilia ex Britannia**: these furnished a pretext for Caesar's subsequent invasion of Britain.

CHAPTER 10

5. **hae**: *the foregoing*.

7. **iniuria retentorum**, etc.: *the wrongful detention*; B. 337. 5; A. 292. a; see ch. 8; these so-called envoys, being military tribunes, were of equestrian rank.

8. **rebellio**: *renewal of war*, not "rebellion."

9. **ne . . . arbitrarentur**: (*the fear*) *lest the other tribes might think*; this clause is coördinate with *iniuria*, *rebellio*, *defectio*, *coniuratio*, and in apposition with *multa*.

10. **idem**: neuter accusative, subject of the impersonal *licere*.

11. **novis rebus studere**: *were fond of change* (especially of government); W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227. e. 3; H. 426. I.

12. **excitari**: present expressing a general truth.
 13. **natura**: causal ablative.
 14. **odisse**: perfect in form, present in sense; W. 230; B. 133. 2; A. 279. *e*; H. 299. 2.
 15. **conspirarent**: W. 534, 605; B. 292, 314. 1; A. 327, 336. 2; H. 605, 642.

CHAPTER 11

17. **Treveros**: see map opposite page 81.
 18. **fiumini**: dative with *proximi*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; 141. 3; A. 234. *a, e*; H. 434. 2. Cf. *proximus mare*, page 66, line 6.
 19. **adeat . . . contineat . . . prohibeat**: commands in direct discourse; here object clauses after *mandat*; W. 599, 602; B. 316; A. 339, 331. *f*. R; H. 642.—**officio**: *obedience*.
 20. **auxilio**: dative of purpose.—**arcessiti (esse) dicebantur**; W. 607; B. 332. *c*; A. 330. *a, b*; H. 643. 1.
 21. **si . . . conentur, prohibeat**: in direct discourse *si . . . conabuntur, prohibe*.
 22. **Crassum**: see page 66, line 5.—**cohortibus legionariis**: see Introduction, page xxix. The auxiliaries were organized into cohorts, but not into legions.
 23. **Aquitaniam**: S. W. Gaul; see page 1, line 2, and note; being of alien stock, the *Aquitani* took little interest in the doings of the Celtic Gauls.
 27. **Venellos**, etc.: nations living in what is now Normandy.—**qui . . . curet**: relative clause of purpose.
 28. **distinendam**: W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. *b*) 2); A. 294. *d*; H. 622.—**D.**: *Decimum*.—**Brutum**: this able and trusted officer was one of Caesar's murderers in 44 B. C.

PAGE 69

1. **classi . . . navibus**: indirect objects of *praeficit*.—**Pictonibus . . . Santonis**: in modern *Poitou* and *Saintonge*.
 3. **cum primum**: *as soon as*.
 4. **pedestribus**: see page 67, line 17, and note.

CHAPTER 12

5. **fere**: *generally*.
 6. **extremis**: *at the ends of*.—**lingulis . . . promunturiis**: low spits of sand running out into the sea; high, rocky capes.—**pedibus**: *by land*.
 7. **cum . . . incitavisset**: i. e. at high tide.

9. rursus minuente: *when it ebbed again.*—*afflictarentur*: *would be stranded.* *Quod accidit*, lines 7, 8 (indicative), expresses a fact independently true under all circumstances; *quod . . . afflictarentur* (subjunctive), what would be true if ships happened to be caught by the ebb-tide.

10. utraque re: *in either case.*

11. si quando: *if ever.*

12. superati: agrees with the subject of *cooperant*.—*aggere ac molibus*: *massive dikes*; hendiadys; W. 740; B. 374. 4; A. 385; H. 751. 3. N. 1. See diagram in lower left-hand corner of map opposite page 70. —*his . . . adaequatis*: ablative absolute; *moenibus*, dative.

13. fortunis: dative with *desperare*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227. b; H. 405. I. N.

14. cooperant: sc. *oppidani*.—*cuius rei*: i. e. the action of bringing up the vessels (*adpulsio*). Translate the sentence: *which it was very easy for them to do.*

17. eo facilius: *all the more easily*; *eo*, causal ablative explained by *quod . . . detinebantur*.

18. partem: accusative of duration.

19. summa: connect with *difficultas*: what is hyperbaton? W. 740; B. 350. II. a; A. 386; H. 751. 5.

20. vasto . . . portibus: causal ablatives absolute.

CHAPTER 13

22. Namque: elliptical; (but the Veneti had no such difficulties) *for*. —ipsorum: *Venetorum*.—hunc: *the following*.

23. armatae: *fitted out and rigged*.—planiores: sc. erant.

28. quamvis: *no matter how great*; accusative of *quivis*, “any at all”; “any whatever.”

29. ex pedalibus . . . trabibus: *consisting of timbers a foot thick from top to bottom (in altitudinem).*

PAGE 70

1. crassitudine: W. 394; B. 224. 2; A. 251; H. 473. 2; there is no adjective limiting this ablative of quality, but a genitive, *digitii pollicis*.

2. funibus: *rope cables*.—pelles: *(untanned) skins*.—alutae: *tanned skins, leather*.

3. tenuiter confectae: *worked thin*, so dressed as to be thin, and comparatively light.

4. eius: i. e. *lini*.

6. tanta onera navium: = *tam onerosae naves*.

7. *velis*: by canvas sails, but the ancient canvas was linen, not cotton.—*non satis*: not very.

8. *nostrae classi*: dative of reference or possessor, but may be translated as if genitive.

9. *una*: only.—*praestaret*: (the Roman fleet) excelled, had the advantage.

10. *reliqua*: neuter plural nominative; everything else.—*illis*: *Veneti*.

11. *eis*: dative with *nocere*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227; H. 426. I.—*nostrae*: sc. *naves*.

12. *rostro*: the beak of an ancient war galley was a projecting prow heavily armed with metal, intended to crush in the hull of an enemy's ship.

13. *adigebatur* := *adigi poterat*.

14. *minus*: not.—*copulis*: the Romans not being very expert in sea tactics, aimed to grapple the enemy's ships, board them, and win by a hand-to-hand fight.

15. *Accedebat, ut*: Besides, it was true that, etc.; the *ut* clause is the subject of *accedebat*.

16. *se vento dedissent*: they had let themselves run before the wind.

17. *consisterent*: rode at anchor, or perhaps grounded.—*ab aestu*: the use of the preposition personifies *aestu*, as if a voluntary agent.—*relictæ*: if or when left.—*nihil*: adverbial accusative.

18. *navibus*: personified as if they were conscious of fear.

19. *casus*: the occurrence.

CHAPTER 14

22. *captis*: by taking.—*noceri*: impersonal passive of an intransitive verb; W. 331; B. 187. II. b; A. 146. d; H. 518. i; 426. 3.

23. *classem*: see page 69, lines 1-4.—*Quae ubi*: and when it.

25. *paratissimæ*: fully fitted out.—*armorum*: equipments of all sorts, tackle, cordage, etc., as well as weapons.—*ornatissimæ*: thoroughly provided.

26. *ex portu*: see plan. The scene of this battle, the first naval battle on the Atlantic recorded in history, was probably, though by no means certainly, in the bay of Quiberon. The fleet of Caesar, issuing from the Loire, sailed to the N. W. The fleet of the *Veneti* may have come out of the Auray estuary and through the Morbihan entrance into the bay.—*neque satis Bruto . . . constabat*: and Brutus was not quite decided.

27. *tribunis militum*: the fleet was nothing more than a temporary auxiliary of the army, and was commanded by army officers.

29. *quid agerent . . . insisterent*: indirect deliberative question; direct form, *quid agamus . . . insistamus*.

PAGE 71

1. *turribus . . . excitatis*: *even if towers were erected*; the consecutive character of this ablative absolute is shown by *tamen*.—*has*: i. e. *turres*.

2. *ex . . . navibus*: *on the ships, or of the ships*.

4. *missa*: sc. *tela*.

5. *magno usui*: W. 342; B. 191; A. 233; H. 433. I.

6. *non absimili*, etc.: *of a shape not unlike that of wall hooks*; *falcium* limits *formae* (dative) understood. See Introduction, page lvi.

7. *cum funes . . . adducti erant*: *whenever the ropes, etc.* The pluperfect indicatives indicate a recurring action; W. 532. 2; B. 288. 3; A. 322, 309. c; H. 601. 4.

9. *navigio*: i. e. the Roman ship which had caught the rigging of an enemy.—*Quibus*: sc. *funibus*.

11. *navibus*: dative of reference.

12. *usus*: *control*.

13. *erat . . . positum*: *depended*.

15. *in conspectu Caesaris*: Caesar and the portion of the army not engaged on the fleet were watching the battle from the shore.

16. *paulo fortius*: *especially brave*.

CHAPTER 15

19. *cum . . . circumsteterant*: another temporal clause of the same kind as *cum . . . adducti erant*, lines 7, 8.—*singulas*: sc. *naves*; i. e. of the *Veneti*.—*binae ac ternae naves*: *two or three (Roman) ships*. This does not necessarily imply that Brutus had more ships than the *Veneti*, but only that he concentrated his attacks on single ships at a time.

21. *transcendere in*: *to board*.—*Quod postquam*: translate as if it were *Postquam id*.

23. *ei rei*: i. e. the boarding of their ships by the Romans. Thus the battle was won by substantially the same device as the famous grappling bridges used by the Romans in their first great naval battle in the Mediterranean at *Mylae* in 260 B. C.

25. *quo ventus ferebat*: *in which the wind was blowing*; *quo = in quam (partem)*.

26. *malacia ac tranquillitas*: in that region, in the latter part of summer, it is usually breezy in the morning and calm in the afternoon.

PAGE 72

1. **hora . . . iiiii (quarta)**; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note. We do not know the exact date of the battle, but from the time needed to build and drill the fleet, etc., we conclude it must have been rather late in the summer.

CHAPTER 16

4. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*; W. 248; B. 290. 2; A. 107, 208. *d*; H. 657. 4. N. 1.

5. **gravioris**: *mature*.—**consili**: *judgment*.

6. **navium quod**: *whatever ships*; *navium* is partitive genitive.

8. **neque quo se . . . habebant**: *they had no place of refuge nor any means of defending their towns*. The clauses introduced by *quo* and *quem ad modum* are clauses of purpose; lit. “they had no (place) whither they might flee and no (means) how they might defend their towns.”

10. **eo**: causal.—**gravius . . . statuit**: *decided that they must be the more severely punished*.

11. **quo**: *in order that*; *quo* is used instead of *ut* in connection with comparative adjectives or adverbs in clauses of purpose.

12. **ius legatorum**: the inviolability of envoys has been respected in all ages, and offenses against it regarded as very grave. But it must be remembered that Caesar’s emissaries hardly possessed the character of “envoys.” They were officers sent to get supplies for his army; page 66, lines 6–11.

13. **sub corona**: *into slavery*; a wreath was put on the head of a captive or slave exposed for sale. The nation of the *Veneti* was not entirely destroyed, but the northwestern tribes gave Caesar no more trouble. They sent, however, a small contingent for the relief of Alesia; Bk. VII, ch. 75.

CHAPTER 17

14. **geruntur**: historical present with *dum*; W. 533, 447 (1); B. 293. 1; A. 276. *e*; H. 533. 4.—**Sabinus**: see page 44, line 19; page 46, lines 22, 26; page 68, line 26.

15. **eis copiis**: three legions; see page 68, line 26.

16. **Venellorum**: along the Channel coast in Normandy.

18. **magnasque copias**: this seems to imply that in addition to the usual or regular army certain irregular troops were levied.

19. **his paucis diebus**: *within a few days* (of Sabinus’s arrival).—**Aulerci Eburovices**: this branch of the *Aulerci* lived south of the lower Seine.

21. **nolebant**: as subject sc. *senatores* from *senatu*.—**clauserunt**: i. e. against the Romans.

23. *perditorum*: *desperate*; this was already the third year of the war in Gaul.

26. *omnibus rebus*: *in all respects*.

27. *cum*: *concessive*.

28. *spatio*: ablative of degree of difference, measuring the distance by which Sabinus and Viridovix were separated.

29. *ut*: *so that*; result.—*hostibus*: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. 1; A. 235; H. 425. 4.

PAGE 73

2. *non nihil*: *somewhat*; W. 316; B. 176. 2. b); A. 240. a; H. 306.—*opinionem timoris*: *impression that he was a coward*.

5. *eo absente*: i. e. Caesar. A *legatus* had ordinarily no *imperium* of his own; see Introduction, page xl.

6. *teneret*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse, depending on *existimabat*.

7. *legato*: W. 339; B. 189. 1; A. 232; H. 431.—*dimicandum*: sc. *esse*; impersonal passive of an intransitive verb.

CHAPTER 18

13. *pro*: *as if, in the character of*.

15. *prematur*: subjunctive of indirect question.—*neque longius abesse quin*, etc.: *and that not later than the next night Sabinus would, etc.* The clause *quin . . . profiscatur* is the subject of *abesse*; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. d; H. 595. 1.

19. *negoti bene gerendi*: *of winning a victory*.

20. *iri*: W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. d; H. 302. 6.

22. *superiorum*: *preceding*.

24. *spes . . . belli*: they had not yet heard of the result of the campaign against the Veneti; see page 74, lines 15 and 16.—*quod . . . credunt*: *the fact that most men are glad to believe, etc.*; substantive clause, coördinate with *cunctatio, confirmatio*, etc., in apposition to *Multae res*, line 21; W. 549; B. 299. 1; A. 333; H. 588. II. 3.

26. *non prius . . . quam*: *not . . . until*; W. 534; B. 292; A. 327; H. 605.

29. *ut explorata victoria*: ablative absolute; *as if victory were assured*.—*sarmentis virgultisque*: *fagots and brushwood*.

30. *quibus . . . compleant*: relative clause of purpose.

CHAPTER 19

PAGE 74

1. *ab imo*: *from the bottom*.

2. *magno cursu*: *at full speed, double-quick*.

3. *spati* : sc. *temporis* ; partitive genitive with *minimum*, *as little time as possible*.
4. *exanimatique* : *and . . . (consequently) out of breath*.
5. *cupientibus* : dative.
7. *Factum est* : *it came to pass, the result was*.
8. *opportunitate* : this and the coördinate ablatives are causal.
10. *ut . . . ferrent . . . verterent* : sc. *hostes* ; substantive clauses, subjects of *Factum est*.
11. *Quos* : the antecedent is the following *eorum*.
13. *equites* : nominative ; sc. *nostri*.
17. *ut . . . sic* : *while . . . yet*.
18. *animus* : *disposition, spirit*.
19. *mollis* : *infirm*.—*minime resistens* : *not at all steadfast*.
20. *mens* : *purpose*. See note on *subita . . . consilia*, page 66, line 22.

CHAPTER 20

21. *Crassus* : with twelve cohorts and a large cavalry force ; page 68, lines 22, 23.
22. *ante* : page 1, line 2.
23. *tertia pars* : this is of course an inaccurate statement, but the ancients were very ignorant of geography. It was, however, one of the three main divisions of Gaul ; see page 1, lines 1-3.
25. *gerendum* : sc. *esse*.—*paucis ante annis*, etc. : twenty-two years earlier, in 78 B. C., Praeconinus and Manlius had been defeated by Hirtuleius, quaestor of Sertorius. Then the Aquitani united with Sertorius.
28. *non mediocrem* : what is *litotes*? W. 740 ; B. 375. 1 ; A. 209. c ; H. 752. 8.

PAGE 75

2. *Tolosa*, etc. : now Toulouse, Carcassonne, and Narbonne ; the first was an ancient Gallic town, the third was a Roman colony, established 118 B. C. and the capital of the "Province" ; see note to page 1, line 8.
3. *finitimae* : agrees with *civitates*.
4. *evocatis* : see Introduction, page xxxvii, on *evocati*.—**Sotiatum** : southeast of Bordeaux—the name survives in the small town of Sôs, in the department of Lot-et-Garonne.
10. *Hi* : referring to *copias*, which consisted of men ; this is construction according to sense ; W. 294. 2 ; A. 182. a ; H. 397.

CHAPTER 21

12. *cum* : causal.
13. *victoriis* : ablative with *freti* ; W. 386 ; B. 218. 3 ; A. 254. b. 2 ; H. 476. 1.

14. *quid . . . possent*: indirect question, subject of *perspici*.—*imperatore*: the commander-in-chief, holding *imperium*, military authority in his own right; any subordinate officer was properly called *dux*, the general word for a leader or commander.

15. *adulescentulo duce*: ablative absolute.

18. *oppidum*: perhaps the modern Sôs.

19. *vineas turresque . . . cuniculis . . . aggerem*: see Introduction, pages lii-lviii.

20. *Illi*: *hostes*.—*alias . . . alias*: *now . . . again*.

21. *cuius rei*: i. e. in the digging of mines; W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 451.

22. *locis*: W. 402. (2); B. 228. 1. b); A. 258. f. 1; H. 485. 2.

23. *aerariae*: *copper-mines*.—*secturae*: *quarries*.—*diligentia*: causal ablative; i. e. in digging counter-mines.

27. *faciunt*: *they did so*, i. e. *tradunt*.

CHAPTER 22

29. *summam imperi*: *the chief command*.

PAGE 76

1. *soldurios*: (*paid*) *retainers*; a Gallic word; cf. German *Sold*, *Soldat*, English *soldier*.

2. *condicio*: *terms of association*.

3. *commodis*: ablative with *fruantur*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. I.—*amicitiae*: dative.

4. *accidat*: used commonly in an unfavorable sense; cf. page 13, line 16, and page 14, line 28.

5. *sibi mortem conscient*: see page 4, line 6, and note.

6. *memoria*: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487.

7. *devovisset*: subjunctive by attraction; W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.

8. *recusaret*: subjunctive of characteristic; W. 588. 2; B. 283. 2; A. 320. a; H. 591. 1.—*his*: i. e. *DC devotis*, resuming the narrative after the explanatory digression.

11. *eadem*: *the same* as the rest of the Sotiates.

CHAPTER 23

13. *Vocatum et Tarusatium*: to the north and west of the Sotiates.

16. *quibus*: *from the time when, after*.

17. *quoque versus*: *in every direction*; *quoque* is adverbial, the ablative of *quisque*, as *quo* from *qui*; *versus* as in *ad-versus*.

20. citerioris Hispaniae: *Hither or Nearer Spain*, i. e. counting from Rome. The Iberian peoples in Spain were kindred of the Aquitani. Spain had been subject to Rome for a century and a half, but was often mutinous; e. g. the Sertorian war lasted ten years, 82–72 B. C.

21. adventu: ablative of time when.

23. Duces: predicate nominative; W. 317; B. 167, 168. 2. b; A. 185; H. 410. I.

24. Sertorio: the great partisan of Marius and the democratic party, who set up and maintained for years in defiance of the Roman government a virtually independent authority in Spain.

26. consuetudine populi Romani: learned from Sertorius. The Aquitani were superior to the Gauls in the science of war; see page 187, line 6.

29. Quod ubi: now when.

PAGE 77

3. in dies: *day by day*.—non cunctandum (*esse*) quin: *that he ought, without delay, to, etc.*; B. 298; A. 319. d; H. 595.

CHAPTER 24

7. dupli acie: this made a longer front than the usual triple line, for which his numbers were too small in this case.

8. auxiliis: auxiliaries were ordinarily put on the wings. These were taken into the center in order that, raw and untrustworthy as they were, they might be kept steady by the legionaries on both sides of them. See line 26.

9. exspectabat: *was waiting to see*.

12. tutius esse: the subject is *potiri* below, the whole clause being the object of *arbitrabantur*.—obsessis . . . intercluso: ablatives absolute, denoting means.

14. sese recipere: *to retreat*.—impeditos . . . infirmiores: sc. Romanos or eos.

15. infirmiores animo: *dispirited*; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

17. castris: ablative of place and means.

19. opinione timoris: *impression of their cowardice*.—hostes: subject of *effecissent*.—alacriores; predicate accusative, agreeing with *milites*.

21. exspectari . . . oportere . . . iretur: (*saying*) that there ought to be no further delay in going, etc.; quin . . . iretur; W. 576; B. 284. 3; 298; A. 319. d; H. 595.—ad: *against*. This is the only attack by the Romans on a fortified camp, mentioned in the *Gallic War*.

CHAPTER 25

24. *telis coniectis*: by hurling spears.
 25. *vallo*: note the absence of a preposition; W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 463, 464.
 26. *quibus*: dative or ablative with *confidebat*; W. 330, 385; B. 187.
 II. a; 219, I. a; A. 227, 254. b; H. 426. I; 476. 3.
 27. *lapidibus . . . comportandis*: ablatives of means.—*ad*: for, to make.
 28. *aggerem*: Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the camp rampart.—*speciem . . . praebarent*: appeared to be and created the impression that they were combatants.

PAGE 78

2. *ex loco superiore*: i. e. from the rampart of the camp; see the same phrase, page 64, line 13.
 3. *circumitis . . . castris*: after riding around the enemy's camp.
 5. *ab*: on the side of, or simply at.—*decumana porta*: see plan of camp, Introduction, page li.

CHAPTER 26

9. *devectis*: bringing along.
 14. *prius . . . quam . . . posset*: W. 534; B. 292. I. b); A. 327; H. 605. I, II.
 15. *videri*: sc. *possent*.
 16. *rei*: partitive genitive with *quid*; *quid rei* = what; do not translate *rei* separately.
 18. *quod*: refers to the fact expressed in *redintegratis viribus*.—*consuevit*: is accustomed.
 20. *per*: over.
 22. *apertissimis campis*: this is a circumstantial ablative; the pursuit was over the open plains, and the open plains made the pursuit possible; the *why* as well as the *where* is expressed in the phrase, and technically we call the ablative "absolute" for want of a better name.
 23. *quae*: neuter to agree with *milium*; accusative subject of *convenisse*.—*Cantabris*: a hardy nation of the western Pyrenees.
 24. *multa nocte*: late in the night.

CHAPTER 27

28. *Tarbelli*, etc.: all tribes between the Garonne and the Pyrenees; some of their names appear in the French Tarbes, Bagnères-de-Bigorre, Eauze, Auch, Garonne, Saubusse.

PAGE 79

i. *ultimae*: *most remote*; two adjectives with one noun; H. 492. i.

CHAPTER 28

The story of Caesar's own operations, interrupted at the end of ch. 16, is here resumed.

3. *prope exacta*: see note to page 72, line 1.

4. *omni . . . pacata*: concessive; *though all the rest of Gaul was subdued*.—**Morini Menapiique**: along the low Flemish coast.

5. *supererant qui . . . essent*: *alone remained in arms*; W. 588. 2; B. 283. 2; A. 320. a; H. 591. i.

6. *arbitratus*: translate by the present participle; W. 647; B. 336. 5; A. 290. b; H. 640. i.

7. *qui*: *they*, i. e. the Morini and Menapii.

8. *alia . . . ac*: *other than or different from*; B. 341. i. c); A. 247. d; H. 516. 3.

10. *continentes*: *continuous, unbroken*.

11. *habebant*: construe with *quod*, like *intellegebant*, line 9.—**eo**: *in eas*.

15. *evolaverunt . . . fecerunt*: sc. *hostes*.

18. *longius*: *too far*; connect with *secuti*.—**impeditioribus locis**: *over difficult ground*.

CHAPTER 29

20. *Reliquis deinceps diebus*: *during the days next following*.

21. *ineribus . . . militibus*: ablative absolute; *while the soldiers were without their arms and off their guard*.

23. *conversam ad hostem*: *with the limbs pointing toward the enemy*.—**pro**: *as, by way of*.

25. *confecto*: *cleared*.

26. *extrema impedimenta*: *the rear of their baggage trains*.—**tenerentur**: *were about to be seized*.

PAGE 80

3. *sub pellibus*: the tents were of leather; see Introduction, page lii.

6. *Aulercis Lexoviisque*: along the Seine near Evreux and Lisieux.

BOOK FOUR—B. C. 55

FIRST EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY, ch. 1-19. Various German tribes having crossed the Rhine, and some having made conquests in Gaul, Caesar resolved to make war on these invaders. They refused to leave the country at his command, but tried to gain time by insincere negotiations. He outwitted them, surprised their camp, and defeated them with great loss, and thereafter built a bridge over the Rhine, by which he crossed into Germany, where he spent eighteen days, no one daring to offer any resistance to his movements.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, ch. 20-38. Though the summer was nearly over, Caesar decided to make a short expedition into Britain, from which the Gauls were in the habit of getting assistance in war. There was some delay in collecting a fleet, but at last the Channel was successfully crossed and a landing made in spite of some resistance. The Britons were at first submissive, but after the Roman fleet had suffered severely in a storm, they prepared for hostilities. After defeating them in battle, the Romans returned safely to Gaul.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 81

1. *qui*: agrees with the predicate noun *annus* rather than with its antecedent *hieme*; W. 301. 1; B. 250. 3; A. 199; H. 396. 2.—*annus*: 55 B. C.; Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; see Introduction, page xiv. The calendar was at this time so confused that what we call January 1, 55 B. C., was really in November, 56 B. C.

2. *consulibus*: see note to page 2, line 9.—*Usipetes . . . Teneri*: beyond the Rhine.—*Germani*: the general term in apposition with the particular names of tribes.

4. *Rhenum*: the historic boundary for ages between Celts and Germans. As to migrations of the Germans, see Bk. I, ch. 31; Bk. II, ch. 4; Bk. VI, ch. 24. Caesar's conquests stopped the German invasions for four or five hundred years.—*quo* := *in quod*.

5. *Suebis*: a comprehensive term, embracing several independent tribes occupying the central part of Germany.

6. **cultura**: ablative of separation.

9. **centum pagos**: very likely there is confusion here. Caesar may have heard about the "hundred," a local division common among German peoples, brought afterward by the Saxons to England, where the name is still applied to many districts.

10. **singula milia**: *one thousand each.*

11. **bellandi causa**: purpose; notice that *causd*, ablative, always follows the gerund; cf. *causa transeundi*, line 5, where *causa* is nominative.

12. **illos**: those in the field.—*hi . . . illi: the latter . . . the former.*

13. **anno post**: W. 393; B. 223; A. 259. d; H. 488. 2.

14. **ratio atque usus**: *theory and practice.*

15. **privati . . . agri**: individual ownership of land was not yet recognized, and tillage was done in common.—**neque longius anno**: they cultivated but a small portion of their land, and constantly moved to fresh places. Their methods were rude and primitive; see Bk. VI, ch. 22. The communities were composed of kinsfolk.

17. **frumento**: ablative of means; *vivunt = vescuntur*. Their life was still half nomadic, their flocks more important than their fields.—**maximam partem**: *for the most part*; adverbial accusative.

18. **sunt in**: *engage in.*

19. **quae res**: *a habit which*, not "which habit"; subject of *alit*, line 1, and *efficit*, line 2, of the next page.—**genere, exercitatione, liberitate**: causal ablatives.

20. **a pueris**: *from childhood up.*—**officio, disciplina**: ablatives with *adsuefacti*; B. 218. 7; H. 476. 3.

PAGE 82

1. **immani corpore**: as to the tall stature of the Germans, see page 27, line 27, and note.

2. **eam** := *talem*: correlative with *ut* in the following result clause.

3. **locis frigidissimis**: *though their country is very cold*; we must remember that Caesar was an Italian.—**vestitus**: partitive genitive.

CHAPTER 2

7. **aditus**: i. e. *ad Germanos*.—**eo**: *on this account*; explained by the purpose clause *ut . . . habeant*.

8. **ceperint**: subjunctive by attraction.—**quibus vendant**: a clause of purpose; *persons to whom they may sell*.—**quam quo**: *than because*; an implied negative, like *non quo*, followed by the subjunctive; W. 547; B. 286. I. b; A. 341. R; H. 588. II. 2.

9. **iumentis**: *horses*; connect with *utuntur*.—**quibus**: ablative; B. 219. I; A. 254. b.

13. *summi . . . laboris*: (*capable*) of (*enduring*) the *utmost toil*; W. 354; B. 203. 1; A. 215; H. 440. 3.
15. *eodem . . . vestigio*: used like *loco*, without *in*.
16. *usus est*: *it is necessary*.
17. *moribus*: W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 248. R; H. 475. 3.
19. *quamvis pauci*: *no matter how few*.
20. *Vinum*: cf. what is said of the *Nervii*, page 50, line 6. The *Suebi* made beer and honey-mead.

CHAPTER 3

23. *Publice*: *for a nation, as a community*.
24. *significari*: its subject is the clause *magnum numerum . . . posse*.
26. *una ex parte*: *on one side*. This vacant land was probably on the east.
27. *agri . . . dicuntur*: personal construction; W. 631. 3; B. 332. c); A. 330. b. 1; H. 611. 1.
28. *Ubii*: northwest of the *Suebi*, in the vicinity of Cologne.
29. *captus*: noun; *standard*.—*paulo*: connect with *pauciores*.

PAGE 83

3. *ventitant*: a frequentative verb.
4. *moribus*: see note on *officio*, page 81, line 20.—*cum*: concessive.
5. *experti*: active in meaning.—*amplitudinem*: *large population*.
gravitatem: *importance*.
6. *vectigales, humiliores, infirmiores*: predicate accusatives agreeing with *Hos*, line 4, the direct object.

CHAPTER 4

9. *causa*: *situation, condition*.
10. *supra*: see page 81, lines 5–7.
11. *ad extremum*: *at last*.
13. *quas regiones*: North Brabant and the north bank of the Rhine.
14. *ad utramque ripam*: *along both banks*.
15. *tantae multitudinis*: i. e. of the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*.
16. *trans*: on the north bank.
17. *cis*: on the south bank.
19. *vi contendere*: *force a passage*.
24. *oppresserunt*: do not translate "oppressed."
26. *trans*: to the north bank.
29. *transierunt*: sc. *Usipetes et Tencteri*.

CHAPTER 5

PAGE 84

1. infirmitatem : *weakness (of purpose), fickleness.*
3. nihil his committendum (*esse*) : *that no confidence should be placed in them.*
4. Gallicae consuetudinis : *characteristic of the Gauls*; W. 359; B. 198. 3; A. 214. d; H. 447.
5. uti . . . cogant, etc. : substantive clauses explaining *hoc*, line 4.
6. quid . . . cognoverit : indirect question, object of *quaerant*.
10. rebus, auditionibus : *facts, reports.*
11. quorum : genitive with *paenitere*; W. 368. (1); B. 209. 1; A. 221. b; H. 457.—in *vestigio* : *immediately*; cf. *eodem vestigio*, page 82, line 15.
12. cum : causal.—serviant : *are slaves to.*—plerique : i. e. via-tores (line 5), *et mercatores* (line 7).
13. ad voluntatem . . . respondeant : *make answers invented to suit the wish of their questioners.*

CHAPTER 6

14. graviori : *too serious (to manage).* Caesar feared that the Gauls might make common cause with the Germans against him.

15. matrius : *earlier in the season.* We do not know how early; the first year's campaign began in March, the second in June; we are now at the beginning of the fourth year.—ad exercitum : see the last sentence of Bk. III and note.

17. facta, missas : sc. esse.
18. ab Rheno : i. e. forward into Gaul.
19. omnia, etc. : *(with the promise) that everything, etc.* The direct quotation would be : *omnia quae postulaveritis a nobis parata erunt, or parabuntur.*
26. constituit : *decided or perhaps announced his decision.*

CHAPTER 7

27. equitibus delectis : i. e. from the quotas of cavalry furnished by the Gallic allies.

28. iter . . . facere : *to march.*—locis : Caesar often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause.

PAGE 85

3. Germanos neque priores : *that the Germans were not the first to, etc., i. e. not the first aggressors.*
4. recusare . . . quin : *refuse to.*

6. resistere: sc. *eis*, antecedent of *quicumque*.
 7. deprecari: sc. *eos*.—dicere: sc. *se*; depending on *haec fuit oratio*.—venisse, posse: sc. *se*; depending on *dicere*.
 9. *eis*: *Romanis*.—sibi . . . attribuant vel patiantur, etc.: indirect for *nobis agros attribuite vel patimini eos tenere*.
 11. unis: *only*.
 12. possint . . . possint (line 13): the former perhaps, the latter certainly, would be subjunctive of characteristic in direct discourse.—reliquum . . . neminem: *no one else*.—in terris: *in the world*.

CHAPTER 8

14. visum est: *seemed proper*; sc. respondere.
 16. verum: *fair, just*.
 17. occupare: the subject is *eos* understood, antecedent of *qui*.
 18. qui . . . possint: a clause of characteristic.
 19. licere: sc. *eis*.
 20. quorum sint, etc.: *whose envoys (he said) were (then) with him*.
 22. hoc . . . imperaturum (esse): *that he would command the Ubii to that effect*. He held hostages of the *Ubii*; see page 90, lines 12, 13.

CHAPTER 9

24. post diem tertium: like *tertio die post*; *the next day but one*; the Romans counted inclusively, 1) to-day, 2) to-morrow, 3) day after to-morrow.
 25. propius se: B. 141. 3; A. 234. e; H. 420. 5.—id: *ne . . . moveret*, i. e. two days' delay.
 26. ab: *from*, not “*by*.”

PAGE 86

1. trans: to the west bank; the main body was between the Meuse (Maas) and the Rhine.

CHAPTER 10

3. Vosego: in fact the Meuse (Maas) flows not from the Vosges Mountains, but from the plateau of Langres. It is the Moselle which rises in the Vosges.
 4. parte: *branch*. The Rhine divides in this low, marshy country, and one branch of it, the Waal (*Vacalus*) runs into the Meuse (Maas) near Bois-le-Duc (Hertogenbosch).
 6. inde milibus . . . lxxx: i. e. eighty miles from its junction with the Waal.
 7. ex: *in the country of*. The source of the Rhine is in the canton of the Grisons, eastern Switzerland.

8. *longo spatio*: about 850 miles.—*Nantuatum*: this tribe, in Bk. III, ch. 1, is placed on the Rhone, south of the Lake of Geneva. The list of nations on the Rhine, moreover, is not complete.

10. *citatus*: swiftly.

11. *partes*: *branches*; there are, besides the Waal, the New Yssel, the Lek, and the Vecht.

13. *sunt qui . . . existimantur*: *some are thought*.

15. *capitibus*: *mouths*; oftener it means “sources.”

CHAPTER 11

16. *milibus*: ablative of degree of difference with *abasset*; *amplius* does not affect the case of nouns with numerals as an ordinary comparative. Caesar had advanced nearer to the Germans while the envoys were absent; see page 85, lines 25, 26.

17. *ut erat constitutum*: referring to the return of the envoys; see page 85, lines 23, 24.

18. *congressi*: *meeting him*.

20. *antecessissent*: subjunctive because logically subordinate to *praemitteret*, being stated as a part of the request of the ambassadors.

21. *praemitteret*: *send word forward*.—*sibi*: the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*.

22. *quorum si*: *and if their*.

23. *fidem fecisset*: *should give a pledge*; *fecisset* agrees with its nearest subject, *senatus*.

24. *se usuros (esse)*: *that they* (the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*) *would accept*.

25. *daret*: sc. *petebant ut*.

26. *eodem illo pertinere*: *had the same purpose*, i. e. to gain time; lit. “tended in that same direction.”

PAGE 87

1. *aquationis causa*: to get water; a small stream, the Niers, lay between him and the German camp; i. e. supposing the two armies to have been near the ancient junction of the Maas and Waal; see page 89, lines 12, 13, and note.

2. *convenirent*: direct discourse, *convenite*.

4. *qui nuntiarent ne*: (*men*) *to tell them not to*, etc.

7. *accessisset*: in direct discourse this would be subjunctive, but perfect tense, *sustinet quoad accesserim*; W. 533; B. 293. III. 2; A. 328; H. 603. II.

CHAPTER 12

9. *cum* : *while, although.*
 10. *equites* : accusative, the case not being affected by *amplius*. Tacitus (*Germania* 32) says that the Tencteri were famous for their cavalry.
 11. *trans Mosam* : see chapter 9.
 13. *indutiis* : *for a truce*, dative of purpose.—*his* : the latter, i. e. *nostri*.
 16. *subfossis . . . deiectis* : *after stabbing the horses and unhorsing a good many of our men.*
 19. *agminis* : the main body of the army, who were following.
 20. *ex equitibus* : when is the ablative with *ex* preferred to the partitive genitive? The German cavalry was better than the Gallic, and was used later by Caesar, as appears repeatedly in Book VII.
 21. *Piso Aquitanus* : no doubt an Aquitanian who had obtained Roman citizenship, and assumed, as usual, a Roman name; see note on *Procillum*, page 36, line 2.
 22. *genere* : ablative of source.—*regnum* : see note on *regnum*, page 3, line 10.
 23. *obtinuerat* : do not translate: "had obtained."—*amicus* : see note on *amicus*, page 3, line 11.

CHAPTER 13

PAGE 88

1. *iam* : *any longer*; Caesar could not trust his Gallic cavalry after the German cavalry arrived.
 4. *exspectare* : this is the subject of *summae dementiae esse*; *that it was (a proof) of the utmost folly to expect.*
 6. *dementiae* : predicate genitive, like *consuetudinis*, page 84, line 4.
 7. *eos* : *Gallos*.—*auctoritatis* : *prestige.*
 8. *quibus* : i. e. *Gallis*; indirect object of *dandum*.
 9. *nihil spati* : *no time.*
 11. *quaestore* : see note on *singulos*, etc., page 38, line 24. The quaestorship was an office, like most Roman magistracies, lasting one year. But the *legati* served an indefinite period.—*ne quem diem*, etc. : *in order not to miss any opportunity of battle.*

13. *diei* : W. 348; B. 201. 3. *a*; A. 223. *e*; H. 446. 5.—*perfidia* : by accusing the Germans, Caesar diverts attention from his own rather sharp practice at this point. It is hard to explain why so many of the Germans put themselves into his power if their designs were treacherous.

15. *simul . . . simul* : *not only . . . but also, or partly . . . partly.*
 16. *purgandi sui* : W. 642; B. 339. 5; A. 298. *a*; H. 626. 3.—*contra atque* : *contrary to what*; B. 341. 1. *c*; A. 247. *d*; H. 508. 5; 516. 3.

19. **Quos, illos**: both refer to the Germans.—**sibi . . . oblatos (esse)**: *that they had put themselves into his power.* The infinitive clause expresses the reason of the feeling of joy in *gavissus*; B. 331. V; A. 333. b; H. 614. 4.—**gavissus**: from *gaudeo*.

22. **subsequi**: the cavalry regularly preceded the rest of the army on a forward march.

CHAPTER 14

23. **Acie**: on march in order of battle, see Introduction, page xlviij.

24. **quid ageretur**: *what was going on.*

25. **possent**: when is the subjunctive used with *priusquam?*

28. **ne . . . an . . . an . . . praestaret**: *whether it was better to . . . or . . . or*; triple indirect question depending on *perturbarentur*; *they were perplexed*; the three infinitives are subjects of *praestaret*; W. 281; B. 300. 4; A. 211. d; 210. f. R; H. 650.

PAGE 89

1. **Quorum timor cum**: translate as if it were *Cum eorum timor*.

6. **reliqua multitudo**, etc.: *the rest of the host consisting of children and women.* The presence of these shows that this was not a mere inroad, but a migration.

8. **ad quos consecrandos**: *to hunt them down*; *quos* agrees with the individuals composing the *multitudo*, the masculine being preferred to the feminine when both are involved. Caesar was quite without scruples in his resolution to exterminate these German invaders and to give an awful example to their countrymen, in order to secure the Gallic frontier against future invasions.

CHAPTER 15

10. **Germani**: those who were fighting in advance.—**clamore**: of those who were being killed in the camp.

11. **signis**: effigies of animals and the like, carried on poles.

12. **confluentem**: i. e. the junction of the Meuse (Maas) with the Waal, which is a branch of the Rhine; see note on *parte*, page 86, line 4. But there are strong reasons for believing that Caesar is referring not to this locality, but to the confluence of the Rhine and Moselle. We should have to suppose that by the mistake of a copyist *Mosae* was written for *Mosellae*. But there are difficulties in the story, whichever way we understand this matter.

13. **reliqua**: *further.*

16. **ad unum**: *to a man.*

17. **cum**: *although.*

18. **capitum**: *souls*; cf. page 20, line 11, and note.—~~ccccxxx~~
 milium : 430,000 seems an incredible number; the same proportion as
 among the Helvetians in Book I would give 130,000 fighting men. No
 words are so often copied erroneously as numbers.

20. **discedendi potestatem**: if they had been as treacherous as Cae-
 sar alleged, we wonder why he treated them so leniently.

22. **libertatem**: *permission to remain*. When the Roman Senate
 voted a thanksgiving for this victory, Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed to
 surrender Caesar to the Germans on account of his breach of faith with
 them.

CHAPTER 16

25. **illa**: *the following*.

26. **iustissima**: *the strongest*.

27. **suis quoque rebus**: *on their own account also*; emphasis on *suis*.

29. **Accessit . . . quod**: *and besides*.

PAGE 90

2. **quam . . . commemoravi . . . transisse**: *which, as I mentioned
 above, had crossed*, etc. Here Caesar the author speaks in the first person;
 Caesar the actor in the narrative is in the third person.—**supra** : ch. 9.

5. **Sugambrorum**: living north of the *Ubii*.

6. **Ad quos**: i. e. *Sugambros*.

7. **intulissent**: subjunctive by attraction, depending on *dederent*.—
dederent: on the absence of *ut* see B. 295. 8 ; A. 331. f. R ; H. 565. 4.

8. **imperium Rhenum**: respectively object and subject of *finire*.

9. **se invito**: *against his (Caesar's) will*; ablative absolute.

10. **imperi, potestatis**: predicative possessive genitives.

11. **postularet**: in direct discourse, *postules*; deliberative subjunc-
 tive ; W. 493 ; B. 277 ; A. 268, 334. b ; H. 559. 4.

12. **Ubii autem**, etc.: another reason for Caesar's crossing the Rhine.

—**uni**: *alone, only*.

15. **occupationibus rei publicae**: *by the demands of public business*.

—**id facere**: a subjunctive with *ne*, *quo minus*, or *quin* is more usual
 after a verb of hindering or preventing ; W. 514 ; B. 295. 3 ; A. 331. e. 2 ;
 H. 568. 8 ; 595. 2.

17. **transportaret**: coördinate with *ferret*, line 14, depending on
orabant; the direct quotation would be *fer . . . transporta*.

18. **futurum (esse)**: sc. *saying*, from *orabant*, line 14.

19. **eius**: i. e. *Caesaris*.—**Ariovisto pulso**: *since the defeat of
 Ariovistus*; described in Bk. I, ch. 47-53.

22. **possent**: sc. *Ubii*.

CHAPTER 17

24. **Rhenum transire**: it can not be determined with complete certainty where Caesar's bridge was built; most probably it was somewhere between Coblenz (*Confluentes*) and Andernach. There is, moreover, a strong reason for thinking that the rout of the Usipetes and Tencteri was near the junction of the Rhine and Moselle. There are also arguments in favor of Bonn as the site of the bridge. Mr. T. Rice Holmes, in his *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, comes to the conclusion that this bridge, as well as the second one described in Bk. VI, ch. 9, was "built between Andernach and Coblenz." This opinion has received strong confirmation by the discoveries and excavations of Nissen and Koenen, below Urmitz, a village midway between Andernach and Coblenz, an account of which was published in *Caesars Rheinfestung (Sonderabdruck aus Bonner Jahrbücher, Heft 104)*.

25. **neque satis tutum**: because his communications and line of retreat might be cut off.

27. **dignitatis**: predicate genitive.

28. **proponebatur**: *presented itself.*—**latitudinem**: about 1,400 feet. The depth varies much.

PAGE 91

1. **Rationem**: plan.—**Tigna bina sesquipedalia**: *pairs of timbers a foot and a half thick*, doubtless unhewn, driven into the bed of the river.

2. **dimensa**: *of length proportioned.*

3. **intervallo**, etc.: the timbers were in pairs, those of each pair being separated from each other by a space of two feet. They were driven into the bed of the river slanting (*prone ac fastigate*) down-stream (*ut secundum . . . procumberent*).

4. **cum**: *whenever, when in each instance*; W. 532. 2; B. 288. 3; A. 280. (2); H. 601. 4.

5. **sublicae modo**: *like a pile*, i. e. perpendicularly.

7. **secundum naturam**: *in the direction of the current.*—**eis . . . contraria**: *opposite these.*

8. **duo**: sc. *tigna sesquipedalia*. Each of these pairs was forty feet (measured on the bottom of the river, or on the surface of the water) below the corresponding pair of the former timbers. These latter pairs slanted up-stream.

9. **quadragenum**: genitive plural; B. 25. 6; A. 40. e; H. 169. The distributive numeral is properly used, because the distance was forty feet in each instance.—**ab inferiore parte**: *at the bottom.*—**contra . . . conversa**: *slanting against.*

10. *Haec utraque . . . distinebantur*: *these two pairs were held apart.*

11. *bipedalibus trabibus*: *each trabs bipedalis just fitted into the two-foot space between the two timbers of each pair of tigna sesquipedalia.* —*quantum . . . distabat*: *as much as the space between the timbers of each pair.*

12. *binis . . . parte*: *by a pair of cross-ties at the upper end (of each pier).* A *fibula* is ordinarily a clasp on the principle of a "safety-pin." These may have been wooden clamps with an iron bolt run through them, or, more probably, they may have been bound in their places with cords.

13. *quibus disclusis . . . revinctis*: *when these (the pairs of timbers) had been held apart and braced in opposite directions, i. e. slanting up and down the stream.*

15. *rerum*: *the structure, considered as consisting of many parts.* —*quo maior . . . hoc artius*: *the greater . . . the more closely.*

17. *Haec derecta materia, etc.*: *These (bipedales trabes) were connected by timber laid on them, running lengthwise of the bridge (derecta) and covered over with planks (longuriis) and wickerwork (cratibus).*

18. *sublicae . . . agebantur*: *piles were driven down slantwise (oblique) below the piers (ad inferiorem partem fluminis) to act as buttresses (pro ariete).*

21. *aliae item*: *other piles were driven a short distance above the bridge, perhaps in groups of three, to protect the piers against the blows of any heavy bodies floated down by the enemy in order to break them.* The arrangement of these piles can be only guessed at.

22. *spatio*: *degree of difference with supra.*

24. *neu* : = *neve*; *and that . . . not*; B. 282. 1. d; H. 568. 6.

CHAPTER 18

26. *Diebus x, quibus*: *within ten days from the time when.* A very rapid piece of work. There are now very few bridges over the Rhine. Caesar's engineers were excellent, but his own inspiring presence always made work go on faster than it did in his absence. —*coepta erat*: passive because *comportari* is so; B. 133. 1; A. 143. a; H. 299. 1.

28. *praesidio*: *a garrison, in a fort (castellum) at each end of the bridge; what is called a tête-de-pont.* —*in fines Sugambrorum*: i. e. to the northeast of the place of crossing.

PAGE 92

3. *eis*: *those who escaped over the Rhine from the slaughter described in ch. 15.* —*ex*: *of the number of.*

5. *in*: *takes the accusative on account of the idea of motion in se . . . abdiderant, had gone and hidden themselves.*

CHAPTER 19

6. *eorum* : i. e. *Sugambrorum*.

9. *pollicitus* : sc. *se daturum*, conclusion of *si . . . premerentur*; direct discourse: *dabo, si . . . prememini*; W. 615; B. 319; A. 337; H. 646.

12. *uti . . . demigrarent*: depends on *hortantes* or some similar word implied in the expression *nuntios . . . dimisisse*. The subject of *demigrarent* is the *Suebi* in general.

15. *Hunc* : sc. *locum*.—*medium fere* : predicative ; *as being about in the center*.

17. *decertare* : *to decide the issue*, by a battle.

18. *omnibus eis rebus confectis* : *as he had accomplished all the objects*; *rebus* is explained by its appositives, the three following *ut*-clauses.

21. *obsidione* : the *Ubii* had been constantly beset by the *Suebi*, overpowered by them, and made to pay tribute ; see page 83, lines 4–8.

23. *profectum (esse)* : from *proficio* not *proficiscor* ; *satis* is its subject.—*arbitratus* : *thinking*; see note on page 43, line 29. Caesar accomplished by this expedition very little in the way of material results. It is likely, however, that he intended little more than to produce a moral effect by a “demonstration in force” on the German side of the Rhine.

CHAPTER 20

25. *Exigua . . . reliqua* : ablative absolute.

26. *quod . . . vergit* : *since all Gaul lies far north*, i. e. as compared with Italy.

28. *omnibus . . . bellis* : ablative of time when.

29. *subministrata auxilia* : this may have been a pretext rather than a reason ; the help furnished can not have been of very material importance ; see page 68, lines 3, 4 ; page 49, lines 19–21. Caesar was the first Roman, so far as we know, to visit Britain, and the earliest ancient author to write from a personal knowledge of the country.—*si* : = *etsi*.

PAGE 93

2. *adisset* : for the future perfect of direct discourse ; *magno mihi usui erit si . . . adiero*, etc. ; *modo* is here an adverb, *only*.

4. *quae omnia* : *and all these things*. But the Veneti must have known about them.

5. *Neque . . . temere . . . quisquam* : *hardly any one* ; *temere* with a negative = *facile*.

6. *his ipsis* : i. e. *mercatoribus* ; *and even to them*.

7. *Gallias* : plural, because the separate divisions of Gaul are thought of, *Celtica* and *Belgica*.—*vocatis . . . mercatoribus* : *though he called the traders*.

8. neque . . . neque . . . poterat: *could find out neither . . . nor*, etc.

9. quanta . . . quae . . . quem, etc.: the indirect questions introduced by these words depend upon *reperire*.

10. incoherent: sc. *eam*, i. e. *insulam*.—*usum*: *skill*.—*belli*: objective genitive.

CHAPTER 21

15. idoneum: yet he did not actually succeed in his errand.—*nava longa*: see Introduction, page lix.

18. Morinos: this tribe lived nearest to Britain, which was visible in clear weather from their shores, and in their territory are situated Boulogne, Calais, and Ostend.

19. Huc: to the coast of the *Morini*.

20. quam . . . classem: = *eam classem quam*.—ad: *for*.—ad Veneticum bellum: see page 67, lines 4-7.

24. pollicentur: subjunctive of purpose.—dare: i. e. *se daturos esse*; the use of the present infinitive with a verb of promising is colloquial, but not rare in Caesar.

25. imperio: dative with *ob-temperare*.

28. Atrebatis: conquered along with the Nervii in B. C. 57; see page 43, line 23; page 50, line 18; page 54, lines 11-17.

29. ibi: among the *Atrebates*.

30. fidelem: yet he too turned against the Romans in B. C. 52; see pages 216, 217.

PAGE 94

1. magni: genitive of indefinite value.

2. possit: W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.—adeat . . . hor tetur . . . nuntiet: W. 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331; H. 565.

3. fidem sequantur: *put themselves under the protection of, give their allegiance to*.—se: i. e. *Caesarem*.

5. qui: *inasmuch as he*; a clause of characteristic. Caesar seems to be laughing at Volusenus, whose opportunities for investigation were certainly very limited.

7. quaeque . . . perspexisset: *and what he had observed*: indirect question.

CHAPTER 22

8. in his locis: in the country of the *Morini*.

9. moratur: historical present with *dum*.

10. superioris temporis: the preceding year; see page 79, lines 4-6.

11. *quod . . . fecissent*: implied or informal indirect discourse, the statement of the envoys.—*homines barbari*: *being barbarians*.—*consuetudinis*: i. e. the habit of kindly receiving nations which submitted; genitive with *imperiti*; W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 451. 1.

13. *imperasset*: = *imperavisset*; (*se*) *facturos (esse)*; indirect form: *qua imperaveris faciemus*.

15. *belli gerendi*: connect with *facultatem*.

16. *anni tempus*: it was now August; cf. *Exigua parte aestatis reliqua*, page 92, line 25.

17. *tantularum*: *so trifling*.—*occupationes*: plural of an abstract noun; A. 75. 3. c; H. 138. 2.

18. *eis*: i. e. *Morinis*.

21. *duas . . . legiones*: the 7th, see page 100, line 4; and 10th, see page 96, line 20; allowing 3,600 men for each, we should have 90 men to a ship.

22. *quod . . . navium longarum*: *what (of) galleys, the galleys which*.

24. *Huc accedebant*: *there were besides*.

25. *a . . . viii*: *eight miles off*. The harbor where the eighteen *naves onerariae* were may have been Ambleteuse if *Portus Itius* was Boulogne; Calais, if it was Wissant.—*tenebantur quominus*: *were prevented from, etc.*

26. *eundem portum*: *Portus Itius*, probably; see page 105, line 16. This may have been Boulogne or, more probably, Wissant. It must have been somewhere between Boulogne and Calais. The coast is much altered since Caesar's time.—*equitibus*: their number is not stated. It is likely that 200 or 300 horsemen were ordinarily attached to a legion, and two legions were taken on this expedition. See Introduction, page xxxviii.

29. *ducendum*: connect with *exercitum*; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. b) 2); A. 294. d; H. 622.

CHAPTER 23

PAGE 95

4. *tempestatem*: *weather*, good or bad, as the context implies.—*iii . . . vigilia*: i. e. about midnight; see Introduction, page lii. It has been calculated that on August 26th the tide was high at 7.30 P. M.; ships could go out at half-tide.—*solvit*: sc. *naves*; *cast off*; we say *weighed anchor*, or *set sail*.

5. *ulteriorem portum*: see note to page 94, line 25.

6. *paulo tardius*: they sailed three days later; page 98, lines 9-12.—*asset administratum*: *the movement was executed*.

7. *hora . . . iiii*: at that date the fourth hour was about 8.30 to 9.40 A. M.; the phrase ordinarily means either the period from the beginning to the end of the hour; or, if a point of time, the close of the hour, not its beginning; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note. The distance from Boulogne to Dover is about thirty miles. Caesar lay at anchor off Dover till about 3.30 P. M.

8. *Britanniam attigit*: near Dover.

10. *ita . . . anguste . . . continebatur*: *was so closely hemmed in*; referring to the perpendicular cliffs (*montibus*) which rise from a narrow beach.

13. *dum . . . convenienter*: *till the rest of the ships could come up*; W. 533; B. 293. III. 2; A. 328; H. 603. II. 2.

14. *horam nonam*: 2.20 to 3.30 P. M.

15. *quae . . . cognovisset . . . vellet*: indirect questions.

16. *Voluseno*: see page 93, line 15.

17. *monuit*: the clause depending directly on this word is *aa nutum . . . omnes res . . . administrarentur*.—*ut . . . ut*: *as . . . as*.—*rei militaris ratio*: *the art of war*.—*maritimae res*: *the conditions of navigation*.

18. *postularent*: attracted from *postulant* by dependence on *administrarentur*.—*ut quae . . . haberent*: *since they involve*; a clause of characteristic; W. 587; B. 283. 3. a); A. 320. e; H. 592; *quae* here is *maritimae res*.

19. *ad nutum*: *at the signal*.

20. *administrarentur*: subjunctive in substantive clause, object of *monuit*, line 17.—*dimissis*: *sent to their posts*; *di-* has a distributive sense.

21. *aestum*: at this point the tide must have turned eastward and northward about 6.30 P. M.—*secundum*: favorable.

23. *progressus*: toward the northeast.—*aperto . . . litore*: between Walmer and Deal, seven miles northeast of Dover.

CHAPTER 24

25. *essedariis*: *fighters in war-chariots*; described in ch. 33.—*quo . . . genere*: *a kind (of combatants) which*.

26. *navibus egredi*: *from disembarking*; infinitive instead of the more usual *ne-* or *quominus*-clause after a verb of hindering.

29. *militibus*: dative of agent with *desiliendum*, etc.

PAGE 96

2. *pressis*: agrees with *militibus*; *weighed down as they were*.

4. *cum*: *while*; it introduces a clause describing the situation rather than defining the time of the main action.—*illi*: *the enemy*.

6. *insuefactos*: *trained*.

CHAPTER 25

10. *naves*: subject of *removeri*, *incitari*, and *constitui*.

11. *inusitator*: less familiar than that of the *naves onerariae*, which were propelled by sails, not by oars.

13. *latus apertum*: here, as usual, the right flank, as the shields were carried on the left arms.

14. *inde*: from the galleys.—*tormentis*: engines; see Introduction, page lviii.

15. *quae res*: a maneuver which.

20. *qui*: = *is qui* (the *aquilifer*; see Introduction, page xliv); *is*, understood, is the subject of *inquit*.—*x legionis*: as usual, it is the famous 10th legion which distinguishes itself.—*obtestatus*: invoking; his words directly quoted would be: *Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite, etc.*—*ea res*: his act.

22. *ego certe . . . officium praesttero*: I at least shall have done my duty; W. 459; B. 264. a; A. 281. R; H. 540. I.

24. *magna*: loud.

26. *inter se*: each other.—*dedecus*: i. e. the loss of the legionary eagle; see Introduction, page xliv.

27. *universi*: all together, in a body.

28. *conspexissent*: the subject of this verb and of *adpropinquaverunt* is *ei* (*qui in proximis navibus erant*).—*subsecuti*: *hos* is the object of this as well as of *conspexissent*.

CHAPTER 26

PAGE 97

1. *ab utrisqué*: on both sides.

2. *firmiter insistere*: to get a solid footing.

3. *poterant*: this and the following imperfects are descriptive.—*alius alia, etc.*: men from different ships, etc.; W. 437. 2; B. 253. 2; A. 203. c; H. 516. I.

6. *ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur*: these tenses express repeated occurrence; W. 532. 2; B. 287. 2; A. 322, 309. c; H. 602. 2.

8. *plures (sc. hostes) paucos (sc. Romanos)*.

10. *scaphas*: rowboats, skiffs.

11. *speculatoria navigia*: scouting vessels, light and swift.—*quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebant*: compare this with *ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur*, line 6.

13. *simul*: = *simul atque*, as soon as.—*in arido*: on dry land.—*suis omnibus consecutis*: and all their comrades had joined them.

15. *neque*: and yet . . . not.—*longius*: very far.

16. **equites**: they were still in port waiting for a favorable wind; see page 94, lines 24-27.—**capere**: to reach, to "make."

17. **pristinam fortunam**: *his former* (i. e. *his usual*) luck. Caesar firmly believed in his Fortune; see Introduction, page xix.

CHAPTER 27

21. **datueros (esse)**: sc. *se*.—**quaerque**: = *et ea quae*.—**imperasset**: direct discourse: *quae imperaveris faciemus*.

23. **supra**: page 93, line 28.—**demonstraveram**: again the author, as such, speaks in the first person; cf. *dixeramus*, page 41, line 4, and note.

24. **egressum**: *when he had landed*.—**cum**: concessive.

25. **oratoris modo**: *in the character of an envoy*.

29. **ignoscetur**: impersonal; sc. *sibi*.

PAGE 98

2. **bellum sine causa**: this is rather cool, when they were simply resisting an armed invasion of their country.

3. **ignoscere**: sc. *se*.

5. **arcessitam**: = *cum arcessita esset*.

CHAPTER 28

9. **post diem quartum**: = *quarto die post*; *three days later*, according to our method of counting, i. e. August 30th.

11. **supra**: in ch. 22.—**sustulerant**: *had picked up, taken on board*.

12. **superiore portu**: referred to, page 94, lines 24, 25.—**solve-runt**: sc. *naves*; as page 95, line 4; see note.

14. **tempestas**: here *a storm*; it blew down the strait of Dover from the North Sea.

16. **inferiorem partem**: a lower point on the coast, southwest of Deal.

18. **deicerentur**: *were driven*.

19. **complerentur**: *they began to fill*.—**adversa nocte**: *though night was coming on*, lit. "in the face of night."—**in altum proiectae**: *putting out to sea*.

20. **continentem**: *the mainland*, the coast of Gaul.

CHAPTER 29

21. **Eadem nocte**: probably August 30th-31st, when the moon was full at 3 A. M.—**qui dies**: *and this day*, i. e. this period of the moon.

22. **aestus**: the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible, while at Dover the highest tide is said to rise nineteen feet and at Boulogne twenty-five feet.

24. *naves* : object of *complebat*.
 27. *adflictabat* : dashed about.
 28. *administrandi* : of managing, handling.
 29. *funibus . . . amissis* : from the loss of cables, etc.

PAGE 99

2. *magna . . . perturbatio* : hyperbaton ; W. 740 ; B. 350. II. a) ; A. 386 ; H. 751. 5.
 4. *quibus . . . possent* : relative clause of characteristic after a negative antecedent.
 5. *usui* : dative of tendency, or purpose, or service, as it is variously called.
 6. *omnibus constabat* : all were sure, it was generally agreed.
 7. *in hiemem* : for the winter.

CHAPTER 80

8. *principes* : subject of *duxerunt*, line 14.
 12. *quaes . . . erant* : which was, not "were," agreeing with *castra*.—*hoc* : for this reason.
 13. *impedimentis* : the heavier baggage had been left in Gaul.
 14. *optimum* : predicate accusative with *duxerunt*, neuter to agree with *prohibere* and *producere*; *factu* : W. 655 ; B. 340. 2 ; A. 303. R ; H. 635.
 15. *frumento, commeatu, reditu* : ablatives of separation.—*rem . . . producere* : to prolong the campaign.
 16. *his . . . interclusis* : ablatives absolute, equivalent to conditional clauses.
 19. *ex castris* : i. e. from the Roman camp where they had gathered about Caesar.—*suos* : their followers.

CHAPTER 81

21. *cognoverat* : knew, not "had known" ; B. 262. A ; A. 279. c ; H. 299. 2.
 22. *ex eventu navium* : from the fate of his ships.—*ex eo* : from the circumstance.
 23. *suspicabatur* : was beginning to suspect.
 24. *ad omnes casus* : for any emergency.
 26. *quaes . . . naves, earum* : translate as if it were *earum navium quae*.
 27. *aere* : used to sheathe the beaks of galleys and for the bolts, etc., of all the vessels.
 28. *ad eas res* : for that purpose.

PAGE 100

1. *reliquis*: sc. *navibus*.—2. *satis commode*: with tolerable comfort.

CHAPTER 32

5. *cum*: causal.—**hominum**: the natives.

6. *ventitaret*: frequentative verb; W. 273. 2; B. 155. 2; A. 167. 6; H. 364.

7. *in statione*: on guard; usually a cohort guarded each of the four gates.

8. *quam consuetudo ferret*: than usual.

9. *in ea parte*: in that direction.

10. *id quod erat*: as the fact was.—*novi*: connect with *consili*; partitive genitive.

11. *initium*: sc. *esse*.—**cohortes**: of the 10th legion; Caesar took with him the four that were guarding the gates, ordered two others to take their places at the gates, and the remaining four to follow him as soon as they could get ready.

13. *armari*: reflexive; W. 442. 3; B. 256. 1; A. 111. a; H. 407. We use the active voice in this way, *to arm*.

15. *paulo longius*: some little distance.—*suos*: the men of the 7th legion.

16. *sustinere*: were holding their own, standing their ground.—*conferta*: crowded together.

19. *una*: only one.—*suspiciati*: supposing.

20. *dispersos, occupatos*: sc. *nostros*, object of *adorti*.

22. *incertis ordinibus*: as their ranks were in disorder.

CHAPTER 33

24. *ex essedis*: an adjective phrase, modifying *pugnae*. These war-chariots were not armed with scythes, like those of the Persians. They were drawn by two horses and carried several fighters (*essedarii*) and a driver (*auriga*). After approaching close to the enemy the fighters leaped out and the driver withdrew a little; if the fighters were hard pressed the chariots drove up and rescued them.

26. *equorum*: subjective genitive; caused by the horses.—*ordines*: of their enemies.

27. *cum se . . . insinuaverunt*: when they have worked their way in among.—*equitum turmas*: we can not be sure whether the Britons or the Romans are intended by this phrase.

PAGE 101

1. illi : the fighters.
2. expeditum : ready, easy.
3. praestant : display.
4. tantum . . . efficiunt : they become so expert.
5. incitatos : at full speed.—sustinere : to check.
6. brevi : in a moment ; sc. tempore or spatio.
7. iugo : this rested on the necks of the horses and held up the pole of the chariot.

CHAPTER 34

9. perturbatis nostris : dative, indirect object of *tulit*.
13. alienum : unfavorable.
14. suo : favorable (to himself).
15. nostris omnibus occupatis : i. e. fortifying their camp and gathering supplies.—qui erant, etc. : i. e. the Britons.
16. discesserunt : i. e. to join the army of defense, or into strong places.
18. quae . . . continerent . . . prohiberent : such as to confine . . . prevent.

CHAPTER 35

26. idem : subject of *fore*, explained by the clause *ut . . . effugerent*.
28. equites . . . xxx : so small a number were of no use in battle, but valuable in pursuit of the routed foe.
29. ante : page 93, lines 28–31.

PAGE 102

2. diutius : very long.
3. ac : but.—tanto spatio : distance may be regarded as degree of difference (ablative) or extent of space (accusative).
4. secuti : sc. nostri, which is the subject of *occiderunt*.—quantum . . . potuerunt : as far as their strength enabled them to run.

CHAPTER 36

10. ante : page 98, lines 3, 4.
11. aequinocti : the equinox is, or is thought to be, a stormy time. Napoleon III puts the return to Gaul on September 11th or 12th, making the whole stay in Britain nearly three weeks.
12. hiemi : stormy weather.—non : put the negative, in translating, with *subiciendum*.
16. capere : to "make," i. e. to reach.

17. **paulo infra**: i. e. to the southwestward. The tide runs west along the French coast while still running east in mid-Channel. We are not told whether the two ships were stranded or reached a harbor.

CHAPTER 37

18. **Quibus**: the two ships last mentioned.—**circiter ccc**: we can not make any inference as to the size of a legion, because there is no reason to suppose the ships were of uniform size, and the largest of them would be apt to be most unmanageable.

19. **castra**: probably P. Sulpicius Rufus's camp at the harbor of Boulogne or Wissant; page 95, line 1.

21. **primo**: adverb.—**non ita**: *not so very*.

22. **circumsteterunt**: sc. *eos*, i. e. the three hundred soldiers.

23. **ponere**: = *deponere, to lay down*.—**orbe facto**: *forming a circle*, so as to face in all directions at once. The officers and the baggage, if there was any, would occupy the center.

24. **ad**: *on hearing, or in answer to*.

CHAPTER 38

4. **eis legionibus**: 7th and 10th.

6. **siccitates**: the plural indicates the condition of several swamps.

7. **quo se reciperent**: *to retreat to*; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

8. **superiore anno**: see Bk. III, chs. 28, 29.

10. **in Menapiorum fines**: see page 94, lines 27–30.

13. **in Belgis . . . hiberna**: the legions would thus be nearer to Britain in the spring, and in the meantime would keep the Belgic Gauls in good order.

16. **neglexerunt**: sc. *obsides mittere*. Thus the tangible results of the invasion were insignificant.

17. **supplicatio**: see note on page 61, line 17. The mind of the Roman public was greatly impressed by Caesar's crossing of the Rhine and of the Channel.

BOOK FIVE—B. C. 54

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, ch. 1–23. Having resolved upon a more effective invasion of Britain, Caesar orders a fleet to be assembled at Portus Itius, where, after quieting disturbances in Illyricum and settling a dispute between rival chiefs of the Treviri, he gathers his troops for the voyage. Dumnorix, the Haeduan, intending to take advantage of Caesar's absence, deserts on the eve of his departure, but is pursued and slain. Landing on the south coast of England, Caesar puts the natives to flight. The narrative is interrupted by an account of the island and its inhabitants. Caesar marches inland in spite of vigorous resistance, receives the submission of many tribes, and then returns to Gaul.

THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX, ch. 24–54. Grain being scarce, Caesar divides his army for the winter. One camp, that of Sabinus and Cotta, is attacked, and by treacherous promises of Ambiorix the Romans are induced to leave it. On the march they are destroyed by the enemy. Quintus Cicero, in command of another detachment, when similarly attacked, defends himself gallantly until he is rescued by Caesar's advance to his relief. The proposed attack on the camp of Labienus is abandoned for the time, but almost all Gaul is stirred up. Later Indutiomarus attacks Labienus, but is defeated and slain. The episodes of this season are the most exciting in the whole narrative of the Gallic War.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 104

1. **L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus**: 54 B. C.; see note to page 2, line 9.—2. **hibernis**: see page 103, line 14.—**Italiām**: i. e. his province of Cisalpine Gaul, called Italy, as opposed to Gaul beyond the Alps; see note to page 7, line 15.—3. **uti . . . aedificandas . . . current**: *that they should have built*; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. b) 2); A. 294 d; H. 622.—5. **Earum**: the new ones, of course.—**modum formamque**: *measurements and plan*.—6. **Ad**: *with a view to*.—7. **humiliores**: lower above the water-line and with less depth of hold.—**nostro mari**: the Mediterranean.—8. **id eo magis**: *all the more on this account*.—9. **minus magnos**: “choppy” seas are characteristic of the Channel.—11. **transportandam**: agrees with the

nearest noun.—*paulo latiores*: sc. *eas fecit*.—12. *actuarias*: *provided with oars*; predicative.—14. *Hispania*: from Spain came the broom plant used to make ropes, and metal for anchors. It was a highly civilized province and friendly to Caesar; see Introduction, page xiii.—15. *conventibus*: see note to page 40, line 18.—*citerioris* = *Cisalpinae*.—*Illyricum*: see note to page 61, line 12.—18. *imperat*: *orders to furnish*.—19. *convenire*: sc. *milites*.—21. *omnibus rationibus*: *in every way*.

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 105

8. *ad exercitum*; Caesar had left the army in Belgium about January 1st, had held the courts in Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, had quelled the disturbances in Illyricum, and was back with the army in May or June after an absence of about five months and having traveled about two thousand miles.—10. *singulari . . . studio*: by the extraordinary zeal of the troops; connect with *instructas (esse)* and *abesse*, as cause.—in: in spite of.—11. *supra*: in ch. I.—13. *neque . . . abesse . . . quin . . . possint*: and were not far from being able; the *quin*-clause is the subject of *abesse*; A. 332. d; H. 595. I.—16. *portum Itium*: see note to page 94, line 26.—17. *cognoverat*: by observation the year before.—18. *milium . . . xxx*: 30 Roman = 27½ English miles.—19. *huic rei*: for this business, i. e. probably, to take care of the port and the ships left there.—*militum*: partitive, with *quod*.—22. *concilia*: assemblies, appointed by Caesar to regulate the affairs of conquered nations.

CHAPTER 3

24. *Haec civitas*: sc. *Treverorum*; see page 55, line 12.—26. *supra*: page 68, line 17.—*demonstravimus*: Caesar as the author speaks in the first person.—duo . . . contendebant: Caesar's regular policy was to foster dissensions among the peoples he wished to subdue, to espouse the cause of one party, and thus get both into his power. The Roman maxim was *divide et impera*.—28. *alter*: the latter.

PAGE 106

2. *neque*: connect with *defecturos*, not with *confirmavit*.—13. *petere*: to ask favors.—*civitati consulere*: have regard for the interests of the state.—15. *Sese*: (saying) that he (Indutiomarus).—18. *imprudentiam*: do not translate "imprudence."—*laberetur*: should fall away, i. e. be led astray.—19. *si Caesar permitteret*: if he came without permission Caesar would naturally treat him as an enemy.

CHAPTER 4

28. *evocaverat*: sc. *Caesar*.

PAGE 107

2. *eius*: *Cingetorigis*.—*intellegebat*: sc. *Caesar*.—*magni interesse*: W. 361, 369. (c); B. 211. 3; A. 252. a; H. 449. 3.—5. *graviter tulit*: *took to heart, was deeply grieved at*.—6. *et qui*: *and although he*; W. 586. 7; B. 283. 3. b); A. 320. e; H. 593. 2.

CHAPTER 5

10. *Meldis*: generally supposed to be the tribe about the modern Meaux, on the Marne (*Matrona*), near its junction with the Seine (*Sequana*); but there are reasons for supposing that another tribe somewhere near the channel coast may be meant.—14. *numero*: ablative of specification.—15. *in se fidem*. *loyalty to himself*.

CHAPTER 6

20. *ante*: Bk. I, ch. 16–20.—23. *Accedebat huc quod*, etc.: *besides this Dumnorix had said*.—25. *graviter ferebant*: the *Haedui* elected annual magistrates (*vergobreti*, page 11, line 29, and note), and would resent such interference by Caesar. We do not know that Caesar ever said anything of the sort to Dumnorix, but see the cases of Commius, Bk. IV, ch. 21; Tasgetius, Bk. V, ch. 25; Cavarinus, Bk. V, ch. 54.—29. *Ille*: Dumnorix.

PAGE 108

1. *navigandi*: *insuetus* is followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative with *ad*; W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 453. 2.—2. *religionibus*: *religious scruples*.—7. *fieri*: infinitive of indirect discourse; *saying is implied in territare*.—10. *fidem . . . interponere*: *gave a promise to the rest* (those not in Caesar's hands); historical infinitive.—11. *ex usu*: *to the interest of*, lit. “of use to.”

CHAPTER 7

14. *Qua re*: the speech of Dumnorix in the council of the *Haedui*.—15. *dignitatis*: *respect*.—18. *quid*: adverbial accusative.—19. *eo loco*: i. e. *Portus Itius*.—20. *Corus*: a northwest wind.—21. *omnis temporis*: *of every season*.—22. *dabat operam*: *was taking pains*.—24. *tempestatem*: see note to page 95, line 4.—26. *impeditis*: *busy, occupied*.

PAGE 109

2. *se absente*: *in his (Caesar's) absence.*—*pro sano*: *like a man in his senses.*—*praesentis*: *sc. Caesaris.*—3. *Ille*: *Dumnorix.*—6. *Illi*: refers to *magnam partem equitatus*.

CHAPTER 8

9. *continenti*: *the mainland, Gaul.*—12. *pro tempore et pro re*: *according to circumstances.*—13. *v legionibus*: *one of these was the 7th; see page 110, line 20.*—14. *ad*: *toward, about.* It was late June or early July.—15. *Africo*: *southwest wind; the name given in Italy is not appropriate on the English Channel.*—17. *longius delatus*: *carried too far, to the northeast, into the North Sea.* Then at the change of the tide the ships were rowed back to the landing-place of the year before, near Dover.—22. *laudanda*: *praiseworthy.*—27. *cum*: *although.*—29. *quae cum . . . tempore*: *of which, counting those of the year before, etc.—more than eight hundred had been seen at once.*—*privatis (navibus)*: *belonging to individuals who accompanied the expedition on a commercial venture, to trade, buy slaves, etc.*

CHAPTER 9

PAGE 110

5. *cohortibus x*: *not one legion, but ten cohorts from different legions, probably two from each of the five mentioned at page 109, line 13.*—6. *tertia vigilia*: *see note to page 8, line 22.*—7. *navibus*: *dative.*—12. *equitatu atque essedis*: *ablative of accompaniment without cum; W. 392; B. 222. 1; A. 248. a. N; H. 474. 2. N. 1. See note on *essedis*, page 100, line 24.*—*flumen*: *this may have been the lesser Stour. Caesar would be approaching it from the east.*—18. *rari*: *in small numbers.*—*propugnabant*: *came out . . . to fight.*—20. *testudine, aggere*: *see Introduction, pages lvii and lv.*—25. *castrorum*: *this camp may have been on Barham Downs.*

CHAPTER 10

28. *aliquantum itineris*: *some distance.*—29. *iam*: *still.*—*extremi*: *the hindmost of the detachment sent out by Caesar.*

PAGE 111

2. *adfictas*: *knocked about.*—5. *concursu*: *collision.*

CHAPTER 11

8. *in itinere resistere*: *to halt.*—10. *coram*: *we should say, with his own eyes.*—12. *fabros*: *many of the soldiers were skilled mechanics.*—13. *Labieno*: *at Portus Itius.*—14. *eis legioni-*

bus : by means of, by the help of those legions. —— **16. subduci** : should be hauled up on shore, the usual practice in ancient times. —— **21. ante** : see page 110, lines 5, 6. —— **22. eodem** : to the place captured from the enemy, as told in the latter part of ch. 9, and from which he had started on hearing of the wreck of his fleet. —— **27. a mari** : i. e. from the place where Caesar had landed.

CHAPTER 12

PAGE 112

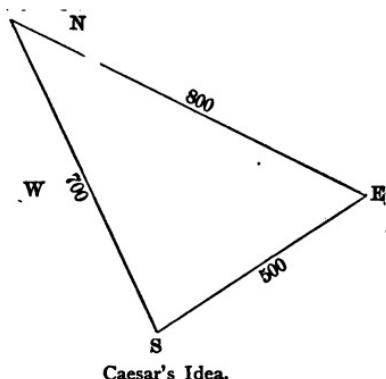
2. memoria proditum (esse) : that there is a tradition ; the subject is *quos natos (esse)*, etc. The Britons were in fact a branch of the Celtic race and akin to the Gauls. See page 43, line 18 ; page 66, line 14, and note. —— **4. isdem nominibus** : e. g. Atrebates, Belgae and Parisii were found in Britain as well as in Gaul. —— **7. Hominum** : population. —— **8. consimilia** : see page 129, line 28 ; page 159, lines 1-3. —— **10. taleis** : bars. —— **12. Nascitur** : occurs, is found. —plumbum album : tin, not "white lead" ; the tin-mines in Cornwall are supposed to have been worked since 900 or 1000 B. C. —mediterraneis : inland. —— **13. ferrum** : this may have been found in Sussex. —— **14. aere . . . importato** : little copper was mined in England until within the last two centuries. —cuiusque : every ; the beech and fir are said to be indigenous in England, and at any rate they are now abundant. —— **16. fas non putant** : the reason is not known ; it may have been connected with the Druidical doctrine of the transmigration of souls. —— **17. animi . . . causa** : for amusement. —— **18. temperatiora** : the climate has less extremes of heat and cold on account of the insular position and the influence of the Gulf Stream.

CHAPTER 18

20. natura : in shape. —— **21. ad Cantium** : on the coast of Kent. —— **22. adpelluntur** : land ; distinguish *adpellere* from *adpellare* (*appellare*). —— **23. inferior** : the southwest angle of the island. —— **24. milia . . . D** : the length of the south coast is really about 325 miles in a straight line. —— **25. Alterum** : sc. *latus*. —**vergit** : faces ; Tacitus, a century and a half later, makes the same mistake, supposing Spain to lie west of Britain ; Tac., *Agricola*, 10. —— **26. qua ex parte** : in this direction. —**dimidio minor** : less by half, i. e. half as large. —— **27. pari . . . atque** : the same as. —**spatio** : ablative of quality. —**transmissus** : genitive ; limits *spatio*. —— **28. In . . . cursu** : halfway across, very inaccurate if *Mona* means Anglesea as it does in Tacitus, less so if it means the Isle of Man.

PAGE 113

1. *obiectae*: off the coast.—2. *non nulli*: perhaps Greek geographers.—*dies*: accusative of duration; of course the statement is not true even for the Shetland Islands.—3. *esse*: lasts.—4. *certis ex aqua mensuris*: by exact measurements made with water-clocks. These instruments were used in camp to time the *vigiliae*. They worked on the same principle as the sand-glass.—*ex aqua*: a phrase attributive to *mensuris*.—6. *illorum*: referring to *non nulli*, line 2.—8. *Tertium*: sc. *latus*.—12. *vicies centum milium*: genitive of measure. The actual coast line is much more than 2,000 miles; straight lines connecting the three outer corners of the island would amount to about 1,500 miles.



CHAPTER 14

13. *his omnibus*: the Britons.—15. *consuetudine*: manner of life. The customs of the Gauls are described in Bk. VI, ch. 11-20.—16. *plerique*: for the most part.—*frumenta*: crops of grain.—17. *vitro*: woad.—18. *caeruleum*: bluish.—24. *habentur*: are counted, considered.—*quo*: ad quos.—*deducta est*: sc. *domum*; *de ductio* was the formal conducting of a bride to her husband's house. The correctness of Caesar's statement in this particular is very much to be doubted.

CHAPTER 15

27. *partibus*: W. 402; B. 228. 1. b); A. 258. f. 1; H. 485.

PAGE 114

1. *illi*: the Britons.—*intermisso spatio*: = *post aliquod tempus*.—2. *munitione castrorum*: the daily practice of the Romans; see

Introduction, pages xlviii–lxi.—3. *in statione*: *on guard*.—5. *primis (cohortibus)*: the first cohort of each legion was composed of picked men.—7. *novo*: *strange*; they were not accustomed to the British chariots.—8. *per medios*: they drove into the middle of the cohorts as described in Bk. IV, ch. 33.

CHAPTER 16

13. *intellectum est*: *it became clear*.—*nostros*: the soldiers of the legions.—15. *possent . . . auderent*: subjunctives because in clauses subordinate to the infinitive *aptos esse*.—18. *illi*: *the enemy*.—*cederent*: *would fall back*; in direct discourse it would be imperfect indicative.—20. *pedibus*: *on foot*.—22. *Accedebat huc ut, etc.*: *Besides this, it was a fact that, etc., it was also true that, etc.*.—24. *stationes dispositas*: *reliefs stationed at intervals*.—*alias alii deinceps exciperent*: *successively replaced one another*.

CHAPTER 17

28. *rari*: *a few at a time*.—29. *proelio*: ablative.

PAGE 115

1. *iii legiones*: cf. page 100, lines 3, 4; this was a very large force to send foraging.—4. *sic . . . absisterent*: *so that they came close to the standards of the legions*.—6. *subsidio*: *the support* (of the legions); what case? W. 385; B. 219. 1; A. 254. b. 1; H. 476. 3.—7. *praecipites*: *headlong*.—10. *Ex*: *after*.—11. *auxilia*: i. e. of the Britons.—12. *summis copiis*: *in full force*.

CHAPTER 18

13. *consilio*: explained in ch. 19.—14. *fines Cassivellauni*: corresponding to Middlesex and Bucks. Caesar crossed the Thames near Kingston. There are many fords on the upper course of the river; he means there was only one in the neighborhood where he crossed.—18. *praefixis*: *planted pointing out* from the bank into the stream.—19. *defixa*: *driven into the bed of the river*. Bede, in his Ecclesiastical History, I, ii, says that remains of these stakes, as thick as a man's thigh, were still visible in his time (673–735 A. D.).—22. *ea . . . eo*: = *tanta . . . tanto*.

CHAPTER 19

27. *contentionis*: *of (continuing) the struggle*.—*amplioribus*: *the greater part of*.—28. *essedariorum*: see Bk. IV, ch. 33.

PAGE 116

8. *Relinquebatur ut*: *the only thing left for Caesar was not to*, etc.
 ——ii. *in labore atque itinere*: *on a toilsome march.*

CHAPTER 20

13. *Trinovantes*: in Essex and Suffolk; their chief town was *Camulodunum*, afterward *Colonia Castrum*, Colchester.—14. *Caesaris fidem secutus*: *seeking Caesar's protection*; i. e. submitting to Caesar.
 ——15. *venerat*: this visit is not elsewhere mentioned.—21. *qui praesit . . . obtineat*: relative clauses of purpose.—24. *ad numerum*: *according to the number demanded.*

CHAPTER 21

27. *Cenimagni*: in Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridgeshire; the other nations are marked on the map, frontispiece.—29. *eo loco*: where he was at the time, a place unknown.—*oppidum Cassivellauni*: probably at or near St. Albans.

PAGE 117

i. *satis magnus*: *quite large.*—3. *cum*: *whenever*; followed by the indicative; B. 288. B. 3; H. 601. 4.—*impeditas . . . munierunt*: *blockaded and fortified.*—4. *incursionis*, etc.: they were strongholds or refuges, not permanent residences. Remains of some still exist in England.—5. *consuerunt*: *they are accustomed.*—7. *duabus ex partibus*: *on two sides.*—9. *non tulerunt*: *could not stand.*
 ii. *multi*: of the Britons.

CHAPTER 22

13. *supra*: page 113, line 14.—16. *castra navalia*: Caesar's camp where his ships were laid up; see page 111, lines 16, 17.—24. *cum*: causal.—25. *repentinos . . . motus*: cf. page 66, lines 22, 23.—27. *exrahi*: *wasted*, in long-drawn, fruitless operations.—28. *vectigalis*: partitive genitive with *quid*. No force was left in Britain, the tribute was never paid, and British independence was virtually unaffected by the invasion. But no doubt a great impression was made upon the minds of the Gauls, seeing that Caesar was no more stopped by the Channel than by the Rhine.—29. *Interdicit atque imperat*: *He strictly forbids.*

CHAPTER 23

PAGE 118

2. *refectas*: see ch. 10 and 11 of this book.—*deductis*: *drawn down* to the water, *launched*, from where they had been beached and sur-

rounded by fortifications ; see page 111, line 17. — 4. **commeatibus** : trips. — 7. **superiore anno** : B. C. 55 ; see Bk. IV, ch. 20–36. — 8. **inanes** : those returning for a second load, and new ones built in Gaul by Labienus. — 11. **locum caperent** : reached their destination. — 14. **aequinoctium suberat** : it was about the middle of September. Caesar had been about two months in Britain ; see Bk. IV, ch. 36, and note on page 102, line 11. — **necessario angustius . . . conlocavit** : was obliged to crowd the soldiers somewhat. — 16. **inita** : at the beginning of ; i. e. about 9 P. M.

CHAPTER 24

18. **Subductis** : see note on *subduci*, page 111, line 16. — **Samarobriva** : chief town of the *Ambiani*, now Amiens. — 19. **frumentum . . . provenerat** : the grain-crop had been short. — 20. **siccitates** : see same word, page 103, line 6, and note. — **aliter ac** : otherwise than ; B. 341. 1. c ; A. 247. d ; H. 516. 3. — 24. **Q. (Tullio) Ciceroni** : brother of *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, the great orator. — 29. **proxime** : in 57 B. C. ; see page 41, lines 18, 19.

PAGE 119

1. **in Eburones** : this camp was at *Atuatuca*, as we learn from page 160, lines 6–9. The *data* for the identification of this place with any modern site, either at *Tongres* or elsewhere, are insufficient. — 6. **inopiae** : *medeor* is followed by either the dative or the accusative ; W. 330 ; B. 187. II ; A. 227. b ; H. 424. 3. — 9. **milibus . . . continebantur** : it is hard to say just what this means ; it is true that a circle of one hundred miles radius included all the camps, also that no camp was more than one hundred miles from the nearest one. See map opposite page 81 of the text. — 10. **quoad** : when is this followed by the subjunctive ? W. 533 ; B. 293. III. 2 ; A. 328 ; H. 603. 2.

CHAPTER 25

15. **in se** : to Caesar. — 16. **singulari . . . usus** : had found his help of the utmost value. — 17. **locum** : rank. — **Tertium . . . regnantem** : in the third year of his reign. — 19. **Ille** : Caesar. — 20. **quod . . . pertinebat** : because many were involved. — 21. **L. Plancum** : see page 118, line 27. — 23. **cognoverit** : sc. *Plancus*. — 24. **comprehensos . . . mittere** : arrest and send to him (Caesar). — 26. **hiberna** : see Introduction, page lii. — **perventum (sc. esse)** : impersonal passive ; that they had come.

CHAPTER 26

28. **Diebus . . . quibus** : About fifteen days after.

PAGE 120

1. **Ambiorige et Catuvolco**: see page 119, line 3.—2. **praesto**
fuisserent: *had met.*—3. **Treveri**: appositive to Indutiomarus.—
10. **aliqui**: for the usual *aliquis*.—11. **de re communi**: *of interest
to both parties.*

CHAPTER 27

15. **ante**: adverb.—16. **quos**: i. e. Arpineius and Junius.—
17. **Sese**, etc.: indirect discourse to the end of the chapter.—18.
ei: *Caesari.*—**debere**: sc. *se* (*Ambiorigem*).—**stipendio**: *tribute.*
—20. **ei**: = *sibi* (*Ambiorigi*).—22. **apud se**: i. e. *Atuatucos.*
—25. **iuris in se**: *authority over him.*—30. **imperitus rerum**:
unsophisticated, ignorant of the world.

PAGE 121

7. **Quibus . . . satisfecerit**: *since he had done for them all that his
duty (to his country) required.*—**habere . . . rationem**: *was considering
the claims.*—10. **conductam**: *hired, to serve for pay.*—11. **Ip-
sorum . . . consilium**: *it was their own (the Romans') business to consider.*
—12. **velintne**: sc. *an non.*—**eductos . . . deducere**: *translate
by two infinitives.*—17. **Quod cum faciat**: *in doing this.*

CHAPTER 28

20. **legatos**: i. e. *Sabinus and Cotta.*—25. **ausam**: sc. *esse.*—
credendum: *credible.*—26. **consilium**: *the council of officers, in-
cluding the centurions "of the first ranks."*—28. **primorum ordi-
num**: cf. page 30, line 29; see Introduction, page xxx.

PAGE 122

2. **sustineri**: *be resisted.*—3. **rem**: *the fact, referring to quod
. . . sustinuerint.*—4. **ultra**: *besides.*—**inlatis**: *inflicted (on the
enemy).*

CHAPTER 29

9. **sero**: *too late.*—**clamitabat**: *vociferated;* his voice was loud,
his manner excited.—11. **proximis**: *the detachment of Sabinus and
Cotta was one of the most remote. Its natural rallying-point was the
nearest of the other detachments. Quintus Cicero and Labienus were
about equally distant.*—13. **neque . . . fuisse capturos neque . . .
venturos**: *conclusion of a condition contrary to fact; W. 617. 2; B. 321.
A, B; A. 337. b; H. 647.*—16. **nostri**: *objective genitive.*—hos-

tem auctorem: *the enemy's advice.*—17. rem: *the actual state of the case.*—18. Arioquisti mortem: we know nothing of the time or manner of Arioquistus's death. No mention has been made of him since the end of Bk. I.—21. sibi persuaderet: *would believe.*—23. in utramque partem: *in either case.*—24. si . . . durius: *if nothing worse happened.*—26. unam . . . salutem: what is hyperbaton? W. 740; B. 350. 11. a; A. 386; H. 751. 5.—28. consilium: subject of *habere*; infinitive in a rhetorical question in indirect discourse; W. 603; B. 315. 2; A. 338; H. 642. 2.

CHAPTER 30

PAGE 123

1. in utramque partem: *on both sides.*—2. Vincite: *have your own way.*—4. is . . . qui . . . terrear: *a man to be frightened*; W. 588; B. 283. 2; A. 320; H. 591. 2.—5. ex vobis: equivalent to a partitive genitive.—6. Hi: *the soldiers.*—gravius quid: *anything serious*; *quid* rather than *aliquid*, because the sentence is introduced by *si*.

CHAPTER 31

11. Consurgitur: *they rise.*—comprehendunt: *(the officers) take them by the hand.*—12. rem: *their business, their task.*—17. dat . . . manus: *yields.*—18. Pronuntiatur: *notice is given.*—19. sua . . . circumspiceret: *was examining his possessions.*—21. instrumento: *furniture.*—24. ut quibus esset persuasum: *as men convinced*; a clause of characteristic.—26. longissimo agmine: this long straggling line of march was very dangerous in the presence of an enemy. Sabinus's conduct on this occasion was unbusiness-like, yet he had done good service against the *Venelli*; see Bk. III, ch. 17–19. We can not help suspecting that Cotta was subordinated to him by Caesar. A divided command would seem a worse error than making the better officer inferior in authority.

CHAPTER 32

PAGE 124

1. bipertito: *at two places*; lit. *in two divisions.*—a milibus . . . duobus: *about two miles away* (from the camp).—3. se . . . demississet: *had descended.*—6. nostris: connect with *iniquissimo*.

CHAPTER 33

8. qui . . . providisset: W. 586. 4, 7; B. 283. 3. a), b); A. 320. e; H. 592, 593. 2.—9. trepidare, etc.: historical infinitives.—10. ut: *in such a way that.*—omnia: *all resources*; subject of *deficere*; *eum* is its object.—11. quod: = *id quod, id* referring to the clause

omnia deficere.—in *ipso negotio*: *after a crisis has arrived.*—**13.** *qui cogitasset*: cf. *qui . . . providisset*, line 8.—**14.** *auctor*: *in favor of*, lit. “adviser.”—**18.** *per se*: *in person.*—**19.** *obire*: *attend to.*—**20.** *possent, iusserunt*: sc. *Sabinus et Cotta.*—**21.** *relinquerent, consisterent*: sc. *milites.*—in *orbem*: see Introduction, page xlviij.—**23.** *cecidit*: not *cecidit*.—*militibus*: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. 1. N; A. 235; H. 425. 4. N.—**25.** *non sine*: = *cum*; *litotes*; W. 740; B. 375. 1; A. 386; H. 752. 8.—**27.** *quaeque*: -*que* connects *discederent* with *properaret*, line 29; the latter is singular to agree with *quisque*, the subject of *haberet*.—**29.** *fletu*: not necessarily a sign of weakness. South Europeans express feelings which Anglo-Saxon dignity conceals.

CHAPTER 34

PAGE 125

1. *consilium*: *cunning.*—**5.** *existimarent*: for *existimare* of direct discourse.—**14.** *se*: the object of *recipientes*, which agrees with *nostros* understood, object of *insequantur*.

CHAPTER 35

15. *eis*: i. e. *Gallis.*—**16.** *cum . . . excesserat*: a temporal clause expressing repetition of the action, “iterative”; W. 532. 2; B. 288. 3; A. 322, 5th example; H. 601. 4.—**17.** *refugiebant*: imperfect for a repeated action.—*eam partem nudari*, etc.: as each cohort charged, it left a vacant place in the main body (*orbis*), and its own flanks were, of course, exposed to the enemy when it left its supports.—**18.** *ab latere aperto*: i. e. the right flank, the shields being carried on the left arms; in other senses both flanks were equally exposed, so far as we can tell.—**21.** *proximi*: the enemy on the flanks of the cohort in question.—**24.** *conflictati*: *though harassed.*—**26.** *horam octavam*: see note to page 18, line 12.—**28.** *Balventio*: dative of reference; probably an *evocatus*, for which and for *primum pilum* see Introduction, pages xxxvii and xxix.—**29.** *auctoritatis*: *influence.*

PAGE 126

1. *eiudem ordinis*: i. e. *primus pilus.*—**4.** *in adversum os*: *right in the face.*

CHAPTER 36

7. *Cn. Pompeium*: probably the father of the historian *Pompeius Trogus*.—**8.** *Si . . . licere*: conditional sentence in indirect discourse; W. 613; B. 319. A, B; 314; A. 337; H. 646.—**9.** *impe-*

trari posse: that the request might be obtained. — 10. *quod . . . pertineat: so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned.* — *ipsi: Titurio Sabino.* — 11. *nocitumiri: future passive infinitive.* — *interponere: he pledged.* — 12. *Ille: Sabinus.* — *communicat: proposes.* — 14. *sua: their own, Sabinus's and Cotta's.*

CHAPTER 37

17. *quos tribunos: = eos tribunos . . . quos.* — *in praesentia: at the time.* — 19. *Ambiorigem: accusative with propius, same construction as with prope; W. 242; B. 141. 3; A. 234. e; H. 420. 5.* — 24. *conclamant, tollunt: sc. hostes.* — 28. *cum . . . premeretur: concessive.*

PAGE 127

2. *Illi: the Romans in the camp.* — 3. *ad unum: to a man, every one.* No other disaster comparable with this occurred during the whole war. Fifteen cohorts, probably about 5,400 men, perished. Suetonius, in his Life of Caesar, ch. 67, tells how Caesar vowed not to cut his hair or beard until he had taken vengeance. See Bk. VI, ch. 43. — 5. *ad T. Labienum: among the Remi on the borders of the Treveri, probably about sixty miles to the south; see page 118, lines 25, 26; see map opposite page 81.*

CHAPTER 38

9. *noctem . . . diem: i. e. one night and one day.* — 12. *sui: W. 642; B. 339. 5; A. 298. a; H. 626. 3.* — 13. *Romanos: object of ulciscendi.* — 14. *legatos: Sabinus and Cotta.* — 15. *nihil esse negoti: that it would be no trouble.* — 16. *oppressam . . . interfici: to overpower and kill;* the infinitive with its subject accusative *legionem* is the subject of *nihil esse negoti.* — *Cicerone: see page 118, line 24.*

CHAPTER 39

19. *Ceutrones, etc.: all near neighbors of the Nervii on the east.* — 21. *eorum: i. e. Nerviorum.* — 22. *de improviso: of a sudden, unexpectedly.*

PAGE 128

1. *vallum: the soldiers stood on the embankment, vallum, behind the palisades, valli.* — *is dies sustentatur: = eum diem sustentant; they held out during that day.*

CHAPTER 40

5. *litterae: here letters, usually a letter.* — 6. *pertulissent: as object, sc. eas (litteras); as subject, nuntii.* — 9. *admodum: fully,*

quite.—**cxx**: the camp of one legion normally measured 4,600 feet in circumference; this would make less than forty feet from tower to tower, a distance easily commanded by missiles thrown by hand.—**excitantur**: *were built up.*—**14. reliquis deinceps diebus**: *on the succeeding days.*—**15. ad laborem intermittitur**: *their toil was suspended.*—**18. praeustae**: *charred at the ends* (to harden them); they were heavy pointed stakes hurled by engines (*tormenta*).—**muralium pilorum**: heavy pikes to be hurled down from the height of walls or embankments.—**19. contabulantur**: *are floored over.*—**pinnae**: *wooden battlements*, see Introduction, page xlix.—**20. loricae ex cratibus**: *breastworks of wickerwork*, interwoven branches; ablative of material; B. 353. 5. N; A. 244. e; H. 467.—**cum . . . esset**: concessive.—**21. valetudine**: ablative of quality.—**23. sibi parcere**: *to take care of himself.*

CHAPTER 41

- 25. sermonis**: *for an interview.*—**26. potestate**: *opportunity.*
—29. reliquorum: sc. *legatorum*.

PAGE 129

2. Errare eos; *that they* (Cicero and his men) *were mistaken.*—
3. praesidi: partitive genitive.—**suis rebus**: *their own condition.*—
—4. hoc . . . animo: ablative of quality.—**6. hanc . . . consuetudinem**: *this habit* (of wintering among them).—**illis**: i. e. *Romanis*.—**per se**: *as far as they* (the *Nervii*) *were concerned.*—**7. quascumque in partes**: *in quascumque partes.*—**9. modo**: *only.*—
—11. utantur . . . mittant: *they might employ . . . send*; they would be imperatives in direct discourse.—**12. se**: i. e. *Ciceronem.*—
—eius: i. e. *Caesaris.*

CHAPTER 42

- 14. spe**: i. e. of deceiving Cicero.—**pedum x**: i. e. in height.—
—15. pedum xv: i. e. in breadth at the top; so we say a "ten-foot wall," a "fifteen-foot ditch."—**17. exercitu**: the Roman army.—**nulla . . . copia**: ablative absolute; *as they had no supply.*—
18. quae essent: relative clause of characteristic.—**21. multitudo**: *the (large) number*; yet the *Nervii* were represented in Bk. II, ch. 28, as well-nigh exterminated.—**22. milium passuum iii**: most MSS. have **xv**, which is obviously wrong, but we can not be sure what Caesar really wrote.—**23. turres**: sc. *ambulatoriae*; towers moved on rollers.—
24. testudines: *tortoise-sheds* ("turtlebacks"); see Introduction, pages lvii and lviii.

CHAPTER 43

27. **ferventes** . . . **glandes**, etc.: balls of clay, heated red hot and thrown from slings.—**ex argilla**: ablative of material.—**fervefacta**: either the heads were heated or some burning stuff was attached to them.
 —28. **casas**: *huts*, winter barracks, taking the place of tents, in a permanent camp.—more **Gallico**: see page 112, line 8, and note.

PAGE 130

1. **distulerunt**: sc. ignem: *spread*; the subject is *Hae (casae)*.—**sicuti**: *as if*.—2. **explorata**: *assured*.—3. **agere**: *to move up* (near the rampart).—4. **praesentia animi**: *self-possession*.—**cum**: *although*.—7. **fortunas**: *property*.—9. **tum**: *then especially*.—13. **ut . . . constipaverant**: *as they stood crowded together*.—14. **recessum**: *chance to fall back*.—17. **loco**: in translating connect it with *eo*, not with *quo*.—19. **quorum**: = *sed eorum*.

CHAPTER 44

23. **primis ordinibus**: i. e. they had almost risen to the rank of *primus pilus*; but see Introduction, pages xxix and xxx.—**adpropinquarent**: subjunctive of characteristic.—24. **controversias**: *a rivalry, competition*.—25. **anteferretur**: subjunctive in indirect question.—**de loco**: *for rank, for precedence*.—28. **locum**: *occasion, opportunity*.

PAGE 131

1. **quaeque pars**: = *et in eam partem . . . quae*.—3. **vallo**: ablative of place and means.—4. **Mediocri spatio**: i. e. between Pullo and the enemy.—6. **quo, hunc** (line 7): *the dead Gaul; illum* (line 8): *Pullo*.—9. **Pulloni**: dative of reference, but translate as if it were genitive.—11. **conanti**: *as he (Pullo) was trying*; again a dative of reference.—12. **Succurrit**: this is the third sentence in succession beginning with a verb; emphasis is thus laid on actions, quick and strenuous.—**inimicus**: *his rival*.—17. **in . . . inferiorem concidit**: *he stumbled into a hollow and fell down*.—18. **rursus**: *in turn*.—22. **utrumque versavit**: *gave each a chance*.—23. **uter utri**: *which . . . to the other*.

CHAPTER 45

25. **Quanto**: correlative with *tanto* (line 28); *the more . . . the more*.—27. **res . . . pervenerat**: *the force had dwindled*.—28. **ad Caesarem**: at Samarobriva (Amiens) with Trebonius.—30. **intus**: *inside the camp*.

PAGE 132

1. *a prima*: at the beginning of.—3. *fidem praestiterat*: had shown his loyalty.—4. *litteras*: a letter; not as page 128, line 5.—5. *in iaculo*: the dart may have had a hollow shaft.—6. *versatus*: mingling, going and coming.

CHAPTER 46

8. *hora xi*: one hour before sunset, but we do not know the date exactly.—9. *in Bellovacos*: Crassus is believed to have been at *Montdidier*; see map opposite page 81.—M. *Crassum*: brother of Publius Crassus, who had returned to Rome in 55 B. C.—11. *proficisci*: from the camp of Crassus.—12. *Alterum*: sc. *nuntium*.—14. *si . . . possit . . . veniat*: in direct form *si . . . poteris . . . veni*.—*rei publicae commodo*: consistently with the public interest; *commodo*; W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N, or 248; H. 475. 3, or 473. 3. As usual, more discretion is allowed to Labienus than to any other *legatus*. He was not only the ablest of Caesar's officers, but perhaps held a higher rank (*pro praetore*) than any of the others; see page 15, line 18, and note.—16. *reliquam partem exercitus*: the divisions with Roscius and with Plancus; see page 118, lines 25 and 27, and map opposite page 81.

CHAPTER 47

19. *Hora . . . iii*: half-way from sunrise to noon.—*antecursoribus*: sent ahead by Crassus.—23. *civitatum*: Gallic states.—*litteras publicas*: state papers, such as accounts, despatches, etc.—26. *occurrit*: sc. *Caesari*.

PAGE 133

1. *quos . . . sciret*: since he knew that they, etc.; a relative clause of characteristic expressing cause; W. 586. 4; 587; B. 283. 3. a; A. 320. e; H. 592.—2. *remittit*: i. e. in reply to Caesar's letter to him, page 132, line 14.—*quanto . . . esset*: indirect question.—3. *rem*: i. e. the loss of the army of Sabinus and Cotta.

CHAPTER 48

7. *opinione*: expectation of having.—8. *deiectus*: disappointed.—*reciderat*: he was reduced.—*unum . . . auxilium*: his only reliance.—9. *celeritate*: extraordinary swiftness of movement was Caesar's prime characteristic.—*magnis itineribus*: see Introduction, page xlvi.—14. *Graecis . . . litteris*: Latin written in Greek

characters. Yet all educated Romans knew something of Greek, and some of the more southern Gauls knew the Greek alphabet; see page 20, lines 6, 7; page 150, line 23.—**17.** *amentum*: *the hurling strap*; it perhaps gave the javelin a twisting motion, like that of a bullet fired from a rifle, and on the same principle insured greater accuracy of aim.—**18.** *scribit*: sc. *Caesar*.—**24.** *perlectam*: *after he had himself read it through*.

CHAPTER 49

PAGE 134

2. *Gallum . . . repetit*: *asks again for the Gaul*, or, if the original messenger had not returned, it would mean “asks for another Gaul.”—**supra**: page 132, lines 1-4.—**4.** *faciat*: subjunctive in a substantive clause, object of *admonet*; W. 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331. R. under *f*; H. 565. 4.—**10.** *trans*: connect not with *progressus*, but with *conspicatur*.—**13.** *remittendum (esse) de celeritate*: *that he might slacken his speed*.—**15.** *haec . . . exigua*: both agree with *castra*.—**16.** *hominum milium vii*: *consisting of 7,000 men*; two legions, barely 3,500 to a legion, showing heavy losses in their campaigns; *milium* is a noun, *hominum* is partitive genitive.—**17.** *viarum*: *the streets of this camp*; he made them narrow and so reduced the size of the camp; see Introduction, page li.—**19.** *hostibus*: *with or in the eyes of the enemy*; dative of reference.

CHAPTER 50

22. *ad aquam*: *near the stream in the valley*.—**25.** *suum locum*: *a place favorable to himself*, i. e. the ground sloping upward from the stream to his camp.

PAGE 135

4. *concursari*: impersonal passive.

CHAPTER 51

5. *traducunt*: i. e. over to Caesar's side of the stream.—**7.** *de ductis*: *withdrawn* from the ramparts to increase the appearance of fear.—**12.** *in speciem*: *for appearance' sake*; it was a wall of turf, only one sod thick, looking to the enemy like a solid embankment.—**14.** *ea*: *that way*, i. e. through the gates.—**16.** *eruptione facta*: it was easy for the soldiers, as they ran out, to throw down the thin walls of turf.—**17.** *omnino . . . nemo*: *no one at all*; the emphasis is on *nemo*, placed last.

CHAPTER 52

23. *Institutas*: by Cicero.—24. *producta*: paraded for inspection.—25. *decimum quemque*: *one in ten*.—29. *appellat*: addresses.

PAGE 136

2. *certius*: i. e. as compared with the first account received through Labienus, page 127, lines 4-6; page 133, lines 2-4.—4. *quod*: whereas.—5. *legati*: Sabinus.

CHAPTER 53

10. *per Remos*: *through the country of the Remi*, on whose border lay the camp of Labienus.—12. *abesset*: sc. *Labienus*.—13. *eo*: to Cicero's camp.—*ante mediam noctem*: as it was probably late autumn or early winter, the ninth hour was about 2 P. M., giving about ten hours' interval to midnight—no extraordinary speed in this case. See page 169, lines 21-27, for the Gallic method of sending news rapidly across the country.—16. *Indutiomarus*: see page 120, lines 3, 4; it was he who prompted the attack on Sabinus and Cotta.—20. *Fabium . . . in hiberna*: among the *Morini* (ch. 24); he had gone with Caesar to the relief of Cicero, page 132, lines 24-26.—21. *iii legionibus*: i. e. Cicero's legion and the two which formed the relieving force.—*trinis*: distributive numerals are used with nouns which have no singular.—27. *quid reliqui consili*: it is better to take *reliqui* as agreeing with *consili* than with *Galli*, understood.—30. *quin . . . acciperet*: without his receiving.

PAGE 137

1. *In his*: sc. *nuntiis*; among others.—2. *Roscio*: see page 118, line 25.—4. *sui*: i. e. Roscius.

CHAPTER 54

10. *officio*: *allegiance, obedience*.—13. *frater Moritasgus*: sc. *regnum obtinuerat* or *obtinebat*.—*in Galliam*: accusative because *adventu* is a noun of motion.—19. *senatum*: *council of elders*.—*dicto audientes*: cf. page 28, line 25, and note.—21. *valuit*: its subject is the following infinitive clause.—22. *principes . . . inferendi*: *leaders in making war*.—27. *nobis*: dative of reference or agent.—30. *praeferebantur*: *used to be considered superior*.—*opinionis*: *reputation*.—*deperdidisse*: depends on *dolebant*; B. 331. V; H. 614.

CHAPTER 55

PAGE 138

4. quin . . . mitterent : *without sending*.—8. persuaderi : impersonal passive ; translate as if *civitati* were the subject.—9. cum . . . dicerent : *since, as they said, they had tried*.—Ariovisti bello : ablative of time ; see Bk. I, ch. 30-54.—Tencterorum transitu : see Bk. IV, ch. 1-15.—11. lapsus : *disappointed*.—16. publice privatim : *as states, as individuals*.

CHAPTER 56

18. intellexit : sc. *Indutiomarus*.—19. facinoris : this “crime” was only an attempt to regain their liberty ; cf. a similar sentiment of the author, *bellum sine causa intulissent*, page 98, lines 2, 3.—22. Hoc : nominative ; i. e. *armatum concilium indicere*.—23. quo : *to which*.—24. novissimus : *last, latest*.—27. supra : ch. 3.

PAGE 139

2. *huc* : *to those states* ; on the way he would naturally pass through the country of the *Remi*.

CHAPTER 57

6. castris : ablative of place and means.—7. ne . . . dimitteret : *how not to lose*.—rei bene gerendae : *of gaining an advantage, of a success*.—13. alias . . . alias : adverbs.—16. timoris opinio-nem : *the impression that he was afraid* ; cf. the same stratagem, page 73, lines 1-3 ; page 134, lines 15-19 ; page 135, line 4.

CHAPTER 58

18. in dies : *day by day*, denoting progression.—19. intromis-sis : *brought into his camp* ; Labienus had no cavalry of his own.—20. curaverat : *had caused to be*.—27. ubi visum est : *when they thought best*, lit. “*when it seemed (good)*.”—28. dispersi, dissipi-ti, discedunt : notice the successive words beginning with the same syllable.

PAGE 140

1. praecipit : connect with *unum . . . petant*.—interdicit : connect with *neu quis . . . vulneret*.—5. mora reliquorum : *through the delay caused by following the others* ; *reliquorum* is a subjective genitive ; they caused the delay.—6. occiderint : sc. *Indutiomarum*.—7. Comprobat : *justifies*.—hominis : *his*, as if it were a pronoun.—8. fortuna : *success*.—unum : *him alone*.—9. fluminis : perhaps the *Ourthe*, a tributary of the *Meuse*, perhaps the *Meuse* itself.—13. paulo : connect with *quietiorem*.—habuit : *found*.

BOOK SIX—B. C. 53

There being much restlessness among the tribes of Belgic Gaul, Caesar increases his forces, and reduces the natives to order (ch. 1-8).

SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY, ch. 9-28. Having built a second bridge, Caesar crosses the Rhine again. The Suebi retire into the interior. A detailed account of the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans is inserted here, in the absence of important military movements to be recorded.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST AMBIORIX AND THE EBURONES, ch. 29-44. Returning to Gaul, Caesar devotes himself to vengeance upon the destroyers of the army of Sabinus and Cotta, inviting the coöperation of the Gauls against the Eburones. The Sugambri crossing the Rhine, make an unsuccessful attack upon Cicero at Atuatuca. The year's operations close with the laying waste of the enemy's country.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 141

1. *causis*: the expedition to Britain had been well-nigh fruitless, Dumnonix had deserted and been killed, the army of Sabinus and Cotta had been destroyed. Indutiomarus had led a revolt. The year just past had been such as to encourage the general desire for freedom, which burst out all over Gaul in the great revolt of the following year, the story of which is in Bk. VII.—4. *Cn. Pompeio*: Pompey the Great; he had been consul in 70 and 55 B. C. At this time he was proconsul of Spain, but managed that country by his deputies, while he himself remained at Rome. He had six legions under his command.—*ad urbem*: *near the city* (Rome), but not in it, because, holding an *imperium*, he was forbidden to enter it.—5. *cum . . . remaneret*: since (as Caesar said) *he was remaining*.—*rei publicae causa*: *in the public service*; he had charge of the corn supply (*annona*) at the capital, but his real purpose in remaining there was to watch the political situation and to strengthen his own position.—*quos . . . rogasset*: those whom he when *consul* (in 55 B. C.) had enlisted in *Cisalpine Gaul*, which was Caesar's province.—6. *sacramento*: the military oath of obedience; the soldiers were *asked* if they would be faithful, hence *rogare sacramento*, “to ask by the oath,” means “to enlist.”—*rogasset*: subjunctive by attraction, because subordinate

to *iuberet*.—7. *iuberet*: subjunctive depending on *petit*.—8. *opinionem*: the opinion of the Gauls in regard to the power of Rome.—11. *augeri*: the word does not apply to *quid . . . detrimenti*, but to Caesar's army, which is implied in *maioribus . . . copiis*.—13. *per suos*: sc. *legatos*.—*tribus . . . legionibus*: i. e. thirty cohorts, twice as many as had been lost with Sabinus and Cotta, i. e. the 14th legion and five cohorts not belonging to any legion. Of the three new legions, one, the 1st, was borrowed from Pompey: the other two were the 14th and 15th, the new 14th taking the place of the 14th which had been destroyed; see page 41, line 18, and note. The first was returned to Pompey in 50 B. C., at which time the 15th was also sent to him to serve against the Parthians. Both were used against Caesar in the Civil War, 49–48 B. C.

CHAPTER 2

18. *ut . . . docuimus*: page 140, line 9.—*propinquos*: a son and relatives of Indutiomarus were held by Caesar as hostages at the time of the second invasion of Britain, page 106, line 27.—20. *Germanos sollicitare*: see Bk. I, ch. 31; page 121, lines 10, 11.

PAGE 142

3. *inter se confirmant*: strengthen (the bond) between them.—*ob-sidibus . . . cavent*: guarantee the payment of money by giving hostages.—6. *Cisrhenanis*: i. e. those settled in Gaul.—10. *matrius*: earlier in the season (than usual). He had spent the winter with the army; see page 136, line 23.

CHAPTER 3

12. *proximis*: three at *Samarobriva*, doubtless those of Crassus, Cicero, and Trebonius, and that of Fabius among the *Morini*; see page 136, lines 20–22; page 118, line 23.—19. *ut instituerat*: as his practice was.—22. *postponere*: to make . . . secondary, subordinate.—*videretur*: it seemed (best).—*Lutetiam Parisiorum*: the first mention of Paris in history. It was on the island (La Cité) where the cathedral of Notre-Dame now stands, but was not important till 500 A. D.—24. *civitatem . . . coniunxerant*: had united with the Senonian state, made one out of two—not a very close union, as appears from the next sentence.—25. *consilio*: i. e. the plan of general revolt.—*Hac re*: the revolt of the *Senones*, *Carnutes*, and *Treviri*.—26. *pronuntiata*: at the council at *Lutetia*.

CHAPTER 4

28. *Acco*: see also page 167, line 22; page 168, line 14.—*princeps*: leader.

PAGE 143

1. **Conantibus**: dative.——3. **per**: with the support of, with the intercession of.——4. **in fide**: under the protection.——6. **instans belli . . . esse**: ought to be devoted to the impending war.——8. **Eodem**: probably to *Agedincum*, the chief town of the Senones, now Sens.——9. **Remis**: friendly to Caesar since B. C. 57; see page 42, lines 11-19; page 43, lines 29, 30; page 137, line 24.

CHAPTER 5

12. **totus et mente et animo**: heart and soul.——13. **Cavarium**: see page 137, lines 11-20.——15. **huius**: objective genitive, referring to *Cavarinum*.——20. **perpetuis**: unbroken, continuous.——22. **hospitium**: see note on *hospite*, page 40, line 3.——23. **venisse**: sc. *Ambiorigem*.——**Germanis**: dative of reference.——26. **congredi** := *se coniungere*.——28. **mittit**: sc. *Caesar*.

CHAPTER 6

PAGE 144

4. **pontibus**: there being no bridges over the streams, Caesar had to build them.——8. **hostium . . . numero**: in the category of (i. e. as) enemies.——10. **Commium**: see page 93, line 28.

CHAPTER 7

15. **in eorum finibus**: see page 118, lines 25, 26.——18. **a . . . xv**: 15 miles off.——26. **flumen**: perhaps the *Ourthe*, but we can not be sure.——27. **habebat in animo**: intended.——28. **Augebatur**: sc. *hostibus*.

PAGE 145

1. **in dubium non devocaturum**: that he would not risk.——3. **ut**: as, because.——4. **rebus**: cause.——5. **primis ordinibus**: = centurionibus primorum ordinum.——7. **suspicionem**: impression.——8. **quam . . . consuetudo**: than is usual with the Romans.——11. **in**: on account of.

CHAPTER 8

14. **cum**: this is a case of “*cum inversum*”; W. 537; B. 288. 2; A. 325. b; H. 600. I. 1; the verb which it introduces is *dubitant* (line 20).——**inter se**: each other.——15. **longum esse**: (saying that) it would be tedious.——26. **nobis**: i. e. to Labienus.——27. **imperator**: the commander-in-chief, Caesar; distinguish *dux* and *imperator*; see page 56, line 14; page 71, line 15; page 207, lines 6-8.——28. **signa . . . converti**: to face about.——29. **aciem derigi**: to form battle-line.——30. **dimissis**: detaching.

PAGE 146

7. *recepit*: *recovered* (from rebellion).—9. *propinqui Indutio-mari*: see page 141, line 18.—12. *demonstravimus*: page 105, line 28; page 106, line 4; page 138, lines 26-29.

CHAPTER 9

14. *Caesar*, etc.: he resumes the narrative of ch. 6; ch. 7 and 8 are parenthetic, concerning Labienus's operations.—15. *causis*: regarding the reasons for the first expedition see Bk. IV, ch. 16.—17. *Ambiorix*: see page 127, line 3 and note; Bk. VI, ch. 29, 30, 33; page 166, lines 21-25.—19. *pontem*: this second bridge was not far from the first one, described in Bk. IV, ch. 17. In 1896 a line of ancient piles was discovered below Urmitz, which lies about half-way between Coblenz and Andernach. Extensive remains of apparently Roman earthworks, opposite the line of piles, on the left bank, were discovered in 1898, and excavated in that and the following year. These may be the remains of the fortified camp built by Caesar to defend his bridge, as implied in the words: *Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto*, lines 21, 22.—Nota... ratione: *inasmuch as the plan was familiar and had been already followed*; referring to the first bridge.—20. *studio*: *enthusiasm*.—29. *obsi-dum*: partitive genitive with *amplius*.

CHAPTER 10

PAGE 147

3. *fit*: sc. *Caesar*.—*Ubiis*: see Bk. IV, ch. 3.—*Suebos*: see Bk. IV, ch. 1.—4. *in unum locum*, etc.: as at page 92, line 14.—5. *denuntiare*: cf. page 137, line 9.—12. *quaeque*: *-que* connects *mittant* and *cognoscant*; *quae* is the subject of *gerantur*.—19. *Bacenis*: between the *Cherusci* and the *Suebi*; a great forest region stretching across central Germany eastward from Thuringia.—22. *ini-tium*: i. e. the western end.

CHAPTER 11

24. *alienum*: *inappropriate*.—26. *proponere*: *to state*. The moral effect of this expedition was the only one. Some think that this valuable *excursus* was intended to divert attention from the lack of military result.

PAGE 148

1. *eorum*: sc. *Gallorum*.—2. *quorum*: does not refer to *eorum*.—*summa ... rerum*: *the general conduct of affairs*.—3. *redeat*: characteristic subjunctive.—*Id ... institutum videtur*: *the custom appears to have been established*.—5. *auxili*: genitive with *eget*.—

quisque: i. e. each leader or chieftain.—**9. divisae sunt**: see note on *est divisa*, page 1, line 1.

CHAPTER 12

11. Hi: *Sequani*; earlier the Arverni were the leading Gallic nation; see page 21, line 21.—**13. clientelae**: *dependent states*.—**Germanos . . . adiunxerant**; see Bk. I, ch. 31, 32.—**15. iacturis**: *sacrifices, cost*.—**20. publice**: *as a state*.—**24. infecta re**: *without accomplishing his purpose*.—**30. uti**: *enjoyed*.

PAGE 149

2. quos . . . intellegebatur: *and because it was understood that they (the Remi) enjoyed as much of Caesar's favor (as the Haedui)*.

CHAPTER 13

10. aliquo . . . numero: *of any account*, we say of insignificant persons: “They do not count.”—**13. aere alieno**: *debt* (lit. “another's money”).—**16. in**: *over*.—**17. de**: *of*.—**druidum**: predicate genitive limiting *alterum (genus)*.—**18. divinis**: *religious*.—**intersunt**: *preside over*.—**19. procurant**: *attend to*, not “procure.”—**religiones interpretantur**: *explain rites and ceremonies*.—**20. disciplinae**: = *discendi*.—**21. hi**: *the Druids*.—**eos**: sc. *Gallos*.—**23. quod**: *indefinite adjective pronoun*.—**24. idem**: *nominative plural; likewise, also*.—**26. sacrificiis interdicunt**: *this is religious excommunication, analogous to the Roman interdictio aqua et igni, fire and water representing all the necessities of human life*.

PAGE 150

2. honos: = *honor*; earlier form.—**4. Hoc mortuo**: *when he dies*.—**9. loco consecrato**: *said to have been a grove, near Dreux*.—**11. Disciplina**: *system*.—**12. reperta, translata**: *Druidism, then declining in Gaul, was still flourishing unimpaired in Britain. This fact explains why it was thought to have originated in the latter country*.—**13. eam rem**: *that subject*.

CHAPTER 14

16. pendunt: *pay*, lit. “weigh.”—**20. versuum**: *lines*. Verse is more easily committed to memory than prose.—**22. litteris**: *to writing*.—**23. Graecis litteris**: *Greek characters, Gallic words*; cf. page 20, line 6; page 133, line 14.—**25. quod . . . velint**: *because (as they say) they do not wish, etc.*—**28. quod**: = *id quod*.—**30. animas**: *the soul*.

PAGE 151

1. *ab aliis*, etc.: the doctrine of transmigration of souls, or *metempsychosis*.—*hoc*: *this belief*.—4. *terrarium*: = *orbis terrarum*, *the earth*.—*rerum natura*: *nature*.

CHAPTER 15

7. *Alterum*: cf. page 149, lines 17, 18.—*cum*: *whenever*.—8. *incidit*: *breaks out*.—11. *genere*: *birth, family, social position*.—12. *plurimos*: Orgetorix had 10,000 retainers.—13. *Hanc . . . neverunt*: *this is the only kind of influence and power that they know*.

CHAPTER 16

15. *dedita*: *devoted*.—17. *versantur*: *are involved*.—18. *pro*: *as*.—20. *pro . . . vita . . . reddatur*: cf. Gen. ix, 6. —22. *habent instituta*: = *instituerunt*.—23. *simulacra*: large hollow images of wickerwork.—25. *quibus*: the antecedent is *simulacra*. Cruelty is common in an imperfect state of civilization. It is not surprising to find it among the Gauls; for instances, see page 138, lines 24–26; page 153, lines 6–12; page 170, lines 26–30; page 193, line 1; page 208, line 5.

CHAPTER 17

PAGE 152

1. *Mercurium*: like other Latin writers, Caesar gives to the foreign gods the names of Roman ones; thus: Mercury = Teutates; Apollo = Belenus; Mars = Esus (Hesus); Jupiter = Taranis, "Thunderer."—3. *viarum atque itinerum ducem*: if any distinction is intended, the meaning is that Mercury points out the roads (*viae*) and accompanies those who make journeys (*itinera*).—11. *ceperint*: informal indirect discourse after *devovent*; perfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative of direct discourse.—16. *posita*: *set aside, set apart*, as offerings.

CHAPTER 18

19. *patre*: a title here given to *Dis (Pluto)* as the supposed ancestor of the Gauls.—20. *Ob eam causam*: i. e. because *Dis* was the god of the underworld of darkness.—21. *spatia*: *periods*.—*numero . . . noctium*: cf. Tac. *Germania*, 11. We have "sennight," "fort-night," "twelfth-night."—22. *finiunt*: = *definiunt*. It is easier for primitive peoples to measure time by the moon than by the sun.—24. *ab reliquis*: *from other nations*.—27. *adsistere*: *to appear*.—28. *ducunt*: *consider*.

CHAPTER 19

PAGE 153

1. *Viri*: husbands.—*pecunias*: property.—*nomine*: by way of.
 ——3. *communicant*: they put along with.—4. *ratio*: account.
 ——*fructus*: income.—*uter*: whichever; husband or wife.—5.
vita superavit: survives; *vita*: ablative of specification.—*ad eum*:
 to him or her.—6. *in*: over.—8. *inlustriore loco natus*: of
 high rank.—9. *Si res . . . venit*: if suspicion arises (in regard
 to the cause of his death).—10. *uxoribus*: the higher classes were
 apparently polygamous.—in servilem modum: the Romans tortured
 slaves on the death of their masters under suspicious circumstances. *Dig.*
xxiv, v.—12. *excruciatas interficiunt*: they torture and kill.—
pro cultu: considering the degree of civilization.—14. *cordi*: W.
 342, 345; B. 191. 2. a); A. 233. a; H. 433.—15. *supra hanc*
memoriam: before our time; *hanc* means "now existing."—16.
iustis: complete.

CHAPTER 20

18. *Quae*: = *eae . . . quae*.—*rem publicam*: public affairs.
 ——20. *de re publica*: of interest to the state.—*rumore ac fama*:
 the former is more vague than the latter, like *rumor* and *report*; cf. page
 84, line 12, and page 127, line 23.—25. *quae visa sunt*: sc. *occulta*
tanda; which they have thought best to conceal.—*ex usu*: cf. page 20,
 line 22, and note.—26. *De re publica*: about politics.—*per*: at.

CHAPTER 21

29. *druides*: yet they had a regular priesthood.

PAGE 154

1. *Deorum*: the religion of the Germans was a sort of nature worship,
 but not quite so simple as this account makes it; see Tac. *Germania*, 9.
 Notice what is said of one of their superstitions, page 38, lines 4-9.—
 3. *Vulcanum*: i. e. "Fire."—ne . . . *acceperunt*: they have not even
 heard of.—4. *venationibus*: hunting expeditions; cf. page 81, line
 18.—5. *in . . . militaris*: in warlike pursuits.—6. *impuberes*:
 chaste, unmarried. The Italians come to physical maturity earlier than
 northern races.—7. *staturam*: the Germans were much larger than
 the Italians; see page 27, lines 26, 27; page 59, lines 2, 3.

CHAPTER 22

15. *in*: of.—17. *in annos singulos*: year by year.—*gentibus*
cognitionibusque: families and clans.—19. *agri*: depends on
quantum.—20. *alio*: to another place.—21. *consuetudine*:

residence.—22. **cultura**: W. 395; B. 218. 5; A. 252. c; H. 478. 4.
—**latos fines**: the development of large estates (*latifundia*) in Italy had even before Caesar's time begun to ruin the country by driving out the small proprietors.—24. **accuratius**: *with too much care.*—
26. **animi aequitate**: *contentment.*

CHAPTER 23

29. **maxima laus**, etc.: cf. page 82, lines 23-26.—30. **proprium**: *a proof.*

PAGE 155

1. *neque quemquam*: B. 341. 2. d.—4. **bellum . . . inlatum defendit**: *repels an invasion.*—5. **praesint**: cf. Tac. *Germ.* 12; military power is by election, perhaps by lot, from the number of existing magistrates.—7. **communis**: i. e. over a whole nation.—**regionum, pagorum**: *districts, villages.*—10. **Latrocinia**: this view is common to all barbarous peoples, who do not distinguish brigandage from regular war.—**habent**: *involve.*—14. **profiteantur**: *that those . . . are to give in their names.*—16. **ex his**: i. e. of those who promise to follow.—18. **his**: dative with a verb of "taking away." These two chapters (22 and 23), together with Tacitus's *Germania*, are the chief ancient sources of information about the institutions of Teutonic society.

CHAPTER 24

25. **trans Rhenum**: into Germany; cf. page 81, line 4.—
27. **Hercyniam silvam**: a great forest region stretching eastward through South Germany, north of the Danube Valley.—28. **Graecis**: we do not know which ones.—**video**: i. e. Caesar read the statements in books.—29. **Volcae Tectosages**: the Volcae were divided into *Arecomici* and *Tectosages*, both living near the eastern end of the Pyrenees. Caesar thinks that those of this nation who lived in Germany had migrated from Gaul.—31. **sese continet**: *has maintained itself.*

PAGE 156

1. **opinionem**: *reputation for.*—3. **provinciarum**: Cisalpine Gaul and the "Province" in Transalpine Gaul.—7. **ipsi**: *Galli.*—**illis**: *Germanis*; cf. Tac. *Agricola*, II, *Plus tamen ferociae Britanni*, etc.

CHAPTER 25

8. **supra**: in the last chapter.—**demonstrata**: *mentioned.*—
9. **latitudo**: from south to north.—**expedito**: *for a rapid traveler.* We might allow 25 miles or more a day.—10. **mensuras**, etc.: they

had no system of measures of distance, but reckoned by time ; the modern Germans, in walking, count by hours rather than by miles.—**nove-**
runt : sc. *Germani*.—**Oritur** : sc. *silva Hercynia* ; it begins.—**12.**
recta . . . regione : along the line of.—**13.** **Dacorum** : in what is
now Hungary.—**sinistrorsus** : to the left ; the river, in fact, turns to
the right, southward.—**diversis . . . regionibus** : in a different direc-
tion from the river.—**16.** **huius** : of this part of (i. e. the western
part).—**initium** : i. e. the eastern edge.—**19.** **quae** : such as ; the
verb is in the subjunctive of characteristic.

CHAPTER 26

22. **bos**, etc. : perhaps the “reindeer,” but Caesar had evidently not seen it, and the description is very wrong. One horn only would appear in profile.—**25.** **sicut** : as it were.—**palmae** : the hand with fingers extended ; *palmae ramique* ; hendiadys ; branches like the fingers of the extended hand.—**Eadem . . . natura**, etc. : the female deer, in fact, has shorter horns than the male.

CHAPTER 27

29. **capris** : = *figurae caprarum*.—**varietas pellium** : mottled hide.

PAGE 157

1. **antecedunt** : surpass (the reindeer).—**mutilae** : the horns of the elk are broad and blunt.—**2.** **sine nodis et articulis** : without joints ; an absurd mistake ; the same error was long current about the legs of the elephant.—**quietis causa** : in order to sleep.—**5.** **ad . . . adplicant** : they lean against.—**8.** **subruunt** : undermine.—**9.** **accidunt** : cut partly through.—**ut . . . relinquatur** : so that they keep every appearance of standing (firm).

CHAPTER 28

13. **uri** : *Urochs* in German, a kind of bison, now extinct, of which skeletons are found.—**18.** **se . . . durant** : harden (i. e. train) themselves.—**20.** **quae sint** : purpose ; to be.—**22.** **parvuli** : when very young.—**24.** **ab labris** : around the rim, at the large end.—**26.** **utuntur** : sc. his from *Haec* (line 24). The Germans were hard drinkers, chiefly of beer ; see page 82, line 20 ; Tac. *Germania*, 22, 23.

CHAPTER 29

27. **Caesar**, etc. : the narrative broken off at the end of Chapter 10 is now resumed.—**29.** **supra** : page 81, lines 15–18 ; page 154, line 14.—**demonstravimus** : editorial “we,” Caesar as the author speaking in the first person ; see page 41, line 2, and note.

PAGE 158

2. **auxilia**: forces coming to help rebellious Gauls.——5. **in extremo ponte**: *on the end of the bridge*, in the river.——10. **frumenta**: why plural? It was now about the end of July or beginning of August.——13. **milibus**: sc. *passuum*.——14. **D**: much exaggerated, or perhaps a copyist's error.——15. **si**: *to see whether*.——**celeritate**: Caesar's prime characteristic.——18. **subsequi**: present for immediate future.

CHAPTER 30

22. **quo in loco**: = *ad eum locum in quo*.——25. **ipsum**: *Ambiorigem*.——**incideret**: sc. *Basilus*.——26. **eius adventus**: *his (Basilus's) actual arrival*.——27. **magnae fuit fortunae**: predicate possessive genitive; *it was (a matter) of the greatest good luck*; *sic . . . fuit* corresponds to *ut . . . accidit* (line 24). The clauses *ut . . . incideret . . . videretur* are subjects of *accidit*; the clause *ipsum effugere* of *fortunae fuit*.——28. **habebat**: sc. *Ambiorix*.——29. **ipsum**: *Ambiorigem*.

PAGE 159

3. **propinquitates**: abstract noun in the plural; *places near*.

CHAPTER 31

9. **iudicio**: *deliberately*.——10. **tempore exclusus**: *prevented by (lack of) time*.——13. **sibi . . . consulere**: *to look out for himself*.——15. **continentes**: *unbroken in extent*.——18. **alienissimis**: *perfect strangers*.——21. **omnibus . . . Ambiorigem**: *invoking all manner of curses on the head of Ambiorix*.

CHAPTER 32

24. **Segni Condrusique**: west of the Rhine; see map opposite page 81.——26. **ne . . . duceret**: *not to treat them*.——28. **unam**: *one and the same*; predicate adjective.

PAGE 160

3. **fecissent . . . violaturum**: for *feceritis . . . violabo* of direct discourse.——6. **Atuatuacam**: see note to page 119, line 1.——**castelli**: *a stronghold, a fortress of refuge*; this may mean that *Atuatuca* is a German word meaning the same as the Latin *castellum*.——10. **munitio- nes**: the camp of Cotta and Sabinus, constructed the year before, Bk. V, ch. 26-37, page 164, lines 5-7.——11. **sublevaret**: sc. *Caesar*.——12. **proxime conscriptas**: see page 141, lines 13-17, and note to line 13.

CHAPTER 33

16. legionibus tribus: one legion was left at *Atuatuca* with Cicero, three each went with Labienus, Trebonius, and Caesar. This accounts for all ten. Hence the twelve cohorts left to guard the Rhine bridge (ch. 29) must have been withdrawn, or the legions must have been incomplete, or those cohorts must have been auxiliary or supernumerary troops. The first alternative seems less likely in view of what is said at page 162, lines 11-14.—**21. Scaldim**: the *Scheldt* does not now flow into the Meuse (Maas); the *Sambre* does; hence though the MSS. all say *Scaldim*, many editors think Caesar made a mistake and therefore write *Sabim*. It appears, however, that a few centuries ago there was a connection between the *Scheldt* and the Old Meuse (Oude Maas) near the island of Tholen.—**24. quam ad diem**: feminine, because it means *date* rather than "day"; yet we find *quem ad diem*, page 162, line 2.—**25. in praesidio**: at *Atuatuca*.—**deberi**: *was due*; i. e. the legion had been supplied up to that time, when a new supply would have to be served out.—**26. rei publicae commodo**: *consistently with the public interests*; cf. page 25, line 27; page 132, line 15.

CHAPTER 34

1. supra: page 159, line 9.—**manus . . . nulla**, etc.: i. e. among the Gauls.—**4. valles**: nominative singular.—**abdita**: *secluded*.—**6. vicinitatibus**: = *vicinis*; *neighbors*.—**7. summa**: *the whole*.—**10. ex parte**: *to some extent*.—**13. confertos**: *in masses*.—**14. sceleratorum**: Caesar calls them villains because they had treacherously destroyed the fifteen cohorts of Cotta and Sabinus.—**20. Ut . . . difficultatibus**: *considering the nature of the difficulties*.—**21. ut potius**, etc.: *so as rather to do less damage to the enemy . . . than to cause any harm to his own soldiers while trying to hurt the enemy*.

CHAPTER 35

2. dies . . . vii: see page 160, lines 23, 24.—**3. reverti**: i. e. to *Atuatuca*; see page 160, line 6.—**7. adferret**: subjunctive of characteristic.—**11. supra docuimus**: page 90, lines 1-5.—**13. pons, praesidium**: see page 146, lines 18-23; page 158, lines 2-9.—**18. latrocinii**: see page 155, line 10, and note.—**22. tenuem**: *trifling*.—**25. praesidi tantum**: *so small a garrison*; *tantum* means "only so much."—**26. cingi possit**: *can be manned*.—**29. duce**: *as a guide*, predicate appositive to *eodem*.

CHAPTER 36

PAGE 163

1. **Cicero**: in autumn of year before, 54 B. c., Q. Cicero had successfully withstood the furious siege of his camp by the Nervii; Bk. V, ch. 38-52.—*qui . . . continuisset*: W. 586. 7; B. 283. 3. *b*; A. 320. *e*; H. 593. 2.—5. *progressum*; sc. *eum esse*.—6. *audiebat*: sc. *Cicero*.—7. *illius*: *Ciceronis*.—8. *siquidem*: *inasmuch as*.—10. *quo . . . posset*: *by which harm could be suffered in (a march of only) three miles*.—13. *quas inter*: = *inter quas*.—*unus*: *only one*.—14. *ex legionibus*: the nine legions on the expeditions already spoken of.—15. *hoc spatio*: i. e. since Caesar's departure.—16. *sub vexillo*: lit. *under a flag*, i. e. in one body or detachment; see Introduction, page xlv.—18. *facta potestate*: *taking advantage of the chance, or getting permission*.

CHAPTER 37

21. *ab*: *on the side of*.—*decumana porta*: see Introduction, page li; which side of the camp?—22. *objectis . . . silvis*: *as they were screened by the woods*; ablative absolute. It was a bad plan to encamp near a forest; perhaps it was unavoidable in this case.—23. *usque eo*: *so near*.—*sub vallo*: i. e. outside. The traders and camp followers were outside the fortifications.—*tenderent*: *were encamped*.—26. *Circumfunduptur*: *swarmed around*.—27. *si*: *(to see) whether*.—29. *locus ipse*: probably it was a hill.

PAGE 164

2. *quo . . . ferantur*: *whither to advance*.—*quam . . . conveniat*: *where to rally*.—6. *religiones*: *superstitions*.—*calamitatem*: see Bk. V, ch. 26-37.—7. *occiderint*: subjunctive in informal indirect discourse giving the thought of the soldiers.—8. *barbaris*: translate as if genitive.

CHAPTER 38

12. **Baculus**: the reader's attention is directed to this hero and nothing is said about Cicero, with whom Caesar deals very leniently in this story. He had done the fullest justice to Cicero's gallantry of the year before.—13. *primum pilum . . . duxerat*: *had been first centurion of a legion*; see Introduction, page xxix.—*apud*: *under, in the army of*.—14. *proeliis*: *in (telling of) . . . battles*.—19. *in statione*: *on duty*.—20. *proelium sustinent*: *keep up the fight*.—*Relinquit animus*: i. e. he faints.

CHAPTER 39

27. *Hic . . . nulla munitio*: they were three miles from camp; see page 163, lines 11, 12.—28. *modo*: lately; see page 141, lines 13, 14; page 160, lines 11–15.—*usus*: genitive with *imperiti*.

PAGE 165

2. *quin* := *qui non*; *as not to be*, negative result.—5. *paucitatem*: i. e. 5 cohorts and 300 convalescent veteran legionaries. See page 163, lines 12 and 16.

CHAPTER 40

7. *in signa manipulosque*: *into the ranks of the cohorts and companies* (for safety).—10. *quoniam . . . sint*: informal indirect discourse; the reason alleged by them.—15. *docuimus*: page 163, line 16.—*inter se*: *each other*.—C. Trebonio: not the *legatus* of this name, who was away in command of three legions; see page 160, line 18.—20. *nullo . . . usu . . . percepto*: *not having gained any experience*.—23. *eam*: sc. *vim celeritatemque*; the two nouns constitute a single notion.—27. *virtutis causa*: *on account of their valor*; the centurions were, of course, veterans, with a proud reputation to sustain.

PAGE 166

1. *pars . . . perit*: amounting to two cohorts; see page 167, lines 18, 19.

CHAPTER 41

8. *fidem non faceret*: *he could not make them believe*, i. e. Cicero and his men.—10. *alienata mente*: *bereft of reason*, i. e. crazed with fear.—*deletis . . . recepisse*, depends on *dicerent*.—12. *neque*: connect with *oppugnaturos fuisse*.—*incolumi exercitu*: ablative absolute; the Roman army is meant.—13. *contenderent*: *insisted*.

CHAPTER 42

15. *eventus*: *chances*.—16. *unum*: *only*.—17. *casui*: *for an accident*.—*relinqui debuisse*: *ought to have been left*.—18. *multum . . . potuisse*: cf. page 158, lines 23, 24; page 3, lines 19, 20.—19. *amplius*: sc. *fortunam potuisse*.—21. *admirandum*: sc. *hoc*, referring to clause *quod . . . obtulerant*.

CHAPTER 43

PAGE 167

1. *praeda*: chiefly cattle, hence *agebatur*; see page 162, line 15, *magno pecoris numero*, etc.—2. *frumenta*: *crops*.—4. *anni*

tempore : the autumn rains had begun.—8. ut . . . captivi : that the persons whom they captured were looking about for Ambiorix, whom they had just seen in flight.—10. consequendi : of overtaking him.—14. ille : Ambiorix. In Bk. VIII, ch. 24, he is still eluding pursuit ; cf. Florus, *Epitome*, i. 45. 8.

CHAPTER 44

18. duarum cohortium damno : see page 166, lines 1, 2.—
19. Durocortorum : accusative, limit of motion ; now Rheims.—
22. princeps : *instigator, ringleader*.—23. more maiorum : the ancestral practice was to flog traitors to death. This is a euphemistic phrase.—25. Aqua atque igni : the necessaries of life. Everybody was forbidden to furnish them to the culprit.—27. Agedinci : now Sens.—28. in Italiam : i. e. into Cisalpine Gaul ; see page 7, line 15, and note.—29. ad conventus agendos : see page 40, lines 18, 19, and note.

BOOK SEVEN—B. C. 52

THE GREAT WAR FOR GALlic INDEPENDENCE. Before the close of the winter, certain Gallic tribes having revolted, under the leadership of the Arvernian Vercingetorix, Caesar returns in haste from Italy, invades the country of the Arverni, relieves the Boii, and captures three cities in the center of Gaul (ch. 1-13). The Gauls having resolved, as a military measure, to destroy all their towns which could afford strongholds to the Romans, spare Avaricum in the land of the Bituriges. Caesar besieges it, captures it after a long and heroic resistance, and to teach the patriots a severe lesson, destroys it. The policy of Vercingetorix is justified by the fate of Avaricum (ch. 14-31). The next great struggle was about the stronghold of Gergovia, in the Arvernian country (ch. 32-52). This Caesar fails to take, and having found the Haedui treacherous, conducts an expedition against them and sends Labienus against the Parisii (ch. 53-62). Uniting again with Labienus, Caesar defeats Vercingetorix, who retreats to the hill of Alesia in the district of the Mandubii (ch. 63-67). Caesar invests the place. The Gauls nearly all over the country join the revolt and raise an army for the relief of Alesia. By elaborate siege-works Caesar succeeds in hemming in the town completely and in defending his own rear. When the final struggle came against both the besieged and the vast army of relief, the genius of Caesar and the disciplined heroism of his army triumphed over the tremendous numbers and wild courage of the enemy. With the fall of Alesia and the surrender of Gaul's ablest leader perished the last reasonable hope of its independence (ch. 68-90).

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 168

1. **Quieta Gallia**: this was the calm before the storm.—3.
Clodi caede: Clodius, a partisan of Caesar and a prominent demagogue, was murdered Jan. 20, 52 B. C., in an encounter with T. Annius Milo. Riots followed and military forces were called out.—4. **iuniores**: *the men of military age.*—**coniurarent**: *should take the (military) oath in bodies*, not as in times of leisure, one by one.—7. **quod** : = *id quod*.—**res** : *the situation.*—8. **urbano motu**: *disturbances in the*

capital.—**14. Acconis**: a Senonian chief, put to death by Caesar the year before for heading an insurrection ; see page 167, lines 22-24.—
16. omnibus : *all sorts of.*—**18. in libertatem vindicent** : *establish the freedom of.*—**rationem esse habendam** : *measures must be taken.*—
21. legiones : six at Agedincum, two among the Lingones, two on the frontier of the Treveri ; see page 167, lines 25-28.

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 169

6. principes . . . facturos : *would be the first to make.*—**8. ob-sidibus cavere** : *to give security by exchange of hostages.* They could not exchange hostages without attracting the attention of the Romans.—
10. conlatis . . . signis : this gathering together of the standards was a symbol of unity. They went armed to the war council ; see page 138, lines 22-24.

CHAPTER 3

16. Cenabum : now Orléans.—**17. negotiandi causa** : i. e. loaning money, dealing in grain, etc., farming revenues ; Cic. *pro Font. V.* 11.—**18. honestum** : *respectable.*—**22. clamore** : men were stationed previously in relays at short distances.—**25. quae . . . gesta essent** : concessive.—**ante . . . confectam** : *before the end of.*

CHAPTER 4

PAGE 170

1. Vercingetorix : the great leader in the united rising of Gaul.—
3. Galliae : i. e. *Celticae* ; see page 21, lines 19-21 : *Galliae totius factiones esse duas*, etc.—**4. regnum** : *sovereignty, royal power.*—
5. clientibus : see page 151, line 12, and note.—**10. Gergo-via** : 2,400 feet above the sea, 8 miles southeast of the Puy-de-Dôme, 4 miles south of Clermont.—**12. adit** : *meets.*—**15. quoque versus** : *in every direction.*—**20. imperium** : *chief command.*—
23. quodque ante tempus : *and before what time.*—**27. necat** : sc. *eos qui maius delictum commiserant.*

CHAPTER 5

PAGE 171

5. fide : *protectorate* ; the Haedui were still allies of Rome.—**13. quibus id consili**, etc. : *whose plan, they heard, was*, etc.—**14. ipsi** : the Bituriges, who would hem in the *Haedui* from the north, while the Ar-verni did the same on the south.—**17. nihil . . . constat** : *we are not at all sure.*

CHAPTER 6

21. urbanas res : affairs in the city (Rome).—virtute : energy.
 ——25. provinciam : i. e. *Gallia Narbonensis*; see Introduction, page lxi.—27. eis : i. e. *Gallis*.

CHAPTER 7

PAGE 172

2. Nitiobroges : on the *Garonne River*, in the extreme southwest of Celtic Gaul.—4. versus : this preposition follows its noun.—6. antevertendum (esse) : its subject is *ut . . . proficiseretur*, its indirect object is *consilii*. Translate: that he must anticipate all these plans by starting for Narbo.—8. provincialibus : i. e. that part of the Ruteni who lived in the Province.—11. supplementum : the new levies of Cisalpine Gaul; see page 168, line 4.—12. in Helvios : = *in fines Helviorum*; connect with *convenire*.

CHAPTER 8

15. praesidia : the line of garrisoned posts established by Caesar.—putabat : sc. *Lucterius*.—16. proficiscitur : sc. *Caesar*.—17. tempore : midwinter in reality, late February by the calendar, which was then about six weeks ahead of time; see note on page 81, line 1; see page 187, lines 27-29.—18. discussa : cleared away.—28. suis : i. e. *Arvernorum*.—se : *Arvernos*.

CHAPTER 9

PAGE 173

4. haec de Vercingetorige : these movements on the part of *Vercingetorix*.—5. usu ventura : would come to pass, lit. "in experience."—praeceperat : had anticipated.—6. per causam : on the pretext; he had no such intention, but took care to conceal his real purpose even from his own men, lest the Gauls should hear of it.—7. Brutum : the same who distinguished himself in the campaign against the *Veneti*, Bk. III, ch. 11-15.—9. se : sc. *Caesarem*.—11. Viennam : on the Rhône, a few miles south of Lyons.—12. nactus recentem equitatum : finding the cavalry fresh.—13. neque . . . intermisso : marching day and night without stopping.—15. duae . . . hiemabant : see page 167, line 26.—quid . . . de sua salute . . . consili : any plan involving his own existence.—17. Eo : among the Haeduans.—18. in unum locum : apparently *Agedincum* (Sens), in the Senonian country; see page 174, line 8.—21. Gorgobinam : south of and not very far from *Noviodunum* (Nevers), but the exact site can not be determined.—Boiorum . . . quos, etc. : see page 20, lines 1-5.

CHAPTER 10

26. *ne . . . deficeret*: depending on the thought, "he feared," implied in the preceding sentence.—*stipendiariis*: i. e. the Boii.—28. *in eo : Caesare*.

PAGE 174

1. *duris subvectionibus*: by the difficulty of transporting supplies.—6. *qui*: as antecedent understand *nuntios*.—in *fide*: faithful, stanch.—9. *ad Boios*: i. e. to *Gorgobina*. •

CHAPTER 11

10. *Vellaunodunum*: it is not possible to identify the site of this town; it lay on the route from *Agedincum* to *Cenabum*. The location given on the map in this book is that of *Montargis*.—12. *quo*: instead of *ut* because of the comparative, *expeditiore*. He did not wish the line to his base of supplies to be endangered by leaving a town in his rear in the enemy's hands.—16. *quam primum*: as soon as possible.—17. *Cenabum*: Orléans.—19. *eam . . . iri*: that the siege would be prolonged.—20. *quod . . . mitterent*: clause of purpose.—23. *diei tempore*: he arrived late in the afternoon.—in *posterum*: sc. *diem*.—24. *quaeque* := *et quae*.—sint: subjunctive of characteristic.—26. *profugerent*: sc. *oppidani*.—27. *in armis excubare*: to sleep on their arms.—30. *expeditas*: in fighting trim.

PAGE 175

1. *perpaucis . . . caperentur*: had not a very few been missing, the whole number would have been captured.—5. *praedam*: probably the people as well as their property. They would be sold as slaves.

CHAPTER 12

7. *oppugnatione*: of *Gorgobina*. See page 173, line 21.—9. *Ille : Caesar*.—*Noviodunum*: on the Loire, now Nevers.—11. *suae . . . consuleret*: spare their lives; the sentences *ut sibi . . . ignosceret . . . consuleret* are the objects of *oratum*.—12. *ut . . . conficeret*: Caesar's purpose.—*qua*: the antecedent is *celeritate*.—19. *Quem*: the cavalry of *Vercingetorix*.—*simul atque*: as soon as.—in *spem . . . venerunt*: began to hope.—21. *complere*: to man.—22. *significatione*: behavior.

CHAPTER 13

28. *ab initio*: i. e. of the Gallic wars; see page 209, lines 24-30; page 210, line 3; page 211, lines 10-13; page 212, line 24; page 220, lines 25-27; note to page 87, line 20.

PAGE 176

4. **comprehensos** . . . **perduxerunt** : seized and brought.—
 9. **regione** : governed by *in*, before *finibus*.—**recepto** : captured.

CHAPTER 14

14. **alia** . . . **atque** : B. 341. 1. *c*); A. 247. *d*; H. 516. 3.—
 18. **anni tempore** : it was probably March by the calendar; cf. note to page 172, line 17.—19. **aedificiis** : i. e. barns and granaries.—
 21. **rei familiaris commoda** : considerations of private property.—
 22. **hoc spatio** . . . **quo** : for as great a distance . . . as.—24. **ipsis** : *Gallis*.

PAGE 177

2. **proposita** : convenient.—4. **Haec** : refers to what precedes.
 —**illa** : what follows.

CHAPTER 15

12. **amissa** : neuter plural used as substantive.—14. **Procum-**
bunt : emphatic position for a verb.—**Gallis** : dative of reference, but
 translate as if it were genitive limiting *pedes*.—15. **pulcherrimam** :
 it had a fine situation and many open squares.—19. **flumine**, etc. :
 see plan opposite page 178.—**et** : (after *habeat*) omit in translating.
 —20. **Datur** . . . **venia** : this was the first great mistake made by
 the Gauls in this campaign.

CHAPTER 16

24. **minoribus** : shorter.—27. **in** . . . **tempora** : from hour to
 hour.

PAGE 178

1. **observabat** : he kept a watch on.—3. **quantum** . . . **iretur** :
 so far as could be calculated in advance, our men met the difficulty by going
 at uncertain times and by different routes.

CHAPTER 17

7. **supra** : page 177, lines 18-20.—8. **aggerem, vineas, turres** :
 see Introduction, pages lii, liii, and lviii.—11. **alteri** . . . **alteri** : sc.
Haedui . . . *Boii*.—12. **studio** : enthusiasm. Cf. their half-hearted
 conduct, Bk. I, ch. 16, when they gave trouble to Caesar about supplies.
 —14. **quod** : i. e. *frumentum*.—15. **adfecto** : involved in.
 —21. **in opere** : (engaged) in the work of building the agger, etc.
 —22. **singulas** : one by one.—26. **hoc** . . . **loco** : that they
 would feel it as a disgrace.—28. **praestare** : that it was better.—

quam non : = *quam ut non*; *than not to.*—**30. parentarent**: the subjunctive is used after *quam*, with or without *ut*.

CHAPTER 18

PAGE 179

6. expeditis: light-armed foot-soldiers, as described, page 36, line 26—page 37, line 5. German tactics were adopted by Vercingetorix; so was the Roman style of camping, page 187, line 6.—**10. pervenit**: sc. *Caesar*.

CHAPTER 19

16. Collis: line 13.—**18. non latior**: concessive.—**19. generatim**: by tribes.—**22. haesitantes**: sticking fast in the mire.—**23. qui**: if one; so also in line 25.—**24. prope aequo Marte**: on almost equal terms.—**25. inani simulatione**: in mere parade.—**27. suum**: of them; i. e. Caesar's soldiers.—**30. necesse sit constare**: would inevitably cost.

PAGE 180

1. sua: sc. *Caesaris*.—**2. iniquitatis**: genitive with a verb of condemning.

CHAPTER 20

7. prodigionis: genitive with a verb of accusing.—**9. imperio**: = *imperatore*.—**13. illum**: subject of *malle*.—**15. Quod . . . movisset**: as to his having moved.—**17. qui**: sc. *locus*.—**21. is**: any one to whom he might have delegated the command.—**22. cui rei**: i. e. battle with the Romans.—**24. fortunae**: sc. *habendam gratiam (esse)* from next line.—**26. eorum**: sc. of the Romans.—**31. explorata**: assured.—**quin etiam**: nay even; *quin* is not here a consecutive conjunction.—**remittere**: (*he was ready*) to resign.

PAGE 181

9. si . . . possent: (*to see*) whether they could.—**12. imperato-rem**: Caesar.

CHAPTER 21

20. armis concrepat: i. e. striking their spears on their shields; cf. Tac. *Germania*, II.—**21. in eo . . . cuius**: in the case of one whose.—**22. Summum . . . ducem**: the best of leaders.—**23. maiore ratione**: with greater skill.—**26. communem**: i. e. of all the Gauls.—**27. in eo**: *eo* (= *ea re*) refers to the *si*-clause following.—**in eo . . . constare**: depended upon their retaining this town; lit. "depended upon this, whether they should retain," etc.

CHAPTER 22

PAGE 182

1. *sollertiae*: *cleverness*.—2. *quoque*: *any one*.—*laqueis*: *nooses*.—*falces*: i. e. *murales*; heavy hooks used to pull stones out of walls; see Introduction, page lvi.—3. *tormentis*: *windlasses*.—4. *cuniculus*: *mines*.—*subtrahebant*: *drew away* the material of which the *agger* was built.—5. *ferrariae*: iron is still mined about *Bourges*, and there is a cannon-foundry in the city.—7. *contabularerant*: *they had built up*.—11. *cotidianus agger*: the daily increase in the height of the *agger*.—12. *commissis . . . malis*: by *splicing the upright timbers* which formed the corners of their towers, or *by uniting the upright timbers*, by means of successive horizontal beams, as they raised the structure within the tall corner masts.—13. *apertos cuniculos*: perhaps the *open ends of passages or galleries* in the *agger*, where they emerged toward the wall; or perhaps of subterranean tunnels or mines intended to run under the walls; see Introduction, page liv.
- 15. *morabantur*: *obstructed*.

CHAPTER 23

17. *Muri*: remains of such walls have been found at *Beuvray*, and at *Murscheint* near *Cahors*.—18. *derecta*: at right angles to the length of the wall.—*perpetuae in longitudinem*: *along the whole length*.—20. *revincuntur*: i. e. by tie-beams (40 ft. long) running lengthwise of the wall, probably mortised.—23. *idem . . . intervallum*: i. e. two feet.—24. *neque . . . contingant*, etc.: i. e. the beams of each course rested on the stones of the course below.—27. *iusta*: *complete, full*.—28. *cum . . . tum*: *not only . . . but also*.—29. *alternis . . . saxis*: i. e. the face of the wall had a checker-board appearance.

PAGE 183

1. *materia*: *timber*.—2. *introrsus revincta*: cf. page 182, line 20, and note.

CHAPTER 24

5. *frigore*: it was still winter; see page 187, lines 27, 28.—7. *atum pedes cccxxx*, etc.: these dimensions are not improbable, Gôler thinks (*Gall. Krieg*, p. 254). A large number of trained men was available to do the work. But we need not understand that it was a solid embankment of this width. More probably two narrow ones were connected at the ends by a third running parallel, and close to the wall.—*altum pedes lxxx*: i. e. at the end next to the city.—12. *fumare*: it is evident that the *agger* was built largely of wood.—*cuniculo*: by

means of a counter-mine.—14. **ab utroque latere**: i. e. one on each side.—17. *quo*: *to what place*; interrogative.—18. **vix**...
posset: *a decision could scarcely be formed.*—19. **instituto Caesaris**: according to Caesar's practice.—22. **turres**: they were movable, and so could be drawn back along the *agger*.—23. **interscinderent**: *cut . . . in two*, to prevent flames from spreading back its whole length.

CHAPTER 25

27. **pluteos turrium**: wooden bulwarks in the different stories of the towers, somewhat like the *loricae* described at page 128, line 20.—
28. **nec** : = *et* with *animadvertebant*, *non* with *facile*.—**apertos**: sc. *milites*, *exposed*.—29. **recentes**: *fresh*.

PAGE 184

2. **nobis**: the author.—3. **quod**: *a thing which*.—5. **per manus** . . . **traditas**: *passed from hand to hand*, and finally to him.—6. **e regione**: *in a line with*, directly in front of, a tower on the *agger*.—7. **scorpione**: see Introduction, page lvii.—**ab latere**: his own side.—8. **iacentem**: *as he lay*. Caesar always frankly admired courage in his enemies.

CHAPTER 26

18. **non**: connect with *magna*.—21. **tardabat**: would delay.—
—23. **projectae**: reflexive, *casting themselves*.—24. **suorum**: sc. *virorum*.—29. **non recipit**: *does not admit, allow*.—30. **Quo timore**: *by fear of this*.

CHAPTER 27

PAGE 185

3. **derectis**: *put in position*.—**operibus**: here means *engines*.—
—9. **expeditis**: participle, not attributive adjective: *getting the legions ready for action*.—11. **praemia**: see Introduction, pages xxxvi, xxxvii.

CHAPTER 28

15. **re nova**: *with surprise*.—17. **obviam veniretur**: *an advance should be made by the Romans*.—20. **circumfundи**: impersonal passive.—25. **Cenabensi caede**: *the massacre (of Romans) at Cenabum* mentioned in chap. 3.—26. **confectis**: *infirm*. This dreadful massacre was intended to frighten the whole Gallic nation into submission. Caesar did not enjoy cruelty, but always punished treachery or what he considered rebellion with frightful severity. Here, moreover, he was avenging the Romans murdered at *Cenabum*; page 169, lines 16-20.—28. **Denique**: *in short*.

PAGE 186

1. multa . . . nocte: *late in the night.*—3. procul: *at a distance from his camp.*—4. disparandos . . . curavit: *he had them divided and escorted to their own countrymen.*—5. quae . . . obvenerat: *to that part of the camp which from the beginning had been allotted to each state.* Desjardins (*Géographie de la Gaule Romaine*, vol. ii, 676) thinks that if the wishes of Vercingetorix had been carried out, *Avaricum* would have been a Moscow to Caesar.

CHAPTER 29

7. consolatus, etc.: sc. *Vercingetorix.*—8. ne . . . demitterent: *not to lose heart entirely.*—9. Non virtute, etc.: cf. the thought at page 9, lines 22–26.—12. si qui: *whoever.*—13. Avaricum defendi, etc.: see page 177, lines 20–22.—14. factum [esse]: *it had occurred; viz. uti . . . acciperetur.*—21. effectum habere: = *effecisse.*

CHAPTER 30

25. quod ipse . . . non . . . fugerat: *Gallic leaders, as a rule, after one defeat gave up the fight and fled for their lives.*—29. re integra: *in the beginning.*

PAGE 187

4. in spem veniebant: *they were encouraged.*—6. castra munire: i. e. in Roman fashion; cf. page 179, lines 5–7, and note, in regard to the German cavalry tactics adopted by Vercingetorix.—7. insueti laboris: *although unaccustomed to labor.*

CHAPTER 31

13. capere: *win over to the Gallic cause.*—16. quem, etc.: (*saying*) *what, etc.*—23. conduixerat: *had hired.* The *Aquitani* did not join the general revolt; see note on page 68, line 23.

CHAPTER 32

PAGE 188

1. sive . . . sive: *to try whether . . . or.*—2. legati: appositive to the subject *principes.*—3. necessario: *urgent.*—4. rem: *the state.*—5. magistratus: see page 11, lines 28–30.—14. cuiusque: sc. *esse;* *each of them had.*—Quod si: *Now if, But if.*—16. Id ne accidat: *subject of possum (esse).*—possum (erat) in: *depended on.*

CHAPTER 33

22. *aluisset, ornasset*: subjunctive by attraction because subordinate to *descenderet*.—23. *descenderet*: *should go so far as to resort to*.—*sibi*: refers to *pars*.—26. *eis*: indirect object of *liceret*.—27. *nę quid . . . videretur*: connect with *ipse statuit*, etc., not with preceding sentence.—29. *quos inter*: = *eos inter quos*.—30. *Decetiam*: now Décize (on the Loire).

PAGE 189

2. *aliо . . . oportuerit*: *at a place and time other than what was right*.—3. *fratrem*: *Cotus*.—*fratre*: *Valetiacus*.—*renuntiatum*: *declared elected*.—4. *duo*: subject of *creari*, for *duos*.—*vivo utroque*: *while both are living*.—7. *sacerdotes*: *the Druids*.—*mores civitatis intermissis magistratibus*: *as was usual in the state when there were vacancies in the magistracy*. Druids filled the place, as they had a right to do in a vacancy, because the retiring Vergobret had failed to appoint his successor legally. In fact, Caesar no doubt strengthened his own position among the Haedui.

CHAPTER 34

11. *omnibus . . . rebus*: *everything (else)*.—12. *devicta*: = *cum devicta esset*.—18. *Elaver*: the *Allier*, which runs into the Loire a little below Nevers (*Noviodunum*).—19. *illi*: *Labieno*.—21. *ab altera parte*: i. e. on the west side; Caesar at *Decetia* was on the east bank, but had to cross the *Allier* to reach *Gergovia*, which was some distance to the west.

CHAPTER 35

23. *e regione*: *in line with, directly opposite to*.—*dispositis*: by *Vercingetorix*.—27. *non fere ante autumnum*: now, because of the gradual filling up of the channel, it is usually fordable in summer.

PAGE 190

5. *constare*: *to be complete*. Caesar made his four legions on the march look like six by detaching (*distractis*) some of the cohorts to make up the two sham legions.—8. *conjecturam caperet*: *he calculated*.—*in castra*: i. e. that they had had time for a full day's march.—9. *pars inferior*: i. e. the part below the surface of the water.

CHAPTER 36

15. *eo loco*: where he had encamped after crossing the river.—*quintis castris*: *in five days, camping each night*.—*Gergoviam*:

Vercingetorix was already there. The town lay upon a high plateau 2,400 feet above the sea, four miles south of Clermont, and was easily accessible only on the south and southeast.—**20.** expeditset: *he had arranged.* —castris: the Gallic camp, marked on the plan opposite page 190. —**23.** iugi: *ridge.* —qua dispici poterat: *wherever there was a view.* —**24.** horribilem: *i. e. to the Romans.* —**30.** suorum: limits quoque, ablative of quisque.

PAGE 191

1. e regione: *directly opposite*; *i. e. to the south.* —collis: a spur of limestone called La Roche-Blanche, “White Rock.” —**2.** circumcisus: *scarped*, *i. e. cut into precipices all round.* —**3.** aquae: the brook Auzon. —**4.** hostes: accusative. —**6.** castris: the location of Caesar’s maiora castra has been shown by excavations. —**9.** duodenum: = duodenorum. —minora: with two legions; there were four in the larger camp, also auxiliaries and cavalry.

CHAPTER 37

13. demonstravimus: in ch. 32, 33. —**17.** praemium: the pecunia, mentioned three lines above. —**18.** imperio: dative of purpose. —**23.** sic tamen: *but only so far as.* —**30.** ratio: *method.*

PAGE 192

1. temere: *without some good reason.* —**2.** x illis milibus: dative, with *praeficeretur*. —**3.** mitterentur: *were about to be sent*, as requested by Caesar, page 189, line 13. —**4.** fratres: they were to try to win over the Haeduan troops serving under Caesar. —**5.** reliqua: subject of *agi*.

CHAPTER 38

6. exercitu: the 10,000 soldiers referred to in line 2. —
9. Omnis . . . interiit: this was a falsehood, as also was the statement about Eporedorix and Viridomarus, who were favorites of Caesar. —
11. indicta causa: *unheard in their own defense.* —**14.** pronuntiare: from declaring. —**15.** Producuntur ei, etc.: compare the ruse of Vercingetorix page 181, lines 3-19. —**18.** conlocuti: sc. esse. —
21. sibi: refers to the subject of the main verb *obsecrant*. —**22.** consili: *for deliberation.* —**27.** persequamur: *let us avenge.* —
29. cives Romanos: perhaps in charge of the supplies mentioned in next line. —praesidi: *armed escort.*

PAGE 193

1. **excruciatos**: on the cruelty of Gauls, see note to page 151, line 25.
 ——2. **civitate**: why is there no preposition?——3. **permovet**: object supplied from *tota civitate*, line 2.——4. **atque**: as.

CHAPTER 39

9. **traditum**: *introduced*.——11. **ab eo**: by Caesar.——12. **illa . . . controversia**: described at page 188.——13. **summis opibus**: *with all their might*.——17. **quod . . . provideat**: subjunctive because considered a subordinate clause of *oratio obliqua*.——19. **propinqui**: sc. *possint*.

CHAPTER 40

25. **ad contrahenda castra**: *to reduce the size of the camp*, so as to fit the two legions left behind.——**posita (esse) in**: *to depend upon*.——27. **Fratres Litavicci**: see page 192, line 4.

PAGE 194

1. **necessario tempore**: *in the emergency*.——2. **omnibus**: refers to Caesar's soldiers.——5. **quemquam**: more emphatic than *quem*, which is usual after *ne*.——6. **illi**: the Haeduian soldiers. They had been deceived by Litavicus; see page 192, lines 9-11.——10. **mortem deprecari**: to beg they might not be put to death.——11. **more Gallorum**, etc.: see Bk. III, ch. 22.

CHAPTER 41

15. **conservatos**: sc. *eos . . . esse*.——18. **quanto . . . fuerit**: *how perilous the situation had been*.——20. **integri**: i. e. *Galli*.——**succederent**: *took the place of, relieved*.——23. **in vallo**: *on the rampart*.——25. **tormenta**: see Introduction, page lviii.——26. **eorum**: *of the enemy*.——**relictis**: *leaving open*.——**obstruere**, etc.: the present infinitive implies that the work was going on when the messengers started.——29. **ante ortum solis**, etc.: he had started about midnight; see page 193, line 15; lines 23, 24; marched 25 miles, rested three hours, and was back in camp before sunrise of the second day; say twenty-eight hours in all for the 50 miles.

CHAPTER 42

PAGE 195

4. **illi . . . generi**: cf. e. g. page 66, line 22, and note.——5. **habent pro re comperta**: *consider certain*.——7. **Adiuvat rem proclamatam**: *helps to precipitate matters*.——10. **ad legiones**: probably

at Gergovia.—**11.** **Cavillono**: now Châlon-sur-Saône; see page 226, line 11.—**idem facere**: i. e. to leave Cavillonum. About traders see note to page 169, line 17.

CHAPTER 43

24. **ea res**: i. e. either the profit or the act of plundering.—**28.** **Nihil . . . gravius . . . iudicare**: *was not very severe in his judgment.*

PAGE 196

4. **omnem exercitum contraheret**: i. e. unite again with the four legions under Labienus; see page 189, line 16.

CHAPTER 44

7. **Haec**: i. e. how to get away from Gergovia without seeming to flee.—**8.** **minora castra**: on La Roche-Blanche; cf. *collis*, page 191, lines 1-10, and note on line 2; plan, after page 196.—**9.** **collem**: part of Risolles Heights.—**13.** **Constabat inter omnes**: *all agreed.*—**quod** : = *id quod*.—**15.** **eius iugi**: the northern slope of Risolles Heights, along which was a narrow approach to the town, through the woods.—**16.** **alteram partem**: the west side, farthest from the Roman camp.—**17.** **illos**: the Gauls.

CHAPTER 45

23. **eo**: where the Gauls were fortifying. This was to divert attention from his intended point of attack, their camp. Caesar was trying to make the Gauls fear an attack from the west and northwest, while in fact he intended a surprise from the southeast of Risolles and the saddle connecting those heights with the town.—**25.** **impedimentorum**: here means *packhorses*.—**26.** **stramenta**: *pack-saddles*.—**29.** **easdem . . . regiones**: i. e. southwest of the smaller camp, toward Chanonat.

PAGE 197

2. **neque**: *and yet not*.—**6.** **illo**: *thither*.—**munitionem**: *the work of fortifying*.—**8.** **insignibus**: i. e. the crests of their helmets.—**9.** **raros**: *in small parties; a few at a time*.—**16.** **occasions**: *surprise*. He did not intend to hold the Gallic camp, but only to make a successful dash at it and then retreat from Gergovia with undiminished prestige.—**17.** **alio ascensu**: marked on the plan, “Route of the Haedui.”

CHAPTER 46

19. **recta regione**: *in a straight line*.—**21.** **clivum**: the plateau of Gergovia is about 500 feet above the top of La Roche-Blanche.—**23.**

ferebat: *permitted*.—25. inferiore . . . spatio: the half of the hill below and outside of the wall.

PAGE 198

1. **Nitiobrogum**: living on the north bank of the *Garumna* (Garonne).

CHAPTER 47

5. **animo**: dative.—**proposuerat**: Caesar is accused of attempting by his language to disguise a failure. But if he had really attempted more than he here says he would have been open to contradiction by his lieutenants to whom he had given orders that day, and some of whom, after the war, became his enemies.—**receptui**: dative of purpose.—6. **legionisque x**: always the favorite.—7. **constiterunt**: *halted*.—8. **valles**: west of the village of Merdogne; see on the plan the successive positions of the 10th legion. The signal was given from the first position.—10. **retinebantur**: conative; an unsuccessful attempt was made to hold them back.—18. **hostem**: the Romans.—19. **vestem**; collective; *clothing*.—23. **per manus**: by holding the hands of persons on the wall.—**demissae**: *letting themselves down*.—26. **Avaricensibus**: *gained at Avaricum*. The troops had been allowed to plunder the town; see Chapter 28.—29. **rurus**: *in turn*.

CHAPTER 48

PAGE 199

1. **supra**: page 196, lines 20, 21.—5. **ut quisque primus venerat**: *when the foremost arrived*.—6. **sub**: *at the foot of*, on the outside.—8. **matres familiae . . . coeperunt**: cf. page 38, lines 21–23.

CHAPTER 49

18. **sub infimo colle**: *at the base of the hill*, on which the smaller camp was located; see *Sextius*, 1st position, on plan.—22. **progressus**: i. e. on the return; see 10th legion, 2d position, on plan.

CHAPTER 50

24. **loco, numero, virtute**: ablatives with *confidenter*.—25. **Haedui**: directed to attack the town from the east; they were now to the north of the retreating Romans.—27. **manus distinendae causa**: *to divide the enemy's forces*.—28. **similitudine**: i. e. to those of the other Gauls.

PAGE 200

2. *insigne pactum*: *the sign agreed upon*, by which they were to be recognized as friends of the Romans.—5. *L. Fabius*: see page 198, line 24.—7. *eiusdem legionis*: i. e. the 8th.

CHAPTER 51

22. *delecti*: *forced down*.—*intolerantius*: connect with *insequentes*.—24. *aequiore loco*: see plan, 10th legion, 3d position.—26. *locum superiorem*: see plan, Sextius, 2d position.—*Legiones*: driven down the hill by the Gauls, on reaching level ground they turned and drove back the Gauls, with the help of the 10th and 13th legions.—30. *desiderati*: *missing*.

CHAPTER 52

PAGE 201

6. *quid iniq[ue]itas loci posset*: *what the effect of a disadvantageous position is*.—8. *exploratam*: *assured*; yet see page 179, line 27—page 180, line 6. Caesar was not so sure at the time.—10. *Quanto opere . . . tanto opere*: *the more . . . the more*.

CHAPTER 53

18. *ad extremum*: *at the end of his speech*.—22. *ante*: see page 196, lines 2–6.—23. *idoneo loco*: Caesar wished to tempt Vercingetorix to a general engagement, but Vercingetorix was too sagacious.—26. *satis . . . factum*: this fails to conceal from the reader that the siege of Gergovia was a failure.

CHAPTER 54

PAGE 202

4. *Ibi*: east of the Allier, in the Haeduian country.—*appellatus*: *appealed to*.—6. *opus esse*: they wished an excuse to get away from Caesar. They were going to turn against him.—8. *perspectam habebat*: = *perspicerat*.—12. *eis*: Viridomarus and Eporedorix.—13. *quam humiles*, etc.: see page 22, lines 2–14; Bk. VI, ch. 12.—18. *omnium*: *all (previous)*.

CHAPTER 55

21. *Noviodunum*: Nevers, Caesar's base of supplies.—28. *Bibracte*: locative.

PAGE 203

8. *negotiandi causa*: see page 169, line 17, and note.—9. *obsides*: pledges of loyalty to the Romans; see page 208, line 4.—12. *potuerunt*: sc. *avehere*.—13. *flumine*: *by (throwing it*

into) the river.—**20.** *ex nivibus*: from the melting of the snows on the mountains. It was now July, harvest-time; cf. *frumentum in agris*; page 204, line 8.

CHAPTER 56

23. *si . . . periclitandum*: *in case he should have to risk (a battle) while building bridges.*—**24.** *eo*: at the Loire.—**26.** *non nemo . . . existimabat*: *some thought.*—**27.** *cum*: correlative with *tum*, line 29; *not only . . . but also.*—**29.** *Labieno*: dative.—**30.** *quas una miserat*: page 189, line 16.

PAGE 204

3. *vado*: we can not tell where this ford was.—**pro . . . opportuno**: *good enough in the emergency.*—**9.** *instituit* := *coepit*. He was aiming to reach Sens (*Agedincum*).

CHAPTER 57

11. *supplemento*: see page 168, lines 4, 5; page 172, line 11.—**13.** *Lutetiam*: see page 142, line 22, and note.—**19.** *perpetuam . . . paludem*: *a continuous marsh*; probably along the little river Essone, extending back from its confluence with the Seine. The Gauls were posted on the north side of it.

CHAPTER 58

23. *vineas agere*: Labienus's purpose was, under cover of these man-telets, to build a road across the marsh by throwing in fascines and earth.—**25.** *difficilius*: apparently because of the softness of the ground in the marsh.—**26.** *Metiosedum*: later *Melodunum*, whence comes the modern name *Melun*; he returned along the left bank to Melun, captured it, and then proceeded down the right bank, unhindered, to Paris.

PAGE 205

2. *eo*: *upon them.*—**4.** *ponte*: *over the Seine.*—**6.** *secundo flumine*: *down river.*—**9.** *e regione*: *directly opposite.*

CHAPTER 59

11. *Caesar . . . audiebatur*: *people were hearing that Caesar, etc.*—**14.** *itinere et Ligeri*: *from marching and from (crossing) the Loire.*—**19.** *aliud . . . atque*: *other than.*—**23.** *altera ex parte*: i. e. to the north.—**24.** *opinionem*: *reputation.* They could put 100,000 men into the field.—**alteram**: sc. *partem*.—**26.** *prae-sidio*: at *Agedincum*, on the other bank of the Seine.

CHAPTER 60

PAGE 206

3. *singulas equitibus*: *each to a knight.* These members of the equestrian order were with the army, waiting for commissions.—5. *iii milia passuum*: perhaps at the site of the modern village of Point-du-Jour.—9. *adverso flumine*: *up river.*—12. *partem*: *direction.*—13. *eum locum*: i. e. four miles down-stream.

CHAPTER 61

19. *transmittitur*: across the Seine below the Gallic camp.—21. *tumultuari*: impersonal.—25. *tribus locis*: up river, down river, and at the camp. Hence they divided their forces to oppose the several divisions of the Romans.—29. *tantum*: *only so far.*—*progrederetur*: *was to advance.*

PAGE 207

1. *naves*: the boats being rowed up-stream *magnō sonitu*. See page 206, line 11.

CHAPTER 62

3. *nostri*: three legions and cavalry—five cohorts were in camp, five had gone up river.—4. *hostium acies*: the division which had marched down river from their camp.—6. *Caesarem . . . praesentem*: cf. page 145, lines 25-28.—9. *ab*: *on.*—13. *suspicionem*: *indication.*—14. *quisquam*: emphatic position for subject.—*aderat*: *was assisting.*—18. *post tergum*, etc.: i. e. executed a flank movement and turned the enemy's rear.—24. *ceperunt*: *reached.*—*neque*: = *et tamen non*, or *sed non.*—28. *ubi . . . erant*: see page 174, lines 8, 9.—30. *Caesarem*: Caesar had been marching to the north of the *Loire*, and he met Labienus coming from *Agedincum*. It is impossible to say where the meeting took place. Several weeks elapsed before Caesar turned southward again to succor the Province.

CHAPTER 63

PAGE 208

4. *obsides . . . apud eos*: at *Noviodunum*; see page 202, lines 22-25.—7. *communicet*: sc. *secum* (i. e. *Haeduis*).—11. *suffragiis . . . permittitur*: *is put to vote.*—14. *illi*: both Remi and Lingones.—19. *requirunt*: *miss.*—21. *Eporedorix et Viridomarus*: see page 192, line 10; also ch. 39.

CHAPTER 64

23. *Ille*: Vercingetorix.—*ei rei*: i. e. *obsidibus dandis.*—25. *peditatu*: connect with *contentum*.

PAGE 209

2. **corrumpant, incendant**: would be imperative in direct discourse.
 —**aedificia**: this was the same policy that Vercingetorix had proposed at the start; see ch. 14.—**qua . . . iactura . . . videant**: since they saw that by this sacrifice.—4. **consequi**: we might have expected the future tense.—6. **huc** : = *his* or *ad hos*.—8. **Allobrogibus**: in the Province.—**Altera ex parte**: on the west. He directed the tribes outside the Province against the nearest nations inside.—13. **superiore bello**: in 61 B. C. they had been severely punished by the Romans for insurrection; see page 5, lines 5–8.

CHAPTER 65

25. **interclusis . . . itineribus**: *if all the roads should be blocked* by the enemy's cavalry.—26. **provincia**: i. e. in Transalpine Gaul.—**Italia**: i. e. Cisalpine Gaul.—27. **eas civitates**: the *Ubii* were friendly; see Bk. IV, ch. 16; we do not know which tribes are meant.—28. **superioribus annis**: B. C. 55 and 53; see Bk. IV, ch. 16–19; Bk. VI, ch. 9–28.—29. **qui . . . consuerant**: see page 36, line 26—page 37, line 5. Caesar had had German cavalry before; see page 175, lines 26, 27. German tactics had been adopted by Vercingetorix; see page 179, line 6.—30. **minus idoneis**: as to the German horses, see page 82, line 12.

PAGE 210

2. **evocatis**: see Introduction, page xxxvii; they were perhaps mounted for staff service.

CHAPTER 66

9. **trinis castris**: It can not be certainly determined where the battle described in this chapter and the next took place. One of the best supported of many opinions puts it near Dijon, locating the three camps of Vercingetorix on the farther bank of the river Ouche. The only certain information is that after the battle Vercingetorix retreated forthwith to the strong position at *Alesia*, and that Caesar, following him, arrived there the next day (*altero die*; page 211, line 29).—12. **Gallia**: i. e. *Gallia* proper, the land of the *Celtae* or *Galli*, page 1, lines 2, 3.—**id**: the retreat of the Romans.—16. **Si pedites**: Vercingetorix's plan would either hinder the retreat of the Romans or else cut them off from their baggage.—20. **spoliatumiri**: future infinitive passive, a form not much used.—21. **quin . . . audeat**: depends on *dubitare*, line 22.

—22. *Id* : the movement proposed by Vercingetorix.—23. *co-pias . . . pro castris* : in order to inspire the cavalry with courage. The cavalry had all the work to do.

CHAPTER 67

29. *ius iurandum* : the oath contained in last sentence.

PAGE 211

1. *a primo agmine* : *in the van*.—5. *impedimenta . . . recipiuntur* : we may suppose that each legion had been followed thus far by its own baggage-train, the usual arrangement on a march ; but that now the legions formed a “hollow square” with the baggage of the whole army inside.—10. *Germani* : Caesar’s German cavalry ; see ch. 65.—20. *Eporedorix* : not the one mentioned in ch. 38, 39, 40, 54, 55, 63, 64, 76.

CHAPTER 68

23. *Alesiam* : this site has been certainly determined. The ancient *Alesia* stood on the plateau of Mont Auxois ; the modern Alise-Ste.-Reine lies on its western slope, near the top. Thorough excavations, ordered by Napoleon III, revealed the whole system of entrenchments corresponding with Caesar’s descriptions. Elaborate models may be seen in the Museum of St. Germain.—29. *altero die* : *on the following day* ; the place fixed by Napoleon’s opinion for the battle described in the last chapter, viz. on the Vingeanne River, is 42 miles from *Alesia* ; Napoleon would have to translate *altero die*, “on the next day but one.” From Dijon to *Alesia* is but 31 miles.

CHAPTER 69

PAGE 212

4. *in . . . loco* : *having a very elevated position at the top of a hill*.—6. *flumina* : the brooks Ose and Oserain.—8. *in longitudinem* : i. e. to the west.—10. *pari altitudinis fastigio* : *of equal height*.—12. *fossam et maceriam* : see plan after page 214, P, Q, R, S.—14. *munitionis* : a series of fortified camps with numerous redoubts (*castella*) in the intervening spaces.—15. *tenebat* : *extended*.

CHAPTER 70

22. *supra* : lines 7, 8.—24. *Germanos* : it is interesting to see how prominent all through Bk. VII are Caesar’s German allies ; see page 175, line 28, and note.—26. *Praesidio* : *support*.—28. *angustioribus portis relictis* : *since the (spaces) left (in the wall for) gates were quite narrow*.

PAGE 213

5. *veniri*: that the enemy were coming.—7. *portas*: i. e. of the city.—*castra*: east of the city.

CHAPTER 71

11. *consilium*: explained by the infinitive clause *omnem . . . dimittere*.—16. *neu* := *neve*, which is commonly used rather than *et . . . ne*.—*meritum*: participle.—19. *Ratione*: *calculation*.—21. *parcendo*: i. e. by shortening rations.—22. *erat . . . intermissum*: *there was a gap in our works*.—23. *Frumentum . . . iubet*: he established martial law in the city.—25. *paruerint*: characteristic subjunctive.—28. *pro oppido*: on the east.

CHAPTER 72

PAGE 214

3. *derectis*: *perpendicuar*.—*solum*: *bottom*. Trench f, f, f, on plan. The whole length was discovered by excavation.—6. *esset . . . complexus, cingeretur*: subjunctives by attraction, subordinate to *ne . . . advolaret*.—7. *totum opus, etc.*: *the entire circuit of works could not be manned by the soldiers*.—*corona*: *a ring, cordon*.—10. *Hoc . . . spatio*: 400 feet.—11. *duas fossas*: see plans after pages 214, 216.—*eadem altitudine*: *(both) of the same depth*. Excavations show it was 8 or 9 feet.—12. *interiorem*: *the inner one* (*sc. fossam*), nearer the city.—13. *flumine*: *the Oserain*.—*Post*: *behind*, i. e. the outer ditch was at the foot of the rampart of earth. See plan after page 216.—14. *loricam*: see plan after page 216.—15. *cervis*: *stag's-horns, chevaux-de-frise*; see plan.—16. *pluteorum*: *parapets*, all the woodwork above the earthwork; plan after page 216.—17. *opere*: *line of works*.—18. *pedes lxxx*: see page 128, line 9, and note on *cxx*.

CHAPTER 73

27. *delibratis*: *peeled (de, liber, bark)* in order to make them slippery.—28. *perpetuae*: *continuous*.—29. *stipites*: plan after page 216, “*cippi*.”—*revincti*: *fastened to cross-pieces which were buried in the earth*.

PAGE 215

1. *ab ramis eminebant*: *projected with their branches (only)*.—*Quini*: five rows, one in each ditch.—3. *vallis*: dative; he means the pointed branches.—*cippos*: the whole thing, distinguished from the branches taken separately. The name, *boundary-stones*, is, of course,

a comic one.—**6. scrobes**: funnel-shaped pits; see plan after page 216.—**8. feminis**: see Vocabulary, *femur*.—**15. taleae**: *crow's-feet*; wooden blocks or short stakes with barbed iron points fastened in them; see plan after page 216. Five of these iron points were found during the excavations, and are preserved in the museum at St. Germain.—**16. totae**: the whole length of the wood was buried, leaving the iron only to project.

CHAPTER 74

21. munitiones: an outer line of works for defense against the Gallic army of relief.—**diversas**: *facing the opposite way*, outward.—**24. cum periculo**: *at a risk*.—**25. dierum xxx**: they had, however, not enough for the whole siege; cf. Caesar, *Bel. Civ.* iii. 47.

CHAPTER 75

29. convocandos: *sc. esse*.

PAGE 216

1. imperandum: *sc. esse*.—**3. rationem habere**: *form a system*.—**4. Haeduīs**, etc.: for these national names see map of Gaul. The Aquitani did not join the rebellion (see note on page 68, line 23; note on page 187, line 23), nor the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri (page 208, lines 13-17). All the rest of the Transalpine Gauls took part in it.—**23. Commio**: see Bk. IV, ch. 21, 27, 35; Bk. V, ch. 22; Bk. VI, ch. 6; Bk. VII, ch. 75, 76, 79.—**pro**: *out of regard for*.

CHAPTER 76

24. antea: page 93, line 28; page 97, line 22; page 117, line 23.—**27. jura legesque**: see page 42, line 23, and note.—**ipsi**: to Commius personally.—**29. vindicandae**: *asserting*.

PAGE 217

1. moveretur: *he was touched*.—**omnesque**: *but all*.—**8. delecti**: participle used as a noun.—**10. ad**: *toward*.—**11. modo**: *merely*.—**13. ancipiti**: *on both sides* (of the Romans).—**14. foris**: *on the outside*.

CHAPTER 77

15. die: feminine because a particular day is meant.—**19. quaerum**: feminine, referring to *sententias* rather than to the persons who entertained them.—**23. auctoritatis**: genitive of characteristic.—**27. mihi res est**: *I take issue*.—**29. ista**: contemptuous.

PAGE 218

1. *offerant*: characteristic subjunctive; so is *ferant*, line 2.——
 4. *dignitas*: i. e. of those who advocated the view he is opposing.——
 6. *respiciamus*: hortatory subjunctive.——7. *Quid . . . animi*: *what feelings.*——*milibus lxxx*: Vercingetorix's army in Alesia.——10. *hos*: the army of relief.——15. *eorum*: the Gauls.——16. *animi causa*: *for amusement.*——17. *illorum*: the Gauls.——18. *his*: the Romans.——19. *eorum*: the Gauls.——*adventum*: emphatic position.——22. *Cimbrorum Teutonumque*: they ravaged Gaul and parts of Spain before they were destroyed by Marius; see page 29, line 12, and note on line 11.——27. *institui*: *be set.*——28. *quid*, etc.: *what resemblance had that war (to this)?*

PAGE 219

4. *alia condicione*: *on any other terms.*——6. *finitimam*: *the neighboring part of*, i. e. the Province.——7. *securibus*: *axes* were carried in the *fasces* (bundles of rods); these rods and axes were emblems of the authority of the Roman governors, carried before them by their attendants (*lictores*).

CHAPTER 78

12. *utendum, subeundam*: sc. *esse.*——14. *Mandubii*: the inhabitants of *Alesia*.——18. *receptos*: *to receive them and.*——19. *recipi prohibebat*: these poor wretches must have perished between the city and the Roman works. Yet we can hardly blame Caesar, who had not enough food for his own army.

CHAPTER 79

22. *colle exteriore*: southwest of the city; see plan after page 214, "Gallic army of relief."——26. *demonstravimus*: page 212, lines 7, 8.

PAGE 220

1. *Concurrunt*: i. e. the Gauls in the town.——3. *proximam*: nearest the city; see plan after page 214.

CHAPTER 80

6. *utramque partem*: i. e. on the inner and outer lines.——9. *cas-tris*: see plan after page 214, G, H, I, K.——11. *Galli . . . interie-cerant*: see page 179, line 6, and note.——15. *complures*: i. e. of Caesar's cavalry.——20. *ululatu*: see page 126, line 25.——22. *recte aut turpiter factum*: *a gallant or a cowardly act.*——25. *pugnaretur*:

the battle had been going on.—**Germanni**: see page 175, line 28, and note; page 209, lines 27–30, and note to line 29.—**27. sagittarii**: they could not keep up with the horses, as the Germans did; see page 36, line 27—page 37, line 5.—**29. cedentes**: used as noun.

CHAPTER 81

PAGE 221

3. spatio: *interval* (of time).—**4. harpagonum**: intended to pull down the Roman breastworks.—**5. campestres**: on the plain, west of the city.—**6. qua**: = *ut ea*.—**8. crates proicere**: in order to fill or cover the trench.—**9. vallo**: the outer Roman rampart, which extended from the Ose across the plain, and part way up the Flavigny Heights. Excavations have shown this to be so.—**14. fundis librilibus**: stones weighing a pound and having a short strap or rope attached, by which they were hurled.—**15. sudibus**: stakes pointed and hardened by fire, used for javelins; cf. *praecustae sudes*, page 128, line 18.

CHAPTER 82

24. stimulis: cf. page 215, line 15, and note on *taleae*.—**25. transfodiebantur**: *were impaled*.—**pilis muralibus**: heavy javelins thrown from the ramparts of a city or camp.—**28. superioribus castris**: on the Flavigny Heights, perhaps also on the high ground to the north.

PAGE 222

1. interiores: the Gauls in the city.—**2. fossas**: first f, f, f, on the plan after page 214, then two parallel *fossae* 400 ft. west (page 214, line 5); there were obstructions in the intervening space (ch. 73). *Priores fossas* would seem to mean merely the first trench, f, f, f.—**5. re infecta**: *without succeeding*.

CHAPTER 83

6. Bis: the first time is described in ch. 80.—**8. a septentriobus**: on the north, probably Mont Réa.—**11. declivi**: sloping to the south down toward the town and the plain.—**castra**: D on the plan.—**16. opinionem**: *reputation*.—**22. itinere**: on the plan, “Route of the Gallic army of relief”: **post montem**: behind Mont Réa.—**24. supra**: lines 8–12, above.—**26. campestres**: as at page 221, line 5.

CHAPTER 84

29. falces: see page 182, line 2, and note on *falces*. Roman methods and instruments had been adopted.

PAGE 223

1. *Pugnatur . . . temptantur*: chiasmus. —— 6. *post tergum pugnantibus*: *behind the backs of the combatants.* —— 7. *suum periculum*: *their own (deliverance from) danger.*

CHAPTER 85

10. *idoneum locum*: Plan, JC, shows where he may well have chosen his post of observation. —— 12. *Utrisque*: i. e. *Gallis et Romanis.* —— 13. *conveniat*: *it behooved them.* —— 17. *demonstravimus*: page 222, line 19, etc. —— 20. *Agger . . . coniectus*: fascines and rubbish were thrown into the Roman ditches to enable the Gauls to scale the ramparts.

CHAPTER 86

26. *deductis . . . pugnet*: *to draw off his cohorts and make a sally.*

PAGE 224

1. *Interiores*: the Gauls in the city, as at page 222, line 1. —— 2. *loca praerupta*: probably on the north side of Flavigny Heights. —— *ascensu temptant*: *try to scale.* —— 3. *ea*: their siege instruments; see page 222, line 29. —— 4. *propugnantes*: accusative; sc. *Romanos.* —— 5. *vallum, loricam*: see page 214, line 14, and note.

CHAPTER 87

7. *Brutum*: see page 68, line 28; page 70, line 27; page 173, line 7. —— 13. *circumire*: i. e. to make a flank movement and turn their rear.

CHAPTER 88

20. *colore*: what the ancients called purple, more nearly what we call scarlet, was the color of a general's *paludamentum*; see Introduction, page xxxvi. This being a chapter of vivid narrative, conjunctions are omitted as far as possible. —— 23. *haec decivia et devexa*: *these descending slopes.* Caesar went down the northwest slope of the Flavigny Heights, plainly seen by enemy. No smoke obscured ancient battles. —— 24. *excipit*: *follows.* —— 26. *rem gerunt*: *fight.* —— 27. *tergum*: sc. *hostium.*

PAGE 225

4. *Conspicati ex oppido*: = *Ei qui in oppido erant, conspicati.* —— 7. *Quod*: cf. page 10, line 8. *Quod si veteris*, etc., and note. —— *crebris subsidiis*: *by constantly relieving each other.*

CHAPTER 89

16. ad utramque rem: *for either alternative.*—**19.** Ipse: Caesar.—**20.** Vercingetorix deditur: *Plutarch says (Life of Caesar, 27): "Those who were in Alesia, having given themselves and Caesar much trouble, surrendered at last; and Vercingetorix, who was the chief spring of all the war, putting his best armor on, and adorning his horse, rode out of the gates, and made a turn about Caesar as he was sitting, then quitting his horse, threw off his armor, and remained quietly sitting at Caesar's feet, until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."*

The ancients were cruel to conquered heroes. Vercingetorix was kept in chains until he adorned Caesar's triumph at Rome in 45 B. C., after which he, as was customary in such cases, was put to death.—**22.** si: *to see whether.*—**23.** capita singula: *a captive apiece.*

CHAPTER 90

26. recipit: *recovered* to loyalty.—**28.** in hiberna: distributed so as to command the whole country, and to afford mutual support. There was now little danger of a general rebellion.

PAGE 226

6. Remis: see note to page 143, line 9.—**7.** Bellovacis: subdued the next year, B. C. 51; as we learn from Bk. VIII, ch. 6-23. The eighth book of the Gallic War was not written by Caesar, but by his officer Aulus Hirtius.—**15.** supplicatio: see page 61, line 17, and note

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

A

A., *Aulus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

ā, ab, abs [cf. Gr. ἄνθει, Eng. *of, off*],
adv. in comp. and preposition
with abl., *from, away from, out
of* [cf. ex]. Of place, *from, away
from*; of time, *from, after,
since*; of agency, *by, on the part
of*, *at the hands of*. In various
senses; e. g., *a dextro cornu,
on the right wing*; *a fronde, in
front*; *a milibus passuum viii;*
eight miles off, *away*.

abditus, -a, -um, p. p. of *abdo*.
abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [*ab-do,
put*], 3. v. a., *put away, remove,
put out of sight, hide, conceal;
se abdere, hide one's self*; *ab-
ditus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *hid-
den, remote*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [*ab-
duco*], 3. v. a., *lead away or off,
draw away, withdraw, take or
carry off* (of persons or animals,
which can move).

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus [*ab-eo*], irr.
v. n., *go away, retire, depart*.

abesse; see *absum*.

abiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [*ab-
iacio*], 3. v. a., *throw away, throw
down, hurl*.

abiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *abi-
cio*.

abiēs, -ietis, F., *fir-tree, spruce-tree
(or wood)*.

abiunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *abiun-
go*.

abiungō, -iungere, -iünxi, -iünctus
[*ab-iungo*], 3. v. a., *disjoin, sepa-
rate, detach*.

abs; see *ab*.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [*abs-
caedo*], 3. v. a., *cut off, cut away,
lop*.

abscīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *abscido*.

absēns, -entis, pres. part. of *ab-
sum*, *absent, in one's absence*.

absimilis, -e [*ab-similis*], adj., *un-
like*.

absistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p. [*ab-
sisto*], 3. v. n., *stand off, with-
draw, desist*.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus
[*abs-teneo*], 2. v. n., *hold off,
hold back, refrain or abstain from,
spare*.

abstrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *abs-
traho*.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus
[*abs-traho*], 3. v. a., *drag away
or off, carry off by force*.

absum, -esse, -āfūl, -āfūrūs [*ab-
sum*], irr. v. n., *be away, be absent,
be wanting; longe abesse, be
far away; a bello abesse, take
no part in the war*.

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*ab-
unda, a wave*], 1. v. n., *overflow,
abound in, be richly provided
with*.

ac; see *atque*.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus
[*ad-cedo*], 3. v. n., *come or go to,
approach, draw near, be added;
with quod or ut, there was also
the fact that, moreover, besides*.

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*ad-
celero*; cf. *celer*], 1. v. a. and n.,
hasten, make haste.

acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **accipio**, as adj., *pleasant, welcome, agreeable, beloved.*

accessus, -a, -um, p. p. of **accedo**.

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [**ad-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall, fall upon, fall to, befall, happen, occur, turn out*.

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [**ad-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut into, cut partly through.*

acciō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [**ad-capio**], 3. v. a., *take, receive, accept, get, learn, incur, suffer.*

acclivis, -e [**ad-clivus**], adj., *sloping toward, rising, up-hill, sloping upward.*

acclivitās, -tatis [**acclivis**], F., *upward slope, rise, ascent, steepness.*

Accō, -ōnis, M., a leader of the Senones.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad-commodo**], 1. v. a., *fit on, put on, adjust; accommodātus*, -a, -um, p. p., as adj., *suited, suitable, fitted, adapted.*

accūrātē [**accuratus, ad-cura**], adv., *carefully, with care, with pains.*

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurri), -cursum [**ad-curro**], 3. v. n., *run to, run up, hasten to.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad-causo**; cf. **causa**], 1. v. a., *call to account, accuse, charge, blame, find fault with, censure, reproach.*

ācer, -cris, -cre [cf. **acus, needle**], adj., *sharp, keen, active, enterprising.*

acerbē [**acerbus**], adv. *bitterly.*

acerbitās, -tatis [**acerbus**], F., *bitterness; plur., sufferings, hardships.*

acerbus, -a, -um [**acer**], adj., *bitter (to the taste or to the heart), cruel, hard, severe, harsh.*

ācerrimē, adv., superl. of **ācritē**.

acervus, -i, M., *a heap, a pile.*

aciēs, -ēi (gen. **aciē**, page 54, line 11) [cf. **acer**, etc.], F., *edge, point, sharpness of sight, keen looks; esp., of an army, line of battle, battle array.*

ācritē [**acer**], adv., *sharply, fiercely, hotly, vigorously, violently.*

āctuārius, -a, -um [**actus, movement**, fr. **ago**], adj., *easily moved or driven, swift; fast sailing (of ships having both oars and sails).*

āctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ago**.

acūo, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [cf. **acer, acus, needle, acies**], 3. v. a., *sharpen.*

acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **acuo**, as adj., *sharpened, sharp, pointed.*

ad, adv. in comp. and prep. with accus., *to, toward, in the direction of; at, near, by; among; till, until, against; for, in order to, for the purpose of; in regard to, according to; with modum, in; with numerals, about.*

a. d.; see *ante diem*.

adāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adigo**.

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad-aequus**], 1. v. a., *make equal to, make level with, equal, keep up with.*

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad-amō**], 1. v. a., *fall in love with, take a fancy to, covet.*

addō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [**ad-do**], 3. v. a., *give to, put to, add, join, annex.*

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [**ad-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead to, draw to, bring to; induce, influence, drive.*

adductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adduco**.

adēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adimo**.

adeō, -ire, -iī (-iī), -itus [**ad-eo**], irr. v. a. and n., *go to, come to, approach, draw near, visit, reach, encounter, accost, attack.*

adeō [**ad-eo** (thither)], adv., *to that point, to that extent, to that degree, so, so far, so much.*

adeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adipiscor**.

adequito, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [**ad-equito, ride**; cf. **eques**], 1. v. a. and n., *ride toward, ride up to.*

affectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adficio**.

adferō, *adferre, attulī, adlātus* [**ad-fero**], irr. v. a., *bring to, bring, carry, convey, deliver, offer, bring forward, allege, announce, occasion, cause.*

adficō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do something to, affect, treat, use, inflict upon, afflict with, visit with; passive, suffer, be affected or afflicted or treated with something.

adfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [ad-figo, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to, fix upon, attach to.

adfinō, -fingere, -finxī, -fictus [ad-fingo], 3. v. a., make up or invent in addition, add falsely.

adfinitās, -tatis [adfinis, ad-finis], F., nearness, relationship (especially by marriage), connection, alliance.

adfirmātiō, -ōnis [adfirmo, assert], F., assertion, declaration, assurance.

adfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of adfigo.

adflictō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-flico, frequent. of adfigo], I. v. a., dash against, strand, wreck, shatter, damage.

adflictus, -a, -um, p. p. of adfigo.

adfligō, -figere, -fixī, -fictus [ad-figo], 3. v. a., dash upon or against, throw or knock down, shatter, injure, damage.

adfore; see adsum.

adgradior, -gredi, -gressus [ad-gradior, step, walk], 3. v. dep., go to or toward or against, approach; attack, fall upon; attempt.

adgregō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-grego; cf. grex, flock], I. v. a., collect, gather, unite, assemble; se adgregare, gather around, flock to, join.

adhaerēō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesūrus [ad-haereo], 2. v. n., stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in).

adhaerēscō, -ere [ad-haeresco], 3. v. n., same meaning as adhaereo,

adhibeō, -äre, -ūi, -ūtus [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., have in, hold toward; call in, admit, summon; apply, use, employ.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [ad-hortor], I. v. dep., encourage, rouse, urge, rally.

adhūc [ad-huc], adv., hitherto, thus far, of place or time; till now, as yet, up to this time.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacui, no p. p. [ad-iaceo], 2. v. n., to lie near, border on, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -ī, M., a chief of the Sotiates.

adicio, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ad-facio], 3. v. a., throw to, hurl, cast; join to, add.

adiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio.

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus [ad-ago], 3. v. a., drive to, up, or in; move up; compel, force, bind.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [ad-emo, take], 3. v. a., take away, remove, deprive of.

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus [ad-apiscor, lay hold of], 3. v. dep., obtain, get, secure, acquire, win.

aditus, -ūs [ad-itus, cf. adeo], M., coming, arrival, approach, access, admittance, means of access.

adīudicō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-iudico], I. v. a., award, assign, adjudicate.

adiungō, -iungere, -iünxī, -iünctus [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., join to, attach to, unite to or with, annex to, add to.

adiūtor, -tōris [adiuvo], M., helper, assistant.

adiūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of adiuvo.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus [ad-iuvō], I. v. a., help, aid, assist, encourage.

adlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of adfero.

adlicere, -licere, -lexī, -lectus [ad-lacio, allure], 3. v. a., entice, allure, invite, attract.

admātūrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-matur], I. v. a., bring to ripeness, ripen, hasten, bring to a head.

administer, -tri [ad-minister, servant], M., helper, assistant, attendant, servant, minister; in religious rites, a celebrant.

administrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-ministro, serve], I. v. a., manage, carry on or out, execute, perform, direct.

admiror, -ārī, -ātus [ad-miror], I. v. dep., wonder at, be surprised at, admire; admirandus, -a, -um, as adj., surprising, astonishing;

- admiratus**, -a, -um, p. p., *surprised, wondering.*
- admissus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *admitto*.
- admittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go (to) ; commit, allow ; equo admisso, at full speed ; in se admittere, commit, incur.*
- admodum** [ad-modum], adv., *up to the limit, exceedingly, extremely, quite, very, fully, at least.*
- admonēo**, -ère, -ui, -itus [ad-moneo], 2. v. a., *warn, advise, urge, remind.*
- adolēscō**, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultus [ad-olesco, grow], 3. v. n., *grow up, mature.*
- adolēscēns**; see *adulescens*.
- adorior**, -oriri, -ortus [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., *rise up against, attack, assail, fall upon, attempt.*
- adortus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *adorior*.
- adpellō**, -are, -āvi, -ātus; see *appello*.
- adpellō**, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsus [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n., *land (ships), bring to land, bring in.*
- adpetō**, -petere, -petivi, -petitus [ad-peto], 3. v. a. and n., *seek after, strive for, desire ; approach, be at hand.*
- adplīcō**, -plīcāre, -plīcāvi (-ui), -plīcātus (-plīcitus) [ad-pllico, fold], I. v. a., *bend toward, join, attach ; with se, lean against.*
- adportō**, -portāc, -portāvi, -portātus [ad-porto, carry], I. v. a., *carry to, convey, bring.*
- adprobō**, -are, -āvi, -ātus [ad-probo, esteem good, cf. probus, good], I. v. a., *approve, agree with, favor, commend.*
- adpropinquō**, -are, -āvi, -ātūrus [ad-propinquo], I. v. n., *approach, draw near, come near.*
- adpusus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *adpello*.
- adquirō**, -quirere, -quīsivī, -quīsitus [ad-quaeoro], 3. v. a., *get in addition, get, obtain, procure.*
- adsciscō**, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus [ad-scisco, approve, fr. scio], 3. v. a., *join to one's self (by a for-*
- mal decision), attach, unite, receive, admit.*
- adsiduus**, -a, -um [ad-siduus, cf. sedeo, sit], adj., *sitting by, constant, continual, incessant, diligent.*
- adsistō**, -sistere, -stitti, no p. p. [ad-sisto, stand], 3. v. n., *stand by, assist, appear.*
- adsuēfaciō**, -facere, -fēci, -factus [ad-suetus, -facio], 3. v. a. and n., *accustom, train, familiarize.*
- adsuēfactus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *adsuefacio.*
- adsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus [ad-suesco, get accustomed], 3. v. n., *become accustomed, get used.*
- adsuētus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *adsuesco.*
- adsum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [ad-sum], irr. v. n., *be near, be at hand, be present, appear ; help, assist.*
- adulēscēns**, (adol-) -entis [p. of *adolesco*], adj., *young ; as noun, a young man, a youth.*
- adulēscēntia** (adol-), -ae, F., *youth (the period of youth).*
- adulēscēntulus** (adol-), -i, M., *a very young man, stripling.*
- adventus**, -ūs [ad-venio], M., *coming, arrival, approach.*
- adversariūs**, -a, -um [ad-versus from *verto*], adj., *turned toward or against, opposed, hostile ; as noun, opponent, foe, enemy, antagonist.*
- adversus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *adverto*.
- adversus** [*adverto*], prep. with acc., *against, opposite to.*
- adverto**, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ad-verto], 3. v. a., *turn to or toward ; animadvertere, turn attention to, notice ; see animadvertere ; turn against. Adversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned toward, facing, in front of, opposite, opposed, face to face, unfavorable ; res adversae, adversity, trouble ; adverso flumine, up-stream.*
- advocō**, -are, -āvi, -ātus [ad-voco], I. v. a., *call (to one's self), summon.*

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ad-volo], I. v. n., *fly to, hasten to; rush upon, fly at.*
 aedificium, -ī [cf. aediflico], N., *a building.*
 aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedes, house, -facio], I. v. a., *build (houses or ships).*
 aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, disabled, feeble.*
 aegerrimē, superl. of aegre.
 aegrē [aeger], adv., *feebly; with difficulty, barely, scarcely, hardly.*
 Aemilius, -ī, M., *Lucius Aemilius, a Gallic decurio commanding a squad of Gallic cavalry in Cæsar's army.*
 aequaliter [aequalis, aequus, even, equal], adv., *evenly, uniformly.*
 aequinoctium, -ī [aequus, nox], N., *equinox, the time when the days and nights are equal.*
 aequitās, -tatis [aequus, equal, just], F., *equality, equity, justice, fairness; aequitas animi, evenness of temper, composure, contentment, calmness.*
 aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aequus, equal, even], I. v. a., *equalize, make equal, put on an equality.*
 aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, equal, level; fair, just; favorable, advantageous, suitable; calm, composed (animus); on equal terms (contentio, Mars).*
 aerarius, -a, -um [aes, aeris], adj., *relating to copper; as noun, F., a copper mine.*
 aereus, -a, -um [aes, aeris], adj., *of copper, (made of) copper.*
 aes, aeris, N., *copper (as metal used in shipbuilding, or as money), money; aes alienum (another's money), debt.*
 aestās, -tatis, F., *(heat), summer.*
 aestimatiō, -ōnis [aestimo], F., *valuation, appraisal, esteem, worth.*
 a estimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *value, estimate, reckon, consider, determine, judge.*
 aestivalis, -a, -um [aestas], adj., *of summer, hot.*

aestuārius, -a, -um [aestus], adj., *relating to the tide; as noun, N., creek, inlet, marsh, estuary.*
 aestus, -tūs, M., *heat, boiling, tide, ebb and flow of the sea.*
 aetās, -tatis [shortened from aevitas; cf. aevum, age], F., *age, time of life.*
 aeternus, -a, -um [shortened from aeviternus; cf. aevum, age], adj., *everlasting, lasting, perpetual.*
 Africus, -a, -um, adj., *of Africa, African; sc. ventus, the S. W. wind blowing from Africa (to Italy).*
 āfuisse, āfutūrus; see absum.
 Agēdincum, -ī, N., chief town of the Senones, now Sens.
 ager, agrī, M., *land (tilled), field, country, territory, district.*
 agger, -eris [ad-gero], M., *(what is carried to a place), a mound, rampart, dike, terrace, embankment, mole; material for a mound (earth, timber, etc.).*
 agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of ago], I. v. a., *drive, chase; vex, harass; discuss, propose.*
 agmen, -minis [ago], N., *a march, line of march, an army on the march, a column; primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear; claudere agmen, to bring up.*
 agō, agere, ēgi, ēctus, 3. v. a., *set in motion, drive; direct, conduct; do, act; plead, discuss; vineas, etc., advance, move forward; praedam, drive off; conventus, hold; gratias, express, render.*
 alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *brisk, lively, quick, cheerful, active, spirited.*
 alacritās, -tatis [alacer], F., *eagerness, readiness, promptness, ardor, zeal.*
 alārius, -a, -um [ala, wing], adj., *belonging to the wings; used of the auxiliary troops stationed on the wings of an army; as noun, M. plur., auxiliaries, allies.*
 albus, -a, -um, adj., *white (dull white; shining white is candidus); plumbum album, tin.*

alcēs, -is, F., *elk*, a large deer in Germany.

Alesia, -ae, F., a city of the Mandubii, now *Aisne-Ste-Reine*.

aliās [alias], adv., *elsewhere, at another time*; alias . . . alias, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [alienus], i. v. a., *make another's, make strange, estrange, alienate, change*;

aliēnatā mente, *in a frenzy*.

aliēnus, -a, -um [alias], adj., *another's, others', other people's; strange, foreign, hostile, unfavorable, unfriendly, foreign to the purpose or subject*. *Aliēnissimii*, superl. as noun, *perfect strangers*.

aliō [alias], adv., *elsewhither, elsewhere, to another place*.

aliquamdiū [aliquam-diu], adv., *for some time*.

aliquandō [ali-, quando, when], adv., *at some time, at last*.

aliquantus, -a, -um [ali-, quantus], adj., *some, considerable*; neut. as noun, *somewhat, a good deal*; aliquantō, abl. of measure, *by a good deal, considerably*.

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod) [aliquis], indef. pronoun, *some, any*; as a noun, M., *some one, any one, anybody*; N., *something, anything*.

aliquot [ali-, quot], indecl. adj., *several, some*.

aliter [alias], adv., *otherwise, differently*; aliter . . . ac, *otherwise than*.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. pron., *another, other, different, else*; *alius atque, different from*; aliis . . . aliis, *one . . . another, the one . . . the other*; alii . . . alii, *some . . . others*.

all-; see **adl.**

Allobroges, -um, M. plur., a Celtic nation living between the Rhone and the Alps, in the N. E. part of the "Province."

alō, alere, alui, altus, 3. v. a., *nourish, feed, support, foster, raise, sustain, maintain, keep up, continue*.

Alpēs, -ium, F. plur., *the Alps*.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius or alterius, adj. pron., *one, or the other, of two; another, second*; alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other*; alteri . . . alteri, *one party . . . the other party*.

alternus, -a, -um [alter], adj., *by turns, alternate, mutual*.

altitūdō, -inis [altus], F., *height, depth, thickness (of timber)*.

altus, -a, -um [p. p. of alo], adj., *(grown high), high, deep*; as noun, altum, -i, N., *the deep (sea)*.

alūta, -ae, F., *soft leather*.

am-; see **ambi**.

ambactus, -i, M., *a vassal, retainer*.

Ambarri, -ōrum, M. plur., a Gallic tribe on the *Arar (Saône)*, connected with the Haedui.

ambi-, **amb-**, **am-**, **an-**, prep. in comp., *round, about*.

Ambiāni, -orum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now *Amiens*.

Ambibarii, -ōrum, M. plur., a small tribe in N. W. Gaul, on the coast.

Ambiliāti, -ōrum, M. plur., a small tribe south of the *Liger (Loire)*, near its mouth.

Ambiorix, -igis, M., a prince of the Eburones, who organized a dangerous revolt against Caesar, and destroyed part of his army under Sabinus and Cotta.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, M. plur., a small tribe on the upper *Loire (Liger)*, clients of the Haedui.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, on the left bank of the *Maas (Mosa)*.

ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., *both (together; uterque means both separately, each)*.

āmēns, -entis [ab-mens], adj., *mad, insane, crazy*.

āmentia, -ae [amens], F., *insanity, madness, folly, frenzy*.

āmentum, -i, N., *a thong, strap, attached to javelins to help in throwing them*.

amicitia, -ae [amicus], F., *friendship, alliance*.

- amicus, -a, -um [amo, love], adj., friendly, kindly disposed; as noun, M. or F., friend, ally.
- āmissus, p. p. of amitto.
- āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., send away, let go, lose.
- amor, -oris [amo, love], M., love, affection.
- amplē [amplus], adv., abundantly, largely, fully, widely, generously;
- amplius, compar., further, more, esp. with numerals, the case of which is not affected by this comparative.
- amplificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [amplus-facio], 1. v. a., enlarge, extend, increase.
- amplitūdō, -inis [amplus], F., size, extent, largeness, breadth, dignity.
- amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, great, wide, extensive, spacious, distinguished, splendid, noble; amplius, comp. as noun, N., more, a greater number.
- an, interrog. conj., introducing the second member of a double or alternative question, of which the first is not always expressed; or, or indeed, or rather; -ne . . . an or utrum . . . an, whether . . . or.
- an-; see ambi.
- Anartēs, -ium, M. plur., a nation in Dacia, east of the Hercynian forest.
- Ancalites, -um, M. plur., a nation of Britain.
- anceps, -cipitis [an- = ambi-caput], adj., double-headed, twofold, double; doubtful; proelium, a battle on two fronts, front and rear at once.
- ancora, -ae [Gr.], F., anchor; in ancoris, at anchor; tollere, to weigh anchor.
- Andebrogius, -i, M., a leading man of the Remi.
- Andes, -ium, M. plur., a nation north of the Loire (*Liger*), whose territory is now called Anjou.
- ānfrāctus, (āmf-) -ūs [ambi-, frangō], bending round, bend, curve, winding, circuit.
- angulus, -i, M., corner, angle.
- angustē [angustus], adv., narrowly, closely, scantily, sparingly.
- angustiae, -ārum [angustus], F. plur., narrows, narrowness, narrow place or pass; straits, difficulties, crisis.
- angustus, -a, -um [ango, squeeze], adj., narrow, contracted, confined, strait, close; in angustō, "in a tight place," in a crisis.
- anima, -ae, F., breath; life, soul, spirit.
- animadvertisō, -vertere, -verti, -versus (also separately animum ad-vertere), 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to; in aliquem, to punish; notice, observe, perceive.
- animal, -alis [anima], N., a living creature, animal.
- animus, -i [cf. anima], M., breath, life, soul; more usually soul, mind, feelings; spirit, temper, disposition; thoughts, will, purpose; resolution, courage; consciousness.
- annōtinus, -a, -um [annus], adj., last year's, a year old.
- annus, -i, M., year.
- annuus, -a, -um [annus], adj., yearly, annual.
- ānsler (or hānsler), -ens, M., goose.
- ante, adv. and prep. w. acc.: as adv., before, in front, previously; prep., before, in front of, in advance of; ante diem (= d.), on (such) a day before.
- anteā [ante eā], adv. (of time), before, previously, once, formerly.
- antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a., go before, go in advance, precede, excel, surpass.
- antecursor, -ōris [ante-cursor, a runner; curro, run], M., fore-runner, courier.
- anteferō, -ferre, -tūsus [ante-ferro], irr. v. a., carry in front, place in advance, forward.
- antemna, -ae, F., a yard (of a ship).
- antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ante-pono], 3. v. a., place in advance, prefer.

antequam, adv., *before*, with a clause; sometimes separately, **ante** with main clause, **quam** with the subordinate.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [*ante-vero*], 3. v. a., (*turn in front*), *prefer, place before*.

antiquitus [*antiquus*], adv., *in former times, in old times, anciently*.

antiquus, -a, -um [*ante*], adj., *old, ancient*.

Antistius, -i, M., *C. Antistius Re-ginus*, one of Caesar's *legati*.

Antōnius, -i, M., *M. Antonius*, the famous Mark Antony, one of Caesar's *legati*; *C. Antonius*, his brother, also a *legatus* of Caesar.

Ap., for *Appius*.

aperiō, -perire, -perui, -pertus [*ab-pario*], 4. v. a. (*get off*), *uncover, open, reveal*; **apertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*.

apertē [*apertus*], adv., *openly*.

apertus, -a, -um, p. p. of *aperio*.

Apollō, -inis, M., a god of the Greeks and Romans, son of Jupiter and Latona; god of medicine, and therefore identified by Caesar with the Gallic divinity of healing.

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-paro*], 1. v. a., and n., *make ready, prepare, put in order, provide*.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *call, name, address, accost, appeal to*.

Appius, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

Apr., *Aprilis*, -e [*aperio*], adj., (*the opening month of April*).

aptus, -a, -um, adj., *suited, fitted, adapted, fit, suitable*.

apud, prep. w. acc., *at, with, near, by, among, in the presence of, at the house of*.

aqua, *sae*, F., *water*.

aquatiō, -ōnis [*aqvor*, *fetch water*], F., *getting water*.

aquila, -ae, F., *eagle*; the standard of the Roman legions was an eagle on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, F., a Roman colony in *Venetia* (Cisalpine Gaul), at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

aquilifer, -erī [*aquila-fero*], M., *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer*.

Aquitānia, -ae, F., one of the three main divisions of Gaul, bounded by the "Province," the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., *Aquitanian*; as noun, M., *an Aquitanian*.

Arar, -aris, acc. -im, M., the *Sabine*, which rises in the Vosges Mountains, and runs into the Rhone at Lyons.

arbiter, -tri [*ad-bitō, go*], M., *a witness; a referee, an umpire*.

arbitrium, -i [*arbiter*], N., *decision, award, judgment, authority, will, pleasure*.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [*arbiter*], 1. v. dep., *decide, judge, think, suppose*.

arbor, -oris, F., *a tree*.

arcessō, -sere, sīvī, -situs [*accedo*], 3. v. a., *cause to come, summon, send for, call in, invite*.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus [*aridus*], 2. v. n., *be hot, be on fire, burn; be excited, burn with eagerness, be inflamed*.

Arduenna, -ae (*silva*), F., the *Ardenne*, a district of hills covered with forest, in N. E. Gaul.

arduuus, -a, -um, adj., *high, steep, difficult, hard*.

Arecomici, -ōrum, M. plur., a branch of the *Volcae*, in the "Province."

Aremoricus, -a, -um [*a Celtic word meaning by the sea*], adj., *Aremorican*, the name of the states in the N. W. of Gaul, in what is now Normandy and Brittany.

argentum, -i, N., *silver; silverware*.

argilla, -ae, F., *clay, potter's clay*.

āridus, -a, -um [*areo, be dry*], adj., *dry; as noun, āridum, -i, N., dry land*.

ariēs, -ietis, M., *a ram; a battering ram; a buttress, brace*.

Ariovistus, -i, M., a German king who had conquered part of Gaul along the Rhine.

Aristius, -i, M., *M. Aristius*, a tribune of the soldiers in Caesar's army.

arma, -ōrum, N. plur., *implements, equipment, arms, weapons, armor.* **armamenta**, -ōrum [**armo**], N. plur., *implements, equipment, tackle, rigging.*

armātūra, -ae [**armo**], F., *equipment; levis armaturae, light-armed.*

armō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [cf. **arma**], I. v. a., *equip, arm;* **armātūs**, -a, -um, p. p., as noun, **armāti**, -ōrum, M. plur., *armed men, soldiers.*

Arpinēiūs, -i [**Arpinum**, a town in Italy], M., *C. Arpineius*, Caesar's envoy to Ambiorix.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptus [**ad-rapiō**], 3. v. a., *snatch up, seize.*

arroganter [**arrogans, haughty**], *presumptuously, haughtily, insolently.*

arrogantia, -ae [**arrogans, haughty**], F., *insolence, presumption, pride.*

ars, artis, F., *skill, art, science, method, contrivance.*

artē [**artus, close, tight**], adv., *close-ly, tightly, firmly.*

articulus, -i [**artus, a joint**], M., *a little joint, a joint.*

artificium, -i [**artifex, artificer**], N., *a trade, employment, skill, trick, contrivance.*

artus, -a, -um [**arceo, confine, or aro, fit**], adj., *close, dense.*

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *Arvernian*; as noun, M. plur., *the Arverni*, a powerful Gallic nation, whose country is now Auvergne.

arx, arcis, F., *fortress, stronghold, citadel, a fortified height.*

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēn-sus [**ad-scando, climb**], 3. v. a. and n., *climb up, climb, go up, mount, scale, ascend.*

ascēnsus, -ūs [**ascendo**], M., *climbing, going up, ascent; means of ascent, way up, acclivity.*

aspectus, -ūs [**aspicio, ad-specio, look at**], M., *sight, look, appearance.*

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh; fierce, violent.*

at, conj., *but, yet, but yet, at least, on the other hand.*

atque (ac) [**ad-que**], conj., *and, and also, and even, and especially; after words of likeness and unlikeness, as, than.*

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatican*; as noun, **Atrebātes**, -um, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul, whose principal city, *Nemetocenna*, is now *Arras*.

Atrius, -i, M., *Q. Atrius*, an officer left in charge of the fleet on the coast of Britain.

attexō, -texere, -texui, -textus [**ad-texo, weave**], 3. v. a., *weave on, join by weaving, add.*

attingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tactus [**ad-tango**], 3. v. a., *touch upon, touch, reach; border upon, adjoin.*

attribuō, -buere, -buī, būtus [**ad-tribuo**], 3. v. a., *assign, allot.*

attuli; see **adfero**.

Atuatuca, -ae, F., a fortress of the Eburones.

Atuatuči, -ōrum, M. plur., a warlike tribe of German origin in Belgic Gaul, on the west bank of the *Maas (Mosa)*.

auctor, -ōris [**augeo**], *promoter, instigator, authority, voucher, adviser, approver, suggester.*

auctōritās, -tatis [**auctor**], F., *influence, weight, prestige, authority (not official), power.*

auctōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **augeo**. **audācia**, -ae [**audax, daring**], F., *boldness, daring, impudence, presumption.*

audācter [**audax, daring**], adv., *boldly, with daring, fearless-ly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus, 2. v. a. and n., semi-dep., *dare, risk, venture, undertake.*

audiō, -dīre, -divi, -ditus, 4. v. a., *hear, hear of, listen to; dicto audiens, obedient.*

auditiō, -ōnis, F., *a hearing, a report.*

augeō, *augēre, auxī, auctus*, 2. v. a., *increase, enlarge, magnify; advance, enrich.*

Aulercus, -a, -um, adj., *Aulerca*; as noun, *Aulerci*, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of Celtic Gaul in four branches: **Brannovices**, **Cēnomāni**, **Eburovices**, and **Dialblintes**.

Aulus, -i, M., a Roman praenomen. **auriga**, -ae [*aurea, bridle*, —ago?], *M., a charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, F., *ear.*

Aurunculēius, -i, M., *L. Aurunculēius Cotta*, one of Caesar's *legati*, killed by the Eburones.

Auscī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of *audeo*.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

autem, conj., *but, moreover, however, on the other hand, now.*

autumnus (*auct.*), -i [*augeo*], M., *(the season of increase), autumn.*

auxiliāris, -e [*auxilium*], adj., *aiding, assisting*; as noun M. plur., *auxiliary troops*.

auxiliōr, -ārī, -ātūs, i. v. dep., *help, assist, aid.*

auxilium, -i [*akin to augeo*], N., *aid, help, assistance, relief, remedy, resource*; plur., *auxiliary troops, reinforcements, allies.*

Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., *of Avaricum*; M. plur., *the people of Avaricum.*

Avaricum, -i, N., a town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges*.

avāritia, -ae [*avarus, greedy*], F., *greed, covetousness, avarice.*

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [*ab-veho, carry*], 3. v. a., *carry off, carry away.*

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *averto*.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [*ab-vertō*], 3. v. a., *turn away, turn aside; alienate, estrange; aversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away (with one's back to the enemy), retreating; aversi circumveniri, to be surrounded in the rear.*

avis, -is, F., *a bird.*

avus, -i, M., *a grandfather.*

Axōna, -ae, F., a river of Gaul (now *Aisne*), tributary of the Isara (*Oise*).

B

Bācēnis, -is, F. (*silva*), a forest in Germany, between the Cherusci and the Suebi.

Baculus, -i [*baculum, a staff, a stick*], M., *P. Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -e, adj., *Balearic*, belonging to the Balearic islands of the east coast of Spain; the inhabitants were famous slingers.

balteus, -i, M., *a belt, a baldric, usually passing over one shoulder.*

Balventius, -i, M., a centurion in Caesar's army.

barbaros, -a, -um, adj., *foreign (not Latin or Greek), uncivilized, barbarian, savage*; as noun, M. plur., *barbarians, savages, foreigners.*

Basilus, -i, M., *L. Minucius Basilus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Batāvi, -ōrum, M. plur., the *Batavians*, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, M. plur., the *Belgians*, a nation occupying the north of Gaul.

Belgium, -i, N., the country of the *Belgae*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [*bellum*], adj., *warlike, fond of war.*

bellicus, -a, -um [*bellum*], adj., *of war, military.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*bellum*], i. v. n., *make war, fight, carry on war.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, M. plur., a strong nation of Belgic Gaul, between the Seine, Somme, and Oise rivers, about the modern *Beauvais*.

bellum, -i [for *duellum*, cf. *duo*], N., *war, warfare, a war; gerere, to wage war; inferre, make war upon, invade; defendere, to defend one's self from war.*

bene [*bonus*], adv., comp. *melius*, superl. *optimē*, *well, successfully.*

beneficiūm, -i [bene-facio], N., *well-doing, a kindness, favor, service*; **beneficiō**, w. gen., *thanks to.*

benevolentia, -ae [benevolus, bene-volo], F., *well-wishing, goodwill, kind feeling, friendliness.*

Bibracte, -is, N., chief town of the Haedui, situated on *Mont Beuvray*, near Autun.

Bibrax, -ctis, F., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in S. E. Britain.

bīdūum, -i [bis-dies], N., *two days' time, two days.*

biennium, -i [bis-annus], N., *two years' time, a period of two years.*

Bigerriōnes, -um, M. plur., a tribe near the Pyrenees, whose name appears in *Bigorre*.

bini, -ae, -a [bis], distributive num. adj., plur., *two each, two by two, in pairs.*

bipedālis, -e [bis-pes], adj., *of two feet, two feet (long, wide, high, etc.).*

bipertitō [abl. of bi-partitus, divided in two; partior, divide], adv., *in two divisions.*

bis [for duis, fr. duo], adv., *twice.*

Bituriges, -um, M. plur., a nation of Celtic Gaul, across the Loire from the Haedui, around the city now called *Bourges*.

Boduōgnātus, -i, M., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōi (Bōii), -ōrum, M. plur., a Celtic nation, part of which joined the Helvetii in their emigration. The remnant of these settled with the Haedui.

bonitās, -tatis [bonus], F., *goodness, excellence; of land, fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. melior, superl. optimus, *good; as noun, N., good, profit, advantage; plur., goods, property, possessions.*

bōs, bovis, gen. plur., boum, M. or F., *bull, cow, ox; plur., cattle.*

bracchium, -i, N., *an arm; in particular, the forearm.*

Brannovīces, -um, M. plur.; see *Aulerci.*

Bratuspantium, -i, N., a stronghold of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified with any modern town.

brevis, -e, adj., *brief, short (of space or time); brevi, in a short time.*

brevitās, -tatis [brevis], F., *shortness; short stature.*

breviter [brevis], adv., *briefly, concisely, with few words.*

Britanni, -ōrum, M. plur., *the Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain.*

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain, Briton, British.*

brūma, -ae [brevima (brevissima), sc. dies], F., *the shortest day, the winter solstice.*

Brütus, -i [brutus, dull, heavy], M., *D. Junius Brutus*, a distinguished lieutenant of Caesar, afterward one of his assassins.

C

C, for centum, *a hundred.*

C, for Gaius.

Cabillōnum, -i, N., a town of the Haedui, on the Saône (*Châlon-sur-Saône*).

Cabūrus, -i, M., *C. Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship from C. Valerius Flaccus, after whom he and his two sons, Procellus and Domnotaurus, were named.

cacūmen, -inis, N., *the top, point, end, summit, peak.*

cadāver, -eris [cf. **cado**], N., *a corpse, a dead body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3. v. n., *fall, be killed.*

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Cadurci*, a tribe in Aquitania; M. plur., *the Cadurci.*

caedēs, -is [cf. **caedo**], F., *killing, slaughter, cutting down, murder, massacre.*

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus, 3. v. a., *strike down, cut down, fell, slay, kill.*

caelestis, -e [caelum, sky, heaven], adj., heavenly; as noun, **caelestes**, -ium, M. and F. plur., the gods.

Caemāni, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.

caerimōnia, -ae, F., a religious rite, ceremony.

Caerōsi, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., dark blue, deep blue.

Caesar, -aris, M., *C. Julius Caesar*, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of this book; *L. Julius Caesar*, his kinsman and lieutenant.

caespes, -itis, M., a sod, turf, used in fortifications.

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of caedo.

calamitās, -tatis, F., disaster, damage, loss, defeat, misfortune.

Caletes, -um, M. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.

Caleti, -ōrum, M. plur., the same as Caletes.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., skilful, cunning, shrewd, crafty.

cālō, -ōnis, M., a soldier's servant, a camp-follower.

campester, -tris, -tre [campus], adj., of the plain, level, flat.

campus, -i, M., a plain, level, open country.

Camulogenus, -i, M., an Aulerian, commander of the Parisii against Labienus.

Canīnius, -i, M., *C. Caninius Rebillus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus, 3. v. a. and n., sing, sound, or play with voice or instrument; receptui canere, to sound (for) a retreat.

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, M., of the Cantabrians, a warlike nation of northern Spain; M. plur., the Cantabrians.

Cantium, -i, N., Kent, the S. E. county of England.

caper, -pri, M., a goat.

capillus, -i, M., hair (of the head).

capiō, capere, cēpi, captus, 3. v. a., take, get, seize, capture; occupy, take possession of, gain; choose, select; arrive at, reach, "make"; to take in, deceive, beguile; to experience, suffer.

caprea (**capra**), -ae [caper], F., a she-goat, a roe (small deer).

captivus, -a, -um [**capiō**], adj., captured, captive; as noun, M., a prisoner, a captive.

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of **capiō**.

captus, -ūs [**capiō**], M., seizing, grasp; capacity, character.

caput, -itis, N., head; individual, person, man, life; mouth (of a river); **poena capitis**, death penalty.

careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, 2. v. n., be without, do without, want, lack, be deprived of.

carīna, -ae, F., keel, bottom (of a ship).

Carnutes, -um, M. plur., a nation about Orleans, between the Loire and the Seine.

carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat.

carpō, -pere, -psi, -ptus, 3. v. a., pluck; criticise, find fault with, censure, "pick to pieces."

carrum, -i, N., or **carrus**, -i, M., a (Gallic) cart, wagon.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, valuable, valued, precious.

Carvilius, -i, M., king of a part of Kent.

casa, -ae, F., a cottage, a hut, barrack.

cāseus, -i, M., cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Britain.

Cassiānus, -a, -um [**Cassius**], adj., of Cassius; bellum, the war in which Cassius was beaten and killed by the Tigurini, 107 B. C.

cassis, -idis, F., a (metal) helmet.

Cassius, -i, M., *L. Cassius Longinus*, consul in 107 B. C. See Cassianus.

Cassivellaunus, -i, M., a British chief, north of the Thames, leader of the army of the Britons.

castellum, -i [dimin. of *castrum*], N., *a redoubt, small fort, stronghold.*

Casticus, -i, M., *a chief of the Sequani.*

castrum, -i, N., *a fort; plur., castra, -ōrum, camp, encampment, the Roman camp being always fortified; quintis castris, in or after five days' march, lit., at the fifth camp.*

cāsus, -ūs [*cado*], M., *fall, what befalls, accident; event, occurrence, case; chance, mischance, misfortune.*

Catamantāloedēs, -is, M., *a chief of the Sequani.*

catēna, -ae, F., *a chain; either fetters for a prisoner, or a cable.*

Caturigēs, -um, M. plur., *a tribe living in the "Province."*

Catuvolcus, -i, M., *a chief of the Eburones.*

causa, -ae, F., *reason, cause, ground, motive; excuse (alleged reason), pretext, pretense; case, condition, situation; case (at law), cause, trial; causā after a gen., on account of, for the sake of.*

cautē [*cautus*, fr. *caveo*], adv., *cautiously, with prudence.*

cautēs, -is, *rock (sharp or jagged), cliff, crag, reef.*

cautus, -a, -um, p. p. of *caveo*.

Cavarillus, -i, M., *a chief man of the Haeduī.*

Cavarinus, -i, M., *a chief of the Senones, made king by Caesar.*

caveō, *cavēre, cāvī, cautus, 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, take care; guard against, beware of; give or take security.*

Cebenna, -ae, F., *the Cevennēs, a region of mountains and forest between the Arverni and the "Province."*

cēdō, *cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3. v. n., give way, retreat, retire, yield, go away, withdraw; cedētēs, pres. p. as noun, M. plur., the retreating enemy.*

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, quick, speedy, fast, rapid, sudden.*

celeritās, -tātis [*celer*], F., *swiftness, speed, rapidity, quickness.*
celeriter [*celer*], adv., *quickly, swiftly, very soon, immediately.*
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *hide, conceal, keep secret.*

Celtae, -ārum, M. plur., *the Celtic race, which inhabited Gaul and Britain and some other parts of the world; in particular, the people of the great central division of Gaul.*

Celtillus, -i, M., *an Arvernian, father of Vercingetorix.*

Cēnabēnsēs, -ium, M. plur., *the people of *Cenabum*.*

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -i, N., *the chief town of the Carnutes, now *Orléans* (from the later name *urbs Aurelianensis*).*

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum, M. plur., *a tribe in Britain.*

Cēnomāni, -ōrum, M. plur., *a division of the Aulerci.*

cēnseō, *cēnsēre, cēnsūi, cēnsus, 2. v. a., reckon, estimate, give or be of an opinion, think, judge, determine, decree, resolve.*

cēnsus, -ūs [*censeo*], M., *count, reckoning, enumeration, census, registration.*

centum (C), indecl. num. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis [*centuria, a hundred*], M., *a centurion (commander of a century), one of the two commanders of a maniple (company).*

cernō, *cernere, crēyī, crētus or certus, 3. v. a., separate; distinguish, see, perceive; decide, determine, resolve.*

certāmēn, -inis [*certo, struggle, contend*], N., *contest, struggle, rivalry, competition.*

certē [*certus*], adv., *certainly, surely; at least, at any rate.*

certus, -a, -um [p. p. of *cerno*], adj., *fixed, determined, definite, sure, certain, regular, established, reliable; certiōrem facere, to inform; certior fierī, to be informed, learn.*

cervus, -i, M., *a stag*; in military engineering, a kind of obstruction, like stag's horns, *chevaux-de-frise*.

(ceterus), -a, -um, adj., *the rest of, the remainder of*; usually plur., *the rest, the others, all else*; neut., *everything else*.

Ceutrones, -um, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul; another tribe in the Graian Alps, in the eastern part of the "Province."

Cherusci, -orum, M. plur., a German nation north of the Suebi, between the Weser and the Elbe.

cibarius, -a, -um [cibus], adj., *pertaining to food*; as noun, N. plur., **cibaria**, -orum, *provisions, rations; molita, ground grain*.

cibus, -i, M., *food*.

Cicerō, -onis, M., *Q. Tullius Cicerō*, brother of the great orator, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Cimberius, -i, M.. a chief of the Suebi.

Cimbri, -orum, M. plur., a German nation from Jutland, who joined the Teutons and overran Gaul; defeated by Marius and Catulus in 103 and 102 B. C.

Cingetorix, -igis, M., 1. a chief of the Treviri, loyal to Caesar and rival of Indutiomarus ; 2. a Briton chief in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctus, 3. v. a., *surround, encircle, enclose, invest*.

cippus, -i, M., *stake, post, pillar*.

circinus, -i, M., *a pair of compasses*.

circiter [circus, circle], adv. and prep. w. acc., *around, about, near*.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumeo.

circuitus, -tūs [circumeo], M., a *going round, circuit, roundabout way, way round, circumference*.

circum [circus, circle], adv. and prep. w. acc., *around, about, in the neighborhood of*.

circumcidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus [circum-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut around, cut; circumcisus*, -a,

-um, p. p. as adj., *collis, isolated or inaccessible, steep*.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [circum-claudio], 3. v. a., *enclose, encircle, hem in, shut in*.

circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datus [circum-do], 1. v. a., *put around; encircle, surround; murus circumdatus* (a wall put around a city, etc.), *an encircling wall*.

circumducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [circum-duco], 3. v. a., *lead around, draw around*.

circumductus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumduco.

circu(m)eō, -ire, -ii, -itus [circum-eo], irr. v. n., *go around*; in active sense, *visit, make a round or tour of, inspect*.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., *pour around, surround; passive, flock or crowd around, pour or rush in from all sides*.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw around, cast or place around*.

circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumicio.

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., *send around*.

circummuniō, -ire, -iūi, -itus [circum-munio], 4. v. a., *fortify around, wall up, hem in*.

circummunitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circummunio.

circumplexor, -plectī, -plexus [circum-plecto, twine], 3. v. dep., *embrace, surround, encompass, enclose*.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stiti, no p. p. [circum-sisto, place (one's self)]), 3. v. a., *stand around, rally round, surround*.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [circum-specio, look], 3. v. a., *look around for; consider, think about, ponder*.

circumvällō, -äre, -ävī, -ätus [circum-vallo, intrench], 1. v. a., *surround with intrenchments, invest*.

circumvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumveho**.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [*circum-veho, carry*], 3. v. a., *carry around; pass., ride or sail around.*

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [*circum-venio*], 4. v. a., *come around; surround, invest; ensnare, deceive, betray.*

circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circumvenio*.

cis, adv. and prep. with acc., *on this side, this side of.*

Cisalpinus, -a, -um [*cis-Alpes*], adj., *on this side of the Alps, Cis-alpine.*

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um [*cis-Rheum*], adj., *on this side of the Rhine (toward Gaul); plur. as noun, the people on this side of the Rhine.*

Cita, -ae, M., *C. Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight, in business at Cenabum.

citer, -ra, -rum [cf. *cis*], adj., *on this side.—Usually citerior, -ius (comparative), hither, nearer.*

citō [citus, fr. *cieo*, *put in motion*], adv., *rapidly, quickly; superl., citissimē, with the utmost speed.*

citrā [*citer*], adv. and prep. with acc., *on this side of, within.*

citrō [*citer*], adv., *at this side; ul-trō citrōque, to and fro, back and forth.*

civis, -is, M. and F., *a citizen, a fellow citizen.*

civitās, -tatis, F., *citizenship (especially Roman); body of citizens, city, state, community, nation (politically).*

clam, adv. and prep. with abl., *secretly, unknown to.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of *clamo*, *shout*], I. v. a., *cry out loudly or repeatedly, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris [*clamo, shout*], M., *shout, cry, outcry.*

clandestinus, -a, -um [*clam, secretly*], adj., *secret, hidden, clandestine.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear; famous, renowned; of the voice, loud, distinct.*

classis, -is, F., *a fleet.*

Claudius, -ī, M., *A. Claudius Pulcher, praetor in 57 B. C., consul 54 B. C., brother of the demagogue Clodius.*

claudō, *claudere*, *clausī*, *clausus*, 3. v. a., *shut, close; agmen, bring up the rear.*

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of *claudio*.

clāvus, -ī, M., *nail, spike.*

clémentia, -ae, [*clemens, mild*], F., *kindness, gentleness, mildness, humanity.*

cliēns, -entis [*cluens*, p. of *clueo, hear, obey*], C., *a dependent, retainer, vassal, adherent.*

clientēla, -ae [*cliens*], F., *clientship, vassalage; protection; plur., clients, body of clients, dependencies.*

clivus, -ī [cf. *clino, lean*], M., *slope, acclivity or declivity, hill.*

Clōdius, -ī (= *Claudius*), P. *Clodius*, the demagogue, a bitter enemy of Cicero, killed by Milo.

Cn., for *Gnaeus*.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*con-acervo, heap up*], I. v. a., *heap together, pile up, accumulate.*

coāctus, p. p. of *cogo*.

coāctus, -tūs [*cogo*], M., *compulsion.*

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *join or fasten together.*

coarto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*con-ar(c)to, squeeze*], I. v. a., *press or crowd together.*

Cocosātes, -um, M. plur., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*con-emo*], 3. v. a., *buy up.*

coēō, -ire, -ivī (ii), no p. p. [*con eo*], irr. v. n., *go or come together, meet, unite.*

coepī, -isse, -coepus, def. v. a., *begin, commence.*

coepus, -a, -um, p. p. of *coepi*.

coērceō, -ercēre, -ercūl, -ercitus [con-arceo, confine], 2. v. a., *confine, restrain, check, keep back.*
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-agito], 1. v. a., *revolve, discuss, meditate, consider; intend, plan, design.*
cōgnātiō, -ōnis [con-gnatio, birth], F., *kinship, connection by birth; family, kinsfolk.*
cōgnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *cog-noscō.*
cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitūs [con-gnosco, learn], 3. v. a., *become acquainted with, learn, ascertain; know, recognize; inquire into, investigate.*
cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus [conago], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, gather; compel, force.*
cohors, -hortis, F., *a cohort, one of the ten divisions of a legion.*
cohortātiō, -ōnis [cohortor], F., *an encouraging, encouragement, an address to soldiers before battle.*
cohortor, -ārl, -ātus [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., *encourage, cheer, rally, urge, exhort.*
coll-; see *conl.*
colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [con-lego, gather], 3. v. a., *gather together, collect, assemble; sē colligere, to gather or come together; recover one's self; rally.*
collis, -is, M., *a hill.*
colō, colere, colui, cultus, 3. v. a., *till, cultivate (land); honor, pay court to, worship (persons, gods).*
colōnia, -ae [colonus, settler, from colo], F., *colony, settlement.*
color, óris, M., *color; of persons, complexion.*
com- (con-, co-) [= cum], adv. in composition, *with, together; often merely intensive with the idea of thoroughly, completely.*
combūrō, -būrere, -bussī, -būstus [con-buro, burn; cf. uro], 3. v. a., *burn, burn up, consume.*
comes, -itis, M. and F., *companion, comrade.*
comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *comitor.*

comitium, -I, N., *assembly-place, part of the Forum at Rome; plur., comitia, -ōrum, an assembly of the people at Rome, an election.*
comitor, -ārl, -ātus [comes], 1. v. dep., *accompany, attend, follow.*
commeātus, -tūs [com-meatus, fr. commeo], M., *going to and fro, back and forth, trip, journey, voyage, communications, supplies.*
commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [commemoro, call to mind], 1. v. a., *remind some one of something, call to mind, mention.*
commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [commando, commit], 1. v. a., *commit, intrust, recommend.*
commentārius, -i [commentor, think over], M., *note-book, memorandum, memoir.*
commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [commeo, go], 1. v. n., *go back and forth, to and fro, visit, resort to.*
commilitō, -ōnis [com-miles], M., *fellow soldier, comrade in arms.*
comminus [com-manus], adv., *hand-to-hand, at close quarters.*
commissūra, -ae [committo], F., *joint, seam.*
commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *committo.*
committō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [con-mitto], 3. v. a. (*let go together*), *join, connect, unite, attach; intrust, put into one's hands; admit, suffer, allow (to happen), commit (do), perpetrate.*
Commius, -i, M., *a chief of the Atrebates, for a long time loyal to Caesar.*
commodē [commodus], adv., *conveniently, advantageously, fitly, readily, easily.*
commodus, -a, -um [com-modus], adj., *convenient, fit, suitable, proper, advantageous, easy; as noun, commodum, -i, N., profit, advantage, interest, comfort, convenience.*
commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus [com-moneo-facio], 3. v. a., *remind, admonish.*

commoror, -ārī, -ātus [com-moror],
I. v. dep., stay, remain, linger,
delay.

commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **com-**
moveo.

commōveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-
tus [com-moveo], 2. v. a., move,
disturb, agitate, alarm, disquiet,
excite, influence.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-
munis], I. v. a., share, divide
with, impart; consilia, take
common counsel.

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [com-
munio], 4. v. a., fortify (strong-
ly), intrench.

commūnis, -e [com-munus, or
munis, duties], adj., common, in
common, public, general.

commūtatiō, -ōnis [commuto], F.,
change, alternation, turn (of the
tide).

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-
muto, change], I. v. a., change,
alter, exchange.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-
paro], I. v. a., get ready, pre-
pare, procure, get together, ac-
quire, gain.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-
par, like], I. v. a. (pair), com-
pare, match.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus
[com-pello], 3. v. a., drive to-
gether, collect, constrain, com-
pel.

compendium, -ī [com-pendo].
N., gain, profit, saving, advan-
tage.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertus
[com-pario], 4. v. a. (get togeth-
er), learn, discover, find out, get
knowledge of, ascertain.

complector, -plectī, -plexus [com-
plete, fold, twine], 3. v. a.,
clasp, embrace, surround, inclose,
include.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus
[com-pleo], 2. v. a., fill, fill up,
fill full, complete, corroborate
(mountain), man (walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of **com-**
plexor.

complūrēs, -plūra (-ia) [com-plus],
adj., plur., several, a good many,
quite a number.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-
porto], I. v. a., bring together,
collect, bring in.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī,
-hensus [com-prehendo], 3. v.
a., catch, seize, grasp, capture,
arrest, lay hold of or hands on.

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-
probo], I. v. a., approve (fully),
justify, sanction, vindicate.

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **com-**
pello.

cōnātūm, -i [p. p. of **conor**, as
noun], N., attempt, undertaking.

cōnātus, -ūs [conor], M., attempt,
effort.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus
[con-cedo], 3. v. a. and n., give
up, yield, allow, grant, permit;
withdraw, depart.

concertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [con-
certo, contend], I. v. n., contend,
strive.

concessus, -ūs [concedo], M., (a
yielding), concession, permission,
leave.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p.
[con-cado], 3. v. n., fall, per-
ish.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [con-
caedo], 3. v. a., cut up, cut to
pieces, cut down, slay.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. cō-
cilium], I. v. a., bring together,
win over, gain, make friendly.

concilium, -ī, N., meeting, assem-
bly, council.

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **con-**
cido.

concītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-cito],
I. v. a., rouse, stir up, excite, call
on, provoke.

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-
clamo, cry out], I. v. n., shout,
cry out, cry aloud.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus
[con-claudo], 3. v. a., shut up,
shut in, confine, enclose.

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, M., a chief
of the Carnutes.

concōpō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitū [con-crepo, rattle], 1. v. n., *rattle, clash.*

concōtūō, -currere, -currī (-cucurri), -cursus [con-curro], 3. v. n., *run together, run up, rush in, charge.*

concursoō, -āre [freq. of concurro], 1. v. n., *run to and fro, run about.*

concursus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concurro**.

concursus, -sūs [concurro], M., *running to and fro, rushing together, charge, shock (of battle), onset, attack.*

condēmnoō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-damno], 1. v. a., *condemn, find guilty.*

condiciōō, -ōnis [con-dico], F., *terms, stipulation, agreement, condition, state, situation.*

condōnōō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-dono], 1. v. a., *give up, pardon, excuse, forgive.*

Condrūsi, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, on the Meuse or Maas, clients of the Treviri.

condūcōō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [con-duco], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, hire.*

confectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conficio**.

confaciōō, -fercire, -fersi, -fertus [con-farcio, stuff, cram], 4. v. a., *crowd together; confertus, -a, -um, p. p., crowded, close, dense, compact, in close array, in a solid mass.*

conferōō, -ferre, -tulī, -latus [con-fero], irr. v. a., *bring together, gather, collect; compare; postpone; se conferre, betake one's self.*

confertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conficio**.

confestim [cf. festino, hasten], adv., *immediately, forthwith, in haste, speedily.*

conficiōō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [con-facio], 3. v. a., *do thoroughly, accomplish, finish, perform; bring to an end, exhaust, wear out; work up, compose.*

cōfidōō, -fidere, -fisus sum [con-fido, trust], 3. v. n. semi-dep., *trust (fully), rely on, have confidence in;* **cōfisus**, -a, -um, p. p. in active sense, *relying on, trusting in.*

cōfigōō, -figere, -fīxi, -fixus [con-figo, fix], 3. v. a., *fasten together, fasten, join.*

cōfinis, -e [con-finis], adj., *bordering on, adjoining, neighboring.*

cōfinium, -i [con-finis], N., *border, boundary, frontier, limit.*

cōfīōō, -fieri, -fectus [con-fio], irr. v. n. (sometimes used as pass. of **conficio**), *be done, be accomplished.*

cōfirmātiōō, -ōnis [con-firmo], F., *assurance, assertion.*

cōfirmōō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-firmo], 1. v. a., *strengthen, establish, confirm; encourage; assert, declare; sē confirmāre, resolve.*

cōfisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **confido**.

cōfiteor, -fīterī, -sessus [con-fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., *confess, acknowledge.*

cōfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **configo**.

cōflagrōō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-flagro, blaze], 1. v. n., *be in flames, be on fire, burn.*

cōflictōō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of configo], 1. v. a., *strike or dash together (violently), dash against, assail, harass.*

cōfigōō, -figere, -fīxi, -fictus [con-figo, strike], 3. v. a. and n., *dash or strike together; contend, fight.*

confiuēns, -entis [pres. p. of con-fluo], M., *a meeting of two rivers, confluence.*

cōfluoō, -fluere, -flūxi, no p. p. [con-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow together; flock together.*

cōfugiōō, -fugere, -fūgi, no p. p. [con-fugio], 3. v. n., *flee, flee for refuge, take refuge.*

cōfūneōō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus [con-fundeo], 3. v. a., *pour together, mingle, mix, confuse, combine, unite.*

congredior, -*gredi*, -*gressus* [**congradior**, *step*], 3. v. dep., *come together, meet; unite with; encounter, fight with, engage (in battle with)*.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **congredior**.

congressus, -*sūs* [**congredior**], M., *meeting, encounter, engagement*.

cōniciō (-*iicio*) or **cōcīō**, -*cere*, -*icēi*, -*iectus* [**con-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw together, cast, hurl; place, station; put (ideas) together, infer*.

coniectūra, -ae [**conicio**], F., *guess, conjecture, inference*.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conicio**.

coniūctim [**con-iungo**], adv., *jointly, in common, unitedly*.

coniūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coniungo**.

coniungō, -*iungere*, -*iūnxī*, -*iūnctus* [**con-iungo**], 3. v. a., *join together, unite, connect; coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, connected, allied*.

coniūnx (**coniux**), -*iugis* [**conjugum, yoke, or iungo**], M. and F., *spouse, husband or wife, generally wife*.

coniūratiō, -*ōnis* [**coniuro**], F., *(union formed by an oath) conspiracy, plot, confederacy*.

coniūrō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*, I. v. n., *swear together, take a common or mutual oath; conspire, plot*.

conlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **confero**.

conlaudō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus* [**conlaudo**], I. v. a., *praise, commend, extol*.

conligō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus* [**con-ligo, bind**], I. v. a., *fasten together*.

conlocō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus* [**con-loco, place**], I. v. a., *place, station, set, lay, arrange; give in marriage*.

conloquium, -i [**conloquor**], N., *conversation, talk, interview, par-*
law conference

con- + **locūtus** [**conlocō**, *talk together*]

converse, confer, have an interview.

cōnor, -*āri*, -*ātus*, I. v. dep. *try, attempt, strive, endeavor, undertake*.

conquiēscō, -*quiēscere*, -*quiēvi*, *quiētūrus* [**con-quiesco, rest**], 3. v. n., *rest, repose*.

conquirō, -*quirere*, -*quisivī*, -*qui-*
sitūs [**con-quaero**], 3. v. a., *search for, seek, seek out, hunt up, bring together, procure*.

conquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conquirō**.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [**con-sanguinis**], adj., *of one blood, akin, kindred, related; as noun, a relative, kinsman*.

cōnsendō, -*scendere*, -*scendi*, -*scēnsus* [**con-scando, climb**], 3. v. a., *mount, ascend, go on board (ship), embark*.

cōnscientia, -ae [**con-scio, know**], F., *knowledge (in common), priv-*
ity, consciousness, conscience.

cōnsiscō, -*sciscere*, -*scivī*, -*scītūs* [**con-scisco, decree**], 3. v. a., *de-*
cide, resolve, decree, appoint; sibi
mortem consiscere, commit sui-
cide.

cōnscius, -a, -um [**con-scio, know**], adj., *knowing, conscious, aware of*.

cōnscribō, -*scribere*, -*scripti*, -*scriptus* [**con-scribo**], 3. v. a., *write, enroll, enlist, levy*.

cōnscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **con-**
scribo.

cōnsecrō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus* [**con-**
sacro, hallow], I. v. a., *make sacred or holy, consecrate*.

cōnsector, -*āri*, -*ātus* [*freq. of*
consequor], I. v. a., *pursue, fol-*
low up, overtake.

cōnsecutus, -a, -um, p. p. of **con-**
sequor.

cōnsēnsiō, -*ōnis* [**consentio**], F., *agreement, unanimity, consent, harmony*.

cōnsēnsus, -*sūs* [**consentio**], M., *agreement, harmony, united opin-*
ion.

cōnscientiō, -*sentire*, -*sensi*, -*sēnsū-*
re [**con-sentio**], *think alike, make same* *cause*.

cōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus [con-sequer], 3. v. dep., follow, pursue, overtake; obtain, join, attain, succeed in.

cōservo, -are, -āvi, -ātus [con-servo], 1. v. a., save, spare, protect; observe, respect, maintain.

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., P. *Considius*, one of Caesar's officers.

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessūrus [con-sido, sit], 3. v. n., sit down; halt, encamp, take position, settle.

cōnsilium, -ī [cf. *consulo*], N., consultation, deliberation, council of war; advice, counsel; plan, purpose, design; prudence, discretion.

cōnsimilis, -e [con-similis], adj., very like, just like, quite like.

cōsistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p. [con-sisto, take one's stand], 3. v. n., take a position, post one's self, halt, stop; remain, stay; (of ships) run aground, depend on, consist of.

cōsōbrinus, -ī [con-soror; sister], M., (son of a mother's sister), cousin (often used of any first cousin).

cōsōlor, -ārī, -ātus [con-solor, con-fort], 1. v. dep., cheer, comfort, console.

cōspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conspicio*.

cōspectus, -tūs [conspicio], M., sight; presence.

cōspicīō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [con-specio, look at], 3. v. a., espy, perceive, see, behold, observe.

cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus [con-specio, see, look at], 1. v. dep., catch sight of, espy, descry, behold.

cōspirō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [con-spiro, breathe], 1. v. n., agree, conspire, plot or league together.

cōstanter [*constans*, pres. p. of *consto*], adv., steadily, uniformly, consistently, resolutely, firmly, constantly.

cōstantia, -ae [*constans*, pres. p. of *consto*], F., firmness, courage, resolution, steadiness, perseverance.

cōnsterñō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-sterno, throw to the ground], 1. v. a., overwhelm, alarm, dismay, frighten.

cōnsterñō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [con-sterno, strew], 3. v. a., strew over, cover; (of ships) deck.

cōnstipō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [con-stipo, press], 1. v. a., crowd, cram, crowd together.

cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtus [con-statuo], 3. v. a. and n., set up, establish, place, station, draw up; stop, moor (ships); determine, fix, settle, resolve, decide; offer (rewards).

cōnstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus [con-sto], 1. v. n., stand together; agree (of accounts); be established, agreed upon, evident, certain; cost; depend on.

cōstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *con-sterno*.

cōsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [con-suesco, get accustomed], 3. v. n., become accustomed; in perf. tenses, be accustomed, used, wont; **cōsuētus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., accustomed, used, wont.

cōsuētūdō, -inis [cf. *consuesco*], F., habit, custom; manners, practice.

cōsuētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *con-suesco*.

cōsul, -ulīs, M., consul. The chief magistrates at Rome were two consuls, elected annually. In the ablative absolute, with proper names, in the consulship of, etc., the usual way of expressing dates.

cōsulātus, -tūs [consul], M., consulship.

cōsulō, -sulere, -sulūi, -sultus, 3. v. a. and n., consult, take advice of; deliberate, take counsel; look out for, have regard for (the interests of some one).

cōsultō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of *consulo*], 1. v. n., consult, deliberate, reflect, consider, take measures.

cōsultō [abl. of p. p. **consultus**, fr. **consulo**], adv., *deliberately, purposely, intentionally, designedly.*
consultus, -i [p. p. **consultus**, fr. **consulo**], N., *a decision (after deliberation), resolution, decree, order.*
cōsūmō, -sūmēre, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus [**con-sumo**], 3. v. a., *take, consume, devour, waste, exhaust, use up, destroy.*
cōsūmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consumo**.
cōsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus [**con-surgo**, *rise*], 3. v. n., *rise (together), rise, stand up.*
contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-tabulo**; *tabula, a board*], 1. v. a., *build of boards, build with floors, or in stories, floor over (with boards).*
contāgiō, -ōnis [**con-tango**], F., *touch, contact; esp., contagion.*
contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-(tagmen) tango**], 1. v. a., *bring into contact, mix; contaminate, defile, pollute; implicate (in guilt).*
contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [**con-tego**], 3. v. a., *cover up.*
contemno, -temnere, -tempstī, -temp-tus [**con-temno**, *scorn*], 3. v. a., *despise, scorn, have contempt for.*
contemptō, -ōnis [**contemno**], F., *scorn, slighting, despising, contempt.*
contemptus, -tūs [**contemno**], M., *scorn, contempt; contemptui esse, be an object of scorn, be despised.*
contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [**con-tendo**], 3. v. n., *strain, strive, struggle, exert one's self, make effort; press on, hasten, push forward; fight, contend; maintain, insist.*
contentō, -ōnis [**contendo**], F., *effort, struggle; contest, dispute, controversy, fight.*
contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **contendo**.
contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **contineo**.

contexō, -texere, -texūi, -textus [**con-texo**, *weave*], 3. v. a., *weave together, interweave, join; weave.*
continēns, pres. p. of **contineo**.
continenter [**continens**], adv., *without interruption, continuously, continually, constantly.*
continentia, -ae [**continens**], F., *(holding together), self-restraint, moderation, temperance.*
contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [**con-teneo**], 2. v. a., *hold together, hold in, restrain, hold in check; hem in, bound, border, include; hold on to; continēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., continual, continuous, contiguous; self-restrained, moderate; as noun, the mainland, continent; contentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied, contented.*
contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [**con-tango**], 3. v. a. and n., *touch, reach, extend to, join; happen, befall.*
continuātiō, -ōnis [**continuo**], F., *continuation, (unbroken) succession.*
continuō [**continuu**], adv., *immediately, forthwith, straightway, directly.*
continuus, -a, -um [**contineo**], adj., *uninterrupted, continuous, successive.*
cōntiō, -ōnis [prob. **conventio**], F., *an assembly, meeting; an address, harangue, speech to an assembly or a crowd of soldiers.*
contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *opposite, over against, against, contrary to, in spite of, in reply to; differently, on the other hand; contrā atque, otherwise than.*
contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [**con-traho**], 3. v. a., *bring or draw together, gather, collect; draw in, narrow, make smaller.*
contrārius, -a, -um [cf. **contra**], adj., *opposite, opposed to, contrary; ex contrāriō, on the contrary.*
contrōversia, -ae [**controversus**, *turned against*], F., *dispute, quarrel, debate.*

contumēlia, -ae, F., *insult, abuse, outrage, indignity, affront; violence.*

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no p. p. [con-valeo], 3. v. n., *get well or strong, recover.*

convallis, -is [con-vallis]. F., *valley, ravine, defile.*

convectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conveho**.

convehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [con-veho], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect.*

conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., *come together, assemble, meet, fall in with; be agreed upon; be suitable, becoming, fit.*

conventus, -tūs [convenio], M., *meeting, assembly; court, assizes.*

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **convertō**.

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [con-vertō], 3. v. a., *turn around, turn about, turn, change; face about (with signa), change front, wheel.*

Convictolitavis, -is, M., a prominent young Haedian noble.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **convincō**.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus [con-vinco], 3. v. a., *(conquer completely), confute, convict, establish (a charge), prove, show clearly.*

convoco, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-vo-co], 1. v. a., *call together, summon.*

coōrior, -oriri, -ortus [con-orior], 3. v. dep., *arise, spring up, break out..*

coōrtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coōrior**.

cōpia, -ae [co(con)-ops]. F., *plenty, abundance, supply, quantity; plur., means, resources, supplies, forces; cōpiam facere, give an opportunity.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [copia], adj., *abundant, plentiful, wealthy.*

cōpula, -ae, F., *(connecting bond or band), grappling hook, grapnel.*

cor, *cordis, N., the heart; cordī esse, be dear, desired, agreeable.*

cōram, adv. and prep. with abl., *face to face, in person; in the presence of; coram perspicere, to see with one's own eyes.*

Coriosolites, -tūm, M. plur., a tribe on the coast of N. W. Gaul, whose name survives in *Cor-sult.*

corium, -i, N., *hide, skin, leather.*

cornū, -ūs, N., *a horn; trumpet; fig., a wing of an army.*

corōna, -ae, F., *garland, wreath, crown, circle or line of soldiers, spectators, etc.; sub corōnā vendere, to sell at auction, sell into slavery.*

corpus, -oris, N., *body, person; a dead body; tōtum corpus, the whole line (of works).*

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., *spoil, ruin, destroy.*

cortex, -icis, M. and F., *bark (of a tree).*

Cōrus (or **Caurus**), -i, M., *the N. W. wind.*

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um [cotidie], adj., *daily, every-day, usual.*

cotidiē [quot-dies], adv., *every day, daily.*

Cotta, -ae, M., *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Cotūtus, -i, M., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -i, M., a young Haedian chief, rival of Convictolitavis.

crassitūdō, -inis [crassus, fat, thick], F., *thickness.*

Crassus, -i [crassus, fat], M., (1) *M. Licinius Crassus*, consul in 55 B. C., with Pompey, member of the First Triumvirate; (2) *P. Crassus* (called *adulescens*), son of No. (1), a lieutenant of Caesar; (3) *M. Crassus*, another son of No. (1), quaestor of Caesar in 54 B. C.

crātēs, -is, F., *wickerwork, hurdle, fascine, fagot.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, close, numerous, frequent.*

crēbrō [creber], adv., *frequently, in quick succession, often, constantly, at short intervals.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus, 3. v. a. and n., *trust, entrust, believe, think, suppose.*

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i. v. a., *burn, consume by fire.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i. v. a., *create, make, appoint, elect, choose.*

Crēs, Crētis (Greek), M., *a Cretan, inhabitant of the island of Crete.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus [cf. *creo*], 3. v. n., *grow, increase, become strong or influential; (of a river) swell.*

Critōgnātus, -i, M., *an Arvernian chief.*

cruciātus, -tūs [crucio, torture], M., *torture, torment; cruelty; suffering.*

crūdēlitās, -tātis [*crudelis, cruel*], F., *cruelty.*

crūdēliter [*crudelis, cruel*], adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, N., *a leg, esp. the leg below the knee.*

cubile, -is [cf. *cumbo, lie*], N., *bed, couch, resting-place, lair of a wild beast.*

culmen, -inis, N., *height, top, summit, roof.*

culpa, -ae, F., *blame, fault, guilt.*

cultūra, -ae [*colo*], F., *cultivation, tilling.*

cultus, -tūs [*colo*], M., *cultivation, care; manner of life, civilization, culture, dress; worship (of the gods).*

cum [same as *con-, com-*], prep. with abl., *with, in the company of, together with; with personal pronouns and the relative qui, cum is an enclitic—e. g., sēcum, vōbiscum, quibuscum; con-, con-, etc., used in composition as a prefix.*

cum (quom, quum), conj., *when, while, whenever; when, while, since, because, inasmuch as;*

though, although; cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also, while . . . yet also; cum primum, as soon as.

cunctatiō, -ōnis [*cunctor*], F., *hesitation, delay, reluctance.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, i. v. dep., *delay, linger, hesitate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um [*co(n)iunctus*], adj., *all, all together, all in a body, entire.*

cuneātū [*cuneatus, fr. cuneus*], *in wedge form, in a solid column of attack, in a mass.*

cuneus, -i, M., *wedge; troops formed in a wedge-shaped mass, column.*

cuniculus, -i, M., *a cony or rabbit; a burrow, mine, tunnel.*

cupidē [*cupidus*], adv., *eagerly, earnestly, zealously.*

cupiditās, -tātis [*cupidus*], F., *desire, longing, wish, eagerness, greed, zeal.*

cupidus, -a, -um [*cupio*], adj., *eager for, desirous, fond of, ambitious for.*

cupiō, -pere, -pīvī, -pītus, 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., *covet, desire, be eager for, be anxious for, long for; cupiēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., impatient.*

cūr (quor), adv., *why (relative); why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, F., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*cura*], i. v. a. and n., *care for, attend to, provide for; with a gerundive, cause to be done, have done.*

cūrrus, -ūs [*curro, run*], M., *chariot.*

cūrsus, -sūs [*curro, run*], M., *running, speed; a run, a course.*

custōdia, -ae [*custōs*], F., *guard, custody, watch; plur., guards, keepers.*

custōdiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [*custōs*], 4. v. a., *guard, watch, keep guard over.*

custōs, -tōdis, M. and F., *a guard, guardian, keeper, custodian, watchman.*

D

D [half of CI = M (100)], quin-
genti, 500.

Decimus.

Dacus, -a, -um, adj., *Dacian*; M., plur., *the Dacians*, living in what is now the S. E. part of the Austro-Hungarian empire.

demnō, -are, -avi, -atus, I. v. a., condemn, find guilty, sentence.

demnum, -i, N., loss.

Danuvius, -i, M., *the Danube*.

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

de, adv. in composition and prep. with abl., from, down from, away from, off, out of, proceeding from, from among; for, on account of; concerning, in regard to, about, in respect to; after, just after, during, in the course of, about.

debēoō, -bere, -bui, -bitus [*de-habeo*], 2. v. a., owe; with the infinitive, ought, must; pass., be due, be owed.

decēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [*de-cedo*], 3. v. n., retire, withdraw, retreat, depart; shun, avoid; depart (this life), die.

decem (X), indecl. num. adj., ten.

deceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of decipio.

decērnoō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus [*de-cerno*], 3. v. a. and n., decide, give judgment, decree, resolve, determine; fight, contend.

decērtō, -are, -avi, -atus [*de-certo*, fight], I. v. a. and n., fight out, decide (an issue), fight a decisive (battle).

decēssus, -sūs [*decedo*], M., a withdrawal, departure, ebb (of the tide).

Decetia, -ae, F., a town of the Haedui, on the Loire, now *Decise*.

decēidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [*de-cado*], 3. v. n., fall down, fall off.

decimus, -a, -um [*decem*], adj., tenth.

Decimus, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

decipioō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*de-capio*], 3. v. a., take (in), catch, entrap, deceive.

declārō, -are, -avi, -atus [*de-claro*, make plain, *make plain, state, declare, announce*.

declīvis, -e [*de-clivus*], adj., sloping down, down-hill, descending.

declīvitās, -tatis, F., a slope (downward), descent.

decērétum, -i [p. p. of decerno, as noun], N., decision, vote, resolution, decree.

decērétus, -a, -um, p. p. of decērnō.

decumānus, -a, -um [*cf. decimus*], adj. (*belonging to the tenth*), decuman, the name of the rear gate of a Roman camp, on the side away from the enemy; originally the tenth cohorts were located near this gate.

decuriō, -onis [*decem*], M., a commander of a decuria, or squad of ten horsemen, a decurion.

decurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursūrus [*de-curro*], 3. v. n., run down, hasten down.

dedecus, -oris [*de-decus*, honor], N., dishonor, disgrace, shame.

dediticius, -a, -um [*dedo*], adj., surrendered, subject; plur. M., as noun, subjects, prisoners, captives.

deditiō, -onis [*dedo*], F., surrender.

dedītus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.
dedō, dedēre, dedīdī, dedītus [*de-do*], 3. v. a., give up, give over, surrender, devote; with sē, surrender, submit.

dedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [*de-duco*], 3. v. a., lead down, away, or off, withdraw, remove; conduct, lead, induce; launch (ships), bring home (a bride), marry.

dedūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco.

defatigātiō, -onis [*defatigo*], F., weariness, exhaustion.

defatigō, -are, -avi, -atus [*de-fatigo*, weary], I. v. a., wear out, tire out, exhaust.

defectiō, -onis [*deficio*], F., failing, falling off, desertion; defection, revolt, rebellion.

defendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus [*de-fendo*, strike], 3. v. a., ward off, repel, defend one's self from, guard, protect.

- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [defendo], F., *de-fense, protection.*
 dēfēnsor, -ōris [defendo], M., a. *defender, champion, protector.*
 dēfēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defendo*.
 dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [defero], irr. v. a., *bring down, carry away; bring or carry to; confer, bestow, hand over, report, announce; pass., (of ships) be borne or carried, drift.*
 dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defetiscor*.
 dēfetiscor (-fat-), -fetisci, -fessus [de-fatiscor, *gape*], 3. v. dep., (*crack open*), *become weary, exhausted.*
 dēficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [de-facio], 3. v. a. and n., *fail, fall away, be lacking; revolt, desert; animō dēficere, become discouraged, lose heart.*
 dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [de-figo, *fix*], 3. v. a., *drive down, fix, fasten, plant.*
 dēfiniō, -ire, -īvi, -itus [de-finio], 4. v. a., *set bounds or limits to, fix, set, appoint, determine; restrict.*
 dēfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defigo*.
 dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxūrus [de-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow down, flow.*
 dēfore; see *desum*.
 dēformis, -e [de-forma], adj., *unshapely, ill-shaped; ugly, unsightly.*
 dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, no p. p. [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., *flee from, avoid, shun.*
 dēiiciō (dēiictō), -icere, -iēci, -iectus [de-iacio], 3. v. a., *thy'w down, cast down, drive off, dislodge, rout, destroy, kill; cast ashore; deprive, disappoint.*
 dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deicio*.
 dēiectus, -tūs [deicio], M., *descent, slope (down), declivity.*
 deinceps [dein = deinde-ceps (cap), same as the root of capio], adv., *in succession, next in order.*
 deinde (dein) [de-inde], adv., *then, next, after that.*
 dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defero*.
 dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [intens. of *delicio, allure*], I. v. a., *please, charm, delight.*
 dēlectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deligo*.
 dēlēō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētus, 2. v. a., *blot out, wipe out; destroy, annihilate.*
 dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deleo*.
 dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-libra, *a balance*], I. v. a. and n., *weigh, balance (in the mind), consider, discuss, consult.*
 dēlibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē-liber, *bark of a tree*], I. v. a., *peel, strip (of bark).*
 dēlictum, -i [delinquo, *fail (in one's duty)*], N., *failure, fault, offense, crime.*
 dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [deligo, *bind*], I. v. a., *bind fast, tie, fasten, moor (vessels).*
 dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus [de-lego], 3. v. a., *choose (out of a number), select, levy (troops), detail.*
 dēlitēscō, -lītēscere, -lītūi, no p. p. [de-latesco, cf. lateo], *hide, conceal one's self, lie hidden.*
 dēmentia, -ae [de-mens], F., *folly, madness.*
 dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēmeto*.
 dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus [de-meto], 3. v. a., *reap, cut down (grain).*
 dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [de-migro, *migrate*], I. v. n., *move away, change one's abode, depart.*
 dēminuō, -uere, -ūi, -ūtus [de-minuo], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, make smaller, diminish, curtail, weaken, impair.*
 dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēminuo*.
 dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [de-mitto], 3. v. a., *send down, let down, thrust down, bow (the head), lower; sē dēmittere, descend; sē animō dēmittere, lose heart; dēmissus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., low, low-lying.*
 dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēemptus [de-emo], 3. v. a., *take off, take away, take down, remove.*

dēmōnstrō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-monstro], I. v. a., point out, show, designate, name, mention, speak of, declare, explain.

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus [de-moror], I. v. dep., delay, hinder, detain, retard.

dēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of demo. dēmum, adv., at length, at last, finally.

dēnegō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-nego], I. v. a., refuse, deny.

dēni, -ae, -a [decem], distrib. num. adj., ten each, ten apiece, ten on each side, ten by ten.

dēnique, adv., at last, finally; at any rate, in short.

dēns, dentis, M., a tooth.

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., thick, crowded, close, dense.

dēnūntiō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-nuntio], I. v. a., announce, declare, threaten, warn, order.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [de-pello], 3. v. a., drive off, drive away, drive out, dislodge, ward off, avert.

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [de-perdo], 3. v. a., lose, forfeit.

dēpereō, -perire, -periī, -peritūrus [de-pereo], irr. v. n., be lost, be ruined, perish, be destroyed.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [de-pono], 3. v. a., put down, lay down, place, lay aside, give up, resign, abandon.

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus [de-populor], I. v. dep., lay waste, ravage, plunder.

dēportō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-porto], I. v. a., carry off, carry away, remove.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p. [de-posco], 3. v. a., demand (earnestly), claim, call for, require.

dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depono.

dēprecātor, -ōris [de-precor], M., intercessor, mediator.

dēprecōr, -ārī, -ātus [de-precor], I. v. dep., pray to avert or be delivered from, beg, beg off, ask quarter, beg pardon; beseech, implore, intercede.

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [de-prehendo (prendo)], 3. v. a., seize, catch, capture; surprise, find, come upon.

dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēprehendo.

dēpūgnō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-pugno], I. v. n. and a., fight (fiercely or decisively), fight it out.

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of depello.

dērēctē (di-), adv., straight, directly; perpendicularly.

dērectus (di-), -a, -um, p. p. of dērigo.

dērigō (di-), -rigere, -rēxi, -rectus (de-rego), 3. v. a., straighten, lay straight, form, draw up, arrange;

dērectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, esp. straight up and down, vertical, perpendicular.

dērivō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-rivus], I. v. a., draw off (water), turn aside (a stream).

dērogō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-rogo], I. v. a., (repeal part of a law); diminish, take away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsurus [de-scando], 3. v. n., (climb down), come down, go down, descend; resort to, have recourse to.

dēsecō, -secāre, -secui, -sectus [de-seco], I. v. a., cut off.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [de-sero, join], 3. v. a., abandon, leave, quit, desert, forsake; dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., solitary, uninhabited, deserted.

dēsertor, -ōris [de-sero], M., deserter, runaway.

dēs̄er̄tus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēsero.

dēserō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., miss, feel the want of, desire, need, lack, lose; pass., be missing.

dēsidia, -ae [deses, -idis, idle], F., sloth, idleness.

dēsignō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [de-signo], I. v. a., mark out, point out, indicate, mean.

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultus [de-silio, leap], 4. v. n., leap down, jump down; jump overboard (from a ship), jump off, dismount (from a horse).

- dēsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītūrus [de-sisto], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, leave off, stop, give up, abandon.
- dēspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.
- dēspectus, -tūs [despicio], M., a look down, a view (from a height).
- dēspērātiō, -ōnis [cf. despero], hopelessness, despair.
- dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [de-spero, cf. spes], 1. v. n., give up hope, cease to hope, despair; dēspērātus, -a, -um, p. p. as if transitive, despaired of; as adj., hopeless, desperate.
- dēspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon, despise.
- dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [dēspolio], 1. v. a., strip off, strip, rob, plunder.
- dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs, 1. v. a., make fast, bind; determine, purpose, appoint, detail.
- dēstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtūs [de-statuo], 3. v. a., (set aside), abandon, desert, forsake.
- dēstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēstituo.
- dēstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēstringo.
- dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus [de-stringo, draw], 3. v. a., unsheathe, draw.
- dēsum, -esse, -sui, futūrus [de-sum], ✓ irr. v. n., (be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail.
- dēsuper [de-super], adv., from above.
- dēterior, -ius [compar. of deter (not used)], adj., worse, poorer, inferior.
- dēterreō, -terrēre, -terrūl, -territus [de-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten off, prevent (esp. by threats), deter.
- dētestor, -āri, -ātūs [de-testor], 1. v. dep., (call the gods to witness in order to prevent something), curse.
- dētineō, -tinēre, -tinūl, -tentus [de-teneo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep back, restrain, detain, delay, stop.
- dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detra-ho.
- dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [de-traho], 3. v. a., draw off, drag off, snatch; take off, take away, withdraw.
- dētrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [de-tracto, handle], 1. v. a., avoid, shun, decline, refuse.
- dētrimentōsūs, -a, -um [detrimentum], adj., harmful, hurtful.
- dētrimentum, -i [detero, rubaway], M., loss, injury; repulse, reverse, defeat.
- dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [de-turbo, disturb], 1. v. a., thrust away or down, dislodge, drive off.
- dēuō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstūs [de-uro], 3. v. a., burn up.
- deus, -i, M., a god.
- dēustus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuō.
- dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus (-vexus) [de-veho], 3. v. a., carry away, remove; bring, convey (to a place); dēvexus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sloping; as noun, N. plur., slopes, hillsides.
- dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [de-venio], 4. v. n., come down, reach, land (off the sea), come.
- dēvexus, -a, -um, p. p. of devehō.
- dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēvinco.
- dēvincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus [de-vinco], 3. v. a., conquer (thoroughly), subdue.
- dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [de-voco], 1. v. a., call away; in dubium dēvocare, risk, hazard.
- dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of devoveo.
- dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtūs [de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away), devote, consecrate.
- dexter, -tera (-tra), -terum (-trum), adj., right, on the right hand.
- dextra, F. (sc. manus), the right hand (esp. as a pledge of good faith).
- Diablantes, -um, M. plur., a branch of the Aulerçī, in Aremorica.
- diciō, -ōnis, F., power, dominion, sovereignty, sway.
- dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs, 1. v. a., dedicate, devote, offer, surrender, make over, attach, assign.

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, 3. v. a., say, speak, tell; name, appoint; plead (a cause); fix, set (a day); administer (justice, i. e., declare the law).

dictiō, -ōnis [dico], F., speaking, pleading (of a cause).

dictum, -ī [p. p. of dico], N., something said, statement, remark, order, command; dictō audiēns, obedient.

didūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [disduco], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide, distribute, disperse, scatter.

diēs, -ēi, M. (rarely F.), a day; time, date; in diēs, day by day, from day to day; diem ex diē, day after day; multō diē, late in the day.

differō, differre, distuli, dilatūs [differo], irr. v. a. and n., (carry apart), spread, scatter; put off, delay, defer, postpone.

difficilis, -e [dis-facilis], adj., hard, difficult, troublesome.

difficultās, -tātis [difficilis], F., difficulty, trouble.

difficulter [difficilis], adv., with difficulty; compar., difficilius, with greater difficulty.

diffidō, -fidere, -fisis sum [diffido], 3. v. semi-dep., distrust, mistrust, lack confidence in, despair of.

diffisus, -a, -um, p. p. of diffido.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus [dis-fundo], 3. v. a., (pour forth); spread out.

digitus, -i, M., a finger; with pollex, thumb.

dignitās, -tātis [dignus], F., worth, worthiness, merit; position, rank, prestige, respect.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, worth, deserving, suitable.

diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-iudico], I. v. a., decide (between two parties).

dilectus, -ā, -um, p. p. of diligo.

dilectus (dēl-), -tūs (deligo), M., choice, selection; levy, conscription (of troops).

diligenter [diligens, careful], adv., carefully, with care, with pains, attentively.

diligentia, -ae [diligens, careful]. F., care, pains, painstaking, punctuality, attention.

diligō, -ligerē, -lēxi, -lēctus [dislego], 3. v. a., choose out, esteem, love, be fond of, prize.

dimēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dimetior, dimētior, -mētiri, -mēnsus [dimetior], 4. v. dep., measure, measure off, lay out, survey.

dimicatiō, -ōnis [dimico], F., contest, fight.

dimicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [dis-mico, brandish], I. v. n., fight, decide by fighting, contend.

dimidius, -a, -um [dis-medius], adj., (divided in the middle), half; as noun, dimidium, -i, N., half.

dimitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus [dimitto], 3. v. a., send away, let go away, let slip, let pass; dismiss, send off, send in different directions; abandon, give up; discharge, release.

direptus, -a, -um, p. p. of diripio.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [disemo], 3. v. a., take apart, break up, break off, put an end to.

diripiō, -ripare, -ripui, -reptus [dirapiro, seize], 3. v. a., (snatch apart), seize, plunder, ravage, pillage.

dis-, di- (dir-, dif-), inseparable prep. or adv., used only in comp., as a prefix, apart, asunder, in different directions; among, between; un-, not.

Dis, **Ditis**, M., Pluto, god of the lower world.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [dis-cedo], 3. v. n., go apart, disperse, depart, retire, leave, go away; forsake, fail.

disceptator, -ōris [discepto, decide], M., arbitrator, umpire, judge.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus [dis-cerno], 3. v. a., distinguish, separate, know apart.

discessus, -sūs [cf. discedo], M., departure, withdrawal, goingaway.

disciplina, -ae [discipulus, *pupil*], F., *instruction, system of doctrine, training.*
discludō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [dis-claudo], 3. v. a., *shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.*
discō, discere, didici, discitūrus, 3. v. a. and n., *learn.*
discrimen, -inis [discerno], N., *separation, decision; a decisive moment, crisis, peril, danger.*
discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of *discūio*.
discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [dis-quatio, *shake*], 3. v. a., *shake or strike apart, shatter, clear away, remove, dislodge.*
disicio, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw apart, drive asunder; scatter, disperse, rout, (of sail-yards) carry away.*
disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *disicio*.
dispār, -paris [dis-par], adj., *unequal, unlike, different, inferior.*
disparō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [dis-paro], 1. v. a., *separate, divide.*
dispergō, -spergere, -spersi, -sensus [dis-spargo, *scatter*], 3. v. a., *scatter, disperse.*
dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dispergo*.
dispiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [dis-specio, *look at*], 3. v. a., *behold, discern, descry, perceive.*
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [dis-pono], 3. v. a., *set at intervals or in various places, distribute, post, station.*
dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dispono*.
disputatiō, -ōnis [disputo], F., *discussion, debate, dispute.*
disputō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [dis-puto], 1. v. n. and a., *debate, argue; treat, discuss, investigate.*
dissensiō, -ōnis [dissentio], F., *difference of opinion, disagreement.*
dissentīō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsūrus [dis-sentio], 4. v. n., *think or feel differently, differ in opinion, disagree.*
disserō, -ere [dis-sero], 3. v. a., *plant here and there, plant at intervals.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-simulo], 1. v. a. and n., *pretend (that something is not so), conceal (something which is), disguise, dissemble.*
dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *scatter, disperse.*
dissuādeō, -suādēre, suāsi, -suāsus [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., *advise against, persuade not to do something, oppose.*
distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., *keep apart, hold apart, separate; cut off; hinder, prevent, detain.*
distō, -stāre [dis-sto], 1. v. n., *stand apart, be distant,*
distrāhō, -trahere, -traxi, -trāctus [dis-traho], 3. v. a., *drag apart, pull asunder, separate.*
distribuō, -buere, -bul, -būtus [distribuo], 3. v. a., *divide, apportion, assign, distribute.*
dītissimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of *dives.*
diū [cf. dies], adv., *long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as.*
diurns, -a, -um [cf. dies], adj., *of the day, in the daytime, by day.*
diūtinus, -a, -um [diu], adj., *long, long-continued, lasting.*
diūtissimē, adv., superl. of *diu.*
diūtiūs, adv., compar. of *diu.*
diūturnitās, -tātis [diuturnus], F., *long continuance, long duration, length of time.*
diūturnus, -a, -um [diu], adj., *long, lasting, long-continued.*
diversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *diverto.*
divertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [dis-vertō], 3. v. a. and n., *turn aside, separate; go apart; diversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate, different, opposite, distant.*
dives, -itis, adj., *rich.*
Diviciācus, -i, M., (1) a leading man among the Haedui, brother of Dumnorix; (2) a chief of the Suessiones.
Divicō, -ōnis, M., leader of the Helvetii in the war against Cassius.

- dīvidō**, -videre, -visī, -vīsus, 3. v. a., *separate, divide.*
- divinus**, -a, -um [divus, divine], adj., *of the gods, divine, sacred, religious.*
- dō**, dāre, dedī, datus, irr. v. a., i. *give, give up, grant, offer, allow; in fugam dare, put to flight; manūs dare, surrender, submit; operam dare, take pains; 2. in compounds, place, put.*
- doceō**, docēre, docuī, doctus, 2. v. a., *teach, inform; declare, show, tell.*
- documentum**, -i [doceō], N., *(means of showing), evidence, proof; warning, example.*
- doleo**, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2. v. n., *suffer, be grieved.*
- dolor**, -ōris [doleo], M., *pain, grief, sorrow, trouble, suffering, distress, indignation, resentment, annoyance, mortification.*
- dolus**, -i, M., *guile, deceit, artifice, stratagem, cunning.*
- domesticus**, -a, -um [cf. domus], adj., *of the home, of one's own house or household, internal, native, one's own, civil (war).*
- domicilium**, -i [domus], N., *home, abode, dwelling, residence, habitation.*
- dominor**, -ārī, -ātus [dominus], i. v. dep., *be master, bear rule.*
- dominus**, -i, M., *lord, master, owner.*
- Domitius**, -i, M., *L. Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B. C.
- domus**, -i (-ūs), F., *house, home; domī, locat., at home; domum, acc., home (homeward); domō, from home.*
- Domnotaurus**, -i, C. Valerius Domnotaurus, a leader of the Helvii; see Caburus.
- dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [donum], i. v. a., *give, bestow, grant, present (a gift); also present (a person with a gift).*
- dōnum**, -i [do], N., *gift, present.*
- dorsum (-us)**, -i, N., *the back; a long ridge like an animal's back, the ridge or brow of a hill, or mountain.*
- dōs**, dōtis [do], F., *dowry, dower, marriage portion.*
- Druides**, -um, M., *Druids*, the priestly order in Gaul and Britain.
- Dubis**, -is, M., a river of Gaul, tributary of the Saône (Arar), now the *Doubs*.
- dubitatiō**, -ōnis [dubito], F., *doubt, hesitation, uncertainty.*
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [dubius], i. v. n., *doubt, be uncertain; hesitate.*
- dubius**, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain, doubtful.*
- ducenti**, -ae, -a [duo-centum], num. adj., *two hundred.*
- dūcō**, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, 3. v. a., *lead, guide, conduct, draw (living things); lead, march (with object omitted); make (a trench or wall, which is drawn out in a long line); prolong, draw out, put off; consider, reckon, think; marry (a wife).*
- ductus**, -a, -um, p. p. of duco.
- ductus**, -tūs [cf. duco], M., *leading, leadership, command.*
- dum**, conj., *while, so long as; till, until.*
- Dumnorīx**, -īgis, M., a leading man of the Haedui, brother of Diviciacus.
- duo**, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*
- duodecim** [duo-decim], indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*
- duodecimus**, -a, -um [duodecim], num. adj., *twelfth.*
- duodēni**, -ae, -a [duodecim], num. adj., *twelve each, twelve at a time.*
- duodeviginti** [duo-de-viginti], twenty, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*
- duplex**, -plicis [duo-plico, fold], adj., *twofold, double, in two lines.*
- duplicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [duplex], i. v. a., *double, make double.*
- dūritia**, -ae [durus], F., *hardness, hardship, hard living.*
- dūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [durus], i. v. a., *harden, toughen, make hardy.*
- Dūrocortorum**, -i, N., chief town of the Remi, now *Rheims*.
- dūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *hard, severe, difficult.*

Dūrus, -i, M., *Q. Laberius Durus*, a tribune of the soldiers, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis [duco], M., *leader, guide; commander, general.*

E

ē; see ex.

ēā [is], adv., *in that way, thus; on that side, there.*

Eburōnes, -ōnum, M. plur., a Belgian nation, north of the Treviri, of whom they were dependents.

Eburovices, -um, M. plur., a division of the Aulerci. The name appears in *Evreux*.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p. [ex-disco], 3. v. a., *(learn off), learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of edo.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ex-do], 3. v. a., *put forth, give out, exhibit;*

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *elevated, high, raised, lofty.*

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -doctus [ex-doceo], 2. v. a., *teach, show forth, tell, inform, instruct.*

ēducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [ex-duco], 3. v. a., *lead out, lead forth, bring out, draw (a sword).*

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of educō.

ēfēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. feminina], 1. v. a., *make womanish, weaken, enfeeble, enervate.*

efferciō (-farc-), -fēcere, -fertus [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., *stuff out, stop up, fill in.*

ēfferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex-fero], irr. v. a., *carry out, bring forth, carry away; spread abroad, publish; puff up, elate, lift up.*

efficiō, -fēcere, -fēci, -fectus [ex-facio], 3. v. a., *make out, bring about, accomplish, cause, produce; effect; make, render; construct, build.*

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus [ex-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig out, gouge out.*

effōsus, -a, -um, p. p. of effodio.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgl, -fugitūrus [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., *escape, flee; shun, avoid.*

ēgēns, -ntis, pres. p. of egeo.
ēgeō, egēre, egūl, no p. p., 2. v. n., *want, need, lack, be in want, be destitute; egēns, -ntis, pres. p. as adj., needy, destitute, poor.*

egestās, -tātis [egens], F., *destination, want, poverty.*

ego, meī, personal pron., I; plur., nōs, nostrum, we.

egomet, nōsmet [ego-met, enclitic suffix], personal pron., I myself, we ourselves.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus [ex-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., *go out, go forth, leave, depart, march out, evacuate; (from ships) land, disembark.*

ēgregiē [egregius], adv., *admirably, remarkably, finely.*

ēgregius, -a, -um [e grege, out of the herd], adj., *remarkable, eminent, fine, admirable, distinguished, excellent, uncommon.*

ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egredior.

ēgressus, -sūs [egredior], M., *going out; landing, disembarking.*

ēicō, -icere, -iēcī, -lectus [ex-iacio], 3. v. a., *cast out, throw out, drive out; cast up (on shore); sē ēicere, rush forth, sally out.*

ēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eicio.

ēiusmodi [eius modi], adj. phrase, *of this kind, of that kind, such.*

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., *slip out, slip away, escape.*

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of elabor.

ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of effero.

Elaver, -veris, N., the Allier, a tributary of the Loire.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligo.

elephantus, -i [Greek], M., *elephant.*

Eleuteti, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.

ēliciō, -licere, -licui, -licitus [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., *entice (out or forth), draw out, bring out.*

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lectus [ex-lego], 3. v. a., *choose, select; ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked.*

Elusātēs, -ium, M. plur., a nation in Aquitania, whose name appears in *Eauze*.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [ex-migro], 1. v. n., remove, emigrate. **ēmineō**, -ēre, -ui, no p. p. [ex-mineo, project], 2. v. n. stand out, project.

ēminus [e manu, hand], adv., at a distance, from far off, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mis̄l, -missus [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., send out, send forth, let out, let go; throw, hurt, discharge; throw away.

emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptus, 3. v. a., (take, in compounds only); buy, purchase.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [ex-nas-cor], 3. v. dep., spring out, shoot out, grow out.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enascor.

enim, conj., postpositive, for, in fact, really.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-nun-tio], 1. v. a., report, make known, tell, announce, reveal, disclose.

eō, ire, Ivi (ii), itūrus, irr. v. n., go, march, proceed, pass.

eō; see is.

eōdem [idem], adv., to the same place, to the same purpose.

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippium], adj., saddled; riding on saddles.

ephippium, -i [Greek], N., saddle, housing.

epistula (-tola), -ae [Greek], F., a letter, note, written message, despatch.

Eporēdorīx, -igis, M., the name of two chiefs of the Haedui.

epulum, -i, N. plur., epulae, -ārum, F., feast, banquet.

eques, -itis [equus], M., horseman, rider, trooper, cavalryman; a knight, Roman or Gallic; a member of the order of knights.

equester, -tris, -tre [eques], adj., of cavalry.

equitātus, -tūs [eques], M., cavalry.

equus, -i, M., a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is [Greek], M., a Greek philosopher, born 276 B. C., died about 196 B. C., librarian at Alexandria, famous as a geographer and astronomer.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.

ergā, prep. with acc., toward (not of motion, but of feeling and behavior).

ergō, adv. or conj., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -réxi, -rēctus [ex-rego], 3. v. a., set up straight, raise, lift, erect; **ērēctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, straight, upright.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ex-rapiō], 3. v. a., snatch away, take away, wrest; rescue, save.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, 1. v. n., wander, stray; be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., burst out, sally forth.

ēruptiō, -ōnis [cf. erumpo], F., (bursting forth), sally, sortie.

essedā, -ae (-um, -i), F., or **essedum**, -i, N., a war-chariot (Gallic and British).

essedārius, -i [essedā], M., one who fights from a chariot.

Esuvii, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of central Gaul, between the Seine and the Loire.

et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam [et iam], conj., also, even, besides; quīn etiam, nay more; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.

etsi [et si], conj., even if, though, although.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., escape.

ēvellō, -vellere, -velli (-vulsī), -vul-sus [ex-vello, pluck], 3. v. a., pull out, pluck out.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus [ex-venio], 4. v. n., come out, result, turn out, happen.

ēventus, -tūs [evenio], M., outcome, issue, result.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-voco],
I. v. a., call out, call forth, summon, invite, challenge; **ēvocātus**, -ī, p. p. as noun, M., a veteran voluntarily reënlisted after his discharge from the army.

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ex-volo, fly], I. v. n., fly out, rush forth, dash out.

ex [ē], adv. in comp. and prep. with abl., out of, -from; of, from among; of (made of); (time) from, since, after; (cause) from, by, by reason of, in consequence of, according to.

exāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exigo**.

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-agito, freq. of *ago*], I. v. a., disturb, harass, persecute.

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [examen, means of examining, tongue of a balance], I. v. a., weigh.

examīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-anima], I. v. a., deprive of breath or of life, kill; **examīnātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., out of breath, exhausted.

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, no p. p. [ex-ardesco, incep. of ardeo], 3. v. n., take fire; be incensed, enraged, excited.

exaudiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [ex-audio], 4. v. a., hear distinctly, hear (from a distance).

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, 3. v. n., go out, go away, depart, leave, withdraw, retire.

excēllō, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, 3. v. a. and n., raise up, rise, surpass, excel; **excelsus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, raised, lofty.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excello**. **exceptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-capto, freq. of *capio*], I. v. a., catch up, take up.

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ex-cipio**.

excidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [ex-caedo], 3. v. a., (cut out or off), cut down, break down, destroy.

expīcio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex-capio], 3. v. a., take out, take up, seize, take hold of, catch; follow,

come after, come next, succeed; break (the force of a current).

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-cito], I. v. a., stir up, rouse, stimulate; raise, erect (buildings); kindle (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [ex-claudio], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off, prevent, hinder.

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excludo**.

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-co-gito], I. v. a., think out, contrive, devise.

excruīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-cru-cio, torture; crux, a cross], I. v. a., torture, torment.

excubitor, -tōris [cf. **excubo**], M., sentinel.

excubō, -cubāre, -cubū, -cubitūrus [ex-cubo, lie], I. v. n., lie outside (of the tent or the camp), keep watch (at night), stand guard.

excūlcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-cal-co, tread], I. v. a., tread down, make firm by stamping.

excursiō, -ōnis [ex-curro, run], F., a running out, sally, sortie.

excūsatiō, -ōnis [excuso], F., apology, defense, excuse.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-causa], I. v. a., give as a reason, as an excuse; excuse, exculpate, defend.

exemplum, -i [eximo, take out], N., a sample, specimen, instance, example, copy, precedent.

exeō, -ire, -īvī (-ii), -ītus [ex-eo], irr. v. n., go forth, go out, march out, depart, emigrate, remove.

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercū, -ercitus [ex-arceo, restrain], 2. v. a., (keep at work), train, practise, discipline; pass, toil.

exercitatiō, -ōnis [exerceo], F., practice, training.

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **exerceo**], I. v. a., train; **exercitātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., trained, well trained.

exercitus, -tūs [exerceo], M., (training; a trained body of troops), an army.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausi, -haustus [ex-haurio, drink up], 4. v. a., drain off; carry out, take out.

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus [ex-ago]. 3. v. a., drive out, lead out; (of time) pass, spend, finish, complete.

exiguē [exiguus], adv., scantily, barely, hardly.

exiguitas, -tatis [exiguus], F., scantiness, meagerness, smallness, fewness, shortness.

exiguus, -a, -um [exigo], adj., small, scanty, meager, narrow, little, slight, short.

eximius, -a, -um [eximo, take out], adj., exceptional, remarkable, excellent, uncommon, very high (opinion).

existimatiō, -ōnis [existimo], F., opinion, judgment, estimate; reputation.

existimō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-aes-timo], 1. v. a., reckon, think, believe, suppose, judge, consider.

exitus, -tūs [cf. exeo], M., a going out; passage; outcome, issue, end, result, event.

expediō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus [ex-pes], 4. v. a., (get the foot free), disentangle, disengage, set free; make ready, arrange; expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., unencumbered, free, without baggage, in light marching order; (of a road) easy, practicable.

expeditiō, -ōnis [cf. expedio], F., getting ready, despatching; light-armed march; expedition, campaign.

expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [ex-pello], 3. v. a., drive out, drive away, dispel.

experior, -periri, -pertus, try, prove, test, await (an issue).

expertus, -a, -um, p. p. of experior.

expiō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-pio, ap-pease], 1. v. a., atone for, expiate; make good, retrieve, make amends for.

explēō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [ex-pleo, fill], 2. v. a., fill up, fill full, complete, fill out.

explorātor, -tōris [exploro], M., a scout.

explorō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., search, seek out, investigate, examine, reconnoiter; exploratus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ascertained, certain, sure, settled.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ex-pono], 3. v. a., put out, set out; array, marshal, draw up; set on shore, disembark; explain, set forth.

exportō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-porto], I. v. a., carry away.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, no p. p. [ex-posco], 3. v. a., ask earnestly, demand, implore, beg, request.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ex-premo], 3. v. a., force out, press out; extort; raise up (a building).

expūgnatiō, -ōnis [cf. expugno], F., taking by storm, assault, storming (of a city).

expūgnō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-pug-no], I. v. a., take by storm, capture by assault.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisiū, -quisitus [ex-quaero, seek], 3. v. a., seek out, search for, ask for, inquire into, investigate.

exquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of exquiro.

exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus [ex-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow out, follow up, maintain, carry out, enforce.

exserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus [ex-sero, twine], 3. v. a., thrust out, bare, uncover.

exsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of exsero.

existō, -sistere, -stitti, -stitūrus (?) [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., stand out, appear, emerge, rise, come out, project; ensue.

exspectō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-specto], I. v. a., look for, wait for, expect, await.

exspoliō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-spolio], I. v. a., (strip off), deprive of, rob.

extinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extinguo**.

extinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctus [*ex-stinguo, quench*], 3. v. a., *put out, quench, extinguish, destroy, put an end to.*

extō, -stāre, -stītī, -statūrūs (?) [*ex-sto*], 1. v. n., *stand out, be above.*

extructus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extruo**.

extruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [*ex-struo, pile*], 3. v. a., *pile up, heap up, build up.*

exsul, -ulīs, M. and F., *an exile, banished person.*

exter (*exterus*), -tera, -terum, adj., *outer, outside, outward; extrēmus*, -a, -um, superl., *last, farthest, at the end, in the rear, rearmost.*

exterreō, -terrēre, -terrūl, -territus [*ex-terreo*], 2. v. a., *frighten (greatly).*

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exterro**.

extimescō, -timēscere, -timūl, no p. p. [*ex-timesco, incep. of timeo*], 3. v. a. and n., *fear greatly, dread.*

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortus [*ex-torqueo, twist*], 2. v. a., *wrest from, take from by force, extort.*

extortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extor- queo**.

extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *outside, without; outside of, beyond, contrary to, except, besides.*

extractus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extraho**.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [*ex-traho*], 3. v. a., *drag out, draw out; (of time) waste.*

extrudō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [*ex-trudo*], 3. v. a., *thrust out, push back or out.*

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [*cf. induo*], 3. v. a., *strip off; strip, spoil, deprive.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus [*ex-u-ro*], 3. v. a., *burn up.*

exūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exuo**.

F

faber, -bri [*facio*], M., *a workman, artisan, mechanic; esp., a smith or a carpenter.*

Fabius, -ī, M., (1) *Q. Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B. C.; (2) *C. Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar; (3) *L. Fabius*, a centurion killed at Gergovia.

facile [N. of *facilis*], adv., *easily, readily, conveniently.*

facilis, -e [*cf. facio*], adj., *easy (to do), convenient.*

facinus, -oris [*cf. facio*], N., *a deed, action; misdeed, crime, guilt.*

faciō, facere, fēci, factus, irr. v. a. and n., *do, make, act; perform, accomplish; give, furnish; cause, render; pass., fīō, fierī, factus; factum*, -ī, N. of p. p. as noun, *act, action; conduct, exploit.*

factiō, -ōnis [*facio*], F., *making, doing; business, employment; party, side (in politics, etc.).*

factum, -ī, N. of *factus*, p. p. of *facio*.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of *facio*.

facultās, -tātis [*facilis*], F., *ease; ability, power; opportunity, chance; plur., means, resources.*

fagus, -ī, F., *beech-tree.*

fallo, fallere, fēfelli, falsus, 3. v. a. and n., *deceive, cheat, disappoint, elude, escape notice.*

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *fallo*, as adj., *false, unfounded, untrue.*

fāix, falcis, F., *sickle, reaping-hook, pruning-hook.*

fama, -ae [*for, fari, speak*], F., *speech, report, rumor, common talk, reputation, renown.*

famēs, -is, F., *hunger, starvation.*

familiā, -ae [*famulus, servant*], F., *collection of servants, household, family; retinue, clan, body of vassals, retainers.*

familiāris, -e [*familia*], adj., *belonging to a household, domestic; rēs familiāris, property, estate;*

as noun, M., *an intimate friend, companion.*
familiāritās, -tatis [familiaris], *intimacy, familiar friendship.*
fās [for, fari, speak], indecl. N., *right, what is right or allowed (by divine law).*
fastigātē [fastigatus, p. p. of fastigo], adv., *sloping.*
fastigium, -i, N., *top, summit, ridge; sloping side, slope, declivity.*
fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. fastigium], i. v. a., *make pointed or slanting; fastigatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sloping, inclined.*
fātūm, -i [N. of fatus, p. p. of for], N., *(what is spoken), destiny, fate, lot.*
faveō, favēre, fāvī, sautūrus, 2. v. n., *be favorable to, incline to, favor.*
fax, facis, F., *torch, firebrand.*
felicitās, -tatis [felix; lucky], F., *good luck, good fortune, success.*
feliciter [felix, lucky], adv., *happily, luckily, prosperously, successfully.*
fēmina, -ae, F., *woman, female.*
femur, -oris (femen, -inis), N., *the thigh.*
fera; *see ferus.*
ferāx, -ācis [cf. fero], adj., *fertile, productive, fruitful.*
ferē, adv., *about, nearly, almost; generally, usually, as a rule; nūlla ferē, hardly any.*
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātūs, irr. v. a. and n., *bear, carry; endure, suffer; bear off, win, obtain; produce; report, say, tell; propose; signa ferre, advance; sē ferre, move along.*
ferrāmentum, -i [ferrum], N., *iron tool.*
ferrāria, -ae [F. of ferrarius, fr. ferrum], F., *an iron mine.*
ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], adj., *of iron, made of iron.*
ferrum, -i, N., *iron, iron point, steel, sword.*
fertilis, -e [fero], adj., *productive, fruitful, fertile.*

fertilitās, -tatis [fertilis], F., *fruitfulness, productiveness, fertility.*
ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, fierce, savage; F. as noun, wild beast, game.*
fervēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [ferveo-facio], irr. v. a., *make hot, heat, make red-hot.*
fervēfactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefacio.
ferveō (fervō), servēre, serbuī (servī), no p. p., 2. v. n., *be hot, be red-hot, glow.*
festūca, -ae, F., *rammer, pile-driver.*
fibula, -ae [figo, fasten], F., *clasp, pin.*
fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo.
fidēlis, -e [fides], adj., *faithful, loyal, true.*
fidēs, -ei, F., *promise, pledge; loyalty, good faith, fidelity; confidence, faith (in some one), reliance; protection, dependence.*
fidūcia, -ae [fidus, faithful], F., *reliance, trust, confidence; self-confidence, boldness, courage.*
figūra, -ae [fingo], F., *shape, form.*
filia, -ae, F., *a daughter.*
filius, -i, M., *a son.*
fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus, .3. v. a., *form, shape, mold; invent, contrive, make up; voltum fingere, control the countenance, assume an expression; fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., invented, imaginary, fictitious; as noun, N. plur., fictions, falsehoods.*
finiō, -ire, -ivī (ii), -itus, 4. v. a., *limit, bound, determine, measure.*
finis, -is, M., *limit, bound, end; plur., limits, boundaries, territory, country.*
finitimus, -a, -um [finis], adj., *on the borders, bordering on, neighboring, adjoining; as noun, M. plur., neighbors.*
fiō, fierī, factus, irr. v. pass. and n., *used as the passive of facio; be made, be done, become; happen, occur, come to pass; certior fierī, be informed.*
firmiter [firmus], adv., *steadily, stoutly, firmly.*

- firmitūdō, -inis [firmus], F., *solidity, durability, strength.*
- fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [firmus], *strengthen, make solid or firm, fortify, establish, confirm, encourage.*
- fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *solid, firm, strong, steady, steadfast, durable.*
- Flaccus, -i, a Roman cognomen ; see Valerius.
- flāgitō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *ask earnestly, demand, importune.*
- flamma, -ae, F., *flame, blaze, fire.*
- flectō, flectere, flexis, flexu, 3. v. a., *bend, turn, curve ; direct, guide.*
- fleo, flēre, flēvī, flētus, 2. v. n. and a., *weep, weep for.*
- flētus, -tūs [fleo], M., *weeping, lamentation, tears.*
- flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, 1. v. a. and n., *blow.*
- flōrens, -entis [pres. p. of floreo, bloom], adj., *blooming, flourishing, prosperous; influential.*
- flōs, flōris, M., *a flower.*
- fluctus, -tūs [fluo], M., *(flood), wave, billow.*
- flūmen, -inis [fluo], N., *stream, river ; adversō flūmine, upstream ; secundō flūmine, downstream.*
- fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus (fluxūrus, fluctūrus, fluitūrus), 3. v. n., *flow.*
- fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, 3. v. a., *dig.*
- foedus, -eris [cf. fides, fidus], N., *a league, treaty.*
- fore, for futurum esse ; see sum.
- forem, for essem ; see sum.
- forīs [abl. plur. of forā (not used), door], adv., *out of doors, outside.*
- forma, -ae, F., *shape, form.*
- fors, fortis [fero], F., *chance, accident, luck.*
- forte, abl. of fors, as adv., *by chance, accidentally, as it happened.*
- fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, courageous, bold.*
- fortiter [fortis], adv., *bravely, stoutly, boldly.*
- fortitūdō, -inis [fortis], F., *bravery, courage.*
- fortuitō [abl. of fortuitus, fr. fors], adv., *by chance, accidentally.*
- fortūna, -ae [fors], F., *chance, luck, fortune, fate, lot ; good luck ; plur. possessions, property, resources.*
- fortūnātus, -a, -um [fortuna], adj., *lucky, prosperous, rich.*
- forum, -i, N., *market-place, public square, forum.*
- fossa, -ae [F. of fossus, p. p. of fodia], F., *ditch, trench.*
- fovea, -ae, F., *pit, pitfall.*
- frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango.
- frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, 3. v. a., *break ; wreck (ships) ; crush (spirits), discourage, subdue.*
- frāter, -tris, M., *brother.*
- frāternus, -a, -um [frater], adj., *of a brother, of brothers, brotherly.*
- fraus, fraudis, F., *trick, deceit.*
- fremitus, -tūs [fremo, roar], M., *murmur, uproar, din ; confused noise.*
- frequēns, -entis, adj., *in large numbers, crowded, numerous.*
- frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on, depending on, confident in.*
- frigidus, -a, -um [frigus], adj., *cold.*
- frigus, -oris, N., *cold, cold weather ; plur., cold seasons.*
- frōns, frontis, F., *forehead, face, front.*
- frūctuōsus, -a, -um [fructus], adj., *fruitful, fertile.*
- fructus, -tūs [fruor], M., *enjoyment ; fruit, profit, advantage, income, interest, reward, gain.*
- frūmentārius, -a, -um [frumentum], adj., *of grain, grain-producing ; rēs frūmentāria, supplies.*
- frūmentātiō, -ōnis [frumentum], F., *providing of grain, expedition for supplies, foraging.*
- frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus [frumentum], 1. v. dep., *get grain, obtain supplies, forage.*
- frūmentum, -i [fruor], N., *grain ; plur., crops.*
- fruor, frūl, frūctus, 3. v. dep., *enjoy.*

frustrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*
frūx, frūgis [fruor], F., *fruit, produce*; usually in plur., *crops*.

Fūsius (Fūsius), -i, M., C. *Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.

fuga, -ae, F., *flight, rout.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus [cf. *fuga*], 3 v. a. and n., *flee, fly from, run away; avoid, shun, escape.*

fugitivus, -a, -um [*fugio*], adj., *fleeing, runaway; plur. as noun., runaways.*

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*fuga*], 1. v. a., *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*fumus*], 1. v. n., *smoke.*

fūmus, -i, M., *smoke.*

funda, -ae, F., *sling.*

funditor, -tōris [*fundus*], M., *slinger.*
fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, 3. v. a., *pour; scatter, rout.*

fūnebris, -e [*funus*], adj., *of a funeral; N. plur., as noun, funeral rites.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, 3. v. dep., *discharge, perform, do, execute.*

fūnis, -is, M., *a rope.*

fūnus, -eris, N., *death, burial, funeral; plur., rites of burial.*

furor, -ōris, M., *madness, rage, frenzy, fury.*

furtum, -i [*fur, thief*], N., *theft, a theft.*

fūsilis, -e [*fundo*], adj., *liquid, molten.*

futūrus, -a, -um; see *sum.*

G

Gabali, -ōrum, M. plur., a Gallic tribe, clients of the Arverni.

Gabinius, -i, M., A. *Gabinius*, consul with L. Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

gaesum, -i, N., a heavy Gallic javelin.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, -ae, M., a Gallic and Roman name; (1) *Servius Sulpicius*

Galba, a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) *Galba*, a chief of the Suessions.

galea, -ae, F., a helmet (of leather).

Gallia, -ae [Gallus], F., *Gaul*; see Introduction, page lxii.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallus], adj., *of the Gauls, Gaulish, Gallic.*

gallina, -ae, F., *a hen.*

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *of Gaul, Gallic*; as noun, *a Gaul*; also a Roman family name; see *Trebias.*

Garumna, -ae, M. or F., a large river of S. W. Gaul, the *Garonne.*

Garumni, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe near the source of the Garonne river, in the Pyrenees.

Gates, -ium, M., a tribe in eastern Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus, 2. v. semi-dep., *rejoice, be pleased, be glad, be delighted.*

gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. of *gaudeo.*

Geidumni, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

Genāva, -ae, F., a city of the Allobroges, at the foot of *Lacus Lemannus, Geneva.*

gener, -eri, M., *a son-in-law.*

generātim [genus], adv., *(by kinds), by tribes, by nations.*

gēns, gentis, F., *family, tribe, clan; people, nation.*

genus, -eris, N., *birth, descent; race, family; kind, species, class; nature, method.*

Gergovia, -ae, F., chief town of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae [Germanus], F., Germany, the country east and north of the Rhine and Danube.

Germānicus, -a, -um [Germanus], adj., *of the Germans, German.*

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German; as a noun, a German.*

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3. v. a., *carry, carry on, wage (war), manage, administer, hold (office), conduct, perform; rēs gestae, achievements, exploits.*

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of *gero.*

gladius, -i, M., *sword.*

glāns, glandis, F., *acorn, nut; bullet (for a sling).*

glēba, -ae, F., *a clod (of earth), lump, glōria, -ae, F., fame, renown, glory, reputation.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [cf. gloria], I. v. dep., *boast of, glory in.*

Gnaeus (Cheius, Cn.), -ī, M., a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitō, -ōnis, M., an Arvernian, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae, F., a town of the Boii, in the country of the Haedui.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Greeks, Greek; as a noun, a Greek.*

Grāioceli, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Graian Alps.

grandis, -e, adj., *large, great.*

grātia, -ae [gratus], F., *favor, good-will, regard, influence; grati-tude, thanks; grātiās habēre, feel grateful; grātiās agere, express thanks, thank; grātiām referre, make a grateful return, requite; grātiā with gen., for the sake of.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis [gratulor], F., *(manifestation of joy for one's self or for others), rejoicing, congratulation.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [gratus], I. v. dep., *congratulate, wish joy.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, acceptable, agreeable, grateful, thank-ful; grātum, -ī, N., as noun, a favor.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy; severe, hard, serious, violent; important, dignified.*

gravitās, -tatis [gravis], F., *weight, importance.*

graviter [gravis], adv., *heavily, severely, warmly, bitterly, seri-ously, with displeasure.*

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gravis], I. v. a., *make heavy, weigh down; pass., be unwilling, be reluctant.*

Grudii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -tōris, M., *a pilot, steersman, helmsman.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *taste, eat.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, 2. v. a. and n., *have, hold, keep, pos-sess; consider, esteem, regard; make (an enumeration); deliver (a speech); conduct (an investiga-tion); sē habēre aliter ac, to be different from.*

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Hae-dui, Haeduan; an important na-tion of Gaul between the Loire and the Saône; as a noun, a Haeduan.*

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [freq. of haereo, stick], I. v. n., *stick fast.*

hāmus, -ī, M., *hook.*

harpagō, -ōnis [Greek], M., *hook, grappling-hook, grappling-iron.*

Harūdēs, -um, M. plur., *a German people living near the lake of Constance.*

haud, adv., *(negatives single words), not, not at all, by no means.*

Helvēticus, -a, -um [Helvetius], adj., *Helvetian.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *of the Helvetii, a nation in Western Switzerland; as a noun, a Helvetian.*

Helvii, -ōrum, M. plur., *a Gallic tribe in the "Province."*

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., *Hercyn-ian; silva Hercynia, a great forest extending across southern Germany.*

hērēditās, -tatis [hēres, heir], F., *inheritance.*

Hibernia, -ae, F., *Ireland.*

hibernus, -a, -um [hiems], adj., *of winter; N. plur., hiberna [sc. castra], winter camp, winter quarters.*

hic, adv., *here, in this place.*

hic, haec, hōc, gen. huius, demons. pronoun, *this; this man, woman, thing; he, she, it; the following; such; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, I. v. n., *winter, pass the winter.*

hiems (-mps), -emis, F., *winter, rainy season, storm.*

hinc, adv., *hence, from here.*

Hispānia, -ae [Hispanus], F., *Spain.*
 Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish.*
 homō, -inis, M. or F., *human being, man; plur., people.*
 honestus, -a, -um [honos], adj., *honorable, esteemed, respected.*
 honor (-ōs), -ōris, M., *respect, honor, esteem; dignity, office; honōris causā, out of respect.*
 honōrificus, -a, -um [honor-facio], adj., *honorable (conferring honor).*
 hōra, -ae [Greek], F., *hour, a twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset, varying with the seasons.*
 horreō, -ēre, -ūl, no p. p., 2. v. n. and a., *(bristle like hair standing up), shudder, dread.*
 horribilis, -e [horreo], adj., *dreadful, terrible.*
 horridus, -a, -um [horreo], adj., *rough, wild, terrible.*
 hortor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *encourage, cheer, urge, instigate.*
 hospes, -itis, M., *host; stranger, guest; friend, guest-friend bound by the relation of hospitium.*
 hospitium, -i [hospes], N., *relation of host and guest, a hereditary friendship between persons of different nations, not personal in character, but concerning the family or the community at large.*
 hostis, -is, M. or F., *a stranger, foreigner; an enemy (of the state), the enemy (in sing. or plur.).*
 hūc [hic], adv., *hither, to this place, to this amount, etc. (when something is added).*
 hūiusmodi [hic modus], adj. phrase, *of this kind, such.*
 hūmānitās, -tatis [humanus], F., *civilization, culture, refinement, kindness, courtesy.*
 hūmānus, -a, -um [homo], adj. (of man, human); *cultivated, refined, civilized.*
 humilis, -e [cf. humus, ground], *low, small, insignificant; (of ships) shallow.*
 humilitās, -tatis [humilis], F., *low-ness, shallowness; insignificance.*

I
 I, for ūnus, -a, -um, *one.*
 iaceō, iacēre, iacūl, iacitūrus, 2. v. n., *lie, lie dead; iacentēs, the fallen, the dead.*
 iaciō, iacere, iēci, iactus, 3. v. a., *throw, cast, hurl; throw up (earthworks); drop (anchor).*
 iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (freq. of iacio], 1. v. a., *throw; toss about, back and forth; discuss (a subject).*
 iactūra, -ae [iacio], F., *throwing (away), loss, sacrifice, cost, offer.*
 iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.
 iaculum, -i [cf. iacio], N., *a javelin, dart.*
 iam, adv., *already, now, at length, at last; with negative, no longer; at once, immediately; soon; in fact, even.*
 ibi [cf. is], adv., *there, in that place.*
 Iccius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Remi.*
 ictus, -ūs [ico, strike], M., *stroke, blow, thrust, shot.*
 Id, for Idūs.
 idcircō [is, circum, circa], adv., *for that (this) reason, therefore.*
 idem, eadem, idem [is-dem], demons. adj. pron., *the same, the very (one); as noun, the same person or thing.*
 identidem [idem], adv., *(the same thing over and over), again and again, repeatedly.*
 idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, convenient, proper, capable.*
 Idūs, -uum, F. plur., *the Ides, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of the other months.*
 ignis, -is, M., *fire; plur., campfires.*
 ignōbilis, -e [in-(g)nobilis], adj., *not famous, unknown, obscure.*
 ignōminia, -ae [in-(g)nomen], F., *disgrace, dishonor, shame.*
 ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. ignoscō], 1. v. a., *not to know, be ignorant of; be unaware of, overlook.*

- ignōscō**, *Ignoscere, Ignōvi, Ignōtus* [in-(g)nosco], 3. v. n. and a., *overlook, pardon, forgive.*
- ignōtus**, -a, -um [p. p. of ignosco?], adj., *unknown, strange, unfamiliar.*
- ille**, -a, -ud, *demons. pron., adj., or subst., that; he, she, it, they; (as opposed to hīc) the former. Hīc refers to what is near the speaker, ille to what is comparatively remote.*
- illīc** [ille], adv., *there, in that place, yonder.*
- illō**, abl. of ille, adv., *thither, there, to that place.*
- Illyricum**, -i, N., *Illyria, a country north and east of the Adriatic, one of Caesar's provinces; now Istria and Dalmatia.*
- imbēcillitās**, -tatis [imbecillus, weak], F., *weakness, feebleness.*
- imber**, imbris, M., *rain, rain-storm.*
- imitor**, -āri, -ātus, i. v. dep., *copy, imitate.*
- immānis**, -e, adj., *monstrous, enormous, huge.*
- immīneō**, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [in-mineo], 2. v. n., *project over, overhang; threaten.*
- immissus**, -a, -um, p. p. of immitto.
- immittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus [in-mitto], 3. v. a., *send into, send against, hurl, cast; let in, insert.*
- immolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-mola, meal], i. v. a., *(sprinkle meal on a victim's head), sacrifice.*
- immortālis**, -e [in-mortālis], adj., *immortal, deathless, eternal.*
- immūnis**, -e [in-munus], *free from duty, free from taxes or tribute, unburdened.*
- immūnitās**, -tatis [fimminis], F., *freedom from public burdens, exemption.*
- imparātus**, -a, -um [in-paratus], adj., *not ready, unprepared.*
- impeditmentum**, -i [impeditio], N., *hindrance; plur., impedimenta, -ōrum, heavy baggage, baggage-*
- train (beasts and wagons included).*
- impediō**, -ire, -āvī, -ātus [in-pes], 4. v. a., *entangle, ensnare, hamper, embarrass, obstruct, hinder, make difficult; impeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., entangled, embarrassed; obstructed, difficult, impassable (road), interrupted (view).*
- impellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [in-pello], 3. v. a., *drive on or against, urge, move, incite, persuade, induce.*
- impendeō**, -ēre [in-pendeo, hang], 2. v. n., *overhang.*
- impēnsus**, -a, -um [p. p. of impendo, pay out], adj., *expensive, high (price).*
- imperātor**, -tōris [impero], M., *commander-in-chief, commander, general.*
- imperātum**, -i [impero], N. of p. p. as noun, *a command, order.*
- imperitus**, -a, -um [in-peritus, skilled], adj., *skilled, unskilled, unacquainted with, inexperienced in.*
- imperium**, -i [impero], N., *command, authority, rule, power (especially military); control, government; an order, a command.*
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i. v. a. and n., *demand, command, order to furnish something; levy; to command, order, rule.*
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-patrō, accomplish], i. v. a., *obtain one's request, accomplish, get, procure, bring to pass.*
- impetus**, -tūs [in-peto], M., *attack, onset, rush, assault, force, fury.*
- impious**, -a, -um [in-pius], adj., *wicked, impious.*
- implicō**, -āre, -āvī (-ui), -ātus (-itus) [in-pllico, fold], i. v. a., *infold, interweave, entangle, unite.*
- implōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-ploro, cry], i. v. a., *beseech, implore, invoke.*
- impōnō**, -pōnere, -posū, -positus [in-pono], 3. v. a., *put on, place upon, mount, impose, lay upon.*

- importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-porto],
I. v. a., carry in, import.
- impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of impono.
- improbus, -a, -um [in-probus, good], adj., bad, wicked, shameless, unprincipled.
- imprōvisus, -a, -um [in-provisus, p. p. of provideo], adj., unforeseen, unexpected; (dē) imprōvisō, of a sudden, suddenly, unexpectedly.
- imprūdēns, -entis [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not foreseeing, not expecting, off one's guard, unaware.
- imprūdentia, -ae [imprudens], F., lack of foresight, thoughtlessness, indiscretion, ignorance.
- impūbēs, -eris (-is) [in-pubes], adj., immature, youthful; unmarried.
- impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-pugno], I. v. a. and n., attack, assail, charge, fight.
- impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello.
- impulsus, -sūs [impello], M., impulse; instigation, influence.
- impūnē [impunis, in-poena], adv., without punishment, with impunity.
- impūnitās, -tatis [impunis, in-poena], F., freedom from punishment, impunity.
- imus, -a, -um, superl. of inferus.
- in- [cf. Eng. in-, un-], negative particle in composition.
- in, prep. with acc. or abl.; (1) with acc., of motion, into, to, toward, against, in, on, upon, among; for, to, till (a certain time); according to, in order to. (2) with abl., of rest, in, on, upon, among, at, within, in case of, during in course of.
- inānis, -e, adj., empty, vain, idle, fruitless, useless.
- incautē [incautus], adv., carelessly, heedlessly.
- incautus, -a, -um [in-cautus, p. p. of caveo], adj., careless, off one's guard.
- incendium, -i [incendo], N., burning, a fire, conflagration.
- incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus, 3. v. a., set fire to, burn, kindle, rouse, excite.
- incēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendo.
- inceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of incipio.
- incertus, -a, -um [in-certus], adj., uncertain, undecided, doubtful, indefinite, dubious, unreliable, untrustworthy, disordered (ranks).
- incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [in-cado], 3. v. n., fall upon; fall in with, meet; occur, happen, befall.
- incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [in-caedo], 3. v. a., cut into, cut partly through.
- incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [in-capio], 3. v. a., begin, commence, undertake.
- incisus, -a, -um, p. p. of incido.
- incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-cito], I. v. a., set in motion, urge on, drive, spur (horses), rouse, stir up; sē incitāre, rush.
- incōgnitus, -a, -um [in-cognitus], adj., unknown.
- incolō, -colere, -colui, no p. p. [in-colō], 3. v. a. and n., inhabit, dwell in; live, dwell.
- incolumis, -e, adj., safe, unhurt, unharmed, safe and sound.
- incommode [incommodus], adj., inconveniently, unfortunately.
- incommodus, -a, -um [in-commodus], adj., inconvenient; as noun, incommodum, -i, N., inconvenience, disadvantage, misfortune, injury, disaster, defeat.
- incrēdibilis, -e [in-credibilis, from credo], adj., not to be believed, incredible, marvelous, extraordinary.
- increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -atus [freq. of increpo, chide], I. v. a., reproach, taunt, revile.
- incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [in-cumbo, lie], 3. v. n., lie upon, bend to, apply one's self to, exert one's self.
- incursiō, -ōnis [cf. incurro, run upon], F., invasion, inroad, attack.
- incursus, -sūs [cf. incurro, run upon], M., attack, inroad.

- incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-causa, cf. accuso], I. v. a., *find fault with, chide, accuse.*
- inde, adv., *from there, thence; then, after that, thereupon.*
- indictum, -i [indico], N., *information, disclosure, evidence.*
- indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus [in-dico, say], 3. v. a., *declare, proclaim, announce; appoint, fix.*
- indictus, -a, -um, p. p. of indicō.
- indictus, -a, -um [in-(not) dictus], adj., *unsaid; unpleaded, untried, unheard.*
- indignē [indignus], adv., *unworthily, dishonorably, shamefully.*
- indignitās, -tatis [indignus], F., *unworthiness, disgrace, shame, ignominy.*
- indignor, -āri, -ātus [indignus], I. v. dep., *consider shameful, be indignant at.*
- indignus, -a, -um [in-dignus], adj., *unworthy.*
- indiligēns, -entis [in-diligens, careful], adj., *careless, heedless, negligent.*
- indiligerter [indiligens], adv., *carelessly, negligently.*
- indiligentia, -ae [indiligens], F., *carelessness, negligence.*
- indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [in-dūcō], 3. v. a., *draw on, lead in; cover; lead on, induce.*
- inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.
- indulgentia, -ae [indulgens, pres. p. of indulgeo], F., *kindness, favor.*
- indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulstī, -dultus, 2. v. n., *favor, treat kindly.*
- induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus [cf. ex-uō], 3. v. a., *put on; sē induere, impale themselves, fall upon.*
- industriē [industrius, diligent], adv., *actively, promptly, energetically.*
- indūtiae [indūc-], -ārēm, F. plur., *truce, armistice, cessation of hostilities.*
- Indūtiomārus, -i, M., a chief of the Treviri, rival of Cingetorix.
- ineō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus [in-eo], irr. v. a., *go into, enter, enter upon,*
- begin, form (a plan), make (a calculation, count, etc.), gain (favor).
- inermis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [in-arma], adj., *unarmed.*
- iners, -ertis [in-ars], adj., *shiftless, sluggish, indolent, unmanly.*
- infāmia, -ae [infamis, in-fama], F., *disrepute, disgrace, dishonor.*
- infāns, -antis [in-fans, pres. p. of for, speak], adj., *not speaking, without speech; as noun, M. and F., a child, young child, infant.*
- infēctus, -a, -um [in-factus, p. p. of facio], adj., *not done; rē infēcta, without accomplishing one's purpose, without success.*
- inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [in-fero], irr. v. a., *bring in, put or place upon; cause, inflict, bring upon; make (war) upon; assign, allege (a reason); signa inferre, advance, charge.*
- inferus, -a, -um, adj., compar. inferior; superl. infimus (imus); low; ab infimō, *at the bottom.*
- infēstus, -a, -um [in-festus, fr. fendo, strike], adj., *hostile, threatening, dangerous; infestis signis, in hostile array.*
- infīcio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus, 3 v. a., *dye, stain.*
- infidēlis, -e [in-fidelis], adj., *unfaithful, treacherous.*
- infīgō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [in-figo], 3. v. a., *fasten in, fix in.*
- infimus, -a, -um, superl. of inferus.
- infinitus, -a, -um [in-finitus, p. p. of finio], adj., *unbounded, unlimited, countless.*
- infirmitās, -tatis [infirmus], F., *weakness, feebleness; unsteadiness, sickleness.*
- infirmus, -a, -um [in-firmus], adj., *weak, feeble; depressed.*
- infīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of infīgo.
- inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexus [in-flecto], 3. v. a., *bend, bend down; sē inflectere, become bent, bend.*
- inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflecto.
- inflūō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxūrus [in-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow into, empty into.*

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fōssus [in-fodio], 3. v. a., (*dig in*), *bury*.
 īfrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *below, underneath, farther down, less than*.
 ingēns, -ēntis, adj., *huge, vast, enormous, very large*.
 ingrātus, -a, -um [in-gratus], adj., *unpleasant, unacceptable, not agreeable*.
 ingredior, -gredi, -gressus [in-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., *walk into, march into, enter, enter upon, begin*.
 iniciō, -icere, -iēclī, -iectus [in-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw into or upon; put in, put on board; inspire*.
 iniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of inicio.
 inimicitia, -ae [inimicus], F., *enmity, hostility*.
 inamicus, -a, -um [in-amicus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile; as noun, M. and F., an enemy (personal, hostis being a public enemy)*.
 iniquitās, -tatis [iniquus], adj., *inequality, unevenness; unfairness, unfavorableness*.
 iniquus, -a, -um [in-aequus], adj., *uneven, unequal, not level; unfair, unfavorable, disadvantageous*.
 initium, -i [cf. ineo]. N., *beginning, commencement, start; plur., first principles*.
 iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [in-iungo], 3. v. a., *fasten upon, attach, impose*.
 iniūria, -ae [in-ius], F., *injustice, wrong, injury, outrage*.
 iniüssu [in-iussu], adv., *without orders, without command*.
 inlātus [ill-], -a, -um, p. p. of infero.
 inligo [ill-], -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i. v. a., *bind on, tie on, fasten to*.
 inlūtris, -e, adj., *distinguished, famous, prominent*.
 innāscor, -nāsci, -nātus [in-nascor], 3. v. dep., *be born in, be natural to; innātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., inborn, natural*.
 innātus, -a, -um, p. p. of innascor.

innitor, -nitī, -nīsus (-nīxus) [in-nitor], 3. v. dep., *lean upon, support one's self with*.
 innīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of innitor.
 innocēns, -ēntis [in-nocens, pres. p. of noceo], adj., *harmless, innocent, guiltless*.
 innocentia, -ae [innocens], F., *integrity, blamelessness*.
 inopīa, -ae [in-ops], F., *want, lack, need, destitution, privation, scarcity, dearth*.
 inopīnāns, -antis [in-opinans, pres. p. of opinor, think, suspect], adj., *not suspecting, off one's guard, unawares*.
 inquam, def. v. n., *say*.
 inrīdeō (irr.), -ridēre, -risī, -risus [in-rideo, laugh], 2. v. n., *laugh at, jeer at*.
 inrīdiculē (irr.) [in-ridiculus, witty], adv., *without wit; nōn in-ridiculē, humorously*.
 inrumpō (irr.), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., *break into, burst into, rush in, storm*.
 inrūptiō (irr.), -ōnis [cf. inrumpo], F., *breaking in, attack, raid*.
 insciēns, -ēntis [in-sciens, pres. p. of scio], adj., *not knowing, unaware; insciente Caesare, without Caesar's knowledge*. —
 inscientia, -ae [insciens], F., *ignorance, lack of knowledge, lack of acquaintance*.
 inscius, -a, -um [in-scio, cf. conscious], adj., *ignorant, not knowing, unaware*.
 inseçtus, -a, -um, p. p. of inse-quor.
 insequor, -sequi, -secūtus [in-se-quor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue*.
 insero, -serere, -serui, -sertus [in-sero, join], 3. v. a., *fasten in, insert*.
 insidiae, -ārum [in-sedeo, sit], F. plur., *ambush, snare, trap; trick, device, stratagem, plot, treachery*.
 insidior, -ārī, -ātus [insidiae], i. v. dep., *lie in wait*.
 insignis, -e [in-signum], adj., *marked, remarkable, notable, signal; as noun, insigne, -is, N.*,

- sign, mark, badge; decoration (mark of honor).*
- īnsiliō**, -silire, -silū, -sultus [in-salio, leap], 4. v. a., *leap upon.*
- īnsimulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-simulo], 1. v. a., *charge, accuse.*
- īnsinuō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-sinuo, bend, wind], 1. v. a., *thrust in; sē īnsinuāre, make one's way into.*
- īnsistō**, -sistere, -stifi, no p. p. [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., *stand upon, set foot on, get a footing, keep one's footing; press on, pursue; apply or devote one's self to.*
- īnsolenter** [insolens, in-soleo], adv., *(in an unusual manner), haughtily, insolently.*
- īnspectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-specto], 1. v. a. and n., *look at, look on; inspectantibus nōbīs, before our eyes.*
- īnstabilis**, -e [in-stabilis, fr. sto, steady], adj., *unsteady; changeable.*
- īnstar**, N., indecl., (image, likeness); with gen., *like, in the likeness of.*
- īnstigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *goad, spur on, urge, incite.*
- īnstituō**, -tuere, -tui, -tūtus [in-statuo], 3. v. a., *set up, establish, build, construct; set in order, array, draw up; provide, procure; set about, begin, undertake, adopt; train, teach, educate; īstitutus, -a, -um, p. p., as noun īstitutum, -i, N., practice, custom, usage, institution.*
- īnstitūtūm**, -i, N.; see instituo.
- īnstō**, -stāre, -stifi, no p. p. [in-stō], 1. v. n., *stand by, be near, be close, approach, press on, threaten.*
- īnstrūctus**, -a, -um, p. p. of instruo.
- īnstrūmentum**, -i [cf. instruo], N., *tool, utensil; in collective sense, equipment, stores, stock, furniture.*
- īnstruō**, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus [in-struo, build], 3. v. a., *build, construct; draw up (troops); fit out, equip.*
- īnsuēfactus**, -a, -um [insuesco (become accustomed) -facio], adj., *accustomed, trained.*
- īnsuētus**, -a, -um [in-suetus, p. p. of suesco, become accustomed], adj., *unaccustomed, unused.*
- īnsula**, -ae, F., *island.*
- īnsuper** [in-super, above], adv., *above, on top, from above, besides.*
- īnteger**, -gra, -grum [in-tago, root of tango], adj., *untouched, whole, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh; rē integrā, at the beginning, before committing one's self to any course of action.*
- īntegō**, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [in-tego], 3. v. a., *cover, cover over.*
- īntellegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [in-ter-lego], 3. v. a., *(distinguish), understand, perceive, learn, discover.*
- īntendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [in-tendo], 3. v. a., *stretch, strain; sē intendere, be intent, be eager; intentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., attentive, intent, eager.*
- īnter**, prep. with acc., *between, among; within, during; inter sē, each other, to, for, etc., each other.*
- īntercēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., *come or go between, interpose, intervene, lie between, exist between, pass (of time) occur.*
- īnterceptus**, -a, -um, p. p. of interceptio.
- īntercipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [inter-capio], 3. v. a., *intercept, cut off, capture.*
- īnterclūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [inter-claudio], 3. v. a., *shut off, cut off, blockade, hinder.*
- īnterdicō**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus [inter-dico], 3. v. a., *forbid, prohibit, enjoin, exclude by order; aquā et igni interdicere, to forbid the use of water and fire, to banish.*
- īnterdiū** [inter-diū, cf. dies], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*
- īnterduum** [inter-dūm], adv., *sometimes, for a time.*
- īntereā** [inter-ea], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interēō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -itūrus [in-
ter-eo], irr. v. n., *perish, die, be
killed, be destroyed, be lost.*
interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *inter-
ficio*.
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [in-
ter-facio], 3. v. a., *kill, put to
death, slay.*
intericō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [inter-
iacio], 3. v. a., *throw between, put
between; pass., lie between, inter-
vene.*
interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *in-
tericio*.
interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the
meantime.*
interior, -us [compar. of *interus*],
adj., *inner, interior*; as noun, M.
plur., *those living in the interior
(of a country), those inside (a
town).*
interitus, -tūs [intereo], M., *de-
struction, death, ruin.*
intermissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *in-
termitto*.
intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus
[inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n.,
*leave an interval, interrupt,
continue, suspend, leave off, stop;
omit, let pass, neglect; delay, sepa-
rate, leave vacant.*
internecō, -ōnis [interneco, *kill*],
F., *massacre, slaughter, extermin-
ation.*
interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. ap-
pello, -are], I. v. a., *interrupt,
hinder, interfere with.*
interpōnō, -pōnere, -posūi, -positus
[inter-pono], 3. v. a., *put be-
tween, interpose; put forward,
allege, urge; excite (suspicion); let
pass (of time), allow to elap-*^{sus}
give (a promise).
interpres, -pretis, M., *mediator, in-
interpreter.*
interpreter, -ārī, -atu[m] [interpres],
I. v. dep., *explain, interpret.*
interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-
terrogo], I. v. a., *ask, ques-
tion.*
interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tus [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., *break
off, break down.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scis-
sus [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., *cut
off, break down.*
intersum, -esse, -sūi, -futūrus [in-
ter-sum], irr. v. n., *be between,
be among, be present at, take part
in, be engaged in; impers., it con-
cerns, it interests, it is important;
it makes a difference, there is a
difference.*
intervallū, -i [inter-vallus], N.,
(*space between two stakes of a palis-
ade*); *interval, distance apart,
space.*
intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventū-
rus [inter-venio], 4. v. n., *come
between, arrive.*
interventus, -tūs [intervenio],
*coming between, interposition, in-
tervention.*
intexō, -texere, -texui, -textus [in-
texo], 3. v. a., *weave in, weave
together.*
intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of *in-
texo.*
intoleranter [intolerans, *im-
patient, unbearable*], adv., *insuf-
ferably, immoderately, violent-
ly.*
intrā, adv. and prep. with acc.,
within, inside, during.
intritus, -a, -um [in-tritus, p. p.
of tero, *wear away*], adj., *un-
worn, unwearied, not tired.*
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a.,
enter, go into.
intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus
[intro (adv.) -ducere], 3. v. a.,
lead into, bring into.
introēō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -itus [intro
(adv.) -eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go
into, go in, enter.*
introitus, -tūs [cf. introeo], M.,
*going in, entering; entrance, ap-
proach.*
intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *in-
tromitto*.
intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus
[intro (adv.) -mitto], 3. v. a.,
send into, let in.
intrōrsus [intro (adv.) -vorsus
(versus)], adv., *into the interior,
within, inside.*

- intrōrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tūrus [**intro** (adv.) **-rumpo**], 3.
v. n., *break in, burst in.*
- intueor**, -tuērī, -tuitus (-tūtus) [**in-**
tueor], 2. v. dep., *look upon,*
gaze at.
- intuli**; see *infero*.
- intus**, adv., *within, on the inside.*
- inūsitatūs**, -a, -um [**in-usitatus**],
p. p. of *usitor, use often*], adj.,
unusual, unwonted, strange.
- inūtilis**, -e [**in-utilis**], adj., *useless,*
unserviceable; disadvantageous,
unfavorable.
- inveniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus [**in-**
venio], 4. v. a., *come upon, find,*
discover, learn.
- inventor**, -tōris [**invenio**], M.,
finder, discoverer, inventor.
- inventus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *invenio*.
- inveterāscō**, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus
[**in-veterasco**, *grow old*], 1. v. n.,
grow old, become established or fixed.
- invictus**, -a, -um [**in-victus**, p. p.
of **vincō**], adj., *unconquered; un-*
conquerable, invincible.
- invidia**, -ae [**invideo**], F., *envy,*
jealousy.
- inviolātus**, -a, -um [**in-violatus**,
p. p. of **violo**], adj., *inviolate;*
inviolable, sacred.
- invisus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *invideo*.
- invitō**, -are, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a.,
invite, request; entice, attract.
- invitus**, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling;*
against one's will.
- ipse**, -a, -um, intens. demons. pron.,
self, himself, herself, itself, them-
selves; he, she, they (emphatic);
the very one.
- irācundia**, -ae [**iracundus**], F.,
hasty temper, anger (as a perma-
nent trait), wrath, passion.
- irācundus**, -a, -um [**ira**], adj.,
wrathful, passionate, irascible.
- is**, ea, id, demons. pron., *he, she, it,*
they; that, this, the, a, the one;
such (before ut); et id, and that
too; with comparatives, eō, the,
all the (more, etc.).
- iste**, -a, -ud, demons. pron., *that,*
that of yours (often contemp-
tuous).
- ita**, adv., *so, thus, in such a way, in*
this way, to such an extent; ita
ut, just as; nōn ita, not so very.
- Italia**, -ae, F., *Italy.*
- itaque** [**ita-que**], adv., *and so, ac-*
cordingly, therefore.
- item** [cf. **idem**], adv., *likewise, in*
the same way, so also.
- iter**, **itineris** [cf. **eo**], N., *way, road,*
route, journey, march; māgnum
iter, forced march; iter dare,
allow to pass.
- iterum**, adv., *a second time, again.*
- Itius**, adj. (with *portus*), the har-
bor where Caesar embarked for
Britain, probably *Wissant*; per-
haps *Boulogne.*
- iuba**, -ae, F., *mane.*
- iubēo**, iubēre, iüssī, iüssus, 2. v. a.,
command, order, bid, direct.
- iūdiciūm**, -i [**iudex**], N., *judgment,*
decision, award, opinion; trial,
place of judgment.
- iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**iudex**], 1.
v. a., *decide, judge, award, ad-*
judge, be of opinion, think, con-
sider, resolve.
- iugum**, -i [cf. **iungo**], N., *yoke;*
ridge, crest of hills or mountains.
- iūmentum**, -i [**iugumentum**, fr.
iungo], N., (*team*), *yoke animal,*
beast of burden or draught, horse,
mule, pack-mule.
- iūntūra**, -ae [**iungo**], F., *join-*
ing, joint, seam.
- iūnctus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *iungo*.
- iungō**, iungere, iünxi, iünctus, 3.
v. a., *join, unite, attach, connect;*
sē iungere, join, attach one's self
to.
- iūnior**, comp. of *iuvenis.*
- Iūnius**, -i, M., (1) *D. Iunius Bru-*
tus (see *Brutus*); (2) *Q. Iunius*, a
Spaniard in Caesar's army.
- Iuppiter**, Iovis, M., god of the
heavens, chief of the Roman gods.
- Iūra**, -ae, M., a range of mountains
between the Sequani and Hel-
vetii.
- iūrō**, -are, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. n., *swear,*
take an oath.
- iūs**, iūris, N., *right, justice, law,*
authority; plur., rights, claims.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi [ius-iurandum, gerundive of iuro], N., oath.
 iūssū [abl. of iussus, from iubeo, not used in other cases], adv., by command, by order.
 iūstitia, -ae [iustus], F., justice, fair dealing, uprightness.
 iūstus, -a, -um [-ius], adj., fair, just, right, lawful; proper, due, suitable; regular, complete, perfect.
 iuvenis, -e, adj., young; as noun, a young man, a youth (up to forty-five years).
 iuventūs, -tūs [cf. iuvenis], F., youth; collective, young men, the youth.
 iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus, I. v. a., help, aid, assist.
 iūxtā, adv. and prep. with acc., near, by, beside.

K

Kal., for Kalendae in any case.
 Kalendae (Cal-), -ārum, F. plur., the Calends, the first day of the month.

L

L., for Lucius.
 L [Ψ, for Greek letter ψ, a sign for 50], for quinquāgintā, fifty.
 Laberius, -i, M.; see Durus.
 Labiēnus, -i, M., T. (Attius?) Labienus, the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. In the civil war he went over to the side of Caesar's enemies.
 labor, -ōris, M., toil, exertion, labor, trouble, hardship, fatigue.
 läbor, läbi, lapsus, 3. v. dep., slip, fall; slip away, escape; fail, be disappointed, go astray.
 labörō, -äre, -ävi, -ätus [labor], I. v. n., work, toil, labor, strive, make effort; be hard pressed, be in danger, be in trouble; animō laböräre, be anxious.
 labrum, -i [lambo, lick], N., lip; edge, rim.
 lac, lactis, N., milk.

laceſſō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitūs [lacio, entice], 3. v. a., provoke, irritate, excite, arouse, harass, attack.
 lacrima, -ae, F., a tear.
 lacrimō, -äre, -ävi, -ätus [lacrima], I. v. a. and n., shed tears, weep.
 lacus, -üs, M., lake.
 laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus, 3. v. a., injure, hurt; violate, break (a pledge).
 laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of laedo.
 laetitia, -ae [laetus], F., joy, rejoicing, gladness, delight.
 laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful, glad, rejoicing, pleased.
 languidē [languidus], adv., without energy, feebly.
 languidus, -a, -um [langueo, be weary], adj., weary, weak, feeble, spiritless, listless, faint.
 languor, -ōris [langueo, be weary], M., weariness, listlessness.
 lapis, -idis, M., a stone.
 lapsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.
 laqueus, -i [cf. facio, entice], M., noose, snare.
 largiōr, -irī, -itūs [largus, abundant], 4. v. dep., give bountifully, freely, bestow; give bribes.
 largiter [largus, abundant], adv., lavishly; largiter posse, have great influence.
 largitiō, -ōnis [largior], F., lavish giving, liberality; bribery.
 lassitudō, -dinis [lassus, weary], F., weariness, fatigue, faintness, exhaustion.
 lätē [latus], adv., widely, far, extensively; longē lätēque, far and wide; lätius, too far.
 latebra, -ae [cf. lateo], F., hiding-place, retreat.
 lateō, latēre, latui, no p. p., 2. v. n., lie hidden, be concealed, lurk.
 lätitudō, -dinis [latus], F., breadth, width, extent.
 Latobrigi, -ōrum, M. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii.
 latrō, -ōnis, M., robber, brigand, bandit, freebooter.

- latrōcinium, -i [latro], N., robbery, plundering, freebooting.
- lātūs, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive.
- lātūs, -a, -um, p. p. of fero.
- latus, -eris, N., side, flank; latus apertum, exposed flank; ab latere, on the flank.
- laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, i. v. a., praise, commend,
- laus, laudis, F., praise, glory, fame, credit.
- lavō, lavāre (-ere), lavāvī (lavī), lavātus (lautus, lōtus), i. v. a., wash, bathe.
- laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, i. v. a., loosen, stretch, open, extend.
- lēgātiō, -ōnis [lego, commission, dispatch, depute], F., embassy, deputation.
- lēgātūs, -i [p. p. of lego, despatch, depute], M., envoy, ambassador, deputy, lieutenant.
- legiō, -ōnis [lego, select], F., (levy), legion.
- legiōnārius, -a, -um [legio], adj., of a legion, legionary, as opposed to the auxiliary forces.
- Lemannus, -i, M., (with lacus), the Lake of Geneva, Lac Leman.
- Lemovices, -um, M. plur., a tribe between the Arverni and the Santoni; the name appears in the modern Limoges.
- lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth.
- lēnitās, -tatis [lenis], F., gentleness, mildness, smoothness, slowness (of a current).
- lēniter [lenis], adv., gently, softly, mildly.
- Lepontii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Alps, north of Lago Maggiore.
- lepus, -oris, M., a hare.
- Leuci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, west of the Vosges.
- Levacī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.
- levis, -e, adj., light, slight, trivial, unimportant; sickle, inconstant; baseless, unfounded (report)
- levitās, -tatis [levis], F., lightness; instability, inconstancy, fickleness.
- levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, i. v. a., lighten, relieve, free from, aid, assist.
- lēx, lēgis, F., law, statute, decree, ordinance.
- Lexovīi, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation on the coast west of the Sequana (Seine).
- libenter [libens, willing], adv., willingly, gladly, with pleasure.
- liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, independent, unrestrained.
- liberālitās, -tatis [liberalis, generous], F., generosity, liberality, kindness.
- liberāliter [liberalis, generous], adv., generously, kindly, courageously.
- liberē [liber], adv., freely, frankly, boldly, openly.
- liberi, -ōrum [liber], M. plur., (the free members of the family opposed to the slaves), children.
- liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, i. v. a., set free, deliver, liberate, release.
- libertās, -tatis [liber], F., freedom, independence, liberty.
- libriliś, -e [libra, a pound], adj., weighing a pound.
- licentia, -ae [cf. licet], F., lawlessness, lack of discipline, presumption.
- līceor, līcērī, līcitus, 2. v. dep., bid (at an auction).
- licet, līcērē, līcuit (licitum est), 2. v. n., be allowed, permitted, lawful; mihi licet, I may; per tē licet, you allow; petere ut līcēt, to ask permission; licet vidērī, one may see.
- Liger, -eris, M., the Loire, one of the chief rivers of Gaul.
- lignātiō, -ōnis [cf. lignum, wood], F., getting wood.
- lignātor, -ōris [cf. lignum], M., one sent to get wood, woodcutter.
- liliū, -i, N., lily; humorous name given to a kind of pitfall with a sharp stake in it.
- linea, -ac, F., a line.

Lingones, -um, M. plur., a Gallic nation north of the Sequani.

lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.

lingula, -ae [dimin. of *lingua*], F., *a little tongue (of land), a cape*.

linter, -tris, F. or M., *(trough), skiff, small boat*.

linum, -i, N., *flax, linen*.

lis, litis [for *stlis*, cf. Eng. *strife*], F., *a lawsuit; amount in dispute, damages*.

Liscus, -i, M., *a vergobret, chief magistrate of the Haedui*.

Litavicus, -i, M., *a chief of the Haedui*.

littera, -ae, F., *letter (of the alphabet), character*; plur., *litterae*, -ārum, *a letter (epistle), despatch; records*.

litus, -oris, N., *a shore, a coast, a beach*.

locus, -i [for *stlocus*], M. plur. loci, M., (not in Caesar), loca, N., *place, spot, ground, position, region; room, rank; loca, region* (often with sing. meaning).

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *loquor*.

longē [*longus*], adv., *far off, at a distance; by far, greatly, widely; longē lātēque, far and wide*.

longinquus, -a, -um [*longus*], adj., *long, far, distant, remote; long-continued*.

longitūdō, -dinis [*longus*], F., *length*.

longurius, -i [*longus*], M., *long pole*.

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long (of time and space), distant; longum est, it would take too long*.

loquor, loqui, locūtus, 3. v. dep., *speak, talk, say*.

lōrica, -ae [*lorum, strap*], F., *coat of mail, cuirass; breastwork (on a wall)*.

Lūcānius, -i, M., Q. *Lucanius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Lūcius, -i [cf. *lux, lucis*], M., a Roman praenomen.

Lucterius, -i, M., *Lucterius Caducus*, a Gallic commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotorīx, -igis, M., a British chief.

lūna, -ae, M., *the moon; personified, Lūna, the moon goddess*.

Lutētia, -ae, F., chief town of the Parisii, on the island of the modern *Paris*.

lūx, lūcis, F., *light, daylight; primā lūce, lūce ortā, at dawn, at day-break*.

luxūria, -ae [*luxus, excess*], F., *luxury, extravagance, high living*.

M

M., for Marcus.

M [for CI^C (originally ♣), sign for *mille*], *a thousand*.

māceria, -ae, F., *wall, enclosure*.

māchinātiō, -ōnis [*machinor, contrive*], F., *contrivance, mechanism, engine, machine*.

maestus, -a, -um [p. p. of *maereo, grieve*], adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected, mournful*.

Magetobriga, -ae, F., a town in Gaul, of uncertain position.

magis [cf. *magnus*], adv., *more, rather; eō magis, all the more; superl., māximē, most, very, in the greatest degree; very greatly, exceedingly, chiefly, especially*.

magistrātus, -tūs [cf. *magister, master*], M., *magistracy, office; (one holding such office), a magistrate, public officer*.

māgnificus, -a, -um [*magnus-faciō*], adj., *splendid*.

māgnitūdō, -dinis [*magnus*], F., *greatness, size, great size, extent, bulk*.

māgnōpere (*māgnō-opere*) [*magnus-opus*], adv., *very earnestly, very much, very greatly, very, specially*.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great (in all senses), large, important, powerful, extensive, heavy (taxes), loud (voice), high (tide); māgnī, gen., of great value, importance*.

māiestās, -tātis [*maiōr*], F., *grandeur, dignity, majesty*.

māior, compar. of *māgnus*; sc. *nātū*, *elder, older*; as noun, *mā-*

- iōrēs, *forefathers, ancestors*; mā-iōrēs nātū, *elders, old men*.
malacia, -ae [Greek], F., *calm at sea, dead calm*.
male [malus, *bad*], adv., *ill, badly, unsuccessfully, unfortunately*.
maleficium, -i [maleficus, maleficio], N., *mischief, harm, damage*.
mälō, mälle, mälui, no p. p. [mag (magis) -volo], irr. v. a. and n., *prefer, wish rather, choose*.
malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad* (in all senses), ill; compar., pēior; superl., *pessimus*.
mālūs, -i, M., *mast, upright pole*.
mandātūm, -i [p. p. of mando], N., *a trust, message, instructions, commission, command*.
mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [manu-do], i. v. a., (*put into another's hands*), *entrust, commit, commission, instruct, command*; sē fugae mādāre, *betake one's self to flight*.
Mandubii, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation north of the Haedui.
Mandubracius, -i, M., a chief of the Trinovantes in Britain.
māne, adv., *in the morning, early*.
maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsurus, 2. v. n., *stay, remain; stand by, abide by*.
manipulāris, -e [manipulus], adj., *of a maniple*; as noun, *soldier of a maniple, fellow-soldier, comrade*.
manipulus, -i [manus and the root of plenus], (*handful*), *maniple, company* (third of a cohort).
Manlius, -i, M., L. *Manlius*, pro-consul of Gaul, 78 B. C.
mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēci [mānsues, tame, -facio], 3. v. a., *tame*.
mānsuētūdō, -dinis [*mansuetus, tamed*], F., *tameness, gentleness, mildness*.
manus, -ūs, F., *hand; company, band, troop, force*.
Marcomannī, -ōrum, M. plur., a German tribe, in Arioistus's army.
Mārcus, -i, M., a Roman praenomen; English *Mark*.
mare, -is, N., *sea*.
- maritimus**, -a, -um [mare], adj., *of the sea, by the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval*.
Marius, -I, M., C. *Marius*, seven times consul, the conqueror of Jugurtha, and of the Cimbri and Teutones.
Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars*, god of war; war, battle; aequō Mārte, (*fighting*) on equal terms.
mās, maris, adj., *male*.
matara, -ae, F., a Gallic javelin, *spear, pike*.
māter, -tris, F., *a mother*; mātrēs familiae, *matrons*.
materia, -ae (-es, -ēi) [mater], F., *stuff, material*; esp. *timber, wood* (for building).
māterior, -āri, -ātus [materia], i. v. dep., *get timber, bring wood*.
Matiscō, -ōnis, F., a town of the Haedui, now *Mâcon*.
mātrimōnium, -i [mater], N., *marriage*; in mātrimōnium dūcere, *marry*.
Matrona, -ae, F., the *Marne*, which runs into the Seine near Paris.
mātūrē [maturus], adv., *early*; quam mātūrrime, *as early as possible*.
mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūrūi, no p. p. [maturus], 3. v. n., *ripen, get ripe*.
mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [maturus], i. v. a. and n., *hasten, make haste*.
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe*; *early*.
māximē [maximus], adv., superl. of magis, which see.
Māximus, -i, M.; see *Fabius*.
medeor, -ēri, no p. p., 2. v. dep., *heal, cure, remedy, relieve*.
mediocris, -cre [medius], adj., *moderate, middling, ordinary, tolerable*; nōn mediocris, *no great, no little*.
mediocriter [mediocriter], adv., *moderately, to some extent*.
Mediomatrici, -ōrum, M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul, south of the Treviri, about *Mets*.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius-terra], adj., *midland, inland, central, interior*.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle, in the midst or middle of, midway, half-way.*

Meldī, -ōrum, M., a tribe on the Marne, about the modern Meaux. **melior**, compar. of *bonus*. **melius**, adv., compar. of *bene*.

Melodūnum, -i, N., later name for *Metiosedum*, which in French became *Melun*.

membrum, -i, N., *limb, part of the body.*

memini, -isse, def. v. a, *remember, recollect, bear in mind*; see grammar.

memoria, -ae [memor], F., *memory, recollection, remembrance; the period of recollection.*

Menapii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe near the coast, between the Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and the Mosa (*Maas*). **mendācium**, -i [mendax, *lying*], N., *lie, falsehood.*

mēns, mentis, F., *mind, intellect, reason, judgment; disposition, state of mind.*

mēnsis, -is, M., *a month.*

mēnsūra, -ae [metior], F., *measure; ex aquā, by the water-clock.*

mentiō, -ōnis [cf. memini], F., *mention.*

mercātor, -tōris [mercor, *trade*], M., *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, -ae [mercor, *trade*], F., *trade, traffic.*

mercēs, -ēdis [cf. merx, *merchandise, meroe, earn*], F., *wages, hire, pay.*

Mercurius, -i, M., *Mercury, the Roman god of trade, eloquence, roads, messenger of the gods, conductor of souls to the lower world.* **mereor**, -ēri, -itus (or mereō, -ēre, -ui, -itus), 2. v. dep., *win, earn, deserve, be entitled to; serve (as a soldier).*

meridiānus, -a, -um [*meridies*], adj., *of mid-day, of noon.*

meridiēs, -ēi [*medius-dies*], M., *mid-day, noon; the South.*

meritum, -i [p. p. of mereor], N., *desert, service, merit, kindness, benefit.*

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of *mereo* or *mereor.*

Messāla, -ae, M., *M. Valerius Messala*, consul, with M. Piso, 61 B. C.

mētior, mētiri, mēnsus, 4. v. dep., *measure, measure out, deal out.*

Metiosēdum, -i, N., a town of the Senones, afterward *Melodunum*, now *Melun*.

Mētius, -i, M., *M. Metius*, an envoy of Caesar to Arioivistus.

metō, metere, messui, messus, 3. v. a., *mow, reap, cut.*

metus, -tūs, M., *fear, dread, apprehension.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., *my, mine.*

mihi, dative of *ego*.

mīlēs, -itis, M., *soldier, foot-soldier, private soldier, legionary.*

militāris, -e [miles], adj., *of soldiers, military; rēs militāris, the art of war, military operations.*

militia, -ae [miles], F., *service as a soldier, service in the army.*

mīlle, indecl.; plur. **mīlia** (*millia*), -ium, adj. in sing., noun in plur., *a thousand.*

mīlle passuum, *a thousand (double) paces, a mile.*

Minerva, -ae, F., *the Roman goddess of wisdom and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.*

minimē [minimus], adv., *least, very little, in the smallest degree, not at all, by no means.*

minimus, -a, -um [*superl. of parvus*], adj., *least, smallest, very little.*

minor, -us [*compar. of parvus*], adj., *smaller, less; N., minus, noun and adv., less, not much, not very; sī minus, if not.*

Minucius (Minut-), -i, M.; see **Basilus.**

minuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, diminish, weaken, reduce; settle (disputes); (of the tide) ebb.*

mirātūs, -a, -um, p. p. of *miror*, *miror*, -āri, -ātus [*mirus*], 1. v. dep., *wonder, be surprised, wonder*

at ; mirātus, -a, -um, p. p., wondering, surprised.
mirus, -a, -um, adj., surprising, wonderful, marvelous, extraordinary.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate.
misericordia, -ae [misericors, compassionate], F., pity, compassion, mercy.
miseror, -ārī, -ātus [miser], 1. v. dep., pity, complain of, lament, bewail.
missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mittio.
missus, -sūs [mitto], M., sending; missū Caesaris, sent by Caesar.
mitissimē [superl. of mite, fr. mitis], adv., very gently, very mildly, very kindly.
mittio, mittere, misi, missus, 3. v. a., send, dispatch, let go, release; throw, cast, hurl, shoot.
mōbilis, -e [moveo], adj., movable, easily moved, fickle, changeable, hasty, excitable.
mōbilitās, -tātis [mobilis], F., quickness, activity, speed; fickleness, inconstancy.
mōbiliter [mobilis], adv., readily, easily.
moderor, -ārī, -ātus [modus], 1. v. dep., control, manage, restrain, govern, regulate.
modestia, -ae [modestus, self-controlled], F., self-control, temperateness, subordination to discipline.
modō [modus], adv., only, but, just, even, merely; lately, just now; nōn . . . modo, not . . . only; modo . . . modo, now . . . again, sometimes . . . sometimes.
modus, -i, M., measure, quantity, extent, limit; manner, method, mode, plan; ad modum, in (such) a way; modō, in the manner of; nūllō modō, by no means.
moenia, -ium [cf. munio], N. plur., walls of a city, fortifications.
mōlēs, -is, F., mass; dike, dam, mole.
molestē [molestus, troublesome; cf. moles], adv., heavily, severely;

molestē ferre, take to heart, be vexed at.
mōlimentum, -i [molior, strive], N., exertion, effort, difficulty.
molitus, -a, -um, p. p. of molo.
moliō, -ire, -ivī, -itus [mollis], 4. v. a., soften, make easy.
mollis, -e, adj., soft, yielding; gentle, easy; weak, feeble, not firm.
mollitiēs, -ēi (-a, -ae) [mollis], F., softness; weakness, feebleness.
molō, -ere, -ui, -itus, 3. v. a., grind; molita cibāria, meal, ground grain.
mōmentum, -i [for movimentum (moveo)], N., movement; (cause of motion), influence; importance, moment, weight.
Mona, -ae, F., Anglesey, an island on the coast of Wales; at other times the Isle of Man.
moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [from same root as mens], 2. v. a., remind, advise, warn.
mōns, montis, M., mountain, high hill; summus mōns, the top of a mountain.
mora, -ae, F., delay, hindrance.
morbus, -i, M., sickness, disease.
Morini, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul, on the coast opposite Kent.
morior, mori (moriri), mortuus, mortūrus [cf. mors], 3. or 4. v. dep., die.
Moritaspus, -i, M., a chief of the Senones.
moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora], 1. v. dep., linger, tarry, delay; retard, delay, detain, hinder.
mors, mortis [cf. morior], F., death; sibi mortem cōsciscere, commit suicide.
mōrtuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.
mōs, mōris, M., habit, custom, usage, practice; plur., manners, customs, character.
Mosa, -ae, M., the Meuse or Maas, a river of Belgic Gaul.
mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.
mōtus, -tūs [moveo], M., movement, motion, disturbance, uprising, insurrection.

mōvēs, *mōvēre*, *mōtūs*, *mōtūs*, *2.*

V. v., move, set in motion, remove; stir up, excite, influence; break (camp).

mulier, -eris, F., a woman.

mūliō, -ōnis [mulus], M., muleteer, mule-driver.

multitūdō, -dinis [multus], F., a large number, crowd, multitude; populace, common people.

multō; see multus.

multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [multa, a fine], I. v. a., punish (by a fine), fine, deprive of (as a penalty).

multum; see multus.

multus, -a, -um; compar. plūs; superl. plūrimus; adj., much, plur., many; multō diē, late in the day; multum, acc. as adv., much; plūs, more, plūrimūm, most, very much; multō, (by) much, (by) far.

mūlus, -ī, M., a mule.

Mūnātiōs, -ī, M., L. Munatiōs Plancus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

mundus, -ī, M., world, universe.

mūnīmentum, -ī [munio], N., fortification, defense.

mūniō, -ire, -īvī (-ii), -ītus, 4. v. a. and n., fortify, protect (by walls); make, construct (anything in the form of embankment, causeway, etc., e. g., a road).

mūnītiō, -ōnis [munio], F., fortification, works, defenses.

mūnūs, -eris [cf. moenia and munio], N., (share of duty), duty, obligation; service, task, function, office; contribution, gift, favor.

mūrālis, e- [murus], adj., of a wall; falx, wall-hook; pilum, wall-javelin (to be thrown from a wall).

mūrus, -ī, M., wall (the general term).

musculus, -ī [dimin. of mus, mouse], M., (little mouse), a massive shed, used to shelter besiegers.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., maimed, broken; mutilae cornibus, without horns, or with short, stumpy horns.

nactus, ea, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

nam [cf. tam, quam], conj., for.

Nammeius, -ī, M., a Helvetian envoy sent to Caesar.

Namnetes, -um, M. plur., a Gallic people north of the mouth of the Loire, whose name appears in Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for, more emphatic than nam.

nanciscor, -īscī, nactus (nancetus), 3. v. dep., find, meet with, get, obtain, acquire.

Nantuātes, -um, M. plur., a tribe living probably south of the Lake of Geneva.

Narbō, -ōnis, M., a city in the Province, now Narbonne.

nāscor, nāsci, nātūs (gnascor, etc.), 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, start from, be found (of metals); nātūs, -a, -um, p. p., born, sprung.

Nasua, -ae, a leader of the Suebi. nātālis, -e [natus], adj., of birth; diēs, birthday.

nātīo, -ōnis [nascor], F., race, stock, nation, tribe, a people.

nātīvus, -a, -um [natus], adj., natural, native.

nātūra, -ae [nascor], F., nature, character; natural features (of a country), form, organization, state.

nātūs, -a, -um, p. p. of nascor.

nātūs, -ūs [nascor], M., birth; māiōrēs nātū, elders.

nauta, -ae (navita), [navis], M., sailor, seaman.

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], adj., of sailors, nautical, naval.

nāvālis, -e [navis], adj., of ships, naval, sea.

nāvicula, -ae [navis], F., a small vessel, boat, skiff.

nāvīgātiō, -ōnis [navigo], F., sailing, voyage, navigation.

nāvīgium, -ī [cf. navigo], N., vessel, ship, craft, boat.

nāvīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [navis], I. v. n. and a., sail.

nāvō, -is, F., *ship, vessel*; **longa**, a • *galley*; **onerāria**, *ship of burden, transport*; **actuāria**, *a light, swift vessel*.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *do zealously or vigorously*.

nē, adv. and conj., *not; lest, for fear that, that . . . not, in order that . . . not, not to (do), from (doing)*; **nē quis**, *that no one; nē . . . quidem, not even*.

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle; generally not to be translated; in indirect questions, *whether*; -ne . . . -ne . . . -an, *whether . . . or*.

nec; see **neque**.

necessārius, -a, -um [**necesse**], adj., *necessary, useful, unavoidable, indispensable; closely related*; as noun, **necessārius**, -ī, M., *a kinsman*; abl., **necessāriō**, as adv., *unavoidably, of necessity*.

necesse, indeclin. adj., *necessary, indispensable, unavoidable*; **necesse est**, *one must*.

necessitās, -tatis [**necesse**], F., *necessity, need, compulsion*.

necessitūdō, -dinis, F., *close relationship, intimacy, friendship*.

necne [**nec ne**], conj., *or not* in double questions.

necō, -āre, -āvī (-ūi), -ātus (-tus) [**nex**, *death*], I. v. a., *kill, put to death*.

nēcubi [**ne-cubi** (= ubi)], conj., *that nowhere, lest anywhere, that . . . not . . . anywhere*.

nefārius, -a, -um [**nefas**], adj., *wicked, abominable, impious, execrable*.

nefās, N., indecl. noun and adj., *crime (against the gods), sin, wicked, unlawful*.

neglegō (**necl-**), -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [**nec-lego**], 3. v. a., *disregard, leave unnoticed, let go unheeded*.

nō, -ire, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a. and . . . say *no, say . . . not, refuse, . . .*

nōgōtior, -āri, -ātus [**negotium**], I. v. dep., *carry on business, trade*.

negōtium, -ī [**nec-otium, easē**], N., *business, occupation, employment; undertaking, matter, thing; difficulty, trouble*.

Nemetes, -um, M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, dat. **nemini** [for **nehemo, ne-homo**], M., *no one, nobody*; **nōn nēmā**, *some, many a man*.

nēquāquam [**ne-quaquam, anywhere**], adv., *not at all, by no means, in no way*.

neque (**nec**) [**ne-que**], adv., *and . . . not, nor, but not; neque . . . neque or nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor*.

nēquīquam [**ne quidquam, anything**], adv., *to no purpose, in vain, without reason*.

Nervicus, -a, -um [**Nervius**], adj., *Nervian, of the Nervii*.

Nervius, -a, -um, adj., *Nervian*; as noun, *a Nervian, one of the Nervii*, a warlike nation of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, M., *sinew; pluri., strength, power, force*.

neu; see **neve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum [**ne-uter**], adj., *neither (of two); pluri., neither party*.

néve (**neu**) [**ne-ve**], conj., *or not, and not, nor (after ut or ne)*.

nēx, *necis*, F., *death (by violence), execution, slaughter*.

nihil, N. indecl., or **nihilum**, N., *nothing; nihil, acc. as adv., not at all*.

nimius, -a, -um [*cf. nimis*, *too much*], adj., *too much, too great, excessive*.

nisi [**ne-si**], conj., *if not, unless, except*.

nitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nitor**.

Nitobroges, -um, M. plur., a nation on the Garonne.

nitor, *niti, nitus* [*cf. nitere*], *support one's self upon, lean upon, rely upon, (strain against something), exert one's self, strive, struggle*.

nix, *nivis*, F., *snow*.

nōbilis, -e, [nosco], adj., well-known, famous, renowned, celebrated; noble, well-born; plur. as noun, the nobles, the notables.

nōbilitās, -tatis [nobilis], F., fame, renown; noble birth; the nobility, the aristocracy.

nocēns, pres. p. of noceo.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, no p. p., 2. v. n., harm, injure, hurt; nocēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., hurtful, guilty.

noctū [cf. nox], adv., by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um [nox; cf. diuturnus], adj., of the night, by night, in the night.

nōdus, -i, M., knot, joint (as of a knobby shape).

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui [ne-volo], irr., v. a. and n., be unwilling, not wish; nōlī, nōlīte, with infin., do not.

nōmen, -minis [nosco], N., (that by which one is known), name, title; name, cause, behalf, account; nōmine, with gen., by way of, as. nōminātūm [nomen], adv., by name, individually, expressly.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [nomen], i. v. a., name, call by name, mention.

nōn, adv., not.

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., ninety.

nōndum [non dum], not yet.

nōn nihil, N. indecl., something.

nōn nullus, -a, -um, adj., some.

nōn numquam, adv., sometimes.

nōnūs, -a, -um [cf. novem], num. adj., ninth.

Nōrēia, -ae, F., a town of the Norici, now Neumarkt, in Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., Norican, of the Norici; as noun, Nōrica, F., a Norican woman.

nōs, plur. of ego.

nōscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtus, 3. v. a., learn, get a knowledge of; in perf. tenses, know, be acquainted with; nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., known, well-known, familiar. nōsmet; see egomet.

nōster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., our, ours, our own; nōstri, -ōrum,

M. plur. as noun, our men, our side.

nōtitia, -ae [nosco, notus], F., acquaintance, knowledge.

nōtus, p. p. of nosco.

nōvem, indecl. num. adj., nine.

Noviodūnum, -i, N., the name of three towns in Gaul: (

Haedui, on the Liger now perhaps Nevers; (: Bituriges, on the Liger

(3) of the Suessiones, on the (Aisne), possibly now Soissons;

nōvitās, -tatis [novus], ness, novelty, strangeness.

nōvus, -a, -um, adj., new, fresh; superl., last, r

nōvissimum agmen, guard, rear of marching

nox, noctis, F., night.

nocte, early in the night evening, at evening; mūte, late at night.

noxia, -ae [cf. noceo], F., crime, guilt.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūubes, a cloud], 3. v. one's self (of a bride), ma of the woman only).

nūdo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [nu- v. a., make bare, strip leave unprotected, clear fenders].

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unprotected, exposed.

nūllus, -a, -um [ne-ullu not any, no, none; as one.

num [cf. tum], adv., inter- ticle implying a negative the question may be put form, It is not, is it?

nūmen, -inis [nuo, nod], 1 will, power; divinity.

numerus, -i, M., number, account; numerō with the quality of, as.

Numida, -ae, M., a Numid.

nūmmus, -i, M., a coin.

numquam [ne-umquam], adv.; never.

nunc [num-ce], adv., now; etiam nunc (of past time), even then.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nuntius],
I. v. a., announce, report, bring
or send news, make known.
nūntius, -i, N., messenger, courier ;
message, tidings, news.
nūper [novi-per like parumper],
adv., lately, recently.
nūsqam [ne-usquam], adv., no-
where.
nūtus, -ūs [nuo], M., nod, sign, beck,
bidding.

O

ob, adv. in comp. and prep. with
acc., on account of, for ; in comp.,
toward, to, against.

obaerātus, -a, -um [ob-aeratus
(not used), aes], adj., indebted ;
as noun, a debtor, a bondman (for
debt).

obdūco, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus
[ob-duco], 3. v. pr., draw in
front of, extend before.

obeo, -ire, -iī, -itus [ob-eo], irr. v.
a., go to, go toward, go to meet ;
attend to, see to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ob-
iacio], 3. v. a., throw in the way
of, place in front, present, expose.

objectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obicio.
obitus, -ūs [ob-eo], M., (going to) ;
going to death, death, destruction.

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.
obliquē [obliquus], adv., slanting,
on a slant, obliquely.

obliquus, -a, -um, adj., slanting,
crosswise.

obliviscor, -livisci, -litus, 3. v.
dep., forget.

obsecrō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [ob sa-
crum], I. v. a., adjure, implore,
beseech, entreat.

obsequientia, -ae [obsequor, com-
ply], F., compliance, obsequious-
ness, deference.

observō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [ob-
servo], I. v. a., watch, guard,
keep, maintain, observe, comply
with, celebrate.

obses, -idis [cf. obsideo], M. and
F., hostage.

obsessiō, -ōnis [obsideo], F.,
blockade, siege.

obcessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo.
obsideo, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus [ob-
sedeo], 2. v. a., beset, blockade,
besiege, invest.

obsidiō, -ōnis [cf. obsideo and
obsessio], F., siege, blockade,
oppression.

obsignō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [ob-sig-
no], I. v. a., set a seal upon, seal,
seal up.

obsistō, -sistere, -stitti, no p. p.
[ob-sisto], 3. v. n., oppose, with-
stand, resist.

obstinātē [obstinatus, p. p. of
obstino, persist], adv., persistent-
ly, stubbornly.

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-
stringo.

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī,
-strictus [ob-stringo], 3. v. a.,
bind, tie ; put under obligation,
pledge.

obstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-
struo.

obstruo, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus
[ob-struо, pile], 3. v. a., built in
front of, against ; block up, bar-
ricade.

obtemperō, -are, -āvī, -ātūrus [ob-
temporo], I. v. n., comply with,
submit, obey.

obtestor, -āri, -ātus [ob-testor, cf.
testis, witness], I. v. dep., call
to witness, adjure, implore, be-
seech, entreat.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [ob-
teneo], 2. v. a., hold against,
hold fast ; retain, maintain, keep,
hold, occupy, possess.

obtuli, perf. of offero.

obveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus
[ob-venio], 4. v. n., come in one's
way, fall to ; fall in with, meet.

obviam, [ob-viam], adv., in the
way, to meet.

occāsiō, -ōnis [cf. occido], F., op-
portunity.

occāsus, -ūs [ob-casus, occido],
M., falling, setting ; the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [ob-
cado], 3. v. n., fall, be slain,
perish ; set ; occidēns, -entis,
pres. p. as adj., setting.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [ob-caedo], 3. v. a., kill, slay.
occisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occidō**.

occultatiō, -ōnis [occulto], F., concealment.

occultē [occultus], adv., secretly.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of occulo, hide], 1. v. a., hide, conceal, keep secret.

occultus, -a, -um [p. p. of occulo, hide], adj., concealed, hidden, secret, in ambush.

occupatiō, -ōnis [occupo], F., employment, business, affairs, occupation.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-stem akin to capio], 1. v. a., take possession of, lay hold of, seize, usurp, employ.

occurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursūrus [ob-curro], 3. v. n., run toward, run to meet, encounter, fall in with; occur; offset, oppose, baffle.

Oceanus, -i [Greek], M., the ocean.
Ocelum, -i, a town of the Graioceli, in the Alps.

octāvus, -a, -um [octo], num. adj., eighth.

octingentī, -ae, -a [octo-centum], num. adj., eight hundred.

octō, indecl. num. adj., eight.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

Octodūrus, -i [Celtic], M., a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.

octōgēni, -ae, -a [octo], distrib. num. adj., eighty each.

octōgintā [octo], indecl. num. adj., eighty.

octōni, -ae, -a [octo], adj., eight at a time, eight each, eight by eight.

oculus, -i, M., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, perf. with pres. sense [akin to **odium**], irr. v. a., hate, detest.

odium, -i, N., hate, hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus [ob-fendo, strike], 3. v. a. and n., strike against, hit against; hurt, shock, wound.

offensiō, -ōnis [offendo], F., striking against; offense, hurting, wounding.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [ob-fero], irr. v. a., (bring to), offer, bring before, present, bestow, confer; expose, cast in the way of.

officium, -i, N., service, favor, kindness; duty, obligation; sense of duty, allegiance, obedience; employment, business.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, a king of the Nitrobroges.

omittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, throw away, neglect, give up, lay aside.

omnīnō [omnis], adv., altogether, entirely, in all, altogether, only; after negatives, at all.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, the whole, every kind of; omnia, everything.

onerārius, -a, -um [onus], adj., of burden; nāvēs, transports, freight ships.

onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [onus], 1. v. a., load, freight.

onus, -eris, N., load, burden, freight, cargo; weight.

opera, -ae [cf. opus], F., work, labor, pains, care, attention; aid, service, agency; operam dare, take pains.

opiniō, -ōnis, F., supposition, belief, expectation; notion, idea; impression; reputation.

oporet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p., 2. v. impers., it behooves, one ought, it is proper, needful.

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum]. adj., belonging to a (the) town; as noun, M. plur., the townspeople.

oppidum, -i, N., (fortified) town; stronghold, refuge.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ob-pono], 3. v. a., set against, oppose; oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., opposite, in the way, over against.

opportūnē [opportunus], adv., seasonably, at a fit time.

opportūnitas, -tatis [opportunus], F., timeliness, fitness, conven-

- ience, good luck, favorable moment, advantage.*
- opportūnus**, -a, -um, *fit, suitable, favorable, timely, advantageous, lucky.*
- oppositus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **oppono**.
- oppressus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **op-primo**.
- opprimō**, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [**ob-premo**], 3. v. a., (*press against*), *crush, overwhelm, overpower, surprise.*
- oppūgnatiō**, -ōnis [**oppugno**], F., *attack, assault, siege.*
- oppūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob-pugno**], 1. v. a., *attack, assault, besiege.*
- ops**, opis, F., *help, aid; plur., resources, means, strength, wealth, influence.*
- optatus**, -a, -um [p. p. of **opto**, *wish*], adj., *desired, desirable, wished for, welcome.*
- optimē**, superl. of *bene*.
- optimus**, -a, -um, superl. of *bonus*.
- opus**, operis, N., *work, labor; a work, works (of fortification).*
- opus**, N. indecl., *need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary.*
- ōra**, -ae, F., *coast, shore.*
- ōrātiō**, -ōnis [**oro**], F., *speech, harangue, oration, address, talk, language, plea.*
- ōrātor**, -ōris [**oro**, *speak*], M., *speaker, pleader, orator, envoy.*
- orbis**, -is, M., *circle; orbis terrārum, the world.*
- Orcynia**, -ae, F., *the same as Her-cynia, which see.*
- ōrdō**, -inis, M., *series, row, tier, rank, grade, course (of masonry), arrangement, plan, order.*
- Orgetorix**, -igis, M., *a chief of the Helvetii.*
- orior**, orīrī, ortus, 3. and 4. v. n., *rise, arise, spring up; start, begin, have its source; oriēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., rising; sc. sōl, sunrise, the east.*
- ōrnāmentum**, -ī [**orno**], N., *decoration, distinction, honor.*
- ōrnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *furnish, equip, supply, adorn; honor.*
- ōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ōs], 1. v. a. and nt., *speak; beg, entreat, pray.*
- ortus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **orior**.
- ortus**, -tūs [**orior**], M., *rising; source, origin, birth.*
- ōs**, -ōris, N., *mouth, face.*
- Osimī**, -ōrum, M. plur., *a tribe in the extreme northwest of Gaul.*
- ostendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [**obs (ob)-tendo**], 3. v. a., (*stretch toward*), *show, point out, display, exhibit; tell, declare, make known.*
- ostentatiō**, -ōnis [**ostento**], F., *show, display, pride.*
- ostento**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **ostendo**], 1. v. a., *show, display, show off.*
- otium**, -ī, N., *rest, quiet, leisure.*
- ōvum**, -ī, N., *egg.*

P

- pābulatiō**, -ōnis [**pabulor**], F., *foraging, getting fodder.*
- pābulātor**, -ōris [**pabulor**], M., a *forager.*
- pābulor**, -ārī, -ātus [**pabulum**], 1. v. dep., *forage, get fodder.*
- pābulum**, -ī, N., *fodder.*
- paciscor**, -iscī, pactus (paciscō, -ere), 3. v. dep., *bargain, agree.*
- pācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**pax**], 1. v. a., *make peaceful, subdue, pacify.*
- pactum**, -ī [N. p. p. of **paciscor**] N., *agreement, bargain, arrangement; method, manner.*
- pactus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **paciscor**.
- Padus**, -ī, M., *the Po, chief river of N. Italy.*
- paene**, adv., *nearly, almost.*
- paenitet** (poe-), -ēre, -uit, 2. v. a., *impers., it repents one (person in the accusative), one repents, one regrets.*
- pāgus**, -ī, M., *district, canton.*
- palam** [cf. *clam*], adv., *openly, publicly.*
- palma**, -ae [Greek], F., *the palm of the hand, the (open) hand.*
- palūs**, -ūdis, F., *a marsh, swamp, morass.*

- palūster, -tris, -tre [palus], adj., *marshy, swampy.*
- pandō, pandere, pandī, pāssus, 3.
v. a., *spread out, stretch out; loosen, dishevel (hair).*
- pār, paris, adj., *like, alike, similar, equal, a match for.*
- parcē [parcus, sparing], adv., *sparingly.*
- parcī (parsī), par-
is), 3. v. n., *spare, economize; spare*.
- par-
ario], M. and F., or *mother.*
- pare,
pareō, pāreō, pāritūrus, 2.
v. n.,
pareō, pāreō, pārē, partus (pari-
tūrus), 3. v. a., *bring forth, bear,
produce; . . . acquire, secure.*
- Parisii, -ōrum, M., a tribe of Cel-
tic Gaul, whose town, Lutetia, is
now Paris.
- parō, -āreg-āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., pre-
pare, get ready, procure, provide,
obtain, purchase, arrange, get
ready for; paratus, -a, -um, p.
p. a., adj., *ready, prepared, reso-*
lute.
- par-
partis, F., *part, share, por-
tion; region, direction, side;*
très parties, three fourths; ex
parte, in part; partim (regular
*partes) acc. as adv., part-
in part; partim . . . part-
tim, some . . . others.*
- partim; see pars.
- partior, -iri, -itus, 4. v. a., *divide;*
partitis temporibus, by turns,
alternately.
- partus, -a, -um, p. p. of pario.
parum [cf. parvus], adv., compar.
minus; superl. *minimē; too*
little, little, not enough.
- parvulus, -a, -um [dimin. of par-
vus], adj., *very small, very lit-
tle, very young; insignificant,*
trifling.
- parvus, -a, -um, adj., compar. mi-
nor; superl. *minimus; small,*
little, trifling, insignificant.
- pāssim [cf. pando], adv., *all about,*
here and there, in all directions.
- pāssus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando.
passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.
passus, -ūs [pando], M., *pace,*
step, stride; as a measure of
length, a double pace = five feet;
mille passuum, 5,000 (Roman)
feet, a (Roman) mile.
- patefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus
[pateo-facio], 3. v. a., *lay open,*
throw open, open; reveal, bring
to light.
- patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of pate-
facio.
- patefiō, pass. of patefacio.
- pateō, -ēre, -ui, no p. p., 2. v. n.,
be open, lie open, extend, spread,
stretch; be passable; patēns, -en-
tis, pres. p. as adj., *open, exposed,*
passable.
- pater, -tris, M., *father; plur., an-*
cestors, forefathers.
- patienter [patiens, pres. p. of
patior], adv., *patiently, submis-*
sively.
- patientia, -ae [patiens, pres. p. of
patior], F., *endurance, forbear-*
ance.
- patior, pati, passus, 3. v. dep.,
suffer, bear, endure, allow, per-
mit.
- patrius, -a, -um [pater], adj., *of a*
father, of one's fathers, ances-
tral.
- patrōnus, -i [pater], M., *protector,*
patron, defender.
- patruus, -i [pater], M., *a father's*
brother, a paternal uncle.
- paucitās, -tatis [paucus], F., *few-*
ness, small number.
- paucus, -a, -um, adj., *nearly always*
in plur., few, a few.
- paulatim [paulus], adv., *little by*
little, gradually, by degrees, a few
or one at a time.
- paulisper [paulus], adv., *a little*
while, for a short time.
- paulō [abl. of paulus], adv., *by a*
little, a little, slightly, somewhat.

- paululum [paulus], adv., *a very little.*
 paulum [neut. acc. of paulus], adv., *a little, somewhat, a short distance.*
 pāx, pācis, F., *peace.*
 peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, I. v. n., *do wrong, transgress.*
 pectus, -oris, N., *the breast.*
 pecūnia, -ae [pecus], F., *property; money.*
 pecus, -oris, N., *cattle, a herd, a flock, including domestic animals in general, especially sheep and goats; flesh of cattle.*
 pedalīs, -ē [pes], adj., *of a foot (in length, breadth, or thickness), a foot thick.*
 pedes, -itis [pes], M., *foot-soldier; collective or plural, infantry.*
 pedester, -tris, -tre [pes], adj., *of infantry, of footmen; iter, journey on foot or on land, march.*
 peditātus, -tus [pedes], M., *infantry; foot.*
 Pedius, -i, M., Q. Pedius, *grand-nephew of Caesar, one of his lieutenants in Gaul.*
 pēior, -us, *compar. of malus.*
 pēius, *compar. of male.*
 pellīs, -is, F., *skin, hide.*
 pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3. v. a., *drive out, drive away, expel rout, repulse, defeat, put to flight.*
 pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsus, 3. v. a., *hang, weigh, weigh out, pay (money); pay, i. e., suffer (a penalty).*
 penitus [akin to penes, *with, in the power of*], adv., *deeply, in (or into) the inmost part, entirely; all the way to.*
 per, prep. with acc., *through, over, across; over, along; during, throughout, in the course of; through, by, by means of; by the hands of (an agent); τύπεσσον; if, in the name of; in many adverbial expressions; e.g., *per viam*; *forcefully*, *prob. v. f.* [*toupa* *per*], *adv.* in *composita*, *very, exceedingly, completely, thoroughly,* *penitus*, *in, in, p. p. p. p. per-*, *Agō*, *ad. v. t.* [*viā, viuva*]*
- peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus [perago], 3. v. a., *carry through, go through with, finish, accomplish, end, close.*
 perangustus, -a, -um [per-angustus], adj., *very narrow.*
 perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of percipio.
 percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [per-capio], 3. v. a., *(take in fully), receive, acquire, obtain, gather, reap; perceive, learn, hear.*
 percontatiō, -ōnis [per contor, inquire], F., *questioning, inquiry.*
 percurrō, -currere, -cucurri (-currī), cursus [per-curro], 3. v. a., *run through; run along.*
 percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of percusio.
 percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., *strike through, thrust through, run through.*
 perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p. [per-disco], 3. v. a., *learn thoroughly, learn by heart.*
 perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo.
 perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus [per-do], 3. v. a., *destroy, ruin, abandon; perditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lost, abandoned, desperate, ruined.*
 perducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [per-duco], 3. v. a., *lead through, bring along, bring over, bring; prolong, continue, persuade, win over; extend, construct, make.*
 perductus, -a, -um, p. p. of perduco.
 perendinus, -a, -um [perendie, day after to-morrow], adj., *after to-morrow.*
 pereō, -ire, -ī (vī), vitūris [per-eō, -go], *and vīlī, penitish, destroyed, be lost.*
 perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [per-equito, *rida a horse*], *and vīnī, and vīnī, ride over, ride around.*
 perekiguus, -a, -um [per-exiguus], adj., *very small, minute.*
 perfacilis, -ē [per-facilis], adj., *very easy, (but not off) difficult.*

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perficio*.
 perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [per-fero], irr. v. a., *carry through, carry, convey, report; suffer (to the end), bear, endure.*
 perficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [per-facio], 3. v. a., *accomplish, finish, complete, make, carry out; cause, effect, bring to pass.*
 perfidia, -ae [perfidus, *faithless, treachery, bad faith.*]
 perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus [per-frango], 3. v. a., *break through.*
 perfuga, -ae [perfugio], M., *deserter, fugitive.*
 perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, no p. p. [per-fugio], 3. v. n., *run away, flee for refuge, escape; desert.*
 perfugium, -I [perfugio], N., *refuge, place of refuge.*
 pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus [per-rego], 3. v. n., *continue, proceed, keep on, advance.*
 periclitōr, -āri, -ātus [periculum], 1. v. dep., *make trial of, try, hazard, venture, be in danger, be put in peril.*
 periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum], adj., *full of danger, dangerous.*
 periculum, -i [old verb *perior, try*; cf. -per- in *experior*], N., *trial, test, experiment, attempt; risk, danger, peril.*
 peritus, -a, -um [p. p. of old verb *perior, try*; cf. -peri- in *experior*], adj., *(tried), experienced, skilful.*
 perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perfero.*
 perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *per-lego.*
 perlegō, -legere, -lēgi, -lēctus [per-lego], 3. v. a., *read through.*
 perluō, -luere, -lui, -lūtus [per-luo, wash], 3. v. a., *wash; pass, bathe.*
 permāgnus, -a, -um [per, adv., *magnus*], adj., *very great, very large.*
 permaneo, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsurus [per-maneo], 2. v. n., *remain (to the end), stay, continue.*

permisceō, -misciēre, -misiū, -mixtus (-mistus) [per-misceo, mix], 2. v. a., *mix (thoroughly), mingle.*
 permisssus, -a, -um, p. p. of *permitto.*
 permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [per-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go, give up, grant, yield, allow, permit, leave to, commit, entrust.*
 permixtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *permisceo.*
 permōtūs, -a, -um, p. p. of *permoveo.*
 permōveō, -mōvēre, -mōvi, -mōtus [per-moveo], 2. v. a., *move deeply, stir up, excite, influence, affect.*
 permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus [per-mulceo, stroke], 2. v. a., *smooth over; soothe, appease, calm.*
 perniciēs, -ēi, F., *destruction, ruin.*
 perpaucus, -a, -um [per-paucus], adj., *very few.*
 perpendiculum, -I [per-pendo], N., *a plumb-line; ad perpendicularum, perpendicularly.*
 perpetior, -peti, -pessus [per-patior], 3. v. dep., *suffer (to the end), bear patiently, endure.*
 perpetuu, -a, -um, adj., *constant, uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken, entire, perpetual; in perpetuum, forever; perpetuō, abl. as adv., continually, constantly, without interruption, always.*
 perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitūs [per-quaero], 3. v. a., *make (careful) search for, inquire (diligently) about, ascertain.*
 perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [per-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., *break through, force a passage through, break.*
 perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *per-rumpo.*
 perscribō, -scribere, -scrisi, -scriptus [per-scribo], 3. v. a., *write out, report in writing.*
 perseguor, -sequi, -secutūs [per-seguor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue; punish, avenge; assail, attack, accomplish, perform.*
 perseverō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [per-severus, strict], 1. v. n., *persist.*

persolvō, -solvēre, -solvī, -solūtus [per-solvō], 3. v. a., *pay* (in full), *discharge* (completely); *pay*, *suffer* (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perspicio*.

perspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [per-specio, *look*], 3. v. a., *see through*, *look through*, *examine*; *perceive*, *observe*, *learn*, *ascertain*.

perstō, -stāre, -stī, -statūrus [per-sto], 1. v. n., *stand firm*, *persist*.

persuadeō, -suādere, -suāsi, -suāsus [per-suadeo, *advise*], 2. v. a. and n., *persuade*, *induce*, *prevail upon*, *convince*, *make (some one) believe*.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrū, -territus [per-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten (thoroughly)*, *terrify*, *alarm*.

pertinācia, -ae [pertinax, *per-*tenax (*teneo*)], F., *obstinacy*, *stubbornness*, *persistence*.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, no p. p. [per-teneo], 3. v. n., *stretch toward*, *extend*, *tend*; *have to do with*, *concern*, *belong to*, *pertain to*, *relate to*.

pertuli; see *perfero*.

perturbātiō, -onis [perturbo], F., *confusion*, *disorder*, *alarm*, *panic*.

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [per-turbo, *disturb*], 1. v. a., *confuse*, *disorder*, *embarrass*, *alarm*.

pervagor, -āri, -ātus [per-vagor, *rove*], 1. v. dep., *roam about*, *wander*, *scatter*.

perveniō, -venīre, -vēni, -ventus [per-venio], 4. v. n., *come (to)*, *reach*, *arrive (at)*; *fall to*.

perventus, -a, -um, p. p. of *per-*venio.

pēs, pedis, M., *the foot*; *a foot* (as a measure) = .97 of an English foot; *pedem referre*, *retreat*, *fall back*.

petō, petere, petivī, petitus, 3. v. a. and n., *reach for*, *aim at*, *attack*, *assail*; *ask*, *seek*, *demand*; *strive for*; *go to or toward (a place)*.

Petrocorii, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation north of the Garumna (*Garonne*), whose name appears in *Périgord* and *Périgueux*.

Petrōnius, -i, M., *M. Petronius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Petrosidius, -i, M., *L. Petrosidius*, a standard-bearer in Caesar's army.

phalanx, -angis [Greek], F., *phalanx*, *array of troops in close order*, *eight or more ranks deep*; *any solid mass of troops*.

Pictones, -um, M. plur., a nation south of the Liger (Loire), in the country now called *Poitou*.

pietās, -tatis [pius, *dutiful*], F., *dutiful conduct*, *loyal affection*, *patriotism*, *piety*, *devotion*.

pilum, -i, N., *javelin*, the heavy weapon of the Roman legionary.

pilus, -i, M., *a maniple of the triarii*—i. e., the first company in each cohort; see *Introduction*, page xxix.

pinna, -ae, F., *feather*; *battlement*, *parapet*.

Pirūstae, -ārum, M. plur., an Illyrian people.

piscis, -is, M., *a fish*.

Pisō, -ōnis, M., (1) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, a lieutenant of Cassius when he was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B. C.; (2) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of No. (1), father of Caesar's wife Calpurnia; (3) *M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul in 61 B. C.; (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian.

pix, picis, F., *pitch*.

placeō, -ēre -ui, -itus, 2. v. n., *please*, *be agreeable to*, *satisfy*; *impers.*, *placet*, *it pleases*, *it is decided*, *resolved*, *voted*.

placidē [placidus, *quiet* (cf. *placēo*)], adv., *quietly*, *calmly*, *gently*.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. *placeo*], 1. v. a., *appease*, *pacify*, *conciliate*.

Plancus, -i, M.; see *Munatius*.

plānē [planus], adv., *clearly*, *distinctly*, *entirely*.

plānitīes, -ei [planus], F., *flat surface*, *plain*, *level ground*.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *flat*, *level*, *even*.

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (ēi) [cf. plenus], F., *multitude, the common people, populace.*

plēnē [plenus], adv., *fully, completely.*

plēnus, -a, -um [cf. pleo, *fill*], adj., *full, complete, entire.*

plērumque; see **plērusque**.

plērusque, -aque, -umque [cf. pleo, *fill*], adj., seldom used in sing.; plur., **plērique**, -aeque, -aque; *many, very many, the most, the majority;* **plērumque**, N. acc. as adv., *for the most part, mostly, generally.*

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

plumbum, -i, N., *lead; plumbeum album*, *tin.*

plūrimus, superl. of *multus*.

plūs, plūris, compar. of *multus*, *more;* **plūrēs**, -ium, *several.*

pluteus, -i, M., *mantelet; breast-work, movable or placed on the top of a rampart.*

pōculum, -i, N., *drinking cup, goblet, bowl.*

poena, -ae [cf. punio, *punish*], F., *penalty, compensation, fine; punishment, in general.*

pollex, -icis, M., *thumb; also the great toe.*

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus [por-lice-or], 2. v. a., *promise, offer.*

pollicitatiō, -ōnis [**polliceor**], F., *a promise, offer.*

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *polliceor.*

Pompēius, -i, M., (1) *Cn. Pompeius Magnus*, the famous general, Caesar's rival, a member of the First Triumvirate; (2) *Cn. Pompeius*, interpreter of *Q. Titurius Sabinius*, probably an enfranchised Gaul.

pondus, -eris [cf. pendo], N., *weight.*

pōno, ponere, [posui] *positus*, v. a., *put, place, lay, set; pitch (a camp); build, erect, make; take off, lay aside, lay down; station, post; regard, consider.* Pass. *be situated, depend on.*

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*

populatiō, -ōnis [populor], F., *plundering, ravaging, laying waste.*

populor, -āri, -ātus, I. v. dep., *ravage, lay waste, pillage.*

populus, -i, M., *the people (politically considered), nation (as opposed to individuals).*

por-, prep. (obsolete), in composition only, *forth.*

porrectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *porrigo.*

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rectus [porrego], 3. v. a., *stretch forth; passive, extend, be extended.*

porrō [cf. por], adv., *further, furthermore, moreover.*

porta, -ae, F., *gate, entrance.*

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *carry, transport, bring, take.*

portoriū, -i, N., *duty, impost, toll.*

portus, -tūs, M., *harbor, port, haven.*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, no p. p., 3. v. a., *demand, claim; require.*

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of *pono.*

possessiō, -ōnis [possideo], F., *possession, occupation; in plur., lands, possessions.*

possideo, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus [por-sedeo, sit], 2. v. a., *occupy, hold, possess.*

possidō, -sīdere, -sēdi, -sessus [por-sido, settle], 3. v. a., *take possession of.*

possim, posse, potuī [pote (potis), able, -sum], irr. v. n., *be able, one can; be powerful, have influence; fieri posse, be possible; quam māximum potest, as great as possible.*

post, adv. and prep. with acc., *after, afterwards; behind, since.*

postea [post ea], adv., *afterwards, later.*

posteāquām [postea quam], conjunctive adv., *after, introducing a clause of time.*

(postetus), -ātum [post], adj., compar. **posterior**, superl. **postremus**, *the following next, later; posterō die (postridie), the next day; as noun, **posteri**,*

-ōrum, M. plur., descendants, posterity; *postrēmus*, -a, -um, last, final, rearmost, hindmost.
postpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [*post-pono*], 3. v. a., place after, esteem less, disregard, put aside, neglect.
postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of *postpono*.
postquam [*post quam*], conjunctive adv., (*later than*), after, introducing a clause of time.
postrēmō [abl. of *postremus*], adv., finally, lastly, at last.
postrēmus, superl. of *posterus*.
postridiē, adv., the same as *postterō diē*; see *posterus*.
postulātum, -i [p. p. of *postulo*], N., demand, claim.
postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., claim, demand, ask, request, require, make necessary,
potēns, -entis [pres. p. of *possum*], adj., able, powerful, strong.
potentatūs, -tūs [*potens*], M., power, supremacy, dominion.
potentia, -ae [*potens*], F., ability, power, might, authority, influence.
potestās, -tātis [*potens* or *potis*, able], F., power, might, authority, right; ability, opportunity, permission.
potior, potiri, *potitus* [*potis*, able], 4. v. dep., become master of, get control of, get possession of, obtain, secure, capture.
potior, -us, gen. *potiōris* [compar. of *potis*, able], adj., preferable;
potius, N. acc. as adv., rather, preferably.
potitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *potior*.
prae, adv. in *compos.* and prep. with abl., before, in comparison with; for, on account of, by reason of; in *compos.*, before, very.
praeacutus, -a, -um [*prae-acutus* (p. p. of *acuo*)], adj., sharpened at the end, pointed.
praebeō, *praebēre*, *praebui*, *praebitus* [*prae-habeo*], 2. v. a., (hold in front), show, exhibit, offer, present, furnish, supply, afford.

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus [*prae-caveo*], 2. v. n., take precaution, be on one's guard.
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [*prae-cedo*], 3. v. a., go before, excel, surpass.
praeceps, -cipitis [*prae-caput*], adj., head foremost, headlong; in haste, precipitate; precipitous, steep.
praeceptum, -i [p. p. of *prae-cipio*], N., order, instruction, command.
praeceptor, -a, -um, p. p. of *prae-cipio*.
praecipiō, -cipere, -cipi, -ceptus [*prae-capio*], 3. v. a., take beforehand, anticipate, expect; give orders, command, direct, instruct, advise.
praecepitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*prae-ceps*], 1. v. a., throw headlong; with sē, plunge headlong.
praecipiē [*praecipius*], adv., especially.
praecipiūs, -a, -um [*prae-capio*], adj., particular, special.
praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*prae-claudio*], 3. v. a., close (in front of some one), block up, shut off.
praeccō, -ōnis, M., a herald, crier.
Praecōnīnus, -i, M.; see *Valearius*.
praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus [*prae-curro*], 3. v. n., run ahead of, get the start of, outstrip; surpass, excel.
praeda, -ae, F., booty, plunder, prey, spoil.
praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., make known, declare, publish; announce, say, tell, assert; boast.
praedor, -āri, -ātus [*praeda*], 1. v. dep., plunder, pillage, rob, take booty.
praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [*prae-duco*], 3. v. a., lead before, draw in front of, draw around, build (a wall), dig (a ditch) in front of or around a town, etc.
præfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *præficio*. As noun, see *præficio*.

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus [prae-fero], irr. v. a., *put before, prefer, choose rather; sē, put one's self in front of.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [prae-facio], 3. v. a., *set over, put in command of; praefectus, -i, p. p. as noun, captain, officer, commander, of cavalry or auxiliaries.*

praefigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [prae-fixo], 3. v. d., *fasten in front, drive (stakes) in front.*

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praefigo**.

praemetuō, -metuere, no perf., no p. p. [prae-metuo, fear], 3. v. a. and n., *fear beforehand; be anxious.*

praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [prae-mitto], 3. v. a., *send ahead, send forward.*

praeium, -i [prae-emo], N., *advantage, profit; reward, recompense, prize, distinction.*

praeoccupō, -are, -avi, -atus [prae-occupo], 1. v. a., *seize beforehand, take possession of in advance.*

praeoptō, -are, -avi, -atus [prae-opto], 1. v. a., *choose rather, prefer.*

praeparō, -are, -avi, -atus [prae-paro], 1. v. a., *get ready beforehand.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [prae-pono], 3. v. a., *set before, set over, put in command of.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [prae-rumpo], 3. v. a., *break off (in front or at the end).*

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praerumpo**, as adj., *steep, precipitous.*

praesaepiō (-sēp-), -saepire, -saepsi, -saepitus [prae-saepio], 4. v. a., *fence off, hedge in, block up.*

praesentia, -a, -um, p. p. of **praesentia**.

praescriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praescribo**.

praesēns, -entis, pres. p. of **praesum**; N. plur., **praesentia**, *present circumstances; in praesentia, for the present; praesentia, -ae [praesens], F., presence.*

praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus [prae-sentio], 4. v. a., *perceive beforehand, foresee.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, chiefly.*

praesidium, -i [prae-sedeo, sit], N., *sitting before, guard, garrison; protection, assistance; fort, post, station; intrā praesidia, within the lines.*

praestō, adv., *at hand, present, ready; praestō esse, appear, meet.*

praestō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātus (-stītus) [prae-sto], 1. v. n. and a., *stand before, excel; (set before), furnish, exhibit; discharge, perform; keep (faith); praestat, it is better.*

praesum, -esse, -sui [prae-sum], irr. v. n., *be before, be in command of, preside over, hold (an office); praesēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., present, immediate; in person.*

praeter, adv. and prep. with acc., *besides, except, beyond, by, past, contrary to.*

praeterēā [prae-ter ea], adv., *beyond, further, moreover.*

praetereō, -ire, -ii, -itus [prae-ter-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go past, pass by, pass over, omit, neglect; praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., past; as noun, praeterita, -ōrum, N., the past.*

praetefitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praetereo**.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [prae-ter-mitto], 1. v. *go by, omit, pass over, n.*

praeterquam [prae-ter-quā] *junctive adv., except, less than.*

prætor, ōris [for **prae-itor**]. M., *lead. r., commander, ;*

praetor, a Roman magistrate, next below a consul in rank ; see Introduction, page xii, foot-note.

praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], adj., *of a praetor, of a general*; **prætōria cohors**, *the general's body-guard*.

præeūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstus [præ-euro], 3. v. a., *burn at the point*.

præeūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of præeūrō.

prævertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [præe-vertō], 3. v. a., *anticipate, attend to beforehand*.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., *crooked; wrong, bad*.

premō, premere, pressi, pressus, 3. v. a., *press, crowd, harass, attack, oppress, pursue closely, burden, distress*.

prēndō (prehendo), prēndere, prēndi, prēnsus, 3. v. a., *seize, take, grasp*.

prētium, -i, N., *price, value, worth, cost*.

prex, precis [used in sing. in dat., acc., and abl. only ; usually used in plur.], F., *prayers, entreaties*.

pridiē, adv., *on the day before*, followed by the genitive.

primipilus, -i [primus-pilus], M., *the first centurion of a legion* ; see Introduction, page xxix.

primō [abl. of primus], adv., *at first, in the first place*.

primum [acc. of primus], adv., *first, at first, in the first place ; cum primum, as soon as ; quam primum, as soon as possible*.

primus, -a, -um, adj., compar. prior ; *first, the first, front, the beginning of* ; in **primis**, especially.

princeps, -ipis [primus-capio], adj., *(taking first place), chief, first, leading, foremost* ; as noun, *leader, chief, head, prince*.

principātus, -tūs [princeps], M., *first place, leadership, headship, rule, dominion*.

prior, -us, gen. -ōris, compar. adj. ; superl. **primus** ; *farmer, previous, in advance* ; ~~infin.~~, *the first to, etc. ; priore* ; *those in advance* ;

prius, N. as adv., *before, sooner, earlier, previously*.

prīstīnus, -a, -um, adj., *former, early, ancient* ; **prīstīnus dīēs**, *the day before*.

prius ; see prior.

priusquam [prius quam], conjunctive adv., *before, earlier than* ; quam is often separated from prius by intervening words.

privātīm [privati], adv., *individuals, as private*.

privātus, -a, -um [privatus], adj., *(deprived) ; private, personal, individual*.

prō, adv. in comp. and prep. with abl., *before, in front of, for, in behalf of, instead of, by way of, as ; in accordance with, considering, in view of, in proportion to, in comparison with, on account of, in compos., forth, before, away down*.

probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [probus, good], 1. v. a., *try, test, prove ; approve, recommend, adopt*.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., *go forth, go forward, advance, proceed*.

Procius, -i, M. ; see Valerius.

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-clino (obsolete), incline], 1. v. a., *bend forward* ; pass., *incline or tend to its ruin or fall or close*.

prōcōnsul, -ulīs [pro-consul], M., *proconsul, ex-consul, general or governor with consular authority in his province*.

procūl, adv., *at a distance, far off, from afar*.

prōcumbō, -cūmbre, -cubui, -cubū, no p. p. [pro-cumbo], 3. v. n., *fall forward, fall prostrate, sink down, lie down (to rest) ; slope, lean*.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-curo], 1. v. a., *take care of, attend to*.

prōcurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursūrus [pro-curro], 3. v. n., *run forward, rush forth, charge*.

prōdeō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itūs [prō(d)-eo], irr. v. n., *go forth or out, come forth or out, go forward, advance*.

prōdesse; see **prōsum**.

prōditio, -ōnis [prodo], F., (giving away), *betrayal, treason, treachery*.
prōditor, -ōris [prodo], M., *betrayer, traitor*.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prodo*.
prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [pro-do], 3. v. a., *put forth, publish; transmit, hand down; surrender, betray, abandon*.

prōducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [pro-ducō], 3. v. a., *lead forth or out, bring out, draw up; prolong, protract, extend*.

prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prod-*
r, -ārī, -ātus [proelium], I. v., *fight*.

prōelium, -i, N., *battle, fight, engagement, combat* (a general engagement or a skirmish); *prōlum committēre, to join battle, engage*.

proficiō, -ōnis [cf. *proficiscor*], F., *departure, setting out, start*.
profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *proficio*.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *proficiscor*.
proférō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [pro-ferō], irr. v. a., *bring forth or out, produce*.

proficiō, -ficerē, -fēci, -fectus [pro-faciō], 3. v. n. and a., (get forward), *make progress, gain, accomplish something, profit, be of use*.

proficiscor, -ficiſcī, -fectus, 3. v. dep., *start, set out, depart, march, travel*.

profiteor, -fitēri, -fessus [pro-fa-teor, *confess*], 2. v. dep., *declare openly, avow, offer*.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-fligo, dash], I. v. a., (*strike down*), *overthrow, defeat, rout, put to flight*.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxi, no p. p. [pro-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow forth, issue*.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., *flee forth, flee, escape*.

prōgnātus, -a, -um [pro-(g)natus, p. p. of *nascor*], adj., *sprung, descended*; as noun, *descendant*.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus [pro-gradior], 3. v. dep., *step forward, march forward, advance, proceed*.

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of *pro-gredior*.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., *hold off, restrain, prevent, hinder, forbid, stop, debar, protect, defend*.

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prohibeo*.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [pro-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw away, abandon, reject; throw, cast; sē prōcere, cast one's self, leap*.

proinde [pro-inde], adv., *hence, therefore, accordingly*.

prōmīnēs, -entis, pres. p. of *prōmineo*.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p. [pro-mineo (not used), *project*], 2. v. n., *project, lean over, hang over*.

prōmīscuē [promiscuus, *pro-misceo, mix*], adv., *in common, indiscriminately*.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prōmittō*.

prōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward); (of hair) *let grow long; promise*.

prōmōtūs, -a, -um, p. p. of *prōmoveo*.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., *move or push forward, advance*.

prōmōptus, -a, -um [p. p. of *prōmo, bring forth*], adj., *ready, quick*.

prōmunturium (-mont-), -i [cf. *prōmineo*], N., *headland*.

prōnē [pronus, *inclined forward*], adv., *leaning, with a slope, at an incline*.

prōnūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-nuntio], I. v. a., *make known, declare, proclaim, give (public) orders*.

prope, adv. and prep. with acc., *near*; *almost, nearly*; compar. **propius**, *nearer*; superl. **proximē**, *next, nearest, very near; lately, recently, last.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [*pro-pello*], 3. v. a., *drive off, put to flight, rout.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*properus, quick*], i. v. a. and n., *hurry, hasten.*

propinquitās, -tatis [*propinquus*], F., *nearness; relationship, nearness of kin.*

propinquus, -a, -um [cf. *prope*], adj., *near, neighboring, related (by blood); as noun, propinqui (-ae), -ōrum (-ārum)*, M. and F. plur., *relatives, kinsfolk.*

propior, -us, gen. -ōris, compar. adj.; superl. **proximus** [no positive, cf. *prope*], *nearer*; **proximus**, -a, -um, *nearest, next, (of time) last; like prep. *prope*, with acc., proximī Rhēnum, those nearest the Rhine; also with dat.*

prōpōnō, -ponere, -posuī, -positus [*pro-pono*], 3. v. a., *place before, put forward, set forth, expose to view, lay before, hang out (a flag); offer, present, make known, represent.*

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prōpono.*

proprius, -a, -um, adj.; *one's own, special, peculiar; proprium, -i, N., as noun, peculiarity, characteristic.*

propter, adv. and prep. with acc., *near, hard by; on account of, because of.*

propterea [*propter-ea*], adv., *on this account, therefore; with quod, because.*

prōpūgnātor, -tōris [*pro-pugno*], M., *defender.*

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*pro-pugno*], i. v. n., *fight in front, sally out (fighting).*

prōpūlsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pro-pulso, intens. of pello*], i. v. a., *drive off, keep back, repel.*

prōra, -ae [Greek], F., *prow, bow of a vessel.*

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rūtus [*pro-ruo*], 3. v. a., *throw down, demolish, tear down.*

prōrūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *proruo.*

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prosequor.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [*prosequor*], 3. v. dep., *pursue, follow, escort; address, treat.*

prōspectus, -tūs [*prospicio*], M., *view, outlook, sight.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*pro-specio*], 3. v. a. and n., *look forward, look out; provide for, look out for.*

prōsternoō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [*pro-sterno*], 3. v. a., *overthrow, destroy, cast down.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfūi, prōfūtūrus [*pro-sum*], irr. v. n., *be useful, be of service, profit, help, avail.*

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [*pro-tego*], 3. v. a., *cover, protect, defend.*

prōtereoō, -terrēre, -terrūi, -territus [*pro-terreo*], 2. v. a., *frighten away, drive off.*

prōterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of *protereo.*

prōtinus [*pro-tenuis, as far as*], adv., *straight on, forward; forth-with, at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pro-turbo, disturb*], i. v. a., *drive off in confusion, rout, repulse.*

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prōvehō.*

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, vectus [*pro-veho*], 3. v. a., *carry forward; pass., (of ships) put out (to sea).*

prōveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [*pro-venire*], 4. v. n., *come forth; grow.*

prōventus, -tūs [*provenio*], M., *(coming forth), issue, result, outcome, success.*

prōvideoō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -visus [*pro-video*], 2. v. a., *foresee, take care for, arrange beforehand, provide for.*

prōvincia, -ae, F., office, sphere of duty, function; province in charge of a Roman magistrate; the Province, Roman Gaul.

prōvinciālis, -e [provincia], adj., of a province, of the Province (Roman Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of provideo.

prōvolō, -are, -āvi, -āturus [provo-lo], i. v. n., fly forth; rush out, dash forth.

proximē; see prope.

proximus; see propior.

prūdentia, -ae [prudens] = provi-dens, foreseeing], F., foresight, sagacity, discretion, wisdom, pru-dence.

Ptiānii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -eris, adj., grown up, adult; as noun, pūberēs, -um, grown men, adults.

pūblicē [publicus], adv., in behalf of the state, for the people, as a community.

pūblicō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [publicus], i. v. a., (make something the prop-erty of the people), confiscate.

pūblicus, -a, -um [populus], adj., of the people (i. e., the state or na-tion), of the state, public.

Pūblius, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

pudet, pudēre, puduit (puditum est), 2. v. impers., it shames one (per-son in the accusative), one is ashamed.

pudor, -ōris [cf. pudet], M., shame, feeling of shame, sense of honor.

puer, puerī, M., a boy; plur., chil-dren.

puerilis, -e [puer], adj., of a child, of childhood.

pūgna, -ae, F., fight, fighting, battle, pūgnō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [pugna].

i. v. n., fight, engage in battle; pūgnatum est, the fight went on.

pulcher, -chra, -chrūm, adj., beau-tiful, fine, noble.

Pullō, -ōnis, M., T. Pullo, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello.

pulsus, -ūs [pello], M., stroke, pulvis, -eris, M., dust.

puppis, -is, F., the stern.

pūrgō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [for purigo, purum-agō], i. v. a., make clean, clear; free from blame, etc.; ex-cuse, exculpate, exonerate.

putō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, i. v. a., think, suppose, believe, consider, judge.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., with montēs, the Pyrenees mountains, between France and Spain.

Q

Q., for Quintus.

quā [qui], adv., by which, which way, where, on which side.

quadrāgēni, -ae, -a [quadraginta], distrib. num. adj., forty each, forty (in each case).

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., forty.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., four hundred.

quaerō, quaerere, quæsivī, quæsi-tus, 3. v. a., look for, seek, inquire about; ask, inquire, demand.

quaestiō, -ōnis [quaero], F., in-vestigation, inquiry, examination.

quaestor, -ōris [for quaesitor from quaero], M., quaestor, the state treasurer at Rome; in the army the quartermaster and paymaster, sometimes put in command of a legion.

quaestus, -tūs [quaero], M., get-ting, gain.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort?

quam, adv. and conj., (1) interrog., how? (2) relative, as, than; with superlatives, e. g., quam māxi-mus, as great as possible.

quam ob rem (often written quam-obrem), adv. phrase; (1) relative, (on account of which thing), where-fore; (2) interrogative, why?

quamquam [quisquis], conjunctive adv., although.

quamvis [quam-vīs (volo)], adv., as you please, however, however much, no matter how.

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantō; see **quantus**.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., (1) interrog., *how great, how much, how large;* (2) relative, *as great as, as large as, as much as; after tantus, as; with comparatives, quantō . . . tantō, the . . . the.*

quā rē or **quārē**, adv. phrase, interrog. or relative, *by which thing, on account of which thing, wherefore, why.*

quartus, -a, -um [**quattuor**], num. adj., *fourth.*

quasi [**quam** or **quā-si**], conj., *as if.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim [**quattuor-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, conj., *and*; enclitic, appended to the word or one word of the phrase which it connects with a preceding word or phrase; *-que . . . -que, -que . . . et, both . . . and.*

quem ad modum (often written **quemadmodum**), adv. phrase, *how, as, just as.*

queror, **querī**, **questus**, 3. v. dep., *complain, complain of, lament, bewail.*

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of **queror**.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, relative pron., *who, which, that; he who, that which; and he, and they, etc.; after idem, as; quō, abl. N., with comparatives, the more, etc.*

quicquam; see **quisquam**.

quicunque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque** [**qui-cumque**], indef. relative pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever.*

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, a kind of; a certain one (man, woman, thing).*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least, to be sure; nē . . . quidem, not even, nor . . . either; the emphasized word stands between nē and quidem.*

quiēs, -ētis, F., *rest, sleep.*

quiētus, -a, -um [p. p. of **quiesco**, *be at rest*], adj., *at rest, peaceful, quiet.*

quin [**qui + ne**], conj., (1) interrog., *how not? (2) relative, by which . . . not, so that . . . not, but that, from [doing, etc.], without (doing, etc.), than that; used especially after negative expressions of doubting and hindering.*

quinam (**quisnam**), **quaenam**, **quodnam** (**quidnam**) [**qui-nam**], interrog. pron., *who? what (possible)? what, pray?*

quincūnx, -ūncis [**quinque-uncia**, *ounce*], F., the figure made by five dots on a die, ::::: *quincūnx; in quincūcem, in quincuncial order, thus:*

::::: ::::: ::::: ::::: ::::: *quindecim* [**quinque-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīgenti, -ae, -a [**quinque-centum**], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a [**quinque**], distrib. adj., *five at a time, five (in each case).*

quīnquāgintā [**quinque**], indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um [**quinque**], num. adj., *fifth.*

Quintus, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

quis (**qui**), **quae** (**qua**), **quid** (**quod**), adj. pron.; (1) interrog., *who? which? what? (2) indefinite, any, any one, anything, one; nē quis, that no one; sī quis, if any one; quid, constantly used with part. gen., (anything of), any.*

quisnam; see **quinam**.

quispiam, **quaepiam**, **quidpiam** (**quodpiam**), indefinite adj. pron., *any, any one, anything.*

quisquam, —, **quidquam** (**quodquam**), indefinite pron., *any one, anything, used in sentences with negative expressed or implied; as adj., any.*

quisque, **quaque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), indefinite adj. pron., *each, every; as substantive, each one,*

everybody, each thing; with superlatives, e. g., optimus quisque, all good men; with numerals, e. g., decimus quisque, one in ten, every tenth man.

quicquid, —, quicquid (quidquid), indefinite relative pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever, every one who..*

quavis, *quaevis*, quidvis (quodvis) [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., *any you please; as substantive, any one whatever, anything you please.*

quō, see **qui**; adv., (1) interrog., *whither?* (2) relative, *whither, into which*; (3) indefinite, *to any place, anywhere.*

quōd, conj., *in order that, that (thereby); quō minus, that not, from (doing, etc.).*

quoad [**quo-ad**], conj., *as far as, as long as, until, till.*

quod [N. of **qui**], conj., *because, inasmuch as, since, as to the fact that, whereas, that; quod si, now if, but if; quod nī, but if not; propterea quod, because.*

quō minus: see **quo**, conj.

quoniām [**quom(cum)-iam**], conj., *(since now), inasmuch as, seeing that, since, because.*

quoque, conj., *also, too; follows the word it refers to.*

quōque, abl. of **quisque**.

quōque [**quo** with enclitic -que], = et **quō**.

quōqueversus, also written separately **quōque versus** [**quisque-verto**], adv., *(turned every way), in every direction, all about.*

quot, indecl. adj., (1) interrog., *how many? (2) relative, as many, as many as.*

quotannis [**quot-annis**], adv., *every year, yearly, annually.*

quotiens [**quot**], adv., (1) interrog., *how many times? how often? (2) relative, as often as, as many times as.*

R

rādiū, -īcis, F., *root; in plur., the base or foot of a hill or mountain.*

rādō, rādere, rāsi, rāsus, 3. v. a., *shave, scrape.*

raeda (rhaeda, rēda), -ae, F., *a four-wheeled wagon, traveling carriage.*

rāmus, -i, M., *branch, bough, limb; prong (of antlers).*

rapiditās, -tatis [**rapidus**], F., *swiftness, speed, rapidity.*

rapina, -ae [**rapio, seize**], F., *plundering, pillage, robbery.*

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *thin, scattered, far apart; in small parties, a few at a time.*

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **rādo**.

ratiō, -onis [**reor, ratus, reckon**], F., *reckoning, account, calculation; reason, prudence, judgment, understanding, consideration; plan, method, conduct, measures; science, art, knowledge; reason, ground.*

ratis, -is, F., *raft.*

Rauraci, -ōrum, M. plur., *a nation on the upper Rhine.*

re-, **red-**, inseparable prep. used in composition, *again, back, re-, un-rebelliō*, -onis [**rebellis, re-bellum, or bello**], F., *renewal of war; revolt, rebellion.*

Rebilus, -i, M.; see **Caninius**.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [**re-cedo**], 3. v. n., *go back, retire, retreat, withdraw.*

recēns, -ētis, adj., *fresh, late, new, recent.*

recēnseō, -cēnserē, -cēnsūi, -cēnsus [**re-censeo, estimate**], 2. v. a., *review, inspect.*

receptāculūm, -i [**recepto**, freq. of **recipio**], N., *refuge, retreat, shelter.*

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **recipio**.

receptus, -tūs [**recipio**], M., *drawing back, retreat; place or way of retreat.*

recessus, -ūs [**re-cedo**], M., *going back, retreat; chance to withdraw.*

recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [**re-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall again, fall upon (later), fall to (in turn).*

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [**re-capio**], 3. v. a., *take back, get*

again, recover; receive, admit, allow, take; **sē recipere**, retreat, withdraw.

recitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-cito], read out, read aloud.

reclinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-clino, lean], I. v. a. and n., lean back, lean.

rēctē [rectus], adv., straight, rightly; safely.

rēctus, -a, -um [p. p. of rego], adj., straight, direct.

recuperō (-cip), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [recipio], I. v. a., recover, regain, get back.

recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-causa, cf. accuso], I. v. a. and n., refuse, reject, decline, object.

redactus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [re(d)-do], 3. v. a., give back, return, restore, render, pay, offer; render, make.

redēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo.

redeō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itūrus [re(d)-eo], irr. v. n., go back, return; come; descend (again).

redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -ātus [re(d)-ago], 3. v. a., drive or bring back, reduce; render, make.

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēmptus [re(d)-emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, ransom; buy, farm (revenues).

redintegrō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-integero, integer], I. v. a., make whole again, restore, renew, revive.

reditiō, -ōnis [redeo], F., going back, return.

reditus, -tūs [redeo], M., return.

Redones, -um, M., a tribe of Britany in the region about Rennes.

reducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [reduco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, extend back.

refectus, -tūl, -tūlatus [re-ferto], irr. v. a., bear back, bring back; convey, report, announce; restore, pay back; pedem referre, fall back, retreat, withdraw.

reficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [refacio], irr. v. a., make over, e-

pair, rebuild; refresh, rest, cause to rest.

refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctus [re-frango], 3. v. a., break, break down, break in.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus [re-fugio], 3. v. n., flee back, flee away, escape, retreat.

Rēgīnus, -ī, M.; see Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis [regio], F., direction, line; district, tract, country, region; ē regiōne, (in a line with), opposite; rēcta regiōne, in a straight line.

regius, -a, -um [rex], adj., royal, regal, kingly.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [regnum]. I. v. n., reign, rule.

rēgnūm, -i [regno], N., a kingdom, royal power, "throne."

regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus [cf. rex], 3. v. a., (make straight), direct, rule, manage, control, conduct.

reiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [re-iacio], 3. v. a., throw back, throw down or away, drive back or repulse, reject.

reiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -langui, no p. p. [re-languesco, grow faint], 3. v. n., grow feeble or faint.

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-fero.

relēgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-lēgo, de-pute], I. v. a., remove, send away, banish.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo.

religiō, -ōnis [re-ligo, bind], F., sense of obligation, religious scruples, reverence, piety, conscience, religious observance, rite, worship, religion, superstition, pluri-malities of religion.

relinquo, -linquere, -linqui, -fectus [re-linquo, leave], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, desert, abandon.

reliquus, -um feci, reliquo, adj., remaining, left, the rest, the other, other.

remaneo, -manere, -mānsi, -mān-sūrus [re-maneo], 2. v. n., stay behind, stay, remain.

rēmex, -igis [remus], M., rower, oarsman.

Rēmi, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul, whose chief town, Durocortorum, is now *Rheims* or *Reims*.

rēmigo, -are, -āvi, -ātūrus [remex], 1. v. n., row.

remigro, -are, -āvi, -ātūrus [re-migro, migrate], 1. v. n., return, move back.

reminiscor, -minisci [re, cf. mens, memini.

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of remitto.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [re-mitto], 3. v. a., send back, let go back, throw back; restore, relax, abate; give up, resign.

remolēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p. [re-mollesco, grow soft], 3. v. n., grow soft, grow weak, lose strength.

nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of remo-
reo.

noveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtūs
[re-moveo], 2. v. a., move back
or away, send away, remove, dis-
miss; remōtus, -a, -um, p. p.
is adj., distant, far away, re-
note.

nūneror, -āri, -ātus [re-munero],
t. v. dep., repay, reward, recom-
bene.

līmus, -i, M., a Reman, one of the
Remi.

nūs, -i, M., an oar.

tō, -ōnis, M., deer-skin, pelt of a
reindeer.

nōvō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [re-novo],
make new], 1. v. a., renew, begin
again.

nūntiō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [re-nun-
tio], 1. v. a., bring back word,
report, proclaim, declare elected.

pellō, -pellere, -ppuli, -pulsus
[re-pello], 3. v. a., drive back,
repel, repulse; disappoint.

pente [abl. of repens, sudden],
adv., suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um [repens], adj., sudden, unexpected, hasty.

reperiō, reperire, reperi, reportus
[re-pario], 4. v. a., find out, find /
(by inquiring), discover, learn.

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of reperio.

repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus
[re-peto], 3. v. a., seek again, try
to recover, demand, exact.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [re-
pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, supply
(fully).

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of repleo.

reportō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [re-porto],
1. v. a., carry back.

reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p. p.
[re-posco], 3. v. a., demand back,
ask for (what is due).

repraesentō, -are, -āvi, -ātus
praeſento (fr. praeſens),
before], 1. v. a., do at once, i.e.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi-
sus [re-prehendo (pseudo)
v. a., (catch back), check
find fault with, blame, criticize.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. [re-
primō, primo.

reprimō, -primere, -pressi-
[re-premo], 3. v. a., che-
strain.

repudiō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, I
spurn, scorn, reject, refuse.

repūgnō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [re-pu-
no], 1. v. n., fight against,
oppose.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-
requirō, -quirere, -quisivi
[re-quaero], 3. v. a.,
mand, ask.

rēs, rei, F., matter, affair
business, transaction,
fact, circumstance, even
object; the meaning is so
that rēs may be trans-

whatever English word
context; e. g., rēs militā
tary science, the art of war; rēs
pūblica, the state, public interest;
rēs gestae, operations; quam
ob rem, wherefore.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus
[re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut down,
tear down, destroy.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scis-
 [re-scisco, inquire], 3. v. a., dis-
 cover, find out, learn.
 rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scrip-
 tus [re-scribo], 3. v. a., trans-
 fer, again, transfer (by writing) from
 one rank to another.
 reservō, -āre, -āvi, -sus [re-ser-
 vo], 1. v. a., keep back, reserve.
 resideō, -sidēre, -sedi, no p. p. [re-
 sedeo, sit], 2. v. n. & (sit back),
 remain behind, remain.
 residō, -sidere, -sedi, no p. p. [re-
 sidō, sit down], 3. v. n., sink
 down, settle, subside.
 resistō, -sistere, -stitti, no p. p. [re-
 sisto, stand], 3. v. n., remain
 behind, stand back, stop, halt;
 withstand, oppose, resist.
 respiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus
 [re-specio, look], 3. v. a. and n.,
 look back, look back at, consider,
 have a care of, have regard
 for.
 respondeō, -spondēre, -spondi,
 -spōnsus [re-spondeo, promise],
 2. v. n., answer, reply.
 respōnsum, -i [p. p. of respon-
 deo], N., a reply, an answer.
 rēs pūblica; see res.
 respuō, -spuere, -spui, no p. p. [re-
 spuo, spit], 3. v. a., spit out;
 reject.
 restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-
 stinguo.
 restinguō, stinguere, -stinxī, -stinc-
 tūs [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a.,
 extinguish, put out (a fire).
 restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtus
 [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set up again,
 restore, re-establish, replace, renew,
 rebuild, revive.
 restitutus, -a, -um, p. p. of resti-
 tuo.
 retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-
 tineo.
 retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [re-
 teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, re-
 strain; with quīn, etc., from do-
 ing, etc., keep, detain, retain.
 retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus
 [re-traho], 3. v. a., drag back.
 bring back (by force).

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus [re-
 vello, pull], 3. v. a., tear or pull
 away, pull up.
 reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-
 verto.
 revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus
 [re-vertō], 3. v. n., turn back;
 only perf. tenses used in act-
 ive; pass., return, come back, go
 back.
 revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxi, -vinctus
 [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind, fasten,
 tie.
 revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of revin-
 cio.
 revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-voco],
 1. v. a., call back, call away, call
 off, recall.
 rēx, rēgis [cf. rego], M., a king.
 Rhēnus, -i, M., the Rhine.
 Rhodanus, -i, M., the Rhone.
 ripa, -ae, F., bank of a stream.
 rīvus, -i, M., brook, stream (smaller
 than flumen).
 rōbur, -oris, N., oak (the wood, not
 the tree).
 rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., ask,
 ask for, beg, request; sacrāmen-
 tō rogāre, (to administer the mili-
 tary oath), to enlist.
 Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.
 Rōmānus, -a, -um [Roma], adj.,
 Roman; as noun, Rōmānus, -i,
 M., a Roman.
 Rōscius, -i, M., L. Roscius, one of
 Caesar's lieutenants.
 rōstrum, -i, N., beak; a projecting
 ship, a projecting prow armed
 with metal, used as a ram.
 rota, -ae, F., a wheel.
 rubus, -i, M., bramble-bush.
 Rūfus, -i, M.; see Sulpicius.
 rūmor, -ōris, M., common talk, (con-
 fused) report, hearsay, rumor.
 rūpēs, -i [cf. rumpo, break], F.,
 cliff, rock.
 rūrsus [for reversus], adv., back,
 back again, again, in turn.
 Rutēni, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation
 on the N. W. border of the
 "Province."
 Rutilus, -i, M.; see Sempro-
 nius.

scorpiō, -onis, M., *scorpion*, a machine for shooting darts; *the shot of a scorpion*.

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, 3. v. a. and n., *write, write down, write a letter.*

scrobis, -is, M. and F., *pit, pitfall, hole in the ground.*

scūtum, -i, N., *shield, the oblong shield of the Roman legionary.*

sē-, sēd-, old prep. with abl. and adv. in *compos.*, *apart, away, without.*

sē, acc. and abl. of *sui*.

sebum, -i, N., *tallow.*

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, 1. v. a., *cut, mow, reap.*

sēcrētō [abl. of *secretus*, p. p. of *secerno, separate*], adv., *apart, aside, secretly, in private.*

sectiō, -onis [*seco*], F., *cutting, lot or share of booty, spoils.*

sector, -ārī, -ātus [*freq. of sequor*], 1. v. a., *follow, pursue, chase, try to obtain.*

sectūrā, -ae [*seco*], F., *cutting, digging, excavation, shaft, mine, gallery.*

secundum; see *secundus*.

secundus, -a, -um [part. of *sequor*], adj., *following; second; favorable, fortunate, propitious, successful; rēs secundae, prosperity; secundō flūmine, downstream; secundum, N. acc. as prep. with acc., along, by the side of, in the direction of, according to; in addition to; immediately after.*

secūris, -is [*seco*], F., *axe; plur., the axes carried by the lictors of Roman magistrates as symbols of their authority over life and death; power, authority.*

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sequor*.

sed, conj., *but, yet.*

sēdecim [*sex-decem*], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, -is [*cf. sedeō, sit*], F., *seat; sing. and plur., home, settlement, abode.*

sēditiō, -onis [*sēd-itō from eo*], F., *(going apart), civil discord,*

strife, dissension, mutiny, revolt, insurrection, sedition.

sēditiōs, -a, -um [*seditio*], adj., *factious, turbulent, mutinous, seditious.*

Sedulius, -i, M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Alps.

Sedusii, -ōrum, M. plur., a German people.

seges, -etis, F., *(a growing) crop, field of grain.*

Sēgnī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, whose name is preserved in *Sègne*.

Segontiācī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in southern Britain.

Segovax (-onax), -actis, M., a British king in Kent.

Segusiāvī (-ānī), -ōrum, M. plur., a people south of the Haedui, and tributary to them.

semel, adv., *once; ut semel, when once, as soon as; semel atque iterum, once and again, over and over, again and again.*

sēmentis, -is [*sēmen, seed*], F., *sowing.*

sēmita, -ae, F., *path, by-path, by-way.*

semper, adv., *always, ever, continually.*

Semprōnius, -i, M., *M. Sempronius Rutilus*, a cavalry officer under Caesar.

senātor, -tōris [*cf. senex*], M., *an old man, elder*, senator, councilor.

senātus, -tūs [*cf. senex*], M., *council of elders, senate.*

senex, -is, adj., compar. senior; *old, aged*; as noun, *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a [*sex*], distrib. num. adj., *six at a time, six each, six (in each case).*

Senones, -um, M. plur., a Gallic nation north of the Haedui, whose chief town, Agedincum, is now *Sens.*

sententia, -ae [*sentio*], F., *opinion, view, way of thinking, sentiment, feeling, judgment, plan, purpose, sentence, purport, effect.*

sentiō, *sentire*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, 4. v. a., *perceive (by the senses), learn, know, think, feel.*
sentis, -*is*, M., *brier.*
sēparātūm [*separatus*, p. p. of *separo*], adv., *separately, apart, privately.*
sēparō, -*are*, -*avī*, -*atus* [*se-paro*], I. v. a., *separate, part, divide.*
septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*
septentrīo, -*onis* [*septem triones*], M., *properly used in plural, the seven plow-oxen (the stars in the Great Bear), the north.*
septimus, -*a*, -*um* [*septem*], adj., *seventh.*
septingentī, -*ae*, -*a* [*septem-centum*], num. adj., *seven hundred.*
septuāgintā [*septem*], indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*
sepultūra, -*ae* [*sepelio, bury*], F., *burial.*
Sēquana, -*ae*, F., *the Seine river.*
Sēquānus, -*a*, -*um*, adj. *Sequanian;* M. plur. as noun, *the Sequani*, a Gallic nation, east of the Haedui.
sequor, *sequi*, *secūtūs*, 3. v. dep., *follow, pursue, attend, accompany, aim at, attain; fidem sequi, with gen., to attach one's self to.*
Ser., for *Servius.*
sermō, -*onis* [*sero, weave, twine*], M., *discourse, talk, conversation, speech.*
serō, *serere, sēvī, satus*, 3. v. a., *plant, sow.*
sērō [abl. of *serus, late*], adv., *compar. sērius; superl. sērissimē; late, too late.*
Sertōrius, -*i*, M., Q. *Sertorius*, a partisan of Marius. After the latter's death he carried on war in Spain against the party of Sulla.
servilis, -*e* [*servus*], adj., *of slaves, servile.*
serviō, -*ire*, -*ii* (-*ivi*), -*itūrus*, 4. v. n., *be a slave, serve; be the slave of, be devoted to, give heed to.*
servitūs, -*tūtis* [*cf. servus and servio*], F., *slavery, servitude.*
Servius, -*i*, M., a Roman praenomen,

servō, -*are*, -*avī*, -*atus*, I. v. a., *watch over, guard, preserve, keep, maintain, observe, heed.*
servus, -*i*, M., *slave.*
sescēnti (*sex-*), -*ae*, -*a* [*sex-centum*], num. adj., *six hundred.*
sēsē; see *sui.*
sēsquipedālis, -*e* [*sesqui, one and a half, -pes*], adj., *a foot and a half long, thick, wide, etc.*
sētiūs (*secus*) [*compar. of secus, otherwise*], adv.; *nihilō sētiūs, none the less, nevertheless.*
seu; see *sive.*
sevēritās, -*tatis* [*severus, strict*], F., *strictness, hardness, sternness, rigor.*
sēvocō, -*are*, -*avī*, -*atus* [*se-voco*], I. v. a., *call aside, call apart.*
sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*
sexāgintā [*sex*], indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*
Sextiūs, -*i*, M., (1) *T. Sextiūs*, one of Cæsar's lieutenants, (2) *P. Sextiūs Baculus*, a brave centurion.
sī, *if, in case; to see if, to see whether, whether; quod sī, but if.*
sibi; see *sui.*
Sibūsātes, -*um*, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.
sic [*si-cc*], adv., *so, thus, in this way, in such a manner.*
siccitās, -*tatis* [*siccus, dry*], F., *dryness, drought.*
sicut (*sicuti*) [*sic-ut*], adv., *just as, just as if, as, as it were.*
sīdūs, -*eris*, N., *heavenly body, constellation.*
signifer, -*ferī* [*signum fero*], M., *standard-bearer.*
significatiō, -*ōnis* [*significo*], F., *making signs, signal, intimation, demeanor, meaning, sense, significance.*
significō, -*are*, -*avī*, -*atus* [*signum-facio*], I. v. n., *make signs, make known, indicate, give information, show, declare.*
signum, -*i*, N., *sign, signal; standard; signa inferre, advance to the attack, charge; signa convertere, change front; ad signa*

- convenire**, *join the army*; **ad signa cōsistere**, *rally round the standards*.
- Silānus**, -i, M., *M. Silanus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- silentum**, -i [silens, pres. p. of sileo, be silent], N., *silence, stillness*.
- Silius**, -i, M., *T. Silius*, a tribune of the soldiers.
- silva**, -ae, F., *a wood, woods, a forest, forests*.
- silvester** (-tris), -tris; -tre [silva], adj., *wooded, covered with woods or forests*.
- similis**, -e, adj., *like, similar*.
- similitudō**, -dinis [similis], F., *likeness, resemblance, similarity*.
- simul**, adv., *at the same time, at once, together, as soon as*; **simul atque**, *as soon as*; **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and, partly . . . partly*.
- simulārum**, -i [simulo], N., *likeness, image, effigy*.
- simulātiō**, -onis [simulo], F., *pretense, deceit, false show*.
- simulō**, -are, -āvi, -ātus [similis], i. v. a., *(make like), pretend, feign, make a show of*.
- simultās**, -tatis [cf. simul and similis, like facultas fr. facilis], F., *(likeness), rivalry, jealousy, enmity*.
- sīn** [si-ne], conj., *but if, if however*.
- sincērē** [sincerus, genuine], adv., *honestly, truly, frankly*.
- sine**, prep. with abl., *without*.
- singillātim** [singuli], adv., *one at a time, singly, individually*.
- singulāris**, -e [singuli], adj., *single, one at a time, solitary; singular, extraordinary, unique*.
- singuli**, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *one at a time, one by one, one apiece, single, each, separate*.
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left hand*; in F. sing., sc. manus or pars.
- sinistrōrsus** [sinistro-versus], adv., *to the left*.
- situs**, -tūs [sino, put, place], M., *situation, position, site*.
- sīve** (seu) [si-ve], conj., *or if; sīve . . . sīve*, either . . . or, if . . . or if, whether . . . or.
- socer**, -eri, M., *father-in-law*.
- societās**, -tatis [socius], F., *alliance, partnership, league, confederacy*.
- socius**, -i, F., *partner, associate, comrade*; plur., *allies*.
- sōl**, sōlis, M., *the sun*.
- sōlācium** (sōlātium), -i [cf. consolor], N., *comfort, consolation*.
- soldurius**, -i, M., *retainer, follower*.
- soleō**, solēre, solitus, 2. v. n., *be accustomed, be wont*.
- sōlitūdō**, -dinus [solus], F., *loneliness; lonely place, wilderness*.
- sollertia**, -ae [sollers, adroit], F., *ingenuity, skill, cleverness, adroitness*.
- sollicitō**, -are, -āvi, -ātus, i. v. a., *stir up, instigate, rouse, incite, tamper with, tempt, induce; persuade*.
- sollicitudō**, -inis [sollicitus, anxious], F., *anxiety, apprehension, disquiet*.
- solum**, -i, N., *the soil, ground, bottom*.
- sōlūm** [acc. N. of solus], adv., *alone, only; nōn sōlūm . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also*.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., *alone, only*.
- sōlūtus**, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.
- solvō**, solvere, solvi, solūtus, 3. v. a., *loose; with or without nāvem, nāvēs, set sail, weigh anchor*.
- sonitus**, -tūs [sono, sound], M., *sound, noise*.
- sonus**, -i [cf. sono, sound], M., *sound*.
- soror**, -oris, F., *sister; ex mātre, on the mother's side, i. e., a half-sister*.
- sors**, sortis, F., *lot, chance, fate*.
- Sōtiātēs**, -um, M. plur., *a tribe in Aquitania*.
- spatiūm**, -i, N., *space, extent, distance; space of time, interval, period, lapse of time*.
- speciēs**, -ieī [cf. specio, look], F., *sight, appearance, show, pretense*.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **specio**, *look*], 1. v. a. and n., *look at, regard, have in view, look toward, face, lie toward.*
speculātor, -tōris [*speculator*], M., *scout, spy.*
speculātorius, -a, -um [*speculator*], *of a scout, scouting, spying, reconnoitering, observing.*
speculor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **specio**, *look*; **specula**, *watch-tower*], 1. v. dep., *spy out, observe, reconnoiter.*
sperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*spes*], 1. v. a. and n., *hope, hope for, expect.*
spēs, -ei, F., *hope, expectation.*
spiritus, -tūs [*spiro, breathe*], M., *breath; spirit, pride, haughtiness, arrogance.*
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*spolium, booty*], 1. v. a., *strip, despoil, rob, deprive.*
spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), no other cases used; gen. not used in Caesar; F., *of one's own accord, voluntarily, willingly; on one's own account, by one's own influence.*
stabilīo, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -itus [*stabilis, firm*], 4. v. a., *make firm, make stable, establish.*
stabilitās, -tātis [*stabilis, firm*], F., *firmness, steadiness, solidity.*
statim [*sto*], adv., *on the spot, at once, forthwith, immediately.*
statiō, -ōnis [*sto*], F., *(standing), post, outpost, picket, guard, duty.*
statuō, -uere, -ūi, -ūtus [*status*], 3. v. a., *set up; establish, determine, resolve, decide, judge, pass sentence; consider, hold, think.*
statūra, -ae [*sto*], F., *stature, height of a man.*
status, -tūs [*sto*]. M., *standing, position, situation, state, condition.*
stimulus, -i, M., *goad, spur, caltrop.*
stipendiārius, -a, -um [*stipendium*], adj., *tributary, subject to tribute; as noun, stipendiārii, -ōrum, M. plur., subjects, tributaries.*
stipendum, -i [*stips, offering, pendō*], F., *tribute, tax.*

stipes, **stīpitis**, M., *trunk of a tree, post, log.*
stirps, **stirpis**, F. (sometimes M.), *stock, stem, trunk; race, family, stock.*
stō, **stāre, stelī, statūrus**, 1. v. n., *stand, be posted; stand by, abide by.*
strāmentum, -I [*stra-, root of sterno, straw*], M., *straw, thatch, pack-saddle.*
strepitus, -tūs [*strepo, make a noise*], M., *noise, confused sound, din, uproar.*
studeō, **studēre**, **studūi**, no p. p. [cf. *studium*], 2. v. n., *be eager for, strive for, be devoted to, desire, cultivate, apply one's self to.*
studiōsē [*studiōsus, zealous*], adv., *eagerly, zealously.*
studium, -i [cf. *studeo*], N., *zeal, eagerness, devotion, enthusiasm, fondness; pursuit, occupation.*
stultitia, -ae [*stultus, foolish*], F., *folly, foolishness.*
sub, adv. in comp. and prep., (1) with acc., (of motion toward something) *under, close to; (of time) just before, about*; (2) with abl., *under; before (the eyes); just at, at the foot of (a mountain); (3) in compos., under, from under, up, secretly, in succession, slightly.*
subāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *subigo*.
subdolus, -a, -um [*sub-dolus*], adj., *sly, cunning, wily, crafty.*
subducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [*sub-duco*], 3. v. a., *lead up, draw up, haul up (on shore); lead off, withdraw.*
subductiō, -ōnis [*subduco*], F., *hauling up (on shore), beaching.*
subductus, -a, -um, p. p. of *subduco*.
subeō, -īre, -ii, -itus [*sub-eo*], irr. v. a., *go under; undergo, suffer; approach, go up to, encounter.*
subfodiō (suff.-), -fodere, -fōdi, -fōsus [*sub-fodio*], 3. v. a., *dig under, stab from below.*
subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of *subfodio*.

sūbiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., throw under, throw from under; place under, subject, expose to; place near; subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., situated near, near, adjacent.

subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of subicio.

subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus [sub-agō], 3. v. a., bring under, subdue, subject, constrain.

subitō; see subitus.

subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly), sudden, unexpected; subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly.

sublātus, -a, -um [sub-(t)latus], p. p. of tollo.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-levo], 1. v. a., lift up, lighten, relieve, support, assist, aid.

publica, -ae, F., pile.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus [sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash, flow at the foot of.

subministrō (summ-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-ministro, serve], 1. v. a., supply, furnish, provide.

submittō (summ-), -mittere, -misi, -missus [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up, send to help, send as reinforcements.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of submoveo.

submoveō (summ-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., drive off, remove, dislodge.

subruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus [sub-ruo], 3. v. a., undermine.

subsequor, -sequi, -secutus [sub-sequo], 3. v. dep., follow closely, follow up, succeed.

subsidiū, -i [sub-sedeo, sit], N., (sitting near); reserve (troops), support, reinforcement, relief, assistance, help, remedy, resource.

subsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, sessūrus [sub-sido, sit down], 3. v. n., stay behind, remain.

subsistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p. p. [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., stop, halt, make a stand, hold out, hold fast.

subsum, -esse, -suī, -futūrus [sub-sum], irr. v. n., be under, be near, be close at hand, approach.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [sub-traho], 3. v. a., take away, draw off underneath, remove, esp. by stealth.

subvectiō, -ōnis [subveho], 3. v. a., bringing up, transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [sub-veho, carry], 3. v. a., bring up.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus [sub-venio], 4. v. n., come to help, come to support, assist, aid, relieve, succor.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūsus [sub-eedo], 3. v. n., come up, advance, approach, succeed, take the place of; be successful, prosper, go on well.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus [sub-cando, not used; cf. candeo, be hot], 3. v. a., kindle, set on fire (from below).

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succendo.

successus, -ūs [succedo], M., coming up, approach.

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., cut at the bottom, cut down, mow, reap.

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succido.

succumbo, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [sub-cumbo, lie down], 3. v. n., lie down under, sink under, yield, be overcome, give way.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus [sub-curro], 3. v. n., run to help, succor, aid, rescue.

sudis, -is, F., a stake.

sūdor, -ōris, M., sweat; effort, iabor,

toil.

Suēba, -ae, F., a Suebian woman.

Suēbi (**Suēvi**), -ōrum, M. plur., the Suebi (-vi), Swabians, a large and powerful German nation.

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., Suebian, (Suevian), Swabian.

Suessiōnes, -um, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul about the town now called Soissons.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [sub-facio], 3. v. a. and n., provide, supply; suffice, hold out.

suffragium, -i, N., vote.

Sugambri (Sig-), -ōrum, M., a German tribe.

suggestus, -tūs [sub-gero], M., mound of earth, raised platform, tribunal.

suī [gen. N. of suus], sibi, sē or sēsē, no nom., himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they; with inter, each other; with cum, written sēcum; per sē, in or of himself, etc.

Sulla, -ae, M., L. Cornelius Sulla, the great dictator, leader of the nobility and antagonist of Marius.

Sulpicius, -i, M., (1) P. Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants; (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irr. v. n., be; often to be translated there is, there are, etc.; with possess. gen., belong to, be characteristic of, be the duty of, etc.

summa, -ae (F. of summus), F., (top), total, sum, whole; general management, control; summa imperi, chief command.

summus, -a, -um, superl. of superus.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., take, take to one's self, get; assume, undertake; expend, spend; inflict (punishment).

sūmptuosus, -a, -um [sumptus], adj., expensive, costly.

sūmptus, -tūs [sumo], M., expense.

super, adv. in compos. and prep., above, over, beyond, besides.

superbē [superbus, proud], adv., proudly, haughtily, arrogantly.

superior; see superus.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [superus], 1. v. a. and n., surpass, surmount, excel, overcome, conquer, defeat, subdue; survive, remain, be left over.

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus [super-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit above, be above; refrain from.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um, adj., compar. superior; superl. suprēmus or summus; upper, above, higher; superior, -ius, higher, upper, superior; former, earlier, previous; summus, -a, -um, highest, the top of, greatest, chief, most important, supreme; as noun, summum, -i, top, end.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītūrus [sub-peto], 3. v. n., be at hand, be present, be supplied, be in store, hold out.

supplēmentum, -i [suppleo, fill up], N., supply, reinforcement.

supplex, -icis, M. and F., suppliant.

supplicatiō, -onis [supplico, entreat], F., prayer; esp. (public) thanksgiving, decreed by the Roman Senate for victories.

suppliciter [supplex], adv., in the manner of suppliants, humbly.

supplicium, -i [supplex], N., punishment, death penalty, execution.

supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [subporto], 1. v. a., bring up, convey, furnish, supply.

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., above, beyond, before, previously.

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of suscipio.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. a., take up, undertake, assume, commence, engage in.

suspictus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicio.

suspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [sub-specio, look], 3. v. a. and n., look from below, look up at, look askance at, suspect; suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., suspected, mistrusted.

suspiciō, -onis, F., mistrust, suspicion, imputation, impression, indication.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. suspicio], 1. v. dep., mistrust, suspect, surmise.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub(s)-tentō, freq. of teneo], 1. v. a. and n., hold up, sustain, hold out against, hold out.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold up, support, hold out against, endure, withstand, check, stop, pull up, rein in; hold out, make a stand.

sustulī; see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. (reflexive, i. e., referring to the subject of the sentence), his, her, its, their; his own, etc., advantageous; his usual, characteristic; as noun, sui, -ōrum, M. plur., his own people, his own soldiers, his own side; sua, -ōrum, N. plur., his, etc., possessions.

T

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, -i [dimin. of tāberna, hut], N., tent.

tabula, -ae, F., a board, writing tablet, list, record, document.

tabulātus, -a, -um [tabula], adj., made of boards; as noun, tabulātum, -i, N., boarding, flooring, floor, story.

taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus, 2. v. a. and n., be silent; say nothing about, conceal, pass over in silence; tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., silent.

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceo.

tālea, -ae, F., rod, bar.

tālis, -e, adj., such, of such a kind.

tam [cf. quam, nam, etc.], adv., so, so much, so very.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, yet, still, notwithstanding, however, at least.

Tamesis, -is, M., the Thames river.

tametsī [tamen-etsi], adv., although, though.

tandem [tam-dem, like idem], adv., at length, at last; (in questions) pray, pray now.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, 3. v. a., touch, border on.

tantopere (often written tanto opere), adv., so earnestly, so greatly, so very much.

tantulus, -a, -um [dimin. of tantus], adj., so small, so trifling, so little, so slight.

tantum; see tantus.

tantummodo [tantum-modo], adv., (so much only), only, merely.

tantundem [tantum-dem, like idem], adv., just so much, just so far.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so much, so great, so important, so small, etc.; tanti, of so great value, worth so much; so much (and no more), only so much; tantum, N. acc. as adv., only, merely, only so much.

Tarbelli, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania, whose name is preserved in Tarbes.

tarde [tardus], adv., slowly, late; paulō tardius, rather slowly.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardus], 1. v. a., delay, check, hinder.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, not active, sluggish.

Tarusātes, -ium, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania, whose name is preserved in Tارتas.

Tasgetius, -i, M., a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, M., bull.

Taximagulus, -i, M., a British chief in Kent.

taxus, -i, F., yew-tree; yew, the poison made from the berries.

Tectosagēs, -um, M. plur., a branch of the Volcae; their chief town was Tolosa, now Toulouse.

tēctūm, -i [N. p. p. of tego], N., roof, house.

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tego.

tegimentum (tegu-), -i [tego], N., covering.

tego, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, 3. v. a., cover, thatch, hide, protect.

tēlūm, -i, N., missile, weapon, dart, javelin, spear.

temerārius, -a, -um [temere], adj., rash, reckless, hasty, heedless.

temerē, adv., *blindly, recklessly, heedlessly, rashly, without good reason.*

temeritās, -tatis [temere], F., *rashness, heedlessness, recklessness, thoughtlessness.*

tēmō, -onis, M., *pole (of a wagon or chariot).*

temperantia, -ae [temperans, pres. p. of tempero], F., *self-control, moderation, sobriety, discreetness.*

temporō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *control, control one's self; refrain, forbear, abstain from.*

tempestas, -tatis [cf. tempus], F., *weather, esp. bad weather; storm.*

temptō (tentō), -are, -āvi, -ātus, *try, test, tempt, attempt; assail, attack.*

tempus, -oris, N., *period of time, time; season, occasion, fitting time; circumstances; reliquum tempus, the future.*

Tencteri, -orum, M. plur., a branch of the Usipetes, on the lower Rhine.

tendō, tendere, tetendi, tēnsus, 3. v. a., *stretch, extend; pitch a tent, be encamped.*

tenebrae, -arum, F. plur., *darkness, "shades."*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 2. v. a., *hold, keep, have possession of; occupy, seize; restrain, hold back, detain, bind; sē tenēre, remain.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *delicate, tender, young.*

tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, delicate, slight, feeble, poor, mean.*

tenuitās, -tatis [tenuis], F., *thinness, weakness, poverty.*

tenuiter [tenuis], adv., *thinly.*

ter, num. adv., *thrice, three times.*

teres, -etis [tero, rub], adj., *well-turned, smooth, round, tapering.*

tergum, -I, N., *back; terga ver-*

tere, turn and flee; à tergo,

behind, in the rear.

ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *three by three, three at a time, three each.*

terra, -ae [torreo, dry up], F., *earth, land; a land, region;*

ground, soil; orbis terrarum, the world.

Terrasidius, -i, M., T. Terrasidius, a tribune of the soldiers under Caesar.

terrēnus, -a, -um [terra], adj., *of earth.*

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus, 2. v. a., *frighten, alarm, terrify, deter (with quo minus).*

territō, -are, no perf., no p. p. [freq. of terreō], I. v. a., *frighten greatly, alarm, terrify.*

terror, -oris [terreo], M., *fear, alarm, dread, terror, apprehension.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third; tertia pars, one third.*

testāmentum, -i [testor, bear witness], N., *will, testament.*

testimoniūm, -i [testis], N., *evidence, witness, proof, testimony.*

testis, -is, M. and F., *a witness.*

testūdō, -inis, F., *tortoise; column of assault with the shields of the soldiers forming a roof over their heads; a kind of shed used to shelter besiegers.*

Teutomatus, -i, M., a king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutoni, -orum (-es, -um), M. plur., the great German nation which, together with the Cimbri, overran Gaul a little before 100 B. C.

tignum, -i, N., *beam, timber, pile, log.*

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tigurini; as noun, Tigurinī, -orum, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii.*

timeō, -ere, -ui, no p. p., 2. v. a. and n., *be afraid, be afraid of, fear, be anxious for or about; timēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., timid, fearful; as noun, M. plur., the fearful.*

timidē [timidus], adv., *timidly, with fear.*

timor, -oris [timeo], M., *fear, dread, apprehension, alarm.*

Titurius, -i, M., Q. Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

- Titus**, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.
tolerō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [cf. tollo], 1. v. a., bear, endure, support, maintain, nourish; hold out.
tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, 3. v. a., lift up, raise, carry off, remove, destroy, break off, take on board; sublātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lifted up, elated.
Tolōsa, -ae, F., now Toulouse, chief town of the Volcae Tectosages.
Tolōsātēs, -ium [Tolosa], M. plur., the people of Toulouse.
tormentum, -i [torqueo, twist], N., (means of twisting), wirllass; engine for hurling missiles; shot or missile of an engine; instrument of torture, rack; torture, pain.
torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, 2. v. a., burn, scorch.
tot, indecl. adj., so many.
totidem [toti(tot)-dem], indecl. adj., just as many, the same number.
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, entire, the whole of; often to be translated by an adverb, wholly, entirely.
trabs (trabēs), trabis, F., beam, timber.
trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of traho.
trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.
trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus [trans-do], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, deliver, yield, surrender; entrust, command, recommend; pass on, hand down, teach, transmit.
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead over, lead across, bring across, lead through, win over; transfer, transport.
trāgula, -ae, F., a Gallic javelin.
trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, 3. v. a., draw, drag, drag along, drag away.
trāiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [trans-iacio], 3. v. a., throw across or over; strike through, pierce.
trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of traiicio.
- trāiectus**, -tūs [traicio], M., crossing over; passage across, passage.
trānō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [trans-no, swim], 1. v. a. and n., swim across.
tranquillitās, -tātis [tranquillus, calm], F., quiet, stillness, calmness, calm.
trāns, adv. in comp. and prep. with acc., across, over, on the other side of, beyond, through.
Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um [trans-Alpes], adj., Transalpine, lying on the other side of the Alps from Italy.
trāscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [trans-scando, climb], 3. v. n., climb over, climb across, board (ships).
trānsducō; see traduco.
trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itus [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, pass over, pass, pass through, pass by, march through, pass away, elapse.
trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [trans-fero], irr. v. a., carry over, bring or carry across, transfer.
trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [trans-figo, fix], 3. v. a., pierce through, thrust through, transfix.
trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fodī, -fossus [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., dig through, pierce through, stab, run through.
trānsgredior, -gredi, -gressus [trans-gradior, walk], 3. v. dep., step across or over, cross.
trāngressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgredior.
trānsitus, -tūs [transeo], M., crossing, passing over.
trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.
trānsmarinus, -a, -um [trans-mare], adj., across the sea, beyond the sea.
trānsmīssus, -ūs [transmitto], M., crossing; passage across, distance across.
trānsmīssus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.
trānsmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a., send across or over.

- trānsportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [transporto], i. v. a., bring over, carry over, transport.
- Trānsrhēnānus**, -a, -um [trans-Rhenum], adj., across the Rhine —i. e., from Gaul; as noun, **Trānsrhēnāni**, -ōrum, M. plur., the dwellers beyond the Rhine.
- trānstrūm**, -i, N., thwart; cross-timber.
- trānsversus**, -a, -um [p. p. of transverto], as adj., crosswise, athwart, oblique.
- Trebīus**, -i, M., *M. Trebīus Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army.
- Trebōnius**, -i, M., (1) *C. Trebonius*, tribune of the plebs in 55 B.C., afterward one of Caesar's lieutenants; (2) *C. Trebonius*, a Roman knight.
- trecentī**, -ae, -a [tres-centum], num. adj., three hundred.
- tredecim** [tres-decem], indecl. num. adj., thirteen.
- trepidō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, i. v. n., hurry, bustle, be agitated, be alarmed, be in confusion.
- trēs**, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three.
- Trēverī** (-virī), -ōrum, M. plur., the *Treviri*, an important nation of Belgic Gaul, on both sides of the Mosel; their chief town is now *Trèves* or *Trier*.
- Triboci**, -ōrum, M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.
- tribūnus**, -i [tribus, a tribe], M., tribune; **tribūnus militūm**, a military tribune, of whom each legion had six.
- tribūō**, -uere, -ūi, -ūtus [tribus, a tribe], 3. v. a., assign, allot, distribute, grant, render, pay, have regard for.
- tribūtūm**, -i [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., tribute, tax.
- triduum**, -i [tres, tri-dies, cf. bīdūm], N., three days' time, three days.
- triennium**, -i [tri-annus], N., period of three years, three years' time.
- trigintā**, indecl. num. adj., thirty.
- trīnī**, -ae, -a [tres, tri-], distrib. num. adj., three at a time, three each.
- Trinovantes**, -um, M. plur., a tribe in the southeastern part of Britain; their chief town, Camalodunum, is now Colchester.
- tripertītūs** (tripart-), -a, -um [tripartitus, p. p. of partio, divide], adj., divided into three parts; **tripertītō**, N., abl. as adv., in three divisions.
- trīplex**, -icis [tri-plex (plico, fold)], adj., threefold, triple.
- trīquetrus**, -a, -um, adj., three-cornered, triangular.
- tristis**, -e, adj., sad, gloomy, sorrowful, dejected.
- tristitia**, -ae [tristis], F., sadness, dejection.
- truncus**, -i, M., trunk (of a tree).
- tū**, tui, plur. vōs, pers. pron., thou, you.
- tuba**, -ae, F., trumpet (long and straight).
- tueor**, tuēri, tūtus (tuitus), 2. v. dep., see, look, gaze at, behold; watch, guard, protect, defend, maintain, preserve.
- tuli**, perf. of fero.
- Tulingī**, -ōrum, M. plur., a German tribe north of the Helvetii.
- Tullius**, -i, M.; see Cicero.
- Tullus**, -i, M.; see Volcacius.
- tum**, adv., then, at that time, there-upon, moreover, next; **cum . . . tum**, both . . . and; **tum māximē**, especially at that time, just then.
- tumultuor**, -ārī, -ātus [tumultus], i. v. dep., make an uproar; impersonal, there is an uproar.
- tumultuōsē** [tumultuosus, disorderly], adv., noisily, with disorder or confusion.
- tumultus**, -tūs [cf. tumeo, swell], M., uproar, confusion, noise bustle; insurrection.
- tumulus**, -i [cf. tumeo, swell], M., mound, hillock, hill.
- tunc** [tum-ce], adv., then, just then, at that time.

turma, -ae [cf. *turba, throng*], F., *troop* (of cavalry).

Turonī, -ōrum (-es, -um), M. plur., *a people in central Gaul, whose name is preserved in Tours.*

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly; base, shameful, disgraceful.*

turpiter [turpis], adv., *basely, shamefully.*

eturpitudō, -inis [turpis], F., *base-ness, dishonor, shame, disgrace.*

turris, -is, F., *a tower; turris ambulatōria, a wooden tower on rollers.*

tūtē [tutus], adv., *safely; compar. tūtius, with greater safety.*

tūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of *tueor*], adj., *protected, safe, secure; nihil tūtum, no safety; tūtō, N. abl. as adv., safely.*

tuus, -a, -um [tu], possess. adj. pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

U

ubi [for *cubi (quobi)*], adv., *where, when; ubi primum, as soon as.*

Ubii, -ōrum, M. plur., *a German nation on the lower Rhine.*

ubique [ubi-que], adv., *everywhere, anywhere.*

ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus, 3. v. dep., *punish, avenge, take vengeance.*

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., *any; as noun, anybody, any one.*

ulterior, -us; gen. -oris [*ultra*], compar. adj., *farther, beyond, more distant or remote; ultimus, -a, -um, superl., farthest, last, rear-most.*

ultrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *beyond, on the farther side.*

ultrō, adv., *to the farther side, beyond; ultrō citrōque, back and forth, to and fro; besides, moreover; of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ulciscor.*

ululātus, -tūs [*ululō, howl*], M., *howling, yelling; loud cry, shout, yell.*

umerus (hum-), -i, M., *shoulder.*

umquam (unquam), adv., *ever (with a negative).*

ūnā [unus], adv., *together, at the same time, in company.*

unde [for cunde; cf. inde], adv., *whence, from which; often = ē quō, quibus.*

undecim [unus-decem], indecl. num. adj., *eleven.*

undecimus, -a, -um [undecim], num. adj., *eleventh.*

undique [unde-que], adv., *from every side, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūniversus, -a, -um [unus-versus], adj., *all together, all in a body, the whole of, entire.*

ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, adj., *one; a single, alone, only, sole; ad ūnum, to a man.*

urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], adj., *of a city, of the city (Rome).*

urbs, urbis, F., *a city; esp. the city (Rome).*

urgeō (urqueō), urgēre, ursi, no p. p., *press, press hard, oppress.*

ūrus, -i, M., *a wild ox, urochs.*

Ushipetēs, -um, M. plur., *a German tribe which migrated to the lower Rhine.*

ūsitatō, -a, -um [p. p. of ūsitor, freq. of utor], adj., *usual, customary.*

ūsque, adv., *all the way to, as far as, even to, up to, until; ūsque eō, even to that degree or extent.*

ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of utor.

ūsus, -ūs [utor], M., *use, practice, habit, wont; exercise, employment, experience, skill; profit, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, it is necessary, there is need of (with abl.); ūsū venire, come to pass, happen.*

ut (uti), adv. and conj.: (1) Interrog. adv., *how?* (2) Relative adv., *as, just as, inasmuch as, seeing that, as if.* (3) Conj. (a) with indic., *when, as, as soon as;* (b) with subjunc., *of purpose, that, in order that, in order to; of result, that, so that; of concession, though, although.*

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trius, pronominal adj. relative or interrog., which (of two)? which one? whichever (of two), the one who or which; utrum, N. acc. as adv., whether.

uterque, utraque, utrumque; gen. utriusque [uter-que], both, each.

uti; see ut.

ūtilis, -e [cf. utor], adj., useful, profitable, favorable, advantageous, serviceable.

ūtilitās, -tatis [utilis], F., usefulness, benefit, service, advantage.

ūtor, ūti, ūsus, 3. v. dep., make use of, use, employ, adopt, exercise, practise, enjoy, show, manifest.

utrimque [uter-que], adv., from or on both sides.

utrum; see uter.

ūxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

V, for quīnque, five.

Vacalus, -i, M., the Waal, an arm of the Rhine, which flows into the Maas.

vacātiō, -ōnis [vago], F., exemption, freedom (from something).

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [cf. vacuus], I. v. n., be unoccupied, be free; lie waste, uncultivated,

vacuus, -a, -um [cf. vaco], adj., unoccupied, empty, free from, vacant, destitute of.

vadum, -i [cf. vado, go, walk], N., ford, fording; plur., fords, shallows, shoals.

vāgina, -ae, F., sheath, scabbard.

vagor, -āri, -ātus, I. v. dep., wander, rove, roam.

valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus, 2. v. n., be strong, powerful, able; have power or influence; have weight.

Valerius, -i, M., (1) C. Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul, 83 B. c.; (2) L. Valerius Praeconinus, legatus of some proconsul of Gaul, killed in Aquitania before 56 B. c.; (3) C. Valerius Caburinus, a Gaul who had received Ro-

man citizenship; (4) C. Valerius Proculus and (5) C. Valerius Domnotaurus, sons of No. (3).

Valetiācus, -i, M., a Haeduian noble, brother of Cotus.

valētūdō, -inis [valeo], F., state of health, health; ill health.

vallēs, -is, F., valley.

vällus, -i [vallus], N., palisade (of stakes), rampart, wall, entrenchment.

vällus, -i, M., stake, rampart-stake.

Vangionēs, -um, plur., a German tribe east of the Treviri.

varietās, -tatis [varius], F., diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, different, various.

vastō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vastus], I. v. a., lay waste, ravage.

vastus, -a, -um, adj., waste, desolate; immense, vast.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vaticinor, predict; vates, a soothsayer], F.. prediction, prophecy, foretelling.

-ve, conj. enclitic, or.

vectigal, -alis, N., tax, tribute, impost; revenue, income.

vectigalīs, -e, adj., tax-paying, tribute-paying, tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector, vaho carry], adj., carrying, transport (ships).

vehementer [vehemens, impetuous], adv., violently, hotly, severely.

vel [volo], conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; adv., even.

Velanius, -i, M., Q. Velanius, an officer in Caesar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium (-i, -ōrum), M. plur., a small tribe about the neighborhood of Rouen.

Vellaunōdūnum, -i, N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Cevennes mountains, tributary to the Arverni.

vēlōcitas, -tatis [velox], F., swiftness, speed, rapidity.

vēlōciter [velox], adv., swiftly, rapidly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, speedy, quick.

vēlum, -i, N., *veil, curtain, sail.*
 velut [vel ut], adv., *even as, as, just as; velut sī, as if, just as if.*
vēnatiō, -ōnis [venor, hunt], F., *hunting, the chase.*
vēnātor, -tōris [venor, hunt], M., *hunter.*
vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [venum do], 3. v. a., *offer for sale, sell.*
Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe on the northern coast of Gaul.
Yeneti, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of northwestern Gaul.
Venetia, -ae, F., the country of the Veneti, part of what is now Brittany.
Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Veneti.*
venia, -ae, F., *pardon, favor, indulgence, permission.*
veniō, venire, vēni, ventūrus, 4. v. n., *come; ūsū venire, come to pass, occur.*
ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [freq. of vento, freq. of venio], 1. v. n., *come often, keep coming.*
ventus, -i, M., *wind.*
vēr, vēris, N., *spring; primō vēre, at the beginning of spring.*
Veragri, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Alps.
Verbigenus, -i, M., the name of a canton of the Helvetii.
verbum, -i, N., *word; plur., words, language, speech, conversation.*
Vercassivelaunus, -i, M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.
Vercingetorix, -īgis, M., a noble Arvernian, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their great revolt against the Romans in 52 B. C.
vereor, -ōm, -itus, 2. v. dep., *fear, be afraid of, dread; veritus, -a, -um, p. p., fearing.*
vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p., 3. v. n., *incline, slope, tend, turn toward; lie toward, be situated in the direction of.*
vergobretus, -i, M., *vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of certain Gallic nations.*

vērisimilis, -e (or, separately written, *vēri similis*), adj., *like the truth, probable, likely.*
veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vereor**.
vērō [verus], adv., *in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, but indeed, however.*
versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [freq. of **verto**], 1. v. a., *turn often, turn this way and that; deal with; pass., turn one's self about, move about; dwell, live; be engaged, employed, occupied.*
versus, -a, -um, p. p. of **verto**.
versus (versum) [p. p. of **verto**], adv. and prep. with acc. after a noun with ad or in, *toward, in the direction of; quōque versus, in every direction.*
versus, -ūs [**verto**], M., *turning; line, verse.*
Verticō, -ōnis, M., a noble Nervian.
vertō, vertere, verti, *versus, 3. v. a., turn, turn around, change; terga vertere, turn and flee.*
Verudoctius, -i, M., a Helvetic noble.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true; rightly, proper; as noun, vērum, -i, N., the truth; vēri similis, probable, likely.*
verütum, -i [*veru, a spit*], N., *dart, javelin, light spear.*
Vesontiō, -ōnis, M., a town of the Sequani, now Besançon.
vesper, -erī and -eris, M., *evening.*
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., *your, yours.*
vestigium, -i, N., *footstep, step; footprint, track; trace; spot, place, point, moment; ē vestigiō, on the spot, immediately.*
vestiō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -ītūs [**vestis**], 4. v. a., *clothe, dress, cover.*
vestis, -is, F., *clothing, clothes, garments.*
vestitus, -tūs [**vestiō**], M., *clothing, dress.*
veteranus, -a, -um [cf. **vetus**], adj., *old, veteran (long in the service).*
vetō, vetāre, vetūi, *vetitus, 1. v. a., forbid.*

18. -eris, adj., old, of long standing, ancient, former.
- illum, -i, N., a flag; the ensign separate detachments of troops, the banner displayed by the general as a signal for action; sub exillō, in a detachment, not in the regular body with the signum.
- ō, -are, -āvi, -atus [freq. of echo], i. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, trouble, vex; ravage, overrun.
- via, -ae, F., way, route, road; march, journey; street of a camp.
- viator, -ōris [via], M., wayfarer, traveler.
- vicēni, -ae, -a [cf. viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty each, twenty apiece.
- vicēsimus, -a, -um [cf. viginti], num. adj., twentieth.
- vicēs (-ēns) [cf. viginti], num. adv., twenty times.
- vicēmītās, -tātis [vicius, neighborhood], F., nearness, neighborhood; the neighbors (people of the neighborhood).
- vicīs, gen. (nom. not found); succession, turn; in vicem, in turn, turn about, alternately.
- victima, -ae, F., victim, sacrifice.
- victor, -ōris [vincō], M., conqueror, victor; often as adj., triumphant, victorious.
- victōria, -ae [victor], F., victory.
- victus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincō.
- victus, -tūs [vivo], M., living, mode of life; means of living, food, victuals, provisions.
- vicus, -i, M., village.
- deō, vidēre, vidī, visus, 2. v. a., see; perceive, observe, look at; understand, learn; pass., videor, -ērī, visus, be seen, seem, appear; seem good, seem best.
- Vienna, -ae, F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.
- vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], F., being awake; watching; sleeplessness; watch, one fourth of the night.
- viginti, indecl. num. adj., twenty.
- vīmen, -inis [vieo, bind, twine], N., twig, osier, withie.
- vincīō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus, 4. v. a., bind—i. e., put in fetters.
- vincō, vincere, vīci, vīctus, 3. v. a. and n., conquer, vanquish, overcome, defeat, outdo; prevail, be victorious.
- vīnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.
- vīnculum (vinculum), -i [vincio], N., chain, fetter; plur., bonds, imprisonment, prison.
- vīndicō, -are, -āvi, -atus [vindex], i. v. a., claim, demand as one's right, defend, restore (to liberty), establish (the liberty of some one); with in and accus., punish.
- vīneā, -ae [vinum], F., vineyard, arbor for vines; shed (to shelter a besieging party).
- vīnum, -i, N., wine.
- vīolō, -are, -āvi, -atus, i. v. a., do violence to, abuse, violate, injure, lay waste.
- vīr, vīri, M., man, husband.
- vīrēs; see vis.
- vīrgō, -inis, F., maid, virgin.
- vīrgultum, -i [virgula, virga, twig], N., brushwood, brush, thicket.
- Vīromandārus, -i, M., a Haeduan noble.
- Vīridovīx, -īcis, M., a chief of the Venelli.
- vīritim [vir], adv., man by man, to each individual.
- Vīromandūi, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Nervii.
- vīrtūs, -tūtis [vir], F., manliness, bravery, courage, valor; merit, worth, virtue; energy, vigor; plur., good qualities, virtues.
- vīs, vis, F., force, violence; plur. vīrēs, -ium, strength, powers, vigor.
- vīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.
- vīta, -ae [vivo], F., life.
- vītō, -are, -āvi, -atus, i. v. a., shun, avoid, escape, dodge.
- vītrum, -i, N., wood, a blue dye.
- vīvō, vivere, vīxi, vīctus, 3. v. n., live, live on (with abl.).

vīvus, -a, -um [cf. vivo], adj., living, alive.

vix, adv., hardly, scarcely, barely, with difficulty.

Vocātes, -ium, M. plur., a small tribe in northwestern Aquitania.

Vocciō, -ōnis, M., a king of the Norici.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. vox], i. v. a., call, summon, invite, name.

Vocontiī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Province, south of the Allobroges.

Volcae, -ārum, M. plur., a nation of the Province, found in two divisions; see Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcācius, -i, M., C. Volcaciūs *Tullus*, an officer left to guard the Rhine bridge in 54 B. C.

volō, velle, volui, irr. v. a. and n., be willing, wish, desire; sibi velle, want, mean; intend, purpose; with two accusatives, want something of somebody, want somebody for something.

voluntārius, -a, -um [volo], adj.; willing, voluntary; as noun, **voluntārius**, -i, M., a volunteer.

voluntās, -tatis [volo], F., willingness, wish, desire, good-will, approval, inclination.

voluptās, -tatis [akin to volo], F., pleasure, enjoyment, delight.

Volusēnus, -i, M., C. Volusenus, military tribune and afterward

commander of cavalry in Caesar's army.

Vorēnus, -i, M., L. Vorenus, a centurion, rival of Pullo.

vōs; see tu.

Vosegus, -i, M., the Vosges Mountains, a range in the eastern part of Gaul, parallel to the Rhine.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, 2. v. a., vow.

vōx, vōcis, F., voice, sound, cry, call, word; māgna, vōx, a loud voice; plur., words, expressions, language, talk.

Vulcānus (Vol-), -i, M., Vulcan, god of fire and of working in metals.

vulgus (vulgus), -i, N., crowd, mass, common people; in **vulgus efferī**, be spread abroad; **vulgō**, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, universally, everywhere.

vulnerō (vuln-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vulnus], i. v. a., wound, injure, hurt.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound.

vultus (volt-), -tūs, M., look, countenance, face, expression; **vultum ferre**, dare look in the face; **vultum componere**, compose (assume) an expression, conceal one's feelings.

X

X, for decem, ten; also for decimus, -a, -um, tenth.

XX, for viginti, twenty.

(1)

THE END

**RETURN TO → CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT 21798
202 Main Library**

LOAN PERIOD 1 HOME USE	2	3
4	5	6

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

Renewals and Recharges may be made 4 days prior to the due date.

Books may be Renewed by calling 642-3405.

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

SEP 27 1989

AUTO. DISC.

AUG 11 1989

FORM NO. DD6

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY
BERKELEY, CA 94720

1031A-80m-2,67
(113) 111-01476B

Berkeley

05

YB 38272

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARY



C006790957

